



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

...-ice

...b

...je

...le

...e

...le ... le ... & ...

...-je-...e

... (naval)

...-le

...-le ...

...-le

...-je

...-le

Almo S. 1000

Lyra 541

Imperfect: - all after p. 378 missing.

①
J. V. DOUVILLE'S
SPEAKING
FRENCH GRAMMAR,

FORMING A SERIES OF
SIXTY EXPLANATORY LESSONS,

WITH
COLLOQUIAL ESSAYS,

PARTICULARLY CALCULATED TO RENDER THE

Speaking of French

EASY TO ENGLISH PERSONS:

TO WHICH IS ADDED

A COMPREHENSIVE AND CLASSIFIED VOCABULARY,
WITH A COLLECTION OF FAMILIAR PHRASES,
AND VARIOUS MODELS OF NOTES, BILLS OF EXCHANGE, AND RECEIPTS; AND ALSO TWO TABLES
OF THE RESPECTIVE VALUE OF THE FRENCH AND ENGLISH COINS.

THE FIFTH EDITION,

CORRECTED AND ENLARGED.

By **J. V. DOUVILLE, A.M.,**

PROFESSOR OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE AUTHOR,

BY **SIMPKIN, MARSHALL, AND CO.,**
STATIONERS' HALL COURT.

PARIS:

BY **A. AND W. GALIGNANI AND CO.,**

RUE VIVIENNE;

AND BY THE AUTHOR, RUE NEUVE DU MONT-THABOR, No. 10.

1835.

Almo S. 100

Ex. 541

Edue T 21518, 35. 325 A

✓

~~6256.6~~

~~Edue T~~

~~1168, 35.5~~

14 November 1888.

Gift of

Dr. Samuel A. Green,

Boston.

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL.

London:—Printed by WILLIAM CLOWES and SONS, Duke Street, Stamford Street.

ADVERTISEMENT TO THE THIRD EDITION.

IN preparing this Edition of the *Speaking French Grammar* for the press, the Author has spared no pains in his endeavours to give the work the greatest possible degree of perfection : every part of it has undergone a complete revision ; many of the rules and observations have been simplified and condensed, so as to render them more distinct and easy of recollection, while much additional and useful matter has been introduced. Notwithstanding these additions and improvements, the work has been compressed into a single octavo volume of a moderate size, printed with an entirely new and superior type, and is offered at a price, not only much below that of the former editions, but, with reference to its size and contents, lower than that of other books of a similar description.

The rapid sale of two large impressions of this work, each within eighteen months from the date of publication, may be appealed to as some criterion of the public judgment in its favour. Truly grateful for such flattering success, the Author indulges a hope that the present Edition will be found much improved, and still more worthy of the liberal patronage by which the work has been distinguished.

London, May 20, 1828.

ADVERTISEMENT TO THE FOURTH EDITION.

THE increasing demand for the *Speaking French Grammar* (a work particularly calculated to render the speaking of French easy to English persons), is a very flattering proof that this new production is judged to answer the purpose of its peculiar adaptation. Truly grateful for such an encouraging patronage, the Author has endeavoured to bring this Edition still nearer to perfection. In order to accom-

plish this, he has added at the end of the volume the respective value of the French and English coins, which will prove eminently useful, more especially to travellers, who are frequently at a loss on this most important point. This, among other improvements, will, no doubt, tend to ensure a continuation of the favour and approbation of the public.

The Key to the essays of the third edition of this work will equally well serve for those of the fourth; and, if properly used as a book of reference, will greatly facilitate the progress of the pupil.

The Author begs to suggest that, after an attentive perusal of the rules, the best means to acquire the necessary facility in pronouncing the essays is to read them several times aloud in French, before attempting to write them.

London, April 28, 1831.

ADVERTISEMENT TO THE FIFTH EDITION.

THE new and useful additions with which the present Edition of the *Speaking French Grammar* is enriched will greatly contribute to render it still more deserving the liberal patronage by which it has been hitherto distinguished. The whole of the work has been most carefully revised by the Author, and he flatters himself that it will be found the best companion which a person desirous of learning the French language can possibly have. Those, in particular, who are deprived of the assistance of a master, will highly appreciate it, as, by following the plan recommended in the Key, they will be enabled to acquire a thorough knowledge of the language by themselves.

Paris, June 25, 1835.

Rue Neuve du Mont-Thabor, No. 10.

P R E F A C E.

THE extensive use of the French language has given it such intrinsic value that a knowledge of it has long been considered indispensably necessary. The exposition of its elementary principles has consequently engaged more general investigation in England than, perhaps, any other tongue, either ancient or modern. But the practical part of the language, though by far the most essential to an English student, has yet unfortunately been more or less neglected by all writers upon this subject. It is therefore from a conviction of there being ample room for improvement in this particular, that the present work has been undertaken.

The Author's principal object has been to render the *speaking* of French as easy of attainment to English persons in England, as if they studied in France. In order to accomplish this great desideratum, he has particularly applied himself, in the composition of the contents of this Grammar, to arrange them so as to enable the pupil to store his mind with useful expressions, at the same time that he imbibes just notions of the philology of the language; for, unless a learner be early habituated to conversation, and properly grounded in the principles of the language, he will never be able to converse with a native of France.

The work is divided into four parts, and, in the arrangement of the materials, every thing belonging to the same head has been classed under one article, by which plan the trouble frequently experienced in referring to several places for information on the same subject is obviated.

The first part is appropriated to the orthography of the language, and contains instructions on pronunciation. The modern orthography, being in accordance with the decisions of the French Academy, has been adopted, and the remarks on pronunciation are in conformity with the present practice of the fashionable circles in Paris.

The second and third parts, which treat of Etymology and Syntax, are divided into fifty-nine lessons, embracing all the rules of the French Accidence and Syntax, with Colloquial Essays in illustration of the rules. Etymology being necessarily the foundation of that perfect acquaintance with the language which every well-educated person ought to possess, particular attention has been bestowed upon it. The difficulties usually attending this part of Grammar have, it is hoped, been considerably diminished by the explanatory system introduced throughout the work, and by the various modifications of each class of words being displayed in simple sentences, in order to impress them more firmly on the student's memory. The nature of the French verbs is also exhibited in a new and perspicuous manner; but much must be left to the good sense of the pupil, guided by the skill of his master, to form such combinations as are in consonance with his own ideas for the expression of his wants, emotions, or passions. In doing this, his progress will be greatly facilitated, if the teacher asks him questions of familiar discourse, and requires him to translate them into French. These questions may be partly formed by introducing the personal pronouns in conjunction with a verb, as—I have had the pleasure to see your sister, *j'ai eu le plaisir de voir Mlle. votre sœur*. Have you spoken to her? *lui avez-vous parlé?* No, I have not spoken to her, *non, je ne lui ai pas parlé*. Has not Mr. D** spoken to her? *M. D** ne lui a-t-il point parlé?* Yes, he has spoken to her, *oui, il lui a parlé*; and so on through all the simple and compound tenses, taking care to introduce by degrees the use of the subjunctive mood, and varying the sentences from the affirmative to the negative and interrogative forms of the verb. Without this practice, the utmost proficiency in conjugating the verbs will scarcely be of any avail for speaking French; but, by adopting it, and a similar exercise on the

other parts of speech, due attention being paid by the teacher to a correct pronunciation, a pupil may acquire the language with as much facility, purity, and elegance of expression, as if he studied it in Paris. It should also be observed that the verbs being gradually introduced into the essays, and being absolutely necessary for speaking French, the pupil must begin to learn them from the first lesson.

The essays throughout these two divisions of the Grammar form an important and distinguishing feature of the work. They are chiefly composed of phrases and passages used in ordinary discourse, and may be considered as a repertory for conversation. By construing them into French, according to the method recommended in the Key, the student is kept in constant practice, and gradually becomes acquainted with a considerable number of familiar and idiomatic sentences, and with those variations and delicacies of expression which so frequently occur in the polite circles in the capital of France. A strict adherence to this plan will enable him, not only to acquire a thorough knowledge of the rules of the language, but also to sustain his part in conversation with persons of intelligence and fashion, and to appreciate the beauties of French authors and form a just conception of the merit of their compositions.

The fourth part comprises, as the sixtieth lesson, a treatise on French Prosody and Versification, exemplified by quotations from eminent authors;—also three essays (in French) on grammatical analysis;—a comprehensive and classified Vocabulary of words most generally used in conversation;—a collection of familiar sentences, arranged under distinct heads;—numerous models of notes and letters, with some forms of bills of exchange, promissory notes, receipts, &c.;—and for the use of such English persons as are only slightly acquainted with French, but who, on their visit to the French metropolis, may be desirous to make themselves understood, a collection has been made, in the form of dialogue, of the phrases, directions, observations, &c. that commonly occur in a journey from Calais to Paris, and on the return.

How far the Author has succeeded in his endeavours to facilitate the *speaking of French* to English persons will be for the public to

decide; but, after an experience of several years in teaching his native language, he can safely state, from the acknowledged proficiency of numerous pupils, that he has found his system eminently calculated to promote this desirable object.

TYPOGRAPHICAL ERRORS.

- Page 11, 5th line from the bottom, for *extrême*, read—*extrême*.
 „ 17, for *Rue Neuve-des-Petits-Champs*, read—*Rue Neuve des Petits-Champs*.
 „ 18, last line, for *The proper names of*, &c., read—*Those of*, &c.
 „ 26, 7th line from the top, for *eux-là*, read—*Ceux-là*.
 „ 34, 16th line from the bottom. Note.—*Après-midi* is both masculine and feminine.
 „ 35, 3d line from the top, for *most part*, read—*the most part*.
 „ 104, for *étant*, read—*étant*.
 „ 116, 8th line from the top, for *nous finimes*, read—*nous finîmes*.
 „ 131, 19th line from the top, for *vous vous promènèz*, read—*vous vous promenez*.
 „ 167, 15th line from the top, for *ie suis*, &c., read—*Je suis*, &c.
 „ 348, 12th line from the top, for *infuitive*, read—*infinitive*.
 „ 367, 14th line from the top, for *the Pronoun*, read—*the Pronoun*.
 „ 424, 27th line from the top, for *maréchal, ferrant*, read—*maréchal-ferrant*.
 For *bien-aise*, wherever it occurs, read—*bien aise*.

CONTENTS.

PART I.—ORTHOGRAPHY.

	Page
Of the French Alphabet, and the Names and Sounds of the Letters	1
General Observations on the Sounds of the Letters	2
Of the Sounds of the Vowels and of the Nasal Sounds	<i>ib.</i>
Of Diphthongs	3
Of Consonants and their different Sounds	4, 5, &c.
Of the words in which <i>h</i> is mute	5
Of Accents	13
Of the Acute Accent	<i>ib.</i>
Of the Grave Accent	<i>ib.</i>
Of the Circumflex Accent	14
Of the Apostrophe, Hyphen, Cedilla, Diæresis, Parenthesis, Quotations and Abbreviations	14, 15, &c.
Of Capital Letters and Punctuation	16 & 17
Words that are spelt alike in English and French	18
Difference in the Spelling of the Greek and Roman proper Names in English and French	<i>ib.</i>

PART II.—ETYMOLOGY.

	A General View of the Parts of Speech	19
Lesson I.	Of the Indefinite, Definite, and Partitive Articles	20
Lesson II.	Of the Personal and Possessive Pronouns	22
Lesson III.	Of the Demonstrative Pronouns	24
Lesson IV.	Of the Relative Pronouns	27
Lesson V.	Of the Indefinite Article, <i>un, une, a</i> or <i>an</i>	28
Lesson VI.	Of the Definite Article, <i>le, la, l', les, the</i>	29
Lesson VII.	Of the Partitive Article, <i>du, de la, de l', des, some</i> or <i>any</i>	31
Lesson VIII.	Of Substantives or Nouns	33
	General Rule, with exceptions, for knowing the Genders of Substantives	34
Lesson IX.	Of Number in Substantives	41
	Formation of the Plural of Substantives	<i>ib.</i>
	Plural of Compound Words	42
Lesson X.	Of Adjectives, and Participles adjectively used	43
	Formation of the Feminine of Adjectives and Participles adjectively used	<i>ib.</i>
	Place and Agreement of Adjectives, and Participles adjectively used	45

	Page
Lesson XI.	Plural of Adjectives and Participles adjectively used . . . 46
Lesson XII.	Degrees of Comparison in Adjectives 47
Lesson XIII.	Of Numeral Adjectives 52
	Of the Cardinal Numbers ib.
	Examples of the Cardinal Numbers with the Word <i>fois</i> , time 56
Lesson XIV.	Of the Ordinal Numbers ib.
	Examples of the Ordinal Numbers with the Word <i>fois</i> , time 57
Lesson XV.	Of Pronouns 60
	Of the Personal Pronouns ib.
	Of the Personal Pronouns which fill the Place of the Nominative or Subject of the Verb 61
Lesson XVI.	Of the Personal Pronouns <i>me, thee, him, her, it, us, ye</i> or <i>you</i> , and <i>them</i> , which are used as Objects of the Verb . . . 63
Lesson XVII.	Of Adjective Pronouns 67
	Of the Conjunctive Possessive Pronouns 68
	Of the Relative Possessive Pronouns 69
Lesson XVIII.	Of the Demonstrative Pronouns 71
Lesson XIX.	Of the Relative Pronouns 74
	Repetition of the Relative Pronouns 78
Lesson XX.	Of the Indefinite Pronouns 80
Lesson XXI.	Of Verbs 85
	Of Number and Persons in Verbs 86
	Of Moods and the Tenses or Times ib. & 87
	Of Conjugations ib.
	Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb <i>avoir</i> , affirmatively . . 88
	Cases in which the Imperfect and Preterit Definite of the Indicative are used in French 89, 90 & 91
	Conjugation of the Verb <i>avoir</i> , negatively 93 & 94
	Conjugation of the same interrogatively 97
	Conjugation of the same interrogatively and negatively . . 99
	Conjugation of <i>y avoir</i> , to be there 102
	Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb <i>être</i> , to Be 104
	Of the Regular Conjugations 107
	First Conjugation: <i>parler</i> , to Speak, with its additional Tenses ib. and 108
	Particular Observations on the Verbs which terminate in the Present of the Infinitive Mood in <i>ayer, eyer, oyer,</i> <i>uyer, &c.</i> 112
	Second Conjugation: <i>finir</i> , to finish 114
	Third Conjugation: <i>recevoir</i> , to receive 118 & 119
	Fourth Conjugation: <i>entendre</i> , to hear, to understand. . . 122
	Manner of finding the different Tenses and Persons of Regular Verbs from the knowledge of the Infinitive . . 127
	Of Reflective Verbs 130
	First Conjugation of Reflective Verbs: <i>se promener</i> , to walk 131
	Second Conjugation of Reflective Verbs: <i>se réjouir</i> , to rejoice 135
	Third Conjugation of Reflective Verbs: <i>s'apercevoir</i> , to perceive 139
	Fourth Conjugation of Reflective Verbs: <i>se rendre</i> , to surrender 143
	Of Reflective Unipersonal Verbs 147

	Page
Conjugation of the Reflective Unipersonal Verb <i>se vendre</i> , to sell	148
A list of Verbs which, though not admitting in English the Pronouns <i>one's self, myself, thyself, &c.</i> are never- theless Reflective in French	150
Of Irregular and Defective Verbs	152
Irregular Verbs of the First Conjugation:— <i>aller</i> , to go; <i>s'en aller</i> , to go away, &c.	<i>ib.</i>
Observations on <i>être</i> , <i>allé</i> , &c. often incorrectly used in- stead of <i>avoir</i> , <i>été</i> , &c.	155
Conjugation of the Reflective Verb <i>s'en aller</i> , to go away .	156
Conjugation of <i>envoyer</i> , to send	159
Irregular Verbs of the Second Conjugation	160
Irregular Verbs of the Third Conjugation	174
Irregular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation	180
Of Unipersonal Verbs	198
Unipersonal Verbs of the First Conjugation	<i>ib.</i>
Unipersonal Verbs of the Second and Third Conjugations	199 & 200
Unipersonal Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation	202
Of Negations and Interrogations	203
Distinction between <i>pas</i> and <i>point</i>	<i>ib.</i>
Lesson XXII. Cases in which <i>ne</i> is used before a Verb in French without <i>pas</i> or <i>point</i> after it	207
Lesson XXIII. Of Interrogations	210
Lesson XXIV. Of Adverbs	214
Lesson XXV. Place of Adverbs in the Sentence	<i>ib.</i>
Lesson XXVI. Of Prepositions	216
Of the Place and Repetition of Prepositions	219
Lesson XXVII. Of Conjunctions	222
What Tenses must be used after <i>si</i> , (if, whether)	<i>ib.</i>
Of Interjections	224
Lesson XXVIII. Of the French Idioms	226
Cases in which the different Tenses of the Verb <i>to be</i> are expressed in French by those of <i>avoir</i>	<i>ib.</i>
Lesson XXIX. Cases in which the Tenses of <i>to be</i> are expressed in French by those of <i>y avoir</i>	228
Lesson XXX. Cases in which the Tenses of the Verbs <i>to be</i> and <i>to do</i> are expressed in French by those of the Verbs <i>faire, se porter, and en être</i>	230
Lesson XXXI. Cases in which the different Tenses of the Verb <i>to be</i> , being preceded by <i>it</i> , are expressed in French by <i>il est, il était, il sera, &c.</i> and by <i>c'est, c'était, ce sera, &c.</i>	232
Lesson XXXII. <i>Avoir mal</i> —à, au, à la, à l', or aux	235
Lesson XXXIII. Of the Verb <i>must</i> , expressed in French by <i>il faut, il fallait, il faudra, &c.</i>	236
Lesson XXXIV. Of the Defective Verbs <i>may, will, would, can, shall, should, could, might and ought</i>	239

PART III.—SYNTAX.

Lesson XXXV. Of Syntax	242
Cases in which the Article is used in French	<i>ib.</i>

	Page
Lesson XXXVI.	Cases in which there is no Article used in French . . . 247
Lesson XXXVII.	Continuation of the Cases in which there is no Article used in French 252
Lesson XXXVIII.	Of substantives 256
	Of the Possessive Case and Compound Words . . . 257
Lesson XXXIX.	Of Adjectives and Participles adjectively used . . . 260
	Agreement of Adjectives, and Participles adjectively used, with their respective Substantives in French . . . <i>ib.</i>
Lesson XL.	Of the Place of Adjectives 264
	Observations on some Adjectives which have a different Meaning, according as they precede or follow their re- spective Substantives <i>ib.</i>
Lesson XLI.	Of the Government of Adjectives 267
	A List of Adjectives which govern <i>à</i> , or <i>au</i> , <i>à la</i> , <i>à l'</i> , or <i>aux</i> , before the succeeding word which depends on them <i>ib.</i>
	A List of Adjectives which govern <i>de</i> , or <i>du</i> , <i>de la</i> , <i>de l'</i> , or <i>des</i> , before the next word depending on them . . . <i>ib.</i>
	General Observations on several Adjectives and Participles which, according to the sense in which they are used, govern different Prepositions before their Object . . . 268
Lesson XLII.	Of the Adjectives of Dimension <i>high, wide, broad, &c.</i> . . 273
Lesson XLIII.	Of Comparatives 275
Lesson XLIV.	Observations on the Pronouns <i>lui, elle, and eux</i> . . . 277
Lesson XLV.	Of the Supplementary Pronouns <i>le, la, l', les</i> . . . 279
Lesson XLVI.	Of the Pronouns <i>myself, thyself, himself, herself, &c.</i> . . 281
Lesson XLVII.	General Order in which the Pronouns come before the Verb or its Auxiliary in French 283
Lesson XLVIII.	Repetition of the Personal Pronouns 288
Lesson XLIX.	Particular Observations on the Possessive Pronouns <i>my, thy, his, her, our, your, their, and mine, thine, his,</i> <i>hers, &c.</i> 290 & 291
Lesson L.	Cases in which <i>its</i> is expressed in French by <i>son, sa, ses,</i> and <i>en</i> 294
Lesson LI.	Particular Observations on the Demonstrative Pronouns . 296
Lesson LII.	Particular Observations on the Relative Pronouns . . . 302
Lesson LIII.	Of the Indefinite Pronouns 306
Lesson LIV.	Of Verbs and of the Subject or Nominative of the Verb . 322
	Of the Verb's agreement with its Nominative or Subject. <i>ib.</i>
	Place of the Subject or Nominative of the Verb . . . 326
Lesson LV.	Of the Object or Regimen of Verbs 329
	When <i>de</i> or <i>par</i> is to be used after Passive Verbs . . . 330
	Place of the Object or Regimen of Verbs, when it is a Noun or a Verb 331
Lesson LVI.	Of the different Prepositions which the Verbs govern . . 335
	Cases in which the Preposition <i>pour</i> or <i>afin de</i> is used before a Verb in the Present of the Infinitive Mood in French 353
Lesson LVII.	Of the Subjunctive and the Cases in which it is required . 355
	What Tenses of the Subjunctive must be used . . . 362
Lesson LVIII.	Of the Present Participle and Verbal Adjective . . . 366
Lesson LIX.	Of the Past Participle and the Cases in which it is de- clinable and indeclinable 370

PART IV.—PROSODY.

Lesson LX.

	Page
Of Prosody	378
Of Accent	<i>ib.</i>
Of Quantity, and General Rules on Quantity	<i>ib.</i> & 379
A List of French <i>Homonymes</i>	380
Of Emphasis, Pauses, and Tones	381 & 382
Of French Versification	<i>ib.</i>
Of the Number of Syllables in Verses	<i>ib.</i>
Of Cæsura and Hemistic	384
Of Rhyme	<i>ib.</i>
Difference between rich and sufficient Rhymes	385
Arrangement of the Rhymes together	386
Of the expressions which cannot be admitted into Poetry	387
Of the Syllables which cannot enter into a Verse, or—of the <i>Hiatus</i> and <i>Elision</i>	388
Of Licences allowed in French Poetry	<i>ib.</i>
Of the Transpositions of Words	<i>ib.</i>
Of the Letters which can be dropped in some Words	389
Of the Expressions belonging to Poetry	<i>ib.</i>
Of Verses belonging to the different sorts of Poetry	<i>ib.</i>
Of Stanzas and Idyls	390 & 391
Of Fables, Epigrams, and Madrigals	392
Of Impromptus, Enigmas, Inscriptions, Epigraphs, Epi- taphs, Distichs, Acrostics, Sonnets, and Rondeaux	393, 394, & 395
Manner of reading French Poetry	396
Manner of composing French Verses	<i>ib.</i>
Of Grammatical Analysis	398
A Vocabulary	402
A List of some of the ancient and modern Names of the most remarkable Nations, Empires, Kingdoms, Pro- vinces, Towns, Mountains, Islands, Straits, Rivers, &c. that are not spelt alike in French and English	426
A List of Adjectives and Participles	430
A List of Verbs	442
A List of Adverbs and Adverbial Expressions	464
A List of Prepositions	470
A List of Conjunctions	472
Familiar Sentences	473
A Journey from Calais to Paris	485
Models of Notes and Cards of Invitation, Ceremony, and Thanks	489
Forms of Bills of Exchange and Promissory Notes	492
Models of Receipts	493
Tables of the respective value of the French and English Coins	494
1. A Table of the value of French <i>sous</i> and <i>centimes</i> , with reference to English pence and half-pence, up to 1 <i>franc</i>	<i>ib.</i>
2. A Table of the value of French <i>francs</i> , with reference to English pence and shillings, up to 1 pound	495
Recommendations of “ <i>The Speaking French Grammar and Introductory Book to ditto</i> ”	496

J. V. DOUVILLE'S WORKS

ON THE

FRENCH LANGUAGE.

A NEW FRENCH GRAMMAR, for the use of English Students desirous of rapidly acquiring the means of speaking the French language with fluency and purity. 2 vols. 8vo. London, 1824. 18s.

THE SPEAKING FRENCH GRAMMAR, forming a series of sixty explanatory lessons, with colloquial essays, particularly calculated to render the *speaking of French* easy to English persons: to which is added a comprehensive and classified vocabulary, with a collection of familiar phrases, and various models of notes, bills of exchange, and receipts; and also two tables of the respective value of the French and English coins. The fifth edition, corrected and enlarged. 1 vol. 8vo. London and Paris, 1835. 7s. 6d.

A KEY TO THE ESSAYS of the *Speaking French Grammar*, to facilitate the acquirement of French to those persons who may be precluded from the assistance of a master. The fifth edition. London and Paris, 1835. 3s. 6d.

THE CHILDREN'S INTRODUCTORY BOOK to the French language, in a series of *Nineteen easy and progressive Lessons*, comprising the principal rules of the French language, with colloquial essays in illustration of the rules; and also reading lessons in French, of which the most difficult words are given in English at the bottom of the page. London, 1832. 3s. 6d.

A KEY TO THE ESSAYS AND READING LESSONS of the Children's Introductory Book to the French Language. London, 1832. 1s. 6d.

N.B.—THE CHILDREN'S INTRODUCTORY BOOK to the French Language will also be found an excellent little work for grown-up persons. See the notices at the end of this Grammar, page 499 and following.

J. V. DOUVILLE'S

Speaking

FRENCH GRAMMAR.

FRENCH GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing the French language with propriety.

It is divided into four parts,—Orthography, Etymology, Syntax, and Prosody.

PART THE FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

Orthography teaches the nature and power of letters, the manner of pronouncing them, and the proper method of spelling words.

The letters of the French alphabet are twenty-five in number, namely:

A B C D E F G H I J K L M
N O P Q R S T U V X Y Z;

which, according to their alphabetical names, are called:

A B C D E F G H I J K L M
ah, bay, say, day, ay, eff, jay, ahsh, ee, jee, kah, ell, emm,
N O P Q R S T U V X Y Z;
enn, o, pay, ku, air, ess, tay, u, vay, icks, ee-grec, zed;

but which, when pronounced with more immediate reference to their proper sounds in words, are as follows:

A	.....ah.....	as in.....	âge.
B	.....be.....	as in.....	besoin.
C	.....ke.....	as in.....	cabane.
D	.....de.....	as in.....	demoiselle.
E	.....eu.....	as in.....	Europe.
F	.....fe.....	as in.....	fenêtre.
G	.....gue.....	as in.....	guenille.
H	.....he.....	as in.....	heurter.
I	.....i.....	as in.....	ici.
J	.....je.....	as in.....	jeune.
K	.....ke.....	as in.....	kermès.
L	.....le.....	as in.....	leçon.
M	.....me.....	as in.....	mener.
N	.....ne.....	as in.....	neuf.
O	.....o.....	as in.....	oracle.
P	.....pe.....	as in.....	petit.
Q	.....ke.....	as in.....	querelle.
R	.....re.....	as in.....	recherche.
S	.....se.....	as in.....	semaine.
T	.....te.....	as in.....	tenir.
U	.....u.....	as in.....	usure.
V	.....ve.....	as in.....	venir.
X	.....kse.....	as in.....	axe.
Y	.....i.....	as in.....	yeux.
Z	.....ze.....	as in.....	zéphyr.

Letters are divided into vowels and consonants. The vowels are *A, E, I, O, U,* and *Y*; all the other letters are consonants.

General Observations on the Sounds of the Letters.

ARTICLE I.

Of the Vowels.

In the different gradations of sound, which vowels produce in different words, and which can only be learnt by practice, two general ones are distinguished: the *slender sound*, as given in the alphabet, and a longer one, which, though generally marked with the circumflex accent, is in several words not so distinguished, and must, consequently, be acquired by practice.

Examples of the Sounds of the Vowels.

1. A is short.....as in.....*amateur*;...and long.....as in.....*âge*.
2. I is short.....as in.....*titre*;and long.....as in.....*sire*.
3. O is short.....as in.....*oracle*; ...and long.....as in.....*ôler*.
4. U is short.....as in.....*utile*;and long.....as in.....*flûte*.

The letter *e* has three sensibly different sounds: the *open* or *long*, the *acute*, and the *obtuse* or *short*.

The *open* or *long* is in some words marked with the *grave*, and in others with the *circumflex accent*: as—*succès, même*; but, in many other words, it has no such characteristic: thus—*chef*. The cases, therefore, in which *e* is so pronounced, can only be known by use and observation.

The *acute sound* is marked with the acute accent: thus—*vérité, prémédité*.

The *obtuse* or *short e*, being but faintly heard when pronounced, has no mark or accent: as in *homme, je redemande*; &c.

Of the Nasal Sounds.

When the vowels *a, e, i, o, u*, come before the consonants *m* and *n*, they form *nasal sounds*: this, however, only occurs when *m* and *n* are at the end of words, or when, being in the body of a word, they are followed by any other consonant than *m* or *n*; for two *m*'s or two *n*'s, in several instances, have no nasal sound, although in some others they retain it, as in *ennui, ennuyer, emmener*, in which *m* and *n*, though followed by another *m* and *n*, preserve their nasal sound.

M and *n*, at the end of foreign words, have no nasal sound, although they may be preceded by a vowel: thus *Jérusalem, amen*, are pronounced with the natural sound of *m* and *n*.

The termination *ENT*, in the third person plural of verbs, has no nasal sound: thus—*ils aiment, ils parlèrent*, are pronounced—*il* or *i zaimé, il parlère*, and not *il zaiman, il palèran*.

A, e, i, o, u, admitting various combinations before *m* and *n*, form different nasal sounds, of which the following are the principal ones. They are pronounced as follows:

Am.....	<i>an</i>	.....as in	.....	<i>ambassadeur</i> .
Aim	<i>ein</i>	.....as in	.....	<i>faim</i> .
Em.....	<i>en</i>	.....as in	.....	<i>embrasser</i> .
Im	<i>ein</i>	.....as in	.....	<i>imbécile</i> .
Om.....	<i>on</i>	.....as in	.....	<i>ombre</i> .
Um	<i>eun</i>	.....as in	.....	<i>humble</i> .
An	<i>an</i>	.....as in	.....	<i>ancien</i> .
Ain.....	<i>ein</i>	.....as in	.....	<i>pain</i> .
Ean	<i>an</i>	.....as in	.....	<i>Jean</i> .
En	<i>an</i>	.....as in	.....	<i>ennui</i> .

Ein.....	ein	.....	as in	.....	sein.
Eun	un	.....	as in	.....	à jeun.
Eon'	on	.....	as in	.....	pigeon.
Ien.....	ien	.....	as in	.....	le mien.
On	on	.....	as in	.....	oncle.
Un.....	un	.....	as in	.....	défunt.

Of Diphthongs.

A *diphthong* is the union of two or more vowels in the same syllable, which, when pronounced, convey to the ear a double sound, although they be uttered with a single emission of the voice, as in the word *Dieu*, in which the sounds of *i* and *eu* are distinctly heard. The following are the principal diphthongs :

Eoi	as in	.....	villageois.
Ia.....	as in	.....	diacre, diable.
Ié.....	as in	.....	pied.
Iè.....	as in	.....	lumière.
Ieu	as in	.....	Dieu.
Io.....	as in	.....	pioche.
Oi	as in	.....	loi.
Ouai	as in	.....	ouais !
Oue	as in	.....	ouest.
Oin	as in	.....	soin.
Ouin	as in	.....	baragouin.
Ouan	as in	.....	louange.
Oui	as in	.....	Louis.
Ui	as in	.....	lui.
Uai	as in	.....	suaire.

Observe.—A diphthong must not be confounded with the union of two or more vowels in the same syllable, producing a single sound : as—*ai, ae, aie, au, eai, ei, ey, ao, eau, eo, ie, eu, œu*, and *ue*, in the following words :

1. *Ai*, in the preterite and future of verbs, is pronounced like *é* acute : thus—*j'ai, je chantai, je lirai*, are pronounced—*jé, je chanté, je livré*.

Ai is also sounded like *è* open :—1. In the terminations of the imperfect and conditional of verbs : as—*j'avais, j'aimais, je dirais*. 2. In the words *Anglais, Écossais, Français, Groënlandais, Hollandais, Irlandais, Lyonnais, Polonais*, and some others. 3. In the middle of words : as—*maître, maison, &c.* ; which are pronounced as if they were spelt *j'avès, j'aimès, je dirès, Anglès, Écossès, Françès, Groëntandès, Holandès, Irlandès, Lyonnès, Polonès, mètre, mèsou, &c.*

In *faisant* and the first syllables of *faisais, faisait, faisons, faisiez, faisaient*, *ai* takes the sound of *e* obtuse or short : as—*fesant, fesais, &c.* ; but it is pronounced like *a* in *douairière* : thus—*douairière*.

2. *Aie, eai, ei*, in the words *haie, démangeaison, seigneur*, and some others, are pronounced like *è* open : thus—*hè, démanjèzon, sègneur*.

3. *Ae* in *Caën* (ville) is pronounced as if *Caën* were spelt without *e* : thus—*Can*.

4. *Ao* in *paon, paonne, faon, Laon*, (ville,) is pronounced as if there were no *o* in these words : thus—*pan, pane, fan, Lan* ; but in *Août, Aoriste, Sabne, taon*, (poisson,) *o* alone is sounded, the *a* being mute : as—*ou, oriste, sône, tōn* ; but in *aqûlé*, participle of the verb *aoûter*, to ripen, both *a* and *o* are pronounced.

5. *Au* and *eau*, at the end of words, are sounded like *o* long : thus—*aloyau, bateau*, are pronounced *aloyō, batō*.

6. *Ie* is pronounced like *i*, and *ue* like *u*, in the different tenses and persons of the verbs which end in *ier* and *uer* in the present of the infinitive : thus—*je prie, je prierai, je prierais*, and *je remue, je remuerai, je remuera*, are pronounced—*je pri, je prirai, je prirais* ; and *je remu, je remurai, je remurais* ; &c.

7. *Eu* is sounded like *u*, in *j'eus, tu eus, il eut* ; *nous eûmes, vous eûtes, ils eurent* ;

que j'eusse, &c.; but it retains its natural sound *eu*, in *Europe*, *Euridice*, *Eucharistie*, *heureux*, *heureuse*, *St. Eustache*.

8. *Œ* takes the sound of *eu*, in *sœur*, *mœurs*, *œuf*.

9. *Geu*, *geo*, *geure*, without any accent over the *e* after *g*, are pronounced—*ja*, *jô*, *jure*.—*Il jûgea*; *Georges*, *géblier*, *gagueure*, must therefore be pronounced—*il juja*, *jorge*, *jôlier*, *gajure*.

ARTICLE II.

Of Consonants.

As Consonants do not always have the same pronunciation as that which is marked in the alphabet, the pupil's attention is directed to the following observations.

B.

B preserves its natural sound *b*, except at the end of the words *plomb* and *à plomb*, in which it is not heard. If it be doubled in a word, only one is pronounced: as—*abbé*, *sabbat*—pronounced *abé*, *saba*.

C.

C, besides its natural sound *k*, has the sound of *s*, in the beginning and middle of words, before *e* or *i*: thus—*ceci*, *cela*, are pronounced *sesi*, *sela*. *C* is likewise sounded *s*, before *a*, *o*, and *u*, when a cedilla is placed under it: as—*façade*, *garçon*, *reçu*,—pronounced—*fasade*, *garson*, *resu*.

C is pronounced *gue*, in *second*, *secondement*, *seconder*: thus—*segon*, *secondman*, *segonder*.

When *c* comes before *q* in the middle of words, it is not sounded: *acquérir* is, therefore, pronounced *aquérir*.

When *c* is doubled in the middle of words, only one is pronounced, if *e* or *i* does not immediately follow: thus—*accabler*, *accomplir*, *accuser*, are pronounced—*acabler*, *acomplir*, *acuser*; but if *c* be doubled before *e* or *i*, the first *c* takes the sound of *k*, and the second that of *s*: thus—*accident*, *accès*, &c., are pronounced *aksidan*, *aksès*.

C is mute in *arsenic*, *broc*, *croc*, *clerc*, *échecs*, (*jeu*), *estomac*, *porc*, *tabac*, these words being pronounced—*arseni*, *bro*, *cro*, *cler*, *éché*, *estoma*, *por*, *taba*; but *c* retains the sound *k*, in—*avec*, *bec*, *échec*, (*perte*), and also in *donc* in the beginning of a sentence, or in the middle of it, when coming before a vowel or an *h* mute, or even before a consonant, if a strong passion be expressed: as—*votre père est dans la misère, donc vous devez l'aider*;—*votre ami est donc arrivé?*—*jusques à quand prétendrez-vous donc me dicter des lois?* &c. which are pronounced—*votre père est dans la misère, donk vous devez l'aider*;—*votrami est donkarivé*;—*jusque zà quand prétendrez-vous donk me dicter des lois?*—In other cases, *c* is not heard in *donc*: as *allons donc nous promener*; *quand viendrez-vous donc?*—pronounced—*allons don nous promèner*; *quand viendrez-vous don?*

D.

D has its natural sound *d*, in the beginning of words, as also in the middle, when it comes before a consonant:—as *dame*, *admission*.

If *d* be doubled in a word, only one *d* is pronounced:—except in *addition*, *reddition*, and *adduction*, in which both are heard.

When an adjective terminates with *d*, and is used before a substantive, which begins with a vowel or *h* mute, *d* is pronounced like *t*, and joined to it in pronun-

ciation: as—*un grand acteur*; *un grand homme*; which are pronounced *un gran-
l'acteur*; *un gran-t'omm*.

D, at the end of the third person singular of the present of the indicative of verbs, is also pronounced *t*, before the pronouns *il*, *elle*, or *on*, and is joined to them in pronunciation: as—*entend-il?* *coud-elle bien?* *répond-on ainsi?* pronounced—*enten-t-il?* *cou-telle bien?* *répon-ton ainsi?*

At the end of the proper names, *David*, *Joad*, *Obed*; as also in *sud*, (a point of the compass,) *d* preserves its natural sound *d*.

In other cases, *d* is usually silent at the end of words: as—*quand viendrez-vous?* pronounced—*kan viendrez-vou?*

F.

F generally preserves its natural sound *f*, in the beginning and middle of words, as also at the end, when they are used by themselves in the singular number: as—*feu*, *confiance*, *bœuf*, *œuf*, *neuf*; but it is silent in the plurals *bœufs*, *œufs*, *neufs*, these words being pronounced *bœū*, *œū*, *neū*.

F in *neuf* (noun of number) takes the sound of *v*, when *neuf* occurs before a substantive which begins with a vowel or *h* mute: as—*neuf ans*, *neuf hommes*,—pronounced *neu-vân*, *neu-vomm*; but, when *neuf* comes before a word beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated, the *f* is mute: thus—*neuf chevaux* is pronounced *neu-shevō*.

F is always mute in *clef*, *cerf*, *éteuf*: these words being pronounced *clé*, *cer*, *éteu*, whether in the singular or plural.

When *f* is doubled in the middle of words, only one is pronounced: thus—*officier*, *offrir*, *affaiblir*, are pronounced *oficié*, *ofrir*, *afailir*.

G.

G is sounded *gue*, in the beginning and middle of words, when followed by the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, or the consonants *d*, *h*, *l*, *m*, *r*: as in *gâteau*, *gosier*, *aigu*, *Magdebourg*, *glorieux*, *augmenter*, *agréable*; but, in *gangrène*, it is pronounced *k*, thus—*kangrène*. When it comes before *e* or *i*, it takes the accidental sound *j*: thus—*gelée*, *gibier*, are pronounced *jelée*, *jibier*.

When *g* is followed by *n* in the middle of words, it has the liquid sound *gn*: as in—*agneau*, *assignation*, *assigner*, *compagnie*, *compagnon*, *signer*, &c.; but in *imprégnation*, *stagnation*, and a few others,—*g* and *n* retain their natural sound *gue*, and *n*: thus—*impreg-nation*, *stag-nation*, &c.

Signet is pronounced *sinet*.

If *g* be doubled in a word, only one *g* is heard: except in *suggérer*, and in any other word, in which the second *g* is followed by *e* marked with an acute accent, thus—(*é*), in which case the first *g* is pronounced *gue*, and the second *j*: thus—*sugjérer*.

G is always mute in *coing*, *poing*, *étang*, *faubourg*, *hareng*, *legs*, *doigt*, *vingt*, *seing*, by whatever word they may be followed.

G, at the end of the foreign names *Agag*, *Doëg*, retains its natural sound *gue*.—In *bourg*, it is pronounced *k*, thus—*bourk*.

G final is mute in all other words followed by a word beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated: thus—*rung noble* is pronounced *ran noble*; but *g* final is sounded like *k* on the next word, when this begins with a vowel or *h* mute: as—*rang honorable*; *suer sang et eau*; which are pronounced *ran-konorable*; *suer san-ké-eau*.

H.

H is pronounced with its natural aspirated sound *he*, at the beginning of words, except in the following and their derivatives, in which it is mute.

Habile,	Haleine,	Héberger,	Héliotrope,
Habit,	Hameçon,	Hébété,	Hématologie,
Habiter,	Harmonie,	Hécatombe,	Hémisphère,
Habitude,	Hebdomadaire,	Hégire,	Hémistiche,

Hémorrhagie,	Hier,	Horloge,	Humble,
Herbe,	Hiéroglyphe,	Horreur,	Humecter,
Herbage,	Hirondelle,	Horrible,	Humeur,
Hérésie,	Histoire,	Horoscope,	Humidité,
Hériter,	Histrion,	Hospice,	Humilité,
Hermite,	Hiver,	Hospitalier,	Hyacinthe,
Hermine	Holocauste,	Hostie,	Hydre,
Héroïne,	Homélie,	Hostilité,	Hydromel,
Héroïque,	Homicide,	Hôte,	Hydropisie,
Héroïsme,	Hommage,	Hôtel,	Hydrophobie,
Hésiter,	Homogène,	Hôtellerie,	Hymen,
Hétérodoxe,	Homme,	Hôtesse,	Hymne,
Hétérogène,	Honnête,	Huile,	Hyperbole,
Heure,	Honneur,	Huissier,	Hypocrisie,
Heureux,	Hôpital,	Huitre,	Hypothèse,
Hexagone,	Horizon,	Humain, e,	Hypothèque.
Hexamètre,			

H is likewise mute, at the beginning of proper names of towns, countries, &c.; except in *Hollande*, *Hongrie*, *Hainaut*, *Hambourg*, and a few others, in which it is fully pronounced *h*: but in the sentences—*de la toile d'Hollande*; *du fromage d'Hollande*; *eau de la reine d'Hongrie*; the *h* is not pronounced.

Ch must be sounded like *sh* in English: thus—*chapeau*, *cheval*, *chose*, *chute*, are pronounced *shapō*, *sheval*, *shōze*, *shute*.

Ch, at the end of words, is not, however, usually heard: thus—*almanach* is pronounced *almana*.

J. and K.

J and *K* always have their natural sound *je* and *k*.

L.

L generally preserves its natural sound *l*, in the beginning, middle, and at the end of words: as—*leçon*, *parler*, *fil*.

When *l* is doubled in the middle of words, and is preceded by any other vowel than *i*, only one *l* is sounded: thus—*collège*, *collation*, *collationner*, (*repas*,) &c.—are pronounced *colége*, *colacion*, *colacionè*; but *Apollon*, *allusion*, *allégorie*, *belligérant*, *belliqueux*, *collaborateur*, *constellation*, *ellébore*, *folliculaire*, *gallican*, *gallicisme*, *oscillation*, *palladium*, *rebellion*, *solliciter*, *syllogisme*, *tabellion*, *collation*, *collationner* (to collate), *collégial*, and their derivatives, are pronounced with the full sound of both the *l*'s.

When *l* is doubled and preceded by *i* in the middle of words, as in—*bataille*, *bouteille*, *fille*, *anguille*, *paille*, *pillage*, &c., it has a liquid sound, much resembling that of double *l* in the English word *brilliant*, or of *gl* in *seraglio*: except *Gille*, *ville*, *mille*, with their derivatives, and all words beginning with *ill*: as *illégitime*, *illustre*, *illusion*, &c., in which the two *l*'s have their natural sound *l*.

A single *l*, at the end of words, has likewise a liquid sound, when it is preceded by *i*: as in *périd*, *écueil*, *orgueil*, *travail*, *sommeil*, *soleil*, &c.: except *baril*, *chenil*, *coutil*, *cul*, *fournil*, *fusil*, *gril*, *nombril*, *outil*, *persil*, *soûl*, *sourcil*, in which *l* is not sounded. *Fil*, *nil*, and *mil*, (noun of number,) and almost all adjectives ending with *il*, must likewise be excepted, as the *l* is pronounced with its natural sound *l*.

M.

M always preserves its natural sound *m*, in the beginning of words, as in—*mer*, *mener*.

In the middle of words, *m* has the nasal sound of *n*, when it is preceded by a vowel and followed by a consonant: as—*compte*, *compler*, *prompt*—which are pronounced *conte*, *conter*, *pron*.

When *m* occurs at the end of a word, and is preceded by a vowel, it takes the sound of *n*: thus—*nom*, *pronom*, *fum*, *parfum*, are pronounced *non*, *pronon*, *fein*,

parfum. At the end of foreign names, *m* retains its natural sound *m*: as in *Priam*, *Amsterdam*, *Rotterdam*, &c.; but *Adam* and *Absalom* are pronounced *Adan*, *Absalon*.

When *m* is doubled in the middle of words, only one *m* is sounded, which takes its natural sound *m*: thus—*commode*, *commis*, *commissaire*, *grammaire*, *grammairien*, are pronounced *comode*, *comis*, *comisaire*, *gramaire*, *gramairien*; but *Ammon*, *Emmanuel*, *commensurable*, *commémoration*, *grammatical*, *commotion*, *commuer*, and their derivatives, as also all words beginning with *imm*: as *immense*, *immédiatement*, must be excepted, as the two *m*'s preserve each their natural sound *m*.

N.

N usually has the sound of *n*, in the beginning and middle of words, when it is followed by a vowel: as in—*nourrice*, *mener*, &c.; but *enivrer*, *enorgueillir*, and their derivatives, must be excepted, these being pronounced as if spelt with two *n*'s, the first having the nasal sound, and the second the natural one *n*: thus—*anivrer*, *an-norgueillir*.

When *n* is doubled in the middle of words, only one *n* is pronounced, which retains its natural sound *n*; but the first syllable of the word becomes short: as—*anneau*, *année*, *innocence*; pronounced—*ano*, *anée*, *inocence*. From this rule, must be excepted *ennui*, *ennuyer*, *ennoblir*, in which the two *n*'s are sounded, the first with the nasal sound, and the second with the natural one: thus—*an-nui*, *an-nuyer*, *an-noblir*. In *Annales*, *annexes*, *inné*, *innové*, *innomé*, *Cincinnatus*, *Linnée*, *Porsenna*, both the *n*'s retain their natural sound *n*.

Solennel, *hennir*, *hennisement*, are pronounced *solanel*, *hanir*, *hanisseman*.

N, followed in a word by any other consonant than *n*, always has a nasal sound: as in *encre*, *ingrédient*, &c.

N final, preceded by a vowel, is always pronounced with the nasal sound, in a word which is either used by itself, or which comes before another word beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated: as in *passion*, *ambition*, *nation célèbre*, &c. In foreign words, it is pronounced with its natural sound *n*: as in—*Amen*, *Eden*, *Hymen*, &c.

But when *n* comes at the end of a word, before another word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, it is necessary, besides its being pronounced with its nasal sound, that another *n* should be added in pronunciation to the beginning of the next word, in all the following cases:—

1. At the end of adjectives immediately followed by their respective substantives: thus—*ancien ami*, *bon homme*, are pronounced *ancien-nami*, *bon-n'omm*; but *n*, at the end of adjectives which are followed by any other word than their respective substantives, as likewise at the end of all substantives, is pronounced with its nasal sound only, without the additional *n* to the next word, even when this begins with a vowel or *h* mute: thus—*passion aveugle*; *cela est certain et indubitable*, are pronounced with the nasal sound only; and not *passion-naveugle*; *cela est certain-net indubitable*.

2. After the possessive pronouns *mon*, *ton*, *son*: as—*mon ame*; *mon intime ami*; pronounced *mo-name*, *mo-ninti-mami*.

3. At the end of *un*, coming before a substantive or an adjective, which it particularises:—as *un homme*, *un ancien ami*, pronounced *un-n'omm*, *un-nancien-nami*; but *n* in *un*, before any other word, is pronounced with its nasal sound only: as—*il y en eut un assez hardi*; and not *il y en eut un-nassez hardi*.

4. In *on*, coming before a verb affirmatively used: as *on aime*, *on honorera*, pronounced *on-naim*, *on-n'onorera*; but, in interrogative sentences, *on* coming after the verb or its auxiliary, has merely its nasal sound: as—*a-t-on eu soin de lui?* and not *a-t-on-nu soin de lui?*

5. In *en*, followed by a word with which it is immediately connected by the sense: as—*en Italie*; *en un moment*; *je n'en ai point*; &c.—pronounced *en-nitalie*, *en-nun moman*, *je n'en-n'ai poin*; but if *en* be not strictly connected with the next word, the nasal sound only should then be used: as—*donnez-m'en un peu*; and not—*donnez-*

m'en-nun peu; because we can make a little pause after *en*, which shows that it is not inseparably connected with *un peu*.

6. After *bien* and *rien*, when immediately followed by either an adjective, a verb, or an adverb, which they modify: as—*bien utilement*, *bien honorable*, *bien à propos*, *bien écrire*, *rien à dire*,—pronounced *bien-nutilman*, *bien-n'onorable*, *bien-nà propos*, *bien-nécrire*, *rien-nà dire*, &c.

But when *bien* and *rien* are followed by some other word, or when they are used substantively, they are pronounced with the nasal sound only, without the additional *n* to the next word: as—*il parlait bien et à propos*; *ce bien est à moi*; *ce rien a des attrait*s; *le bien et le mal*; and not—*il parlait bien-net à propos*; *ce bien-nest à moi*; *ce rien-n'a dè-xattrait*s; *le bien-ne-l mal*.

P.

P generally has its natural sound *p*, in the beginning and middle of words, as in—*peuple*, *Septembre*, *accepter*; but it is not pronounced in *laptême*, *Baptiste*, *baptiser*, *baptistaire*, *sept*, *exempt*, *compte*, *compter*, *dompter*, *prompt*, and their derivatives: these words being pronounced as if they were spelt *batême*, *Batiste*, *batiser*, *batistaire*, *set*, *exan*, *conte*, *conter*, *donter*, *pron*; and in general *p* is not pronounced in the majority of words in which it comes between two consonants: except in *contempteur*, *exemption*, *rédemption*, *rédempteur*, in which it is sounded.

When *p* is doubled in the middle of words, there is generally only one pronounced: thus—*apporter*, *appeler*, are pronounced *aporter*, *apeler*.

P final is mute at the end of these words:—*camp*, *champ*, *drap*, *sirap*, *loup*, and in a few others; but it is pronounced in *cap*, and the proper names *Alep*, *Gap*, *Jalep*.

P is likewise pronounced in *beaucoup* and *trop*, when these words are immediately followed by another word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, in which case *p* is joined to the next word in pronunciation: as—*un coup inattendu*; *il aime beaucoup à jouer*;—pronounced *un cou-pinatendu*, *il aime beaucou-pà jouer*; but if *beaucoup* and *trop* come before a word beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated, or if they be used at the end of a sentence, or by themselves, *p* is not then pronounced: as—*j'en ai beaucoup trop*—which is pronounced—*j'en ai beaucou tro*.

Ph is sounded like *f*:—thus *philosophe*, *phrase*, are pronounced *filosof*, *frase*.

Q.

Q preserves its natural sound *k*, in the beginning and middle of words: as in *quenouille*, *acquérir*,—pronounced *kenouille*, *akérir*.

Qu is pronounced *cou*, in *équateur* and *quaker*; *cu*, in *équitation*, *Quinte-Curce*, *Quintilien*; and *k*, in *qualification*, *Quasimodo*, *quadrille*: thus—*écouateur*, *couaker*, *écuitacion*, *Cuintilien*, *Cuinte-Curce*, *kalificacion*, *Kasimodo*, *kadrille*.

Q final is not usually sounded in *cing*, before a word beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated: as—*cing garçons*, *cing cavaliers*,—pronounced with the nasal sound of *n*, thus—*cein garçons*, *cein cavaliers*; but *q* in *cing* retains its natural sound *k* before a substantive or an adjective beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, and is joined to it in pronunciation; as—*cing ans*, *cing hommes*,—pronounced *cein-kuns*, *cein-k'omm*.

Q is also pronounced *k*, in *cing*, used either by itself or at the end of a sentence, or before any other word than a substantive or an adjective, whether it begins with a vowel, an *h* mute or aspirated, or a consonant: as—*trois et deux font cing*; *les cinq pour cent*; &c.—pronounced *troi zet deux font ceink*; *les ceink pour cen*.

Q is mute, in *coq d'Inde*,—this word being pronounced *co-d'Inde*; but, *q* is sounded *k* in *coq*, in any other case.

R.

R always retains its natural sound *r*, in the beginning and middle of words, as in—*règle*, *Mardi*.

When *r* is doubled in the middle of words, only one *r* is sounded, and the preceding vowel is lengthened: thus—*parrain*, *marraine*, *carrusse*, *guerre*, *tonnerre*, *je pourrai*, *je pourrais*, &c. are pronounced—*pārain*, *māraïne*, *cārosse*, *guère*, *tonère*, *je pōurai*, *je pōurais*, &c.

But the two *r*'s are pronounced in *uberration*, *erreur*, *errer*, *erroné*, *abhorrer*; and in the future and conditional of the verbs *acquérir*, *courir*, *mourir*, namely—*j'acquerrai*, *j'acquerrais*; *je courrai*, *je courrais*; *je mourrai*, *je mourrais*; &c. as also in the greatest part of words beginning by *irr*: as—*irrégulier*, *irraisonnable*, *irréligieux*, *irritation*, *irrévocable*, *irréfragable*, &c.

R final is pronounced: 1.—in the monosyllables *cher*, *fer*, *mer*, *or*, *sieur*, &c. 2.—at the termination of polysyllables ending in *er*, when *er* is immediately preceded by *f*, *m*, or *v*: as—*amer*, *enfer*, *hiver*, &c.—3. in the words *cuiller*, *cancer*, and in proper names: as, *Jupiter*, &c.

R is likewise pronounced at the termination of the infinitive of all verbs of the second conjugation: as—*finir*, *partir*, *sortir*, &c. It is also sounded at the end of any other word in *ir* or *eur*: as—*plaisir*, *loisir*, *repentir*, *bonheur*, *honneur*, *siffleur*, &c.

But *r* is not sounded: 1.—in *Monsieur*, which is pronounced *Mocien*. 2.—at the end of polysyllables in *ier*: as—*officier*, *teinturier*, *particulier*, *singulier*, *entier*, &c. 3.—at the end of polysyllables in *er*, when *er* is not immediately preceded by *f*, *m*, or *v*: as—*danger*, *berger*, &c.; which words are pronounced—*officié*, *teinturié*, *particulié*, *singulié*, *entié*, *danjè*, *berjè*, &c.

R is also mute in the termination of the present of the infinitive of verbs of the first conjugation, when they are used either by themselves, or at the end of a sentence, or before words beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated: as, *dites-lui de danser*; *je n'ai pas osé lui parler de cela*; pronounced *dites-lui-d dansè*; *je n'ai pas osé lui parlè-d cela*; but if these verbs come before words beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, the final *r* is slightly pronounced on them: thus—*aimer à danser*; *folâtrer et rire*; *s'amuser à lire*; are pronounced—*aimè-rà-dansè*; *folâtrè-ré rire*; *s'amusè-rà lire*.

S.

S generally retains its natural sound *s*, in the beginning of words: as in *semaine*, *soleil*, *statue*, *scorpion*, &c.

It is likewise pronounced *s*, in the middle of words, when it is preceded or followed by a consonant: as in *absolu*, *converser*, *conseil*, *lorsque*, *puisque*, &c.; but in *Asdrubal*, *Alsace*, *Alsacien*, *balsamine*, *balsamique*, *balsamite*, *presbytère*, *transiger*, *transaction*, *transition*, *transit*, *transitif*, *intransitif*, *transitoire*, and the words in which it comes between two vowels: as in *hésiter*, *misère*, *rose*, &c. it is sounded *z*: thus—*Azdrubal*, *Alzace*, *Alzacien*, *héziter*, *mizère*, *roze*, &c.

S is, however, sounded *s*, in the following words, although coming between two vowels: as—*désuétude*, *monosyllabe*, *monosyllabique*, *parasol*, *polysyllabe*, *préséance*, *présupposer*, *présupposition*, *vraisemblance*; *nous gisons*, *ils gisent*, *il gisait*, *gisant*.

When *s* is doubled in the middle of words, only one *s* is heard, which is pronounced with its natural sound *s*, but very acute: thus—*bossu*, *bissextil*, *desséché*, *desservir*, *essai*, *essieu*, *missel*, *messéant*, *passer*, *poisson*, &c.—are pronounced—*bo-su*, *bi-sextil*, *dé-séché*, *dé-servir*, *é-sai*, *é-sieu*, *mi-sel*, *mé-séan*, *pā-sè*, *poi-son*, &c.

S, at the end of words, is not generally sounded, when these occur either by themselves or at the end of a sentence, or also before other words beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated: thus—*les grandes villes*, is pronounced—*lè gran-d ville*.

But *s* is sounded *z* in the monosyllables *mes*, *tes*, *ses*, *nos*, *vos*, *leurs*, *les*, *ils*, when they are immediately followed by a word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute: as—*mes amis*, *vos intentions*, *ils aiment*, &c.—pronounced—*mè-zamī*, *vō-sintencion*, *il* or *i-zaine*.

It is likewise sounded *z*, at the end of adjectives immediately followed by their

respective substantives, if these begin with a vowel or *h* mute: as—*les grands hommes*; *les bonnes œuvres*; *les grandes actions*;—pronounced—*lè gran-z'omm*, *lè bonne-zœuvre*, *lè grande-zactions*. But, at the end of substantives, followed by their respective adjectives beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, it is optional either to pronounce *s* with the sound *z*, or to omit it: thus—*des personnes habiles*, may be pronounced—*des personn-zabile*, or *des personn-abile*.

S has likewise the same sound *z*, at the termination of the different tenses of verbs, when these come before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute: thus—*dis à mon frère de venir*, is pronounced *di-zà mon frère de venir*.

In *gens*, *Jésus*, *lis*, *plus-que-parfait*, *plus-pétition*, and also in *tous* and *plus* taken substantively: as—*tous pensent*, *je dis plus*, *bien plus*, &c. *s* preserves its natural sound *s*; but it is silent in *Jésus-Christ*, *le sens commun*, *fleur de lis*, and in *plus* and *tous*, followed by a word depending on them, if this begins with a consonant or *h* aspirated: as—*tous les hommes*; *donnez-moi un peu plus de pain*;—pronounced—*tou lè-z'omm*; *donnez-moi un peu plu-d pain*.

S is also pronounced *s*, in *Atlas*, *anus*, *aloès*, *as*, *calus*, *en sus*, *fastus*, *iris*, *mœurs*, *prospectus*, *lapis*, *laps*, *locatis*, (cheval de louage,) *vis*, *vasistas*, and in the words—*Bacchus*, *blocus*, *Chorus*, *Crésus*, *Délos*, *Gil-Blas*, *gratis*, *Pallas*, *Vénus*; but it is mute in *Judas*, *Mathias*, *Thomas*, *Jacques*, and in the words *avis*, *dès que*, *divers*, *os*, *remords*, *tamis*, *tandis que*, *trépas*, and a few others.

T.

T always preserves its natural sound *t*, in the beginning of words: as in—*tenez*, *ténèbres*.

In the middle of words, it is also generally pronounced *t*, when followed by *i*: as in—*amitié*, *chantier*, *entier*, *moitié*, *pitié*, *modestie*, *partie*, *maintien*, *soutien*, *tien*, *tienne*, *nous partions*, *nous mettions*, &c.; but it is pronounced *ce*: 1. in *prophétie*, *ineptie*, *inertie*, *minutie*. 2. in words terminating with *atie*: as—*démocratie*, *primatie*. 3. in words ending in *tial*, *tiel*, *tion*: as—*partial*, *essentiel*, *nation*, &c. with all their derivatives. 4. in proper names in *tien* or *tienne*: as—*Dioclétien*, *Gratien*, *Vénitien*, *Vénitienne*, &c. 5. in the words *satiété*, *insatiable*, *initier*, *balbutier*, *patient*, with their derivatives.

T followed by *i* is, however, pronounced *t*, in words ending in *tial* or *tion*, if *t* be preceded by *s* or *x*: as—*bastion*, *bestial*, *mixture*.

When *t* is doubled in the middle of words, only one *t* is sounded: except in *atticisme*, *attique*, *guttural*, *pittoresque*, in which both the *t*'s are pronounced: thus—*at-ticisme*, *at-tique*, *gut-tural*, *pit-toresque*.

T final is not generally pronounced, at the end of words which are used either by themselves or at the end of a sentence, or before words beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated: as—*qui vient?*—*il lui dit d'y aller*; &c.—pronounced—*qui vien?*—*il lui di d'y aller*.

But *t*, at the end of words which are followed by other words beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, and with which they are inseparably connected by the sense, is pronounced and joined to them in pronunciation: as—*un savant homme*; *je suis tout à vous*; *s'il vient à pleuvoir*,—pronounced—*un savan-l'omm*; *je suis tou-tà vous*; *s'il vien-tà pleuvoir*.

If, however, *t*, terminating the tense of a verb, be preceded by *r*, it is not sounded, though followed by a vowel or an *h* mute, in the beginning of the succeeding word, on account of the harsh sound which would thus result from it: as—*il part aujourd'hui*; *il court à bride abattue*; *il s'endort à l'ombre*;—pronounced—*il parau-jourd'hui*; *il cou-rà bride abattue*; *il s'endo-rà l'ombre*; and not—*il par-taujour-d'hui*; *il cour-tà bride abattue*; *il s'endor-tà l'ombre*.

T is likewise mute at the end of some substantives followed by their respective adjectives, although these begin with a vowel or *h* mute, on account of the disagreeable sound which would result from the use of it; and, in general, *t* is silent at the end of words, whenever the harmony of the sound requires it: thus

—*un goût horrible* ; *un tort incroyable* ; are pronounced—*un gou-orrille* ; *un tor-incroyable* ; and not—*un gou-t'orrille*, *un tor-tincroyable*.

T is not pronounced in *vingt*, used either by itself or at the end of a sentence, or before a word beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated. It is also mute in *vingt*, from eighty to ninety-nine inclusively, as also in *cent*, used by itself or before a consonant: thus—*nous étions vingt* ; *vingt soldats* ; *quatre-vingt-onze hommes* ; *cent* ; *cent chevaux* ; &c., are pronounced—*nou-zétion vein* ; *vein-soldā* ; *quatre-vein-on-zomm* ; *cen* ; *cen-shevō* ; but *t* is sounded in *vingt* and *cent*, immediately followed by a word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, and also in the numbers from *twenty* to *thirty*, *thirty* to *forty*, *forty* to *fifty*, *fifty* to *sixty*, *sixty* to *seventy-nine* inclusively: as—*vingt abricots*, *vingt-deux hommes*, &c.—pronounced *vein-tabricō*, *veint-deuzomm*, &c. ; but *t* is silent in *cent* before *un*, *une*, *huit*, and *onze*.

T is likewise mute in *sept* and *huit*, followed by a word beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated: as—*sept chemises* ; *huit houppelandes* ;—pronounced—*sé-shemiz* ; *hui-houppeland* ; but it is sounded in *sept* and *huit*, when these numbers come before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, or when they are used by themselves or at the end of a sentence, or, again, for expressing the date of the month, in which latter case the *t* is even sounded before a consonant: as—*sept écus* ; *huit hommes* ; *ils étaient sept ou huit* ; *le sept de Juin* ; *le huit Septembre* ;—pronounced—*sé-técu* ; *hui-fomm* ; *ilzétaient sé-ton huit* ; *le set de Juin* ; *le huit Septembre* ; &c.

T is always mute in the conjunction *et*, and in the words *vent* and *pont*, whether followed by a word beginning with a vowel, an *h* mute, or a consonant: as—*lui et elle* ; *le vent est haut* ; *le pont est-il fini* ?—pronounced—*lui-é-elle* ; *le ven-è-hō* ; *le pōn-è-til fini* ? and not—*lui é-telle* ; *le ven-test haut* ; *le pon-tes-til fini* ?

T is likewise usually mute, at the end of the termination *ent*, in the third person plural of verbs, even when followed by a vowel or *h* mute, if the verb be used affirmatively or negatively ; but it is pronounced, if the verb be employed interrogatively before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute: as—*ils aiment à parler* ; *ils ne viennent pas aujourd'hui* ; pronounced—*il* or *i-zaim-à parler* ; *il ne vienn-pah-zeaujourd'hui* ; but—*lui parlèrent-ils ? aiment-ils à jouer ?* &c., must be pronounced *lui parlèr-til ? aim-til à jouer ?* &c.

T is not pronounced in *Jésus-Christ*, although it is in *Christ*, used without *Jéus*. It is likewise mute in *aspect*, *circonspect*, *respect*, the final *c* only being heard ; but it is always pronounced in *object*, *accessit*, *brut*, *chut*, *contact*, *correct*, *dot*, *direct*, *déficit*, *est* (east), *fat*, *granit*, *exact*, *incorrect*, *indirect*, *insect*, *indult*, *lest*, *luth*, *net*, *prétrit*, *rapt*, *subit*, *suspect*, *strict*, *tacet*, *tact*, *toast*, *transit*, *vivat*, *sénith*, *sint*, *zest*.

V.

V always has its natural sound—*v*.

W is not reckoned in the letters of the French alphabet, as it is to be found in French only in foreign names of persons, places, or things, in the beginning of which it usually takes the sound of *v*: as in *Westphalie*, *Walbon*, *Wallone*, *Wirtemberg*, *Warwick*, *Washington*,—pronounced—*Vestphalie*, *Valbon*, *Valone*, *Virtemberg*, *Varvik*, *Vaxington*. In *whist* and *whisky*, *w* is pronounced *ou*: thus—*ouist*, *ouiski*.

W, in the middle and at the end of words, varies in its pronunciation: thus—*Newton* is pronounced *Neuton* ; *Warwick*, *Varvik* ; and *Law*, *Lasse*.

X.

X has the following different sounds:—

Ks ou Cs.....	as in.....	<i>extrême</i> .
Gz	as in.....	<i>Xavier, exemple</i> .
Ss	as in.....	<i>Bruxelles, Auxerre</i> .
C	as in.....	<i>excellent</i> .
Z	as in.....	<i>deuxième</i> .

dit (voir au Français) ...
le d'élit ...

When *x* comes at the beginning of a word, (which is only the case in a few foreign names,) it is pronounced *cs* or *ks*: except in *Xavier*, *Xénophon*, *Ximénès*, *le Xante*, *Xantippe*, and *Xerxès*, in which it is sounded *gz*: thus—*Gzavier*, *Gzénophon*, *Gximénès*, (which is also pronounced *Chiménès*,) *le Gzante*, *Gzantippe*, *Gzersèsse*.

X is likewise pronounced *ks* or *cs*, in the middle of words, before a *c* guttural and one of the three vowels *u*, *o*, *u*; or when it is followed by any other consonant than *h*, whatever may be the vowel following: as—*excuse*, *excommunié*, *expédient*, *inexpugnable*,—pronounced—*eks-cuse*, *eks-comunié*, *eks-pédian*, *ineks-pugnable*; but if *c* be followed by *e* or *i*, *x* must then be sounded like *c* only: as—*excès*, *exciter*, *exception*, &c., which are pronounced—*ec-cès*, *ec-citer*, *ec-ception*. *X* is also sounded *cs*, in the middle of words, between two vowels, if the word does not begin by *e* or *in*: as—*axe*, *Alexandre*, *luxe*, *maxime*, *sexe*, pronounced *ac-se*, *Alec-sandre*, *luc-se*, *mac-sime*, *sec-se*.

Soixante, and its derivatives, must however be excepted, as likewise *Bruxelles*, *Auxerre*, *Auxerrois*, *Auxonne*, in which *x* is sounded like double *s*: thus—*soissante*, *Brusselles*, *Aussère*, *Aussérois*, *Aussone*.—*Sixième*, *deuxième*, *dirième*, are pronounced *sixième*, *deuxième*, *dizième*.

But when *x* occurs between two vowels, and the first letter of the word is *e*, or when the word begins by *in*, *x* is then sounded *gz*: in this case, if there be an *h* after *x*, it is not pronounced: thus—*examen*, *exorbitant*, *exhérédation*, *exhiber*, *exercice*, *inexorable*, are pronounced—*èg-zamen*, *èg-zorbitan*, *èg-zérédacion*, *èg-ziber*, *èg-zercice*, *inèg-zorable*.

X is not generally sounded, at the end of words, used either by themselves or at the end of a sentence, or before words beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated: as—*tu peux le faire*; *veux-tu y aller*? &c.—pronounced *tu peu-l faire*; *veu-tu y aller*? &c.

The numbers *six* and *dix* must be excepted, as in them *x* is sounded like double *s*, when these words are used either by themselves or at the end of a sentence, although *x* is not pronounced when they come before a consonant or *h* aspirated: as—*donnez-m'en six*; *gardez-lui-en dix*; *six tables*; &c.—pronounced *donnez-m'en siss*; *gardez-lui-en diss*; *si-tables*; &c.

X final is otherwise sounded *z*, before words beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, and is joined to them in pronunciation: thus—*aux amis*; *aux hommes*; *chevaux alertes*; *heureux époux*; *je veux y aller*; *tu peux écrire*; *deux ans*; *six aunes*; *dix hommes*; are pronounced—*ō-zamī*; *ō-zomm*; *shevō-zalerte*; *heureu-zépon*; *je veu-xy aller*; *tu peu-zécrire*; *deu-zan*; *si-zaune*; *di-zomm*.

X is likewise sounded *z*, in *dix-huit*, *dix-neuf*:—thus—*dixait*, *dixneuf*.

X is sounded *cs* or *ks*, at the end of proper names: as—*Palafox*, *Fairfax*, *Styx*, &c.—pronounced—*Palafocs*, *Fairfacs*, *Stics*. It is also sounded *cs*, at the end of these words,—*borax*, *index*, *lynx*, *sphinx*, *préfix*: thus—*boracs*, *indecs*, *lincs*, *sphincs*, *préfcis*: except *Aix*, which is pronounced *Ais*.

Y.

Y is sounded *i*, either when it forms a word of itself, or when it comes before a vowel in the beginning of a syllable: as—*Il y a*, *yeux*, *yacht*, &c.—pronounced *Il-i-a*, *ieū*, *iak*.

Y has likewise the sound of *i*, between two consonants: as—*acolyte*, *mystère*, *style*, *physique*, &c.—pronounced *acolite*, *mistère*, *stîle*, *phisique*; but it is sounded like two *i*'s between two vowels: as—*moyen*, *payer*, *nous employons*, *vous essayez*, pronounced—*moi-ien*, *pai-ier*, *nous emploi-ion*, *vous essai-iez*. In *Pays*, the *y* is also sounded like two *i*'s: thus—*Pai-ï*.

Z.

Z always has its natural sound *z*, in the beginning and middle of words: as—*zéphyr*, *amazone*.

It is usually mute, at the end of words which are used by themselves or at

the end of a sentence, or before a consonant or an *h* aspirated: as—*vous parlez de moi; vous chantez très-bien; &c.*—pronounced—*vous parlé-d moi; vous chanté très-bien.*

But *z*, at the end of the second persons plural of the tenses of verbs, occurring before words beginning with a vowel or an *h* mute, is pronounced with its natural sound *z*, and joined to them in pronunciation: as—*vous aimez à me tourmenter*—pronounced—*vous aimé-zâ-m tourmenté.*

Lastly, *z* is sounded *s*, at the end of foreign proper names: thus—*Alvarez, Cortez, Rodez, Suez, &c.*, are pronounced—*Alvarés, Cortés, Rodés, Sués, &c.*

ARTICLE III.

Of Accents.

There are three accents in the French language, called the *acute*, the *grave*, and the *circumflex*.

The *acute accent* is drawn from the right hand to the left, thus—(´). It is only used over *e*, to which it gives an acute sound, much resembling that of *a* in English, as in the words—*vérité, procédé, prémédité.*

The *grave accent* is drawn from the left hand to the right, as follows—(`), and when placed over *e*, as in—*père, mère*, gives it an open sound, much like that in the word *there*.

The *circumflex accent* is formed like *v* reversed, thus—(^), and gives a long sound to the vowel over which it is placed, as in the words—*âne, fête, gîte, dôme, flûte.*

1. Of the Acute Accent.

The *acute accent* is used in French over every *e* which, either forming a syllable of itself or terminating one, has the sound of *a* in English: as in the words—*été, vérité, procédé, prémédité, probité, &c.* The acute accent is likewise used on the *e* of the last syllable of these words in the plural, though followed by *s*: as—*des procédés, &c.*

The *acute accent* is also used on the last *e* but one in the last syllable of words ending with double *e*, whether they are in the singular or plural: as—*armée, armées.* It is likewise used on the final *e* of the past participle of all verbs of the first conjugation, with this observation, that, should the participle be employed in its feminine, either singular or plural, the accent is to preserve the same place as in the singular or plural masculine: thus—*aimé, aimée; aimés, aimées.*

Lastly, the *acute accent* is used over the final *e* of the first person singular of the present of the indicative in all verbs of the first conjugation, when used interrogatively; and also in those of the second, likewise used interrogatively, but which, when used positively, end in *e* mute: as—*aimé-je? donné-je? ouvert-je?* (from the verbs *aimer, donner, ouvrir.*)

2. Of the Grave Accent.

The *grave accent* is used in French:—

1. Over every *e* which terminates a syllable, if followed by a consonant and an *e* mute in the same word: as—*père, mère, frère, manière, jarretière, ils parlèrent, modèle;* but words ending in *ège* must be excepted, as the *e* followed by *ge* takes the acute accent: thus—*sacrilège, sortilège, &c.*

2. Over the *e* in the last syllable of substantives ending in *es* in the singular: as—*procès, succès, décès;* and also generally over the *e* of the last syllable of adverbs and prepositions ending in the same manner: as—*auprès, après, dès, exprès, près, très, &c.* But the monosyllables *ces, les, mes, tes, ses*, and the compound article *des*, must be excepted, as they never take the grave accent.

14 OF THE CIRCUMFLEX ACCENT, APOSTROPHE, &c.

3. Over the preposition *à*, to distinguish it from the third person singular of the present of the indicative of the verb *avoir*,—*il a*; and from *a* taken substantively: as—*à Paris*;—*il a*;—*il ne sait ni A ni B*.

4. Over *là*, adverb, to distinguish it from *la*, article or pronoun: as—*allez-là*;—*la vertu et la science*;— *aimez-la*.

5. Over *où*, adverb or pronoun, to distinguish it from *ou*, conjunction: as—*où allez-vous?*—*la place où vous aspirez*;—*vous ou moi*.

6. Over *dès*, preposition or conjunction, to distinguish it from *des*, article: as—*dès que j'aurai de l'argent, j'achèterai des livres*.

7. Over *dès* in *dès-lors*.

It is worthy of remark, that when the syllable *des* is used at the commencement of words, it takes the acute accent, if it be followed by a vowel or an *h* mute; but if it is followed by a consonant it takes no accent: as—*désastre, déshonneur, despote*.

3. Of the Circumflex Accent.

The *circumflex accent* is used in French over vowels which have a long sound, as in the following cases:—

1. Over *a* followed by *ch*, or by *t* pronounced with its natural sound *t*, as in—*fâcheux, lâche, tâche, bâtir, château, gâteau*, &c., but never when *t* has the sound *s*, as in *nation*, &c.

2. Over *e* in the termination *ème*, as—*même, baptême*; but the ordinal numbers—*deuxième, troisième*, &c., always take the grave accent.

3. Over *i* in all the tenses of the verbs in *être* and *ôtre*, in which *i* comes before as—*il paraît, il croît*, &c., from the verbs *paraître, croître*.

4. Over *o* before the finals *le, me, ne*: as—*pôle, rôle, dôme, fantôme, trône, zone*, &c., and also in—*le nôtre, le vôtre*, &c., relative possessive pronouns, to distinguish them from the conjunctive *notre* and *votre*, which are pronounced short.

5. Over *u* in the adjective *sûr*, to distinguish it from *sur*, preposition: as—*je suis sûr que l'argent est sur la table*.

6. Over *u* in *mûr* (ripe), to distinguish it from *mur* (wall).

7. Over *u* in *dû*, participle of *devoir*, to distinguish it from *du*, compound article; but this takes place only in the singular masculine, as there can be no mistake in the feminine singular, or in the plural of either gender.

8. Over *u* in *tû*, the participle of the verb *taire*, that it may be distinguished from *tu* (thou), personal pronoun; but still only in the singular masculine, for the same reason as for *dû*.

9. Over *u* in *crû*, participle of *croître*, either in the masculine or feminine, singular or plural, to distinguish it from *cru*, the participle of *croire*.

10. Over the last vowel of the last syllable but one in the first and second persons plural of the preterite definite of the indicative, in all verbs: as—*nous aimâmes, vous aimâtes*; *nous finîmes, vous finîtes*; *nous reçûmes, vous reçûtes*; *nous vendîmes, vous vendîtes*; &c.

11. Over the last vowel of the third person singular of the imperfect of the subjunctive: as—*qu'il fût; qu'il eût; qu'il aimât; qu'il finît; qu'il reçût; qu'il vendît*.

Note.—The circumflex accent is also used over several words quoted in the large octavo Grammar, but which cannot be explained by any general rules.

4. Of the Apostrophe.

The *apostrophe* has the form of a comma, thus—('); it is placed above the level of the line, as—*l'*. It denotes the suppression of the vowels *a, e, or i*, in the monosyllables *le, la, je, me, te, se, de, ce, ne, que*, and *si*, when these occur before another word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute; as—*l'ame, l'amour, l'homme, j'ai*, instead of *la ame, le amour, le homme, je ai*. *Il n'y a que i; ne pas omettre.*

55. 247.

Le and La after an imperative, do
not lose the e or a before a word
beginning with a vowel R. 167.

When the first and second persons of the imperative have for complement (a r- gumen) one of these words, moi, toi nous, vous, le, la, lui, les, leur, on, y, they are joined together by a hyphen, and a second hyphen is introduced, when there are two of those words as a complement of the impera- tive, as donnez-moi, accordez-le- leur.

But we write faites-moi lui par- ler, and not faites-moi-lui parler because lui is the regimen of par- ler, and not of faites: voyez me parler, because me is not gover- ned by voyez, but by parler

S.S. 234

E suffers the same elision: 1. in *jusque*, before *à*, *au*, *aux*, and *ici*: as—*jusqu'à Paris*; *jusqu'au ciel*; *jusqu'aux nues*; *jusqu'ici*.

2. In *puisque* and *quoique*, before *il*, *ils*, *elle*, *elles*, *on*, *un*, and *une*; and sometimes before words with which they are immediately connected: as—*puisqu'il le veut*; *quoiqu'il dise*; *puisque ainsi est*.

3. In *quelque*, before *un* or *une*: as—*quelqu'un*, *quelqu'une*; and also in *quel qu'il soit*, *quelle qu'elle soit*; but in no other case.

4. In *presque*, in the compound word *presqu'île*.

But *e* and *a* do not suffer elision in *ce*, *de*, *le*, *la*, *que*, before *oui*, *huit*, *huitaine*, *huitième*, *onze*, and *onzième*; neither do they suffer elision in *ce*, *de*, *le*, *la*, *que*, when these words are used after a verb in the imperative mood, although the next word may begin with a vowel or an *h* mute; neither is *a* ever elided in *là*, adverb: thus we write and pronounce—*le oui et le non*; *le huit ou le onze du mois*; *le onzième*; *de huit qu'ils étaient*;—*menez-le à Paris*; *ira-t-il là avec vous?* and not *l'oui*; *l'huit*; *l'onze*; *l'onzième*; *d'huit qu'ils étaient*; *menez-l' à Paris*; *ira-t-il l'avec vous?*

Observe.—*I* suffers elision in the conjunction *si* (if), before *il* and *ils*, but never before *elle* or *elles*, nor any other word whatever; thus we write and pronounce—*il ira s'il veut*;—*s'ils viennent*; but—*si elle veut*; *si elles viennent*, and not *s'elle veut*; *s'elles viennent*.

2. Of the Hyphen.

The *hyphen*, in French (*tiret* or *trait d'union*), is a short horizontal line, drawn in this manner—(—), which is used:—

1. After a verb followed by one of the pronouns *je*, *tu*, *il*, *elle*; *nous*, *vous*, *ils*, *elles*; *le*, *la*, *les*; *moi*, *toi*, *lui*, *leur*, *y*, *en*, *ce*, *on*: as—*dis-moi*; *dépêchez-vous*; *flattons-nous-en*; &c.; in which case if the verb be used interrogatively, and end with a vowel in the third person singular, a *t* is put between the verb and the pronoun, with a hyphen on each side of it: as—*viendra-t-il?*—*parle-t-on?*

2. Between the pronouns *moi*, *toi*, *nous*, *vous*, *lui*, *elle*, *eux*, *elles*, and the word *même*, which sometimes follows them: as—*moi-même*, *toi-même*, &c.

3. Between words so joined that they make but one: as—*arc-en-ciel*, *cure-dent*, *peut-être*, *vis-à-vis*, *c'est-à-dire*.

4. Between the nouns of number which are joined together: thus—*dix-sept*, *dix-huit*, *dix-neuf*, &c., to *quatre-vingt-dix-neuf*, inclusively; but *vingt et un*, *trente et un*, *quarante et un*, *cinquante et un*, *soixante et un*, and *soixante et onze*, are excepted.

5. Between the monosyllables *ci* and *là*, and the word which precedes or follows them, when they are connected together: as—*celui-ci*, *celui-là*; *cet homme-ci*, *cette femme-là*; *ci-dessus*, *ci-dessous*; *là-haut*, *là-bas*; &c.

6. Of the Cedilla.

The *cedilla* is a little mark made nearly like a comma, thus—(,); it is placed under *c* followed by *a*, *o*, or *u*, when *c* must be sounded like *s*: as—*garçon*, *leçon*, *reçu*, which are pronounced *garson*, *leson*, *resu*.

When *c* has the sound of *s* in the termination of the present of the infinitive of a verb, it preserves it throughout all its tenses and persons, and a cedilla is required under it whenever it is followed by *a*, *o*, or *u*: as—*commencer*, *je commençais*; *concevoir*, *je conçus*.

7. Of the Diæresis, Parenthesis, Quotations, and Abbreviations.

1. The *diæresis*, in French (*diérèse* or *tréma*), is a double dot, like this—(¨), put over the vowels *ë*, *ï*, and *ü*, to denote, when they are not of the same syllable as the vowel preceding them, that they are to be pronounced separately from it: as in the words—*aïeul*, *aï*, *Antinoïs*, *Ésaiü*, *faïence*, *Faïencier*, *kéroïque*, *haïr*, *laïque*, *Moïse*, *Nüel*, *naïf*, *païen*,—pronounced—*a-ïeul*, *ha-ïr*, *Mo-ïse*, *pa-ïen*, &c.

2. The *parenthesis* is made thus (), and is used to enclose a particular phrase, or an occasional sentence, interposed in the middle of the principal one: as—

Je crois aussi (soit dit sans vous déplaire)
Que femme prude, en sa vertu sévère,
Peut en public faire beaucoup de bien,
Mais en secret souvent ne valoir rien.

VOI.T. *La Prude*, act. i. sc. 4.

Great use was formerly made of the parenthesis; but it is now nearly superseded by the employment of commas in its stead.

3. The *quotation* consists of two inverted commas, thus (“)—placed at the beginning of a recital or passage, quoted from another author, and repeated at the beginning of every line to the end, with two other commas thus, (”), in their natural position, at the end: as—

Je songeais cette nuit que, de mal consumé,
Côte à côte d'un pauvre on m'avait inhumé,
Et que n'en pouvant pas souffrir le voisinage,
En mort de qualité je lui tins ce langage:
“ Retire-toi, coquin! va pourrir loin d'ici;
“ Il ne t'appartient pas de m'approcher ainsi.”
“ Coquin, (ce me dit-il, d'une arrogance extrême,)
“ Va chercher tes coquins ailleurs, coquin toi-même!
“ Ici tous sont égaux: je ne te dois plus rien;
“ Je suis sur mon fumier, comme toi sur le tien.”

4. The *abbreviations* are words usually shortened and represented by capital letters. The following are the most common;

M. or Mr.	for <i>Monsieur.</i>
M ^{me}	for <i>Madame.</i>
M ^{lle}	for <i>Mademoiselle.</i>
MM.	for <i>Messieurs.</i>
S. M.	for <i>Sa Majesté.</i>
S. M. Imp.	for <i>Sa Majesté Impériale.</i>
S. M. T. C.	for <i>Sa Majesté Très-Chrétienne.</i>
S. M. C.	for <i>Sa Majesté Catholique.</i>
S. M. B.	for <i>Sa Majesté Britannique.</i>
S. M. S.	for <i>Sa Majesté Suédoise.</i>
S. A.	for <i>Son Altesse.</i>
S. A. R.	for <i>Son Altesse Royale.</i>
S. A. I.	for <i>Son Altesse Impériale.</i>
S. A. E.	for <i>Son Altesse Électorale.</i>
S. Ex.	for <i>Son Excellence.</i>
S. Émi.	for <i>Son Éminence.</i>
S. S.	for <i>Sa Sainteté.</i>
M ^{sr}	for <i>Monseigneur.</i>
J. C.	for <i>Jésus-Christ.</i>
N. S.	for <i>Notre-Seigneur.</i>
N. S. J. C.	for <i>Notre-Seigneur-Jésus-Christ.</i>
M ^d	for <i>Marchand.</i>
Mde.	for <i>Marchande.</i>
Négt.	for <i>Négociant.</i>

8. Of Capital Letters.

Capital letters are letters larger than the others, and of a different form: such are those at the top of this page.

Capital letters are used in the beginning of the first word of every complete sen-

tence, in prose and poetry, and also of every line in poetry; and after a period or note of interrogation.

Phrases of direct address, as — *Monsieur, Madame, Mademoiselle, &c.*, are always begun with a capital; and, in letter-writing, the address, as well as the body of the letter and each part of the subscription at the end, begins with a capital: thus—

1. The address:—

*Monsieur,
Monsieur Douville,
Rue Neuve du Mont-Thabor, No. 10, à Paris.*

2. The body of the letter:—

*Monsieur,
J'ai appris avec plaisir que vous avez publié
une nouvelle édition de votre Grammaire.*

3. The subscription:—

*J'ai l'honneur d'être,
Monsieur,
Votre très-humble et très-obéissant Serviteur,
M. T***.*

It is also proper to begin the following words with a capital, in whatever part of the sentence they may occur:

1. All appellations of the Deity: as—*Grand Dieu! Être Suprême! &c.*
2. Proper names of persons, heathen gods and goddesses, kingdoms, provinces, towns, places, streets, mountains, rivers, ships, &c.: as—*Napoléon, César, Cicéron, Jean-Jacques Rousseau, Jupiter, Vénus, la France, la Normandie, Paris, Saint-Denis, rue Neuve-des-Petits-Champs, les Alpes, la Loire, &c.*
3. The names of the days of the week and of the months: as—*Dimanche, Lundi, Mardi, &c.; Janvier, Février, Mars, &c.*
4. Substantives and adjectives derived from proper names: as—*La Henriade; la langue Italienne; à la Française.*
5. The first word of every direct quotation: as—*Il me dit: "Personne que moi," &c.*
6. The principal words in the titles of books, and single letters used for abbreviations: as—*Atlas Historique Chronologique, &c., par M. De A. Le Sage.*

Note.—It is the custom in English to write the pronoun *I* with a capital letter; but in French no distinction of this sort is made with the corresponding word *je*, which is never written with a capital, except at the beginning of a sentence or the commencement of a quotation: as—*"Mais, Madame, je pensais que vous,"* and not *Je*, &c.

9. Of Punctuation.

Punctuation is the act of distinguishing or terminating each part of a sentence by stops or pauses, according to its sense or connexion with the whole.

There are six principal stops made use of for punctuation in English and French, which are distinguished by the following names and figures:—

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------|----------------------------------|
| 1. the comma..... | (,) | <i>La virgule.</i> |
| 2. the semicolon..... | (;) | <i>Le point et la virgule.</i> |
| 3. the colon..... | (:) | <i>Les deux points.</i> |
| 4. the period, or full stop | (.) | <i>Le point.</i> |
| 5. the note of interrogation ... | (?) | <i>Le point d'interrogation.</i> |
| 6. the note of admiration..... | (!) | <i>Le point d'admiration.</i> |

The *comma* is used to separate either the portions of a complete sentence, or the different members of simple sentences, when each is closely united, either in sense or grammatical construction: as—*Chez moi, lui dit-il, Madame, ce n'est ni moi ni ma*

jeune qui commande, c'est la raison.—Ils conviennent tous qu'en effet sa beauté, son air, son regard, le caractère de pudeur et d'innocence empreint sur son visage avait quelque chose d'angélique.

Le sort fait les parens, le choix fait les amis.—DEUILLE.

The *semicolon* separates the parts of a compound sentence, which are less dependent upon each other than those divided by commas; it is also used after several passages, divided by commas, when their import is summed up: as—*Le bal, la comédie, la promenade; voilà les amusemens du monde.*

Tous les jours je t'attends; tu reviens tous les jours.—RACINE.

The *colon* is employed in a similar manner to the semicolon, but when the sense is more complete; it is also used at a part where the subject might be finished, but beyond which it is prolonged by some additional observation: as—

La fourmi n'est pas prêteuse:
C'est là son moindre défaut.

LA FONTAINE.

The *period* marks the termination of the subject, or the completion of each compound sentence, when each is independent: as—*Mon unique chagrin est de paraître ingrat, et de n'avoir pas même l'espérance que mon oncle soit détrompé. S'il est possible, il le sera, lui dis-je. Mais il m'a défendu de vous nommer à lui; et je connais son caractère: il faut l'attendre et ne pas le heurter.*

The *note of interrogation* is used at the end of interrogative sentences, unless they be only expressed as quotations: as—*Que voulez-vous?—Les Tyriens me demandaient pourquoi je pleurais.*

The *note of admiration* is used after interjections and phrases of surprise, joy, grief, &c.: as—*Ah! ah! le petit drôle; Dieu! quel exemple vous choisissiez!*

10. Words that are spelt alike in English and French.

1. The most part of substantives and adjectives which end in English with any of these seven syllables, *ble, ce, de, ent, ge, ion, and ne*, are spelt alike in French. The only difference consists in the pronunciation and in the accents which some of them require in French: as—

English and French.	English.	French.
1. <i>ble</i>	fable,	<i>fable.</i>
2. <i>ce</i>	evidence,	<i>évidence.</i>
3. <i>de</i>	prelude,	<i>prélude.</i>
4. <i>ent</i>	diligent,	<i>diligent.</i>
5. <i>ge</i>	age,	<i>âge.</i>
6. <i>ion</i>	nation,	<i>nation.</i>
7. <i>ne</i>	machine,	<i>machine.</i>

2. Most nouns ending in English with *ary, ory, cy, ty, ous, our*, and *or*, become French by changing these terminations, as follows:—

1. *ary* into *aire*; as, military, *militaire.*
2. *ory* into *oire*; as, glory, *gloire.*
3. *cy* into *ce*; as, clemency, *clémence.*
4. *ty* into *té*; as, humanity, ... *humanité.*
5. *ous* into *eux*; as, dangerous, ... *dangereux.*
6. *our* or *or* into *eur*; as, favour, *faveur.*

11. Difference in the spelling of the Greek and Roman proper Names in English and French.

1. The Greek and Roman proper names of men, ending in English with *a*, are spelt alike in French: as—*Agrippa, Caligula, Dolabella, Nerva.*

2. The proper names of women and goddesses, ending in English with *a*, become

French by changing the final *a* into *e* mute: as—Cleopatra, *Cléopâtre*; Matilda, *Matilde*; Agrippina, *Agrippine*; Diana, *Diane*.

3. The greater part of proper names, ending in English with *as*, become French by changing *as* into *e* mute: as—Eneas, *Énée*; Mecenas, *Mécène*; Pythagoras, *Pythagore*.

4. Proper names, ending in English with *es*, become French by changing that final into *e* mute: as—Demosthenes, *Démosthène*; Ulysses, *Ulysse*; Socrates, *Socrate*.

5. Proper names, ending in English with *o*, become French by changing *o* into *on*: as—Cicero, *Cicéron*; Cato, *Caton*; Dido, *Didon*; Scipio, *Scipion*.

6. Proper names, ending in English with *us* or *ius*, are usually spelt alike in French, when they consist of two syllables only: as—Brutus, *Brutus*; Cyrus, *Cyrus*; Venus, *Vénus*; &c. But if they be composed of three or more syllables, they sometimes become French by changing *us* or *ius* into *e* mute: as—Camillus, *Camille*; Esculapius, *Esculape*; Orpheus, *Orphée*.

7. Most proper names, ending in English with *al* or *is*, are the same in both languages: as—Annibal, *Asdrubal*, *Juvenal*, *Sésôstris*.

8. Most proper names, ending in English with *ander*, become French by changing *ander* into *andre*: as—Alexander, *Alexandre*; Lysander, *Lysandre*.

PART THE SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

A general View of the Parts of Speech.

THE second part of Grammar is *Etymology*, which treats of the different sorts of words, their various modifications, and their derivation.

There are in French nine sorts of words, or parts of speech, namely:—the *article*, the *substantive*, the *adjective*, the *pronoun*, the *verb*, the *adverb*, the *preposition*, the *conjunction*, and the *interjection*.

1. The *article* is a word prefixed to substantives, to point them out, and to show how far their signification extends: as—*un homme*, a man; *une femme*, a woman; *le roi*, the king.

2. The *substantive* is the name of any person, or thing, that exists or of which we have some notion: as—*Alexandre*, Alexander; *soleil*, sun; *Londres*, London; *vertu*, virtue.

3. The *adjective* is a word added to a substantive to express its quality or manner of being: as—*une belle femme*, a fine woman; *une grande ville*, a large town.

4. The *pronoun* is a word used instead of a noun, to avoid the too frequent repetition of the same word: as—*mon ami est arrivé*; *il m'a apporté de bien jolies choses*: my friend is arrived; he has brought me some very pretty things.

5. The *verb* is a word of which the principal use is to express *affirmation*, or to signify *to be*, *to do*, or *to suffer*: as—*je suis*, I am; *j'aime*, I love; *je suis aimé*, I am loved.

6. The *adverb* is a part of speech joined to a verb, an adjective, and sometimes to another adverb, to express some quality or circumstance respecting it: as—*il parle bien*, he speaks well; *un fort bon homme*, a very good man; *il écrit très-correctement*, he writes very correctly.

20 INTRODUCTORY LESSONS.—OF THE ARTICLES.

7. *Prepositions* serve to connect words with one another, and to show the relation between them: as—*il alla de Londres à Paris*, he went from London to Paris. *Il vit de rapine*, he lives on plunder.

8. A *conjunction* is a part of speech chiefly used to connect sentences, so as, out of two or more sentences, to make but one; it sometimes connects only words: as—*vous et lui, vous êtes heureux*, you and he are happy; *le plaisir et la peine*, pleasure and pain.

9. *Interjections* are words thrown in between the parts of a sentence, to express the passions or emotions of the speaker: as—*O ciel!* Oh, heavens!—*Que vous êtes aimable!* how amiable you are!

I shall now proceed to treat of the different sorts of words just enumerated, and their various modifications, omitting however to notice their derivation, as it would involve explanations much too diffuse for the limits of this work.

INTRODUCTORY LESSONS.

LESSON I.

Of the Article.

The article is a little word which is prefixed to substantives to point them out, and show the extent of their signification.

To facilitate the study of French to beginners, I have divided the article into indefinite, definite, and partitive.

The indefinite article is *a* or *an*, UN, UNE; the definite *the*, LE, LA, L', LES; the partitive *some* or *any*, DU, DE LA, DE L', DES; which are subject to the following variations.

1. *Examples of the Indefinite Article.*

	* Before a noun <i>m.</i> whatever its initial may be.	Before a noun <i>f.</i> whatever its initial may be.
A or an,	<i>un,</i>	<i>une.</i>
Of or from a or an,	<i>d'un,</i>	<i>d'une.</i>
At or to a or an,	<i>à un,</i>	<i>à une.</i>

2. *Examples of the Definite Article.*

	Before a noun <i>m.</i> sing. be- ginning with a consonant or <i>h</i> aspirated.	Before a noun <i>f.</i> sing. be- ginning with a consonant or <i>h</i> aspirated.	Before a noun <i>m.</i> or <i>f.</i> sing. beginning with a <i>v.</i> or <i>h</i> mute.	Before a noun <i>pl.</i> of either gender, what- ever its initial may be.
The,	<i>le,</i>	<i>la,</i>	<i>l',</i>	<i>les.</i>
Of or from the,	<i>du,</i>	<i>de la,</i>	<i>de l',</i>	<i>des.</i>
At or to the,	<i>au,</i>	<i>à la,</i>	<i>à l',</i>	<i>aux</i>

3. *Examples of the Partitive Article.*

	Before a noun <i>m.</i> sing. be- ginning with a consonant or <i>h</i> aspirated.	Before a noun <i>f.</i> sing. be- ginning with a consonant or <i>h</i> aspirated.	Before a noun <i>m.</i> or <i>f.</i> sing. beginning with a <i>v.</i> or <i>h</i> mute.	Before a noun <i>pl.</i> of either gender, what- ever its initial may be.
Some or any,	<i>du,</i>	<i>de la,</i>	<i>de l',</i>	<i>des.</i>

* *Note.*—In the first seven essays, the gender and number of substantives will be found marked, in order that the pupil may use the necessary articles.—*m.* at the end of a word, will, therefore, denote a noun or substantive masculine; *f.* a noun feminine; *m. v.* or *m. h.* a noun masculine, beginning with a vowel or *h* mute; *m. pl.* a noun masculine plural; *f. pl.* a noun feminine plural; *m.* or *f. sing.* a noun masculine or feminine singular. But in the succeeding ones these marks, if used, will further signify that, if the word going before be not of the gender and number indicated by them, it must be put in that gender and number.

The adjectives which precede their respective substantives in English, but which should come after them in French, as well as the construction of those sentences which might be found too difficult for beginners, are marked in the following essays with figures before the French words. Care must, therefore, be taken to place the words which are marked with the figure 1 before those which are marked with the figure 2, and so on with the words to which the succeeding figures are prefixed. This assistance will be continued, until the pupil is considered sufficiently acquainted with the necessary rules on those subjects.

Throughout the essays, the English words which are not to be expressed in French are marked with an asterisk (*) after them; and those which are spelt the same in French as in English have a dash, thus —, under them.

When several English words are found included within a parenthesis, () they must be translated by the French words only which are placed under them.

Whenever a word has been employed more than once in the same essay, its equivalent in French is not repeated, in order that the pupil may the better recollect it; and, in general, the French of all words easy to remember will be found gradually omitted, as the pupil advances in the essays.

ESSAY I.

A man.—A woman.—Of a man.—Of a woman.—To a man.—To a woman.
homme m. femme f.

—A friend.—From a friend.—To a friend.—The park.—Of the park.—To the
ami m. parc m.

park.—From the park.—A fine day.—A week.—A month.—A novel.—
beau m. jour m. semaine f. mois m. roman m.

A history.—A cart.—The waiter.—Of the waiter.—To the waiter.—The
histoire f. charrette f. garçon m.

mistress of the house.—Of the mistress of the house.—To the mistress of
maîtresse f. maison f.

the house.—The coaches.—The carts.—To the country.—From the
voitures f. pl. charrettes f. pl. campagne f.

country.—The soul.—Of the soul.—To the soul.—The ladies.—Of the ladies.—
ame f. v. dames f. pl.

To the ladies.—The men.—Of the men.—To the men.—The women.—
hommes m. pl. femmes f. pl.

To the women.—From the women.—Some bread.—Some butter.—Some beer.—
pain m. beurre m. bière f.

Some water.—Some wine.—Some ham.—Some eggs.—Some vegetables.
eau f. v. vin m. jambon m. œufs m. pl. légumes m. pl.

LESSON II.

Of the Personal Pronouns.

Personal pronouns are words used instead of the names of persons or things. They serve either for the nominative or object of the verb. Those which fill the place of the nominative of the verb are :—*I, je,* and *j'* before a vowel or *h* mute ; thou, *tu* ; he, *il* ; she, *elle* ; it, *il* and *elle* ; we, *nous* ; ye or you, *vous* ; they, *ils*, m. pl. and *elles*, f. pl.

The pronouns which are employed for the object of the verb, are :—me, *me*, and sometimes *moi* ; thee, *te*, and sometimes *toi* ; him or it, *le*, *lui*, *y*, and *en* ; her, *la*, *lui*, *y*, and *en* ; us, *nous* ; ye and you, *vous* ; them, *les*, *leur*, *eux*, *elles*, and *en* ; as will be hereafter explained.

Me, te, le, la, are spelt *m' t' l'* before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

Of the Possessive Pronouns.

Possessive pronouns express the possession or property of any thing. They are divided into conjunctive and relative. They are called conjunctive when they immediately precede a substantive, and relative when they refer to one. The conjunctive admit of any preposition before them ; and, in the following examples, they are exemplified with *de*, in the sense of *of* or *from*, in English ;—and *à*, for *at* or *to*. The relative, on the contrary, are always preceded by *le, la, les*, the ; *du, de la, des*, of or from the ; and *au, à la, aux*, at or to the, like a substantive, as may be seen hereafter. Both the conjunctive and relative possessive pronouns agree in gender and number with the substantives to which they refer.

1. *Examples of the Conjunctive Possessive Pronouns.*

FIRST PERSON.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Before a noun m. beginning with a conso- nant or <i>h</i> aspirated.	Before a noun f. beginning with a conso- nant or <i>h</i> aspirated.	Before a noun m. or f. sing. beginning with a vowel or <i>h</i> mute.	Before a noun pl. of either gender, what- ever its initial may be.
My,	<i>Mon,</i>	<i>ma,</i>	<i>mon,</i>	<i>mes.</i>
Of or from my,	<i>De mon,</i>	<i>de ma,</i>	<i>de mon,</i>	<i>de mes.</i>
At or to my,	<i>À mon,</i>	<i>à ma,</i>	<i>à mon,</i>	<i>à mes.</i>
Our,	<i>Notre,</i>	<i>notre,</i>	<i>notre,</i>	<i>nos.</i>
Of or from our,	<i>De notre,</i>	<i>de notre,</i>	<i>de notre,</i>	<i>de nos.</i>
At or to our,	<i>À notre,</i>	<i>à notre,</i>	<i>à notre,</i>	<i>à nos.</i>

SECOND PERSON.

	<i>Singular.</i>		Before a noun m. or f. sing. beginning with a vowel or <i>h</i> mute.	Before a noun plural.
	Mas.	Fem.		
Thy,	<i>Ton,</i>	<i>tu,</i>	<i>ton,</i>	<i>tes.</i>
Of or from thy,	<i>De ton,</i>	<i>de ta,</i>	<i>de ton,</i>	<i>de tes.</i>
At or to thy,	<i>À ton,</i>	<i>à ta,</i>	<i>à ton,</i>	<i>à tes.</i>
Your,	<i>Votre,</i>	<i>votre,</i>	<i>votre,</i>	<i>vos.</i>
Of or from your,	<i>De votre,</i>	<i>de votre,</i>	<i>de votre,</i>	<i>de vos.</i>
At or to your,	<i>À votre,</i>	<i>à votre,</i>	<i>à votre</i>	<i>à vos.</i>

THIRD PERSON.

	Singular.		Before a noun m. or f. sing. beginning with a vowel or h mute.	Before a noun plural.
	Mas.	Fem.		
His, her, or its,	<i>Son,</i>	<i>sa,</i>	<i>son,</i>	<i>ses.</i>
Of or from his,	<i>De son,</i>	<i>de sa,</i>	<i>de son,</i>	<i>de ses.</i>
her, or its,				
At or to his, her,	<i>À son,</i>	<i>à sa,</i>	<i>à son,</i>	<i>à ses.</i>
or its,				
Their,	<i>Leur,</i>	<i>leur,</i>	<i>leur,</i>	<i>leurs.</i>
Of or from their,	<i>De leur,</i>	<i>de leur,</i>	<i>de leur,</i>	<i>de leurs.</i>
At or to their,	<i>À leur,</i>	<i>à leur,</i>	<i>à leur,</i>	<i>à leurs.</i>

2. Examples of the Relative Possessive Pronouns.

FIRST PERSON.

	Singular.		Plural.	
	Mas.	Fem.	Mas.	Fem.
Mine,	<i>Le mien,</i>	<i>la mienne ;</i>	<i>les miens,</i>	<i>les miennes.</i>
Of or from mine,	<i>Du mien,</i>	<i>de la mienne ;</i>	<i>des miens,</i>	<i>des miennes.</i>
At or to mine,	<i>Au mien,</i>	<i>à la mienne ;</i>	<i>aux miens,</i>	<i>aux miennes.</i>
Ours,	<i>Le nôtre,</i>	<i>la nôtre ;</i>	<i>les nôtres,</i>	<i>les nôtres.</i>
Of or from ours,	<i>Du nôtre,</i>	<i>de la nôtre ;</i>	<i>des nôtres,</i>	<i>des nôtres.</i>
At or to ours,	<i>Au nôtre,</i>	<i>à la nôtre ;</i>	<i>aux nôtres,</i>	<i>aux nôtres.</i>

SECOND PERSON.

	Singular.		Plural.	
	Mas.	Fem.	Mas.	Fem.
Thine,	<i>Le tien,</i>	<i>la tienne ;</i>	<i>les tiens,</i>	<i>les tiennes.</i>
Of or from thine,	<i>Du tien,</i>	<i>de la tienne ;</i>	<i>des tiens,</i>	<i>des tiennes.</i>
At or to thine,	<i>Au tien,</i>	<i>à la tienne ;</i>	<i>aux tiens,</i>	<i>aux tiennes.</i>
Yours,	<i>Le vôtre,</i>	<i>la vôtre ;</i>	<i>les vôtres,</i>	<i>les vôtres.</i>
Of or from yours,	<i>Du vôtre,</i>	<i>de la vôtre ;</i>	<i>des vôtres,</i>	<i>des vôtres.</i>
At or to yours,	<i>Au vôtre,</i>	<i>à la vôtre ;</i>	<i>aux vôtres,</i>	<i>aux vôtres.</i>

THIRD PERSON.

	Singular.		Plural.	
	Mas.	Fem.	Mas.	Fem.
His, hers, or its,	<i>Le sien,</i>	<i>la sienne ;</i>	<i>les siens,</i>	<i>les siennes.</i>
Of or from his,	<i>Du sien,</i>	<i>de la sienne ;</i>	<i>des siens,</i>	<i>des siennes.</i>
hers, or its,				
At or to his, hers,	<i>Au sien,</i>	<i>à la sienne ;</i>	<i>aux siens,</i>	<i>aux siennes.</i>
or its,				
Theirs,	<i>Le leur,</i>	<i>la leur ;</i>	<i>les leurs,</i>	<i>les leurs.</i>
Of or from theirs,	<i>Du leur,</i>	<i>de la leur ;</i>	<i>des leurs,</i>	<i>des leurs.</i>
At or to theirs,	<i>Au leur,</i>	<i>à la leur ;</i>	<i>aux leurs,</i>	<i>aux leurs.</i>

Note.—It is necessary to observe that, when parents address their children, and frequently little children their parents, either in a familiar conversation, or in an epistolary correspondence; or when a man and his wife, a brother and sister, or intimate friends, either speak or correspond together, as also when somebody is upbraided in a contemptuous manner, it is customary to use, in French, the verbs and the pronouns in the second person singular: as—*Maman, veux-tu venir avec moi? Mamma, will you come with me?*

1
2
3

4
5
6

7
8
9
10
11
12

13
14
15

16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

26
27
28

lowing examples, they are exemplified with the prepositions *de* and *à* ; but any other preposition may be used instead, according as the sense may require it.

ARTICLE I.

Of the Conjunctive Demonstrative Pronouns.

Whenever *this, that, these, those*, immediately precede a substantive or noun in English, as—**THAT** *man*, they are expressed, in French, by—*ce, cet, cette, ces*, as follows :—

		Singular.		
		Before a noun m. beginning with a consonant or <i>h</i> aspirated.	Before a noun m. beginning with a vowel or <i>h</i> mute.	Before a noun f. sing. beginning either with a consonant, a vowel, or an <i>h</i> mute or aspirated.
This or that,	by:—	<i>Ce,</i>	<i>cet,</i>	<i>cette.</i>
Of or from this or that,	by:—	<i>De ce,</i>	<i>de cet,</i>	<i>de cette.</i>
At or to this or that,	by:—	<i>A ce,</i>	<i>à cet,</i>	<i>à cette.</i>
		Plural.		
		Mas.		Fem.
These or those,	by:—	<i>Ces,</i>	<i>ces,</i>	<i>ces.</i>
Of or from these or those,	by:—	<i>De ces,</i>	<i>de ces,</i>	<i>de ces.</i>
At or to these or those,	by:—	<i>A ces,</i>	<i>à ces,</i>	<i>à ces.</i>

ARTICLE II.

Of the Relative Demonstrative Pronouns.

1. Whenever *this, that, these, those*, instead of immediately preceding a substantive or noun in English, refer to one, which is usually the case when they are followed either by the preposition *of*, or by one of the relative pronouns *who, whom, that, or which*, as—*this gown and that of your sister*, they are expressed in French in the following manner :—

		Singular.	
		Mas.	Fem.
This or that,	by:—	<i>Celui,</i>	<i>celle.</i>
Of or from this or that,	by:—	<i>De celui,</i>	<i>de celle.</i>
At or to this or that,	by:—	<i>A celui,</i>	<i>à celle.</i>
		Plural.	
		Mas.	Fem.
These or those,	by:—	<i>Ceux,</i>	<i>celles.</i>
Of or from these or those,	by:—	<i>De ceux,</i>	<i>de celles.</i>
At or to these or those,	by:—	<i>A ceux,</i>	<i>à celles.</i>

2. Whenever two or more persons or things being mentioned, *this* or *these* is used to point out the nearest to the person who speaks, and *that* or *those* the most remote from the person who speaks, as—*which of these two watches will you have?* **THIS** is silver, and **THAT** is gold ; they are thus rendered in French :—

		Singular.	
		Mas.	Fem.
1. This,	by:—	<i>Celui-ci,</i>	<i>celle-ci.</i>
Of or from this,	by:—	<i>De celui-ci,</i>	<i>de celle-ci.</i>
At or to this,	by:—	<i>A celui-ci,</i>	<i>à celle-ci.</i>

		<i>Plural.</i>	
		<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
These,	by:—	<i>Ceux-ci,</i>	<i>celles-ci.</i>
Of or from these,	by:—	<i>De ceux-ci,</i>	<i>de celles-ci.</i>
At or to these,	by:—	<i>À ceux-ci,</i>	<i>à celles-ci.</i>
		<i>Singular.</i>	
		<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
2. That,	by:—	<i>Celui-là,</i>	<i>celle-là.</i>
Of or from that,	by:—	<i>De celui-là,</i>	<i>de celle-là.</i>
At or to that,	by:—	<i>À celui-là,</i>	<i>à celle-là.</i>
		<i>Plural.</i>	
		<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Those,	by:—	<i>Ceux-là,</i>	<i>celles-là.</i>
Of or from those,	by:—	<i>De ceux-là,</i>	<i>de celles-là.</i>
At or to those,	by:—	<i>À ceux-là,</i>	<i>à celles-là.</i>

3. Whenever *this* or *that* is used in English in pointing at anything, without naming what it is, as—*give me THIS or THAT*; *this* is then construed into French by *ceci*, with reference to the nearest object alluded to, and *that* by *cela*, with reference to the most remote object spoken of. They are both masculine singular, and have no plural, as:—

		<i>Singular.</i>	
		<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>
This,		<i>Ceci.</i>	<i>Cela.</i>
Of or from this,		<i>De ceci.</i>	<i>De cela.</i>
At or to this,		<i>À ceci.</i>	<i>À cela.</i>

ESSAY III.

This picture.—That gold.—This night.—These oranges.—This book.—
tableau m. or m. v. nuit f. — f. pl. livre m.

Of this bird.—To this bird.—From that man.—To that river.—
oiseau m. v. homme m. h. rivière f.

From that house.—To these laurels.—From these laurels.—To this day.—
maison f. lauriers m. pl. jour m.

At that hour.—From that moment.—To these ladies.—From those
heure f. Dès — m. dames f. pl.

gentlemen.—To these houses.—The system of Copernicus and that of
messieurs m. pl. maisons f. pl. système m. Copernic et

Ptolemy.—This gown and that of your sister.—The disorders of the
Ptolomée robe f. sœur f. maladies f. pl.

mind and those of the body.—These bracelets and those of his
esprit m. v. corps m. — m. pl.

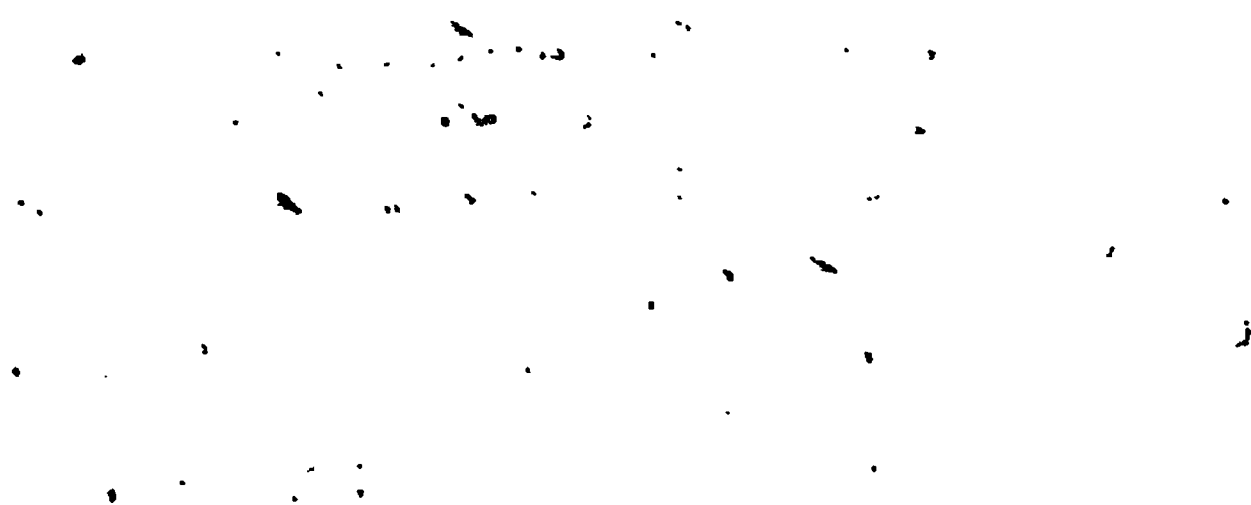
daughter.—The climate of Switzerland is preferable to that of Italy.—
fille f. climat m. la Suisse est préférable l'Italie

The state of France is very different from that of England.—(There are)
état m. v. la — est très-différent l'Angleterre Voilà

two horses: this is four years old,* and that five.—There are some
deux chevaux a quatre ans cinq.

apricots: these are ripe, and those (are not).—Give me this or that.—
abricots m. pl. sont mûrs ne le sont pas Donnez-moi

Keep that for yourself.—I (was speaking) of this and not of that
Gardez pour vous-même parlais non pas



Lequel makes a distinction, and is
used in interrogative sentences
when asking which person or thing
among several.

quel est la? qui apuley - vous?
lequel préferez - vous

G. L. 42.

LESSON IV.

Of the Relative Pronouns.

The relative pronouns are such as relate in general to some word or phrase going before, which is thence called the antecedent, and which they immediately follow, agreeing with it in gender and number: they are—*qui*, *que*, *lequel*, *dont*, in the sense of *who*, *whom*, *that*, *which*, *of whom* or *of which*, in English: as,—*La dame qui vient d'entrer*, the lady who has just gone in; &c.

When the relative pronouns *qui*, *lequel*, *quel*, *who*, *which*, or *what*, are used to ask questions, they are called interrogatives, and relate to some word or phrase, that is not antecedent, but subsequent, and which is specified in the answer: as,—*Qui est là? Mademoiselle votre sœur*; Who is there? Your sister.

The following examples show the different constructions to which the relative pronouns, and the interrogatives *quel*? and *quoi*? (what?) are subject.

1. Whenever the relative pronouns *who*, *whom*, *that*, *which*, &c., are used in English with reference to some word or phrase going before, they are expressed in French as follows:—

Mas. and Fem., Sing. and Plural.

Who, which or that,	by:—	<i>Qui</i> .
Of whom or of which,	by:—	<i>Dont</i> .
To whom or to which,	by:—	<i>À qui</i> .
Whom, that or which,	by:—	<i>Que</i> , for the direct object of a verb.
From whom,	by:—	<i>De qui</i> .

Note.—*Qui* and *que* are used with reference to persons and things of whichever gender and number.

2. Whenever *who* or *whom* is used to ask a question, it is expressed in French:—

Who?	by:—	<i>Qui?</i> or <i>Qui est-ce qui?</i>
Of whom?	by:—	<i>De qui?</i>
To whom?	by:—	<i>À qui?</i>
Whom?	by:—	<i>Qui?</i>
From whom?	by:—	<i>De qui?</i>

3. When *which* is followed by the preposition *of*, and used to ask which person or thing out of several, or when, without being followed by the preposition *of*, it is used relatively to a noun going before, it is expressed in French in the following manner:—

Singular.

Plural.

		Mas.	Fem.	Mas.	Fem.
Which,	by:—	<i>Lequel</i> ,	<i>laquelle</i> ;	<i>lesquels</i> ,	<i>lesquelles</i> .
Of or from which,	by:—	<i>Duquel</i> ,	<i>de laquelle</i> ;	<i>desquels</i> ,	<i>desquelles</i> .
At or to which,	by:—	<i>Auquel</i> ,	<i>à laquelle</i> ;	<i>auxquels</i> ,	<i>auxquelles</i> .

4. *What*, used by way of interrogation, immediately before a substantive, or before a tense of the verb *to be*, followed by a substantive or noun in English, as—*what street is it? what is her name?* is expressed in French:—

		<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
		<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
What?	by:—	<i>Quel?</i>	<i>quelle?</i>	<i>quels?</i>	<i>quelles?</i>
Of or from what?	by:—	<i>De quel?</i>	<i>de quelle?</i>	<i>de quels?</i>	<i>de quelles?</i>
At or to what?	by:—	<i>À quel?</i>	<i>à quelle?</i>	<i>à quels?</i>	<i>à quelles?</i>

5. When *what* is used either as an exclamation or interrogation, or after a preposition, it is expressed in French thus:—

What!	by:—	<i>Quoi!</i> and <i>quoi de!</i> before an adjective.
Of or from what?	by:—	<i>De quoi?</i>
At or to what?	by:—	<i>À quoi?</i>
What?	by:—	<i>Que?</i> for the direct object of a verb, and <i>quoi</i> after a preposition.

ESSAY IV.

The man who speaks.—		The young lady who dances.—		The woman whom I	
		<i>parle</i>	<i>demoiselle f.</i>	<i>danse</i>	
2 I know.—	The pens	which I have.—		The master of whom you (complain).	
	<i>connais</i>	<i>plumes f. pl.</i>		<i>maître m.</i>	<i>vous plaignez</i>
—The horses		of which he has spoken (to me).—		The person from	
		<i>chevaux m. pl.</i>	<i>2 parlé 1m'</i>	<i>personne f.</i>	
whom we have received that		news.—		The young man whom you love.—	
		<i>reçu</i>	<i>nouvelle f.</i>	<i>jeune</i>	<i> aimez</i>
children who are obedient.—		The gentlemen		to whom I write.—	
		<i>enfants m. pl.</i>	<i>sont obéissans</i>	<i>messieurs m. pl.</i>	<i>écris</i>
is there?—		Of whom do* you speak?—		Whom do* you call?—	
		<i>est là</i>	<i>2 1parlez-</i>	<i>2 1appelez-</i>	
he do?—		Whom shall* I believe?—		Which	
		<i>2 1fait-</i>	<i>2 1croirai-</i>	<i>m. sing.</i>	<i>deux livres m. pl.</i>
Of which		of your sisters		do you speak?—	
		<i>f. sing.</i>	<i>sœurs f. pl.</i>	<i>f. sing.</i>	
houses		do* you go?—		Who is that tall young man?—	
		<i>maisons f. pl.</i>	<i>2 1allez-</i>	<i>est grand</i>	<i>chemin m.</i>
has he taken?—		What book		do* you read?—	
		<i>pris</i>	<i>livre m.</i>	<i>2 1lisez-</i>	<i>rue f. est-ce</i>
day		have they fixed?—		What are their motives?—	
		<i>jour m.</i>	<i>fixé</i>	<i>sont motifs m. pl.</i>	<i>église f.</i>
(does he go)?—		What!—		Of what do* you accuse him?—	
		<i>va-t-il</i>	<i>2 1accusez-</i>	<i>1p</i>	<i>2 3pensez-</i>
of?—		In what have I neglected to fulfil		my duty?—	
		<i>1à En</i>	<i>négligé de remplir</i>	<i>devoir m.</i>	<i>2 1dites-</i>

Note.—The above articles and pronouns are fully explained in the following lessons.

LESSON V.

Of the Indefinite Article, un, une, a or an.

GENERAL RULE.—When several substantives follow each other in a sentence, and are used in an individual sense, the indefinite article *un* or *une* is used before each of them in French, according to its respec-

tive gender ; although *a* or *an*, in a series of substantives, be frequently put before the first only in English, and understood before those which succeed : as,—a father, mother, and child, *un père, une mère, et un enfant*.

When *a* or *an* is preceded by one of the prepositions *of* or *from*, *at* or *to* ; *of* or *from* is expressed by (*d'*) before *un* or *une*, and *at* or *to* by *à*, as in the following examples :—

A book,	<i>Un livre.</i>	A young lady,	<i>Une demoiselle.</i>
Of or from a book,	<i>D'un livre.</i>	Of or from a young lady,	<i>D'une demoiselle.</i>
At or to a book,	<i>À un livre.</i>	At or to a young lady,	<i>À une demoiselle.</i>

ESSAY V.

It is necessary to observe that the abbreviations *imp. pret. def.* and *pret. indef.* which are used in the following essays, serve to denote that the succeeding verbs are to be put, in French, either in the imperfect, preterit definite, or preterit indefinite of the indicative, according as each abbreviation indicates.

A boy.—A girl.—A (chamber-maid).—A maid of honour.—The look 29
garçon m. fille f. femme de chambre f. fille f. d'honneur regard m.
of an amiable child.—The door of a house.—I have written to a friend.—
2aimable 1enfant m. porte f. maison f. écrit ami m.
He has not spoken to a lady.—She has a good pear.—You have a fine apricot.—
parlé dame f. bonne poire f. bel abricot m.
They had a garden, a park, and a river. — I shall have a horse. — Will
imp. jardin m. parc m. et rivière f. cheval m.
you have a carriage ?—We shall not have a new phaëton.—I should have had
voiture f. nouveau phaëton m.
a blue coat.—Would you have had a watch ?— Had she not a pair of
2bleu 1habit m. montre f. imp. paire f. de
(silk stockings), and a pair of (new shoes) ?—We had a good dinner.—
bas de soie souliers neufs pret def. diner m.
Had they not a good supper ?—I have received a letter from a charming
pret. def. souper m. reçu lettre f. charmante
young lady.—Give me a glass of water.—Bring me a knife, a
demoiselle f. Donnez-moi verre m. d'eau Apportez-moi couteau m.
fork, and a spoon.—Take a glass of wine.—(Will you take) a bit of
fourchette f. cuiller f. Prenez vin Voulez-vous peu m.
cheese ?—I have taken a cup of tea and a cup of coffee.—Mr. S * * *
*fromage pris tasse f. thé café M. S * * **
(has sent us) a chest of oranges.—We have received this fruit from a friend.
nous a envoyé caisse f. — ce — ami m.

LESSON VI.

Of the Definite Article.

The definite article may be divided into simple and compound.

The simple article is *le, la, les*, the. The compound *du, des*, of or from the, and *au, aux*, at or to the. *Du, des*, and *au, aux*, are formed

by a contraction of the prepositions *de* and *à* with the simple article *le* and *les*.

Le is used before a substantive masculine singular, beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated ; *l'*, before a noun, either masculine or feminine singular, beginning with a vowel or *h* mute ; and *les*, before plural nouns of both genders, whatever their initial may be.

Du and *au* are used, instead of *de le* and *à le*, before substantives masculine singular, beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated ; and *des* and *aux*, in the place of *de les* and *à les*, before plural nouns, either masculine or feminine, beginning with a vowel, a consonant, or *h* mute.

La, *de la*, *à la*, must always be used before a substantive feminine singular, beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated ; and *l'*, *de l'*, and *à l'*, before nouns singular, either masculine or feminine, beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

When a substantive is preceded by the adjective *tout* or *tous*, neither the contracted article *du* or *des*, nor *au* or *aux*, being used before it, in such a case, the preposition *de* or *à* must be placed before *tout* or *tous*, with *le* or *les*, according to the sense, before the substantive, as follows :

	Singular.		Plural.
Every body,	<i>Tout le monde.</i>	All men,	<i>Tous les hommes.</i>
Of or from every body,	<i>De tout le monde.</i>	Of or from all men,	<i>De tous les hommes.</i>
At or to every body,	<i>À tout le monde.</i>	At or to all men,	<i>À tous les hommes.</i>

OBSERVE.—When *of* or *from*, or *at* or *to*, occurs before proper names of persons or places, or before a pronoun or an adverb, or also sometimes before the names of countries after the verbs *Venir* and *Revenir*, and some others implying going from a country to another, *of* or *from* is expressed in French by *de*, or *d'* if the word begins with a vowel or *h* mute, and *at* or *to* by *à* ; but never by *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, or *des*, nor *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, or *aux*, except in the cases mentioned in the Syntax : as,—from Paris to London, *de Paris à Londres*, and not *du Paris au Londres*. That belongs to William or to Peter, *cela appartient à Guillaume ou à Pierre* ; and not—*au Guillaume ou au Pierre*. I come from France, *je viens de France* ; and not—*de la France*.

GENERAL RULE.—The definite article, either simple or compound, is mostly used in French before every substantive, taken in a general or particular sense, and agrees with it in gender and number, whether it be used in English or not : as,—the gentleman, lady, and boy are gone, *LE monsieur, LA dame, et LE garçon sont partis*. Vice is odious, *LE vice est odieux*. Ladies are amiable, *LES dames sont aimables*.

Note.—Although the definite article be frequently omitted after the prepositions *of* or *from* and *at* or *to* occurring between two or more substantives following and depending on each other in English, it is usually expressed in French, except in the cases mentioned in the Syntax : as,—the love of glory, *l'amour de la gloire* ; and not *l'amour de gloire*. I went to market with her, *j'allai au marché avec elle* ; and not *à marché*.

ESSAY VI.

The father, mother, and children.—The love of glory.—The fear of
père m. mère f. enfans m. pl. amour m. v. gloire f. crainte f.
 shame.—The prattling of girls.—The malice of the boys.—The four
honte f. babil m. filles f. pl. — f. garçons m. pl. quatre
 seasons of the year.—I have spoken to (Mr. D.'s sister).—(Were you
*saisons f. pl. année f. v. parlé la sœur de M. D*** Ne par-*
 not speaking) to the child?—Honour forbids it.—Have you given my
avez-vous pas enfant m. v. Honneur m. h. ²défend ¹le donné
 letter to the man?—The hope of success.—The lily is the emblem
lettre f. homme m. h. espoir m. v. succès m. lis m. emblème m. v.
 of virginity, innocence, purity, and candour.—I prefer spring to summer,
virginité f. — f. v. pureté f. candeur f. préfère printemps m. été m. v.
 autumn, and winter.—The east, the west, the north, and the south, are
automne m. v. hiver m. h. est m. v. ouest m. v. nord m. sud m.
 the four cardinal points.—I have been dazzled by the rays of the sun.—
²cardinaux ¹—m. pl. ébloui par rayons m. pl. soleil m.
 (I shall go) to the village this evening.—Will you come with me to the market?—
irai ²—m. ¹soir m. Voulez- venir avec moi marché m.
 We went together to the country.—The fear of death and the love of glory
allâmes ensemble campagne f. mort f. amour m. v.
 are natural to all men.—Cut the string in two.—Take this to the
naturels hommes m. pl. Coupez corde f. en deux Portez ceci
 women.—Send that to the men.—I come from France and Italy.—
femmes f. pl. Envoyez cela hommes m. pl. viens — Italie f. v.
 He (will return) from Spain in two months.—That belongs to John or to
reviendra Espagne f. v. en mois appartient Jean ou
 Peter.—From Paris to Amsterdam.—He (is the laughing-stock of) every
Pierre — — sert de jouet à
 body.—She told everybody of* it.—They gave some to all the children.
²dit ³à ⁴ ¹le ²donnèrent ¹en

LESSON VII.

Of the Partitive Article.

The partitive article is *some* or *any*, which is expressed in French by *du*, before a substantive masculine singular, beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated; by *de la*, before a substantive feminine singular, likewise beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated; by *de l'*, before a substantive, either masculine or feminine singular, beginning with a vowel or *h* mute; and by *des*, before a substantive plural, of either gender, and whatever its initial may be.

GENERAL RULE.—Whenever we wish to express a portion or part of one or more things, we use in French the partitive article *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, or *des*, before the thing or each of the things alluded to, according

to its gender or number, whether *some* or *any* be expressed or understood in English: as,—we had some soup, meat, and vegetables, *nous eûmes du potage, de la viande, et des légumes*.

When an adjective or a participle precedes the thing or things of which we express a portion or part, as—*give me some good wine*, the preposition *de* is then used in French before the adjective or participle, if it begins with a consonant or *h* aspirated, and *d'*, if it begins with a vowel or *h* mute, whatever its gender or number may be, instead of *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, or *des*: as,—*give me some good wine, donnez-moi de bon vin*, and not *du bon vin*.

It must be particularly attended to, that it is only when a substantive is taken in a partitive sense, that *de* or *d'* is used instead of *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, or *des*, before the adjective or participle preceding it; for, should a substantive be used in a particular, determinate sense, the article *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, or *des*, must then be employed before the adjective or participle preceding it: as,—*Thomas, bring me some of the good wine which I bought yesterday, Thomas, apportez-moi du bon vin que j'achetai hier*, and not *de bon vin*, &c. In this case, and any similar one, the article always answers to *of the*, expressed or understood in English, and not to *some* or *any*.

OBSERVE.—When *some* or *any* does not precede a substantive, but comes by itself after a verb, referring to something which has been mentioned before, it is expressed in French by *en*, which is put before the verb in a simple tense, and before the auxiliary in a compound one, except when the verb is in the imperative affirmatively used, in which case *en* is placed after it: as,—*have you any apples? yes, I have some; avez-vous des pommes? oui, j'en ai*. Go and offer some to the lady and gentleman, *allez en offrir à madame et à monsieur*. Give me some, *donnez-m'en*.

Should *some* or *any* be understood in any such sentence in English, *en* must likewise be expressed in French.

En is also used in French before a verb which has a noun of number or an indeterminate pronoun, referring to something mentioned before, for its object: as,—*How many children has he? He has only one now, but he has had two; Combien d'enfans a-t-il? Il n'en a qu'un à présent, mais il en a eu deux*.

En serves also in French, with verbs governing *de*, to recall the idea of anything that has been mentioned before, whether its equivalent be expressed in English or not: as,—*I am glad of it, j'en suis bien-aise*; because *être bien-aise* governs *de*; but this belongs to the pronouns.

Hence or *from thence*, used after a verb, by which the coming from some place mentioned is expressed, is also construed into French by *en*, which is placed before the verb in a simple tense, and before the auxiliary in a compound one: as,—*I come from thence, j'en viens*.—In this case, *en* is an adverb.

The article definite is used after the verb *avoir* before substantives which name something belonging to the body and are followed by an adj: *elle a la main blanche*; but the indefinite article must be used when the adjective precedes; *elle a une jolie main*. Nouns plural take *de* only if the adj. precedes, *elle a de belles mains*, when the adj. follows the article definite is used; *il a les yeux bleus*, rather than *des yeux bleus*. R. 257

When we wish to fix the attention on the substance, that is, to make it the principal idea, we sometimes use the article definite, as *voilà de la vraie poésie, c'est là de la bonne philosophie*

When the adj. and the subst. are so far united, as to form but one and the same word the article partitive must be used as *des petit-maitres*

Some authors have used the article definite before a substantive taken in a partitive sense, and preceded by an adj. but which may be separated from it, as *Le autre jour il interrogait des petits enfans*. In that case the adj. and subst. must be considered as forming an inseparable word.

ESSAY VII.

Give me some bread and butter.—Have you any (roast-meat)?—No ;
Donnez-moi pain m. beurre m. rôti m.

but we have some (very nice boiled meat).—(Do you choose) fat or
mais excellent bouilli Voulez-vous gras m. ou

lean?—A little of both, (if you please).—If you have any cheese,
maigre m. peu l'un et de l'autre s'il vous plaît Si fromage m.

bring (me some).—We have some apples, oranges, and lemons.—(There
apportez-m'en pommes f. pl. — f. pl. citrons m. pl. voi-

are) some raspberries and strawberries.—Put some oil and vinegar
là framboises f. pl. fraises f. pl. mettez huile f. h. vinaigre m

into the salad.—Eat some vegetables.—Will you have* any sauce?—
dans salade f. mangez légumes m. pl. Voulez-vous — f.

(Shall I help you to) some fish?—Help the* gentleman to some Cham-
Vous offrirai-je poisson m. Versez monsieur à 1 2 —

pagne.—Have you offered any (to the lady)?—Yes; but she prefers some
—m. offert à madame préfère

water.—Will you take some tea?—Yes; I will take some with pleasure.—
eau f. v. Voulez-vous prendre thé m. prendrai avec plaisir

(Help yourself to) some sugar and milk.—We had some fine peaches and
Prenez sucre m. lait m. imp. belles pêches

good apricots this year.—They sell good ink, good pens, and good
beaux abricots année f. vendent bonne encre bonnes plumes bon

paper.—France produces wine, oranges, and olives.—I have brought you
papier — f. produit vin m. — f. pl. — f. pl. 1 Je 3 ai 4 apporté 2 vous

some* of the fine cloth you (asked me for).—You have some beautiful
beau drap m. que m'aviez demandé superbe

(grapes), will you give me some?—If you want any, buy some.—(Did
raisin m. sing. 2 donner 1 m'en voulez achetez-en La

the woman bring) any cream?—No; she (could not) get any.—I should be
femme a-t-elle apporté crème f. n'a pas pu trouver 1 3 serais 33

obliged to* you, if you could procure me some.—Have you a gun?—No; I
4 obligé 2 pouviez 2 procurer 1 m'en fusil m. 1 imp.

had two very good ones* formerly; but I have none now.—(Are you going) to
2 4 5 très-bons 3 autrefois n'en point à présent allez-vous

the park?—No; we (are coming from it.)
parc m. 2 venons 1 en

LESSON VIII.

Of Substantives or Nouns.

A substantive or noun is the name of a person or animal, and in general of anything that we either see, touch, or feel, or that is the object of any of our senses, or of which we have some idea or notion: as—*Georges, George; table, table; soleil, sun; vice, vice; Londres, London; &c.*

Two things are to be considered in substantives, the gender and number.

1. The gender.—Gender is the distinction of sexes. There are only two genders in French, the masculine and the feminine. Whatever is neuter in English must therefore belong to either the one or the other of these two genders in French.

All substantives, commonly used with reference to men or male animals alone, and also to those objects to which we fancifully attribute the qualities of the male, are masculine: as,—*Alexandre*, Alexander; *lion*, lion; *vainqueur*, conqueror; *jugé*, judge; *génie*, genius; &c.

The feminine belongs to women and all animals of the female kind; as likewise to all objects to which we attribute feminine qualities: as,—*Joséphine*, Josephine; *lune*, moon; *terre*, earth; &c.

As there are a great many names of inanimate things, the genders of which could never be ascertained from the above explanation, I have laid down the following general rule and exceptions, which will be found of great practical utility.

GENERAL RULE.—Nouns ending with a consonant, or with *a, i, o, u*, or also with *é* accented, not preceded by *t*, are generally masculine: as,—*combat*, fight; *opéra*, opera; *oubli*, oblivion; *écho*, echo; *chapeau*, hat; *café*, coffee; &c.: whereas those which end with *e* mute, or with *é* or *ie* accented, preceded by *t*, are feminine: as,—*pomme*, apple; *bonté*, goodness; *amitié*, friendship; &c.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Exceptions to Nouns ending with a Consonant.

Nouns, the terminations of which are either *ion* or *aion*, are feminine: as,—*nation*, nation; *démangeaison*, itching: except *bastion*, bastion; *champion*, champion; *croupion*, rump; *lampion*, a small lamp; *million*, million; *pion*, pawn; *talion*, retaliation; *septentrion*, north; *scorpion*, scorpion; which are masculine.

The following nouns ending either with a consonant or with *i* or *u* are also feminine.

<i>Après-midi</i> , and <i>m.</i>	afternoon.	<i>Eau</i> ,	water.
<i>Brebis</i> ,	sheep.	<i>Façon</i> ,	making, ceremony.
<i>Boisson</i> ,	drink, beverage.	<i>Faim</i> ,	hunger.
<i>Bru</i> ,	daughter-in-law.	<i>Faveur</i> ,	favour.
<i>Chair</i> ,	flesh.	<i>Fin</i> ,	end.
<i>Chaleur</i> ,	heat.	<i>Fleur</i> ,	flower.
<i>Chanson</i> ,	song.	<i>Fleur de lis</i> ,	flower-de-luce.
<i>Chauve-souris</i> ,	bat.	<i>Foi</i> ,	faith.
<i>Chaux</i> ,	lime.	<i>Fois</i> ,	time.
<i>Clef</i> ,	key.	<i>Foison</i> ,	plentifulness.
<i>Cour</i> ,	yard, court.	<i>Forêt</i> ,	forest.
<i>Croix</i> ,	cross.	<i>Fourmi</i> ,	ant.
<i>Cuiller</i> ,	spoon.	<i>Garnison</i> ,	garrison.
<i>Crisson</i> ,	baking.	<i>Glu</i> ,	bird-lime.
<i>Dent</i> ,	tooth.	<i>Guérison</i> ,	cure.
<i>Dot</i> ,	portion, dowry.	<i>Halt</i> ,	halter.

<i>Leçon,</i>	lesson.	<i>Peau,</i>	skin.
<i>Loi,</i>	law.	<i>Perdrix,</i>	partridge.
<i>Main,</i>	hand.	<i>Plupart,</i>	most part.
<i>Maman,</i>	mamma.	<i>Poir,</i>	pitch.
<i>Mer,</i>	sea.	<i>Rançon,</i>	ransom.
<i>Merci,</i>	mercy.	<i>Sœur,</i>	sister.
<i>Mœurs,</i>	manners, morals.	<i>Soif,</i>	thirst.
<i>Moisson,</i>	harvest.	<i>Souris,</i>	mouse.
<i>Mort,</i>	death.	<i>Toison,</i>	fleece.
<i>Mousson,</i>	monsoon.	<i>Toussaint,</i>	All Saints' Day.
<i>Nef,</i>	nave, body of a church.	<i>Tour,</i>	tower.
<i>Noir,</i>	nut.	<i>Toux,</i>	cough.
<i>Nuit,</i>	night.	<i>Trahison,</i>	treason.
<i>Paix,</i>	peace.	<i>Tribu,</i>	tribe.
<i>Pâmoison,</i>	swoon.	<i>Tumeur,</i>	swelling.
<i>Part,</i>	part.	<i>Vertu,</i>	virtue.
<i>Prison,</i>	prison.	<i>Vis,</i>	screw.
		<i>Voix,</i>	voice.

There are also several substantives in *eur*, denoting properties, qualities, and dimensions, which are feminine: as,—*laideur*, ugliness; *lenteur*, slowness; *hauteur*, haughtiness, height; *épaisseur*, thickness; *grosseur*, bigness; *longueur*, length; *largeur*, breadth; &c.

2. Exceptions to Nouns ending with *e* mute.

Nouns ending in *age*, *âge*, *ège*, *ège*, *ige*, *uge*, *uple*, *able*, *acle*, *âtre*, *aître*, *être*, *ître*, *ire*, *aire*, *asme*, *aume*, *ême*, *isme*, *iste*, *ome*, *ôme*, *oire*, *ordre*, and *ose*, are generally masculine: as,—*mariage*, marriage; *obstacle*, obstacle; *privilege*, privilege; *salaire*, salary; &c.: except *affaire*, business; *cage*, cage; *chaire*, pulpit; *crème*, cream; *cire*, wax; *décrottoire*, shoebrush; *écritoire*, inkhorn; *étable*, stable; *fable*, fable; *fenêtre*, window; *foire*, fair; *gloire*, glory; *grammaire*, grammar; *guêtre*, gaiter; *histoire*, history; *huître*, oyster; *image*, image; *mâchoire*, jaw; *mémoire*, memory; *mitre*, mitre; *nage*, swimming; *nageoire*, fin; *paire*, pair; *page*, page; *passoire*, cullender; *paume*, palm; *poire*, pear; *râcloire*, strickle; *rage*, rage; *satire*, satire; *table*, table; *tige*, the body of a tree; *épître*, epistle; *victoire*, victory; *vitre*, a pane of glass; *liste*, list; *batiste*, cambric; and a few others, which are feminine.

The following ending with *e* mute are likewise masculine:—

<i>Abyrne,</i>	abyss.	<i>Arbuste,</i>	shrub.
<i>Acre,</i>	acre.	<i>Architecte,</i>	architect.
<i>Acte,</i>	act.	<i>Article,</i>	article.
<i>Adverbe,</i>	adverb.	<i>Artifice,</i>	artifice.
<i>Adultère,</i>	adultery.	<i>Artiste,</i>	artist.
<i>Âne,</i>	ass.	<i>Asthme,</i>	asthma.
<i>Aigle,</i>	eagle.	<i>Asyle,</i>	asylum.
<i>Ange,</i>	angel.	<i>Astre,</i>	star.
<i>Angle,</i>	angle.	<i>Athée,</i>	atheist.
<i>Antre,</i>	den, cave.	<i>Augure,</i>	augury.
<i>Antagoniste,</i>	antagonist.	<i>Auspice,</i>	auspice.
<i>Antidote,</i>	antidote.	<i>Axe,</i>	axis.
<i>Arbre,</i>	tree.	<i>Bénéfice,</i>	benefice, benefit.

<i>Beurre,</i>	butter.	<i>Crocodile,</i>	crocodile.
<i>Bitume,</i>	bitumen.	<i>Culte,</i>	worship.
<i>Blâme,</i>	blame.	<i>Cube,</i>	cube.
<i>Bourgogne (vin),</i>	burgundy.	<i>Cygne,</i>	swan.
<i>Bronze,</i>	bronze.	<i>Cylindre,</i>	cylinder.
<i>Buste,</i>	bust.	<i>Danube,</i>	Danube.
<i>Câble,</i>	cable.	<i>Délire,</i>	delirium.
<i>Cadavre,</i>	corpse.	<i>Déluge,</i>	deluge, flood.
<i>Cadre,</i>	frame.	<i>Démérite,</i>	demerit.
<i>Calice,</i>	chalice.	<i>Derrière,</i>	back.
<i>Calm,</i>	calm.	<i>Désastre,</i>	disaster.
<i>Camphre,</i>	camphor.	<i>Désordre,</i>	disorder.
<i>Capitaine,</i>	captain.	<i>Diabie,</i>	devil.
<i>Caprice,</i>	whim.	<i>Dialogue,</i>	dialogue.
<i>Caractère,</i>	character.	<i>Diamètre,</i>	diameter.
<i>Carrosse,</i>	coach.	<i>Dilemme,</i>	dilemma.
<i>Casse-noisette,</i>	nut-cracker.	<i>Diocèse,</i>	diocese.
<i>Casque,</i>	helmet.	<i>Disciple,</i>	disciple.
<i>Catalogue,</i>	catalogue.	<i>Divorce,</i>	divorce.
<i>Centime,</i>	centime.	<i>Dogme,</i>	dogma.
<i>Centre,</i>	centre.	<i>Domaine,</i>	domain.
<i>Cercle,</i>	circle.	<i>Domicile,</i>	dwelling-house, a- bode.
<i>Champagne (vin),</i>	champagne.	<i>Doute,</i>	doubt.
<i>Change,</i>	change, exchange.	<i>Dogue,</i>	dog.
<i>Chanvre,</i>	hemp.	<i>Drame,</i>	drama.
<i>Chapitre,</i>	chapter.	<i>Droguiste,</i>	druggist.
<i>Charme,</i>	charm.	<i>Ébéniste,</i>	cabinet-maker.
<i>Chausse-pied,</i>	shoeing-horn.	<i>Ecclésiastique,</i>	ecclesiastic.
<i>Chef-d'œuvre,</i>	master-piece.	<i>Édifice,</i>	building.
<i>Chèvrefeuille,</i>	honey-suckle.	<i>Éloge,</i>	eulogy, praise.
<i>Chiffre,</i>	cypher.	<i>Empire,</i>	empire.
<i>Chimiste,</i>	chymist.	<i>Émétique,</i>	emetic.
<i>Cidre,</i>	cider.	<i>Emplâtre,</i>	plaster.
<i>Cimetière,</i>	churchyard.	<i>Episode,</i>	episode. 36
<i>Cirque,</i>	circus.	<i>Équilibre,</i>	equilibrium.
<i>Cloître,</i>	cloister.	<i>Escompte,</i>	discount.
<i>Coche,</i>	stage-coach, waggon.	<i>Espace,</i>	space.
<i>Coche d'eau,</i>	passage-boat.	<i>Évangile,</i>	gospel.
<i>Code,</i>	code.	<i>Exercice,</i>	exercise.
<i>Codicille,</i>	codicil.	<i>Exemple,</i>	example.
<i>Coffre,</i>	trunk.	<i>Faîte,</i>	top, pinnacle.
<i>Colosse,</i>	colossus.	<i>Faste,</i>	pageantry, pomp.
<i>Commerce,</i>	trade.	<i>Fiacre,</i>	hackney-coach.
<i>Compte,</i>	account.	<i>Flegme,</i>	phlegm.
<i>Concile,</i>	council.	<i>Fleuve,</i>	large river.
<i>Concombre,</i>	cucumber.	<i>Foie,</i>	liver.
<i>Conte,</i>	tale, story.	<i>Frontispice,</i>	frontispiece.
<i>Contraste,</i>	contrast.	<i>Génie,</i>	genius.
<i>Convive,</i>	guest.	<i>Gendre,</i>	son-in-law.
<i>Costume,</i>	costume.	<i>Genre,</i>	gender.
<i>Coudé,</i>	elbow.	<i>Germe,</i>	bud, shoot.
<i>Couvercle,</i>	lid.	<i>Geste,</i>	gesture, action.
<i>Crâne,</i>	skull.	<i>Gîte,</i>	dwelling, abode.
<i>Crêpe,</i>	crape.	<i>Glaive,</i>	sword.
<i>Crépuscule,</i>	twilight.	<i>Globe,</i>	globe.
<i>Crible,</i>	sieve.	<i>Globule,</i>	globule.
<i>Crime,</i>	crime.		

<i>Golfe,</i>	gulf.	<i>Modèle,</i>	model.
<i>Gouffre,</i>	gulf, pit, abyss.	<i>Monarque,</i>	monarch.
<i>Grude,</i>	degree.	<i>Monastère,</i>	monastery.
<i>Groupe,</i>	group.	<i>Monde,</i>	world.
<i>Guide,</i>	guide.	<i>Monopole,</i>	monopoly.
<i>Havre,</i>	harbour, haven.	<i>Monstre,</i>	monster.
<i>Homicide,</i>	homicide, man-slaughter.	<i>Moule,</i>	mould.
<i>Homme,</i>	man.	<i>Multiplicande,</i>	multiplicand.
<i>Hospice,</i>	asylum.	<i>Murmure,</i>	murmur.
<i>Hôte,</i>	host, landlord.	<i>Musée,</i>	museum.
<i>Hyménée,</i>	Hymen.	<i>Navire,</i>	ship.
<i>Incendie,</i>	conflagration, fire.	<i>Négoce,</i>	trade, commerce.
<i>Insecte,</i>	insect.	<i>Nombre,</i>	number.
<i>Interprète,</i>	interpreter.	<i>Office,</i>	office, business, part.
<i>Interrègne,</i>	interregnum.	<i>Oncle,</i>	uncle.
<i>Intervalle,</i>	interval.	<i>Ongle,</i>	nail.
<i>Isthme,</i>	isthmus.	<i>Opprobre,</i>	opprobrium.
<i>Jeûne,</i>	fast, fasting.	<i>Orchestre,</i>	orchestra.
<i>Juge,</i>	judge.	<i>Ordre,</i>	order.
<i>Jurisconsulte,</i>	jurisconsult.	<i>Orfèvre,</i>	goldsmith.
<i>Labyrinthe,</i>	labyrinth.	<i>Organe,</i>	organ.
<i>Laïque,</i>	layman.	<i>Pacte,</i>	pact, compact.
<i>Légume,</i>	vegetable.	<i>Panache,</i>	plume.
<i>Libelle,</i>	libel.	<i>Pantomime,</i>	pantomime.
<i>Libraire,</i>	bookseller.	<i>Pape,</i>	pope.
<i>Lièvre,</i>	hare.	<i>Parachute,</i>	parachute.
<i>Linge,</i>	linen.	<i>Parapluie,</i>	umbrella.
<i>Livre,</i>	book.	<i>Parjure,</i>	perjury.
<i>Lustre,</i>	lustre, gloss.	<i>Parricide,</i>	parricide.
<i>Luxe,</i>	luxury.	<i>Participe,</i>	participle.
<i>Madère (vin),</i>	madeira.	<i>Parterre,</i>	flower-garden, pit.
<i>Maire,</i>	mayor.	<i>Patrimoine,</i>	patrimony.
<i>Maitre,</i>	master.	<i>Peigne,</i>	comb.
<i>Mâle,</i>	male.	<i>Peintre,</i>	painter.
<i>Manque,</i>	want.	<i>Pène,</i>	bolt of a lock.
<i>Manifeste,</i>	manifesto.	<i>Peuple,</i>	people.
<i>Marbre,</i>	marble.	<i>Philosophe,</i>	philosopher.
<i>Martyre,</i>	martyrdom.	<i>Phénomène,</i>	phenomenon.
<i>Massacre,</i>	massacre.	<i>Piège,</i>	snare.
<i>Masque,</i>	mask.	<i>Pilote,</i>	pilot.
<i>Mausolée,</i>	mausoleum.	<i>Plâtre,</i>	plaster.
<i>Mélange,</i>	medley.	<i>Poêle,</i>	stove.
<i>Membre,</i>	member.	<i>Poème,</i>	poem.
<i>Mémoire,</i>	bill.	<i>Poivre,</i>	pepper.
<i>Mensonge,</i>	lie.	<i>Pôle,</i>	pole.
<i>Messie,</i>	Messiah.	<i>Porte-mouchettes,</i>	snuffer-stand.
<i>Mercuré,</i>	mercury.	<i>Porte-lettre,</i>	letter-case.
<i>Mérite,</i>	merit.	<i>Porte-voix,</i>	speaking-trumpet.
<i>Merle,</i>	black-bird.	<i>Portique,</i>	portico.
<i>Météore,</i>	meteor.	<i>Poste,</i>	post, place.
<i>Meuble,</i>	piece of furniture.	<i>Pouce,</i>	thumb.
<i>Meurtre,</i>	murder.	<i>Précepte,</i>	precept.
<i>Mille,</i>	mile.	<i>Précipice,</i>	precipice.
<i>Ministre,</i>	minister.	<i>Préjudice,</i>	prejudice, detriment.
<i>Ministère,</i>	ministry.	<i>Prélude,</i>	prelude.
<i>Mystère,</i>	mystery.	<i>Prestige,</i>	prestige.
		<i>Prétente,</i>	pretext, pretence.

<i>Prêtre,</i>	priest.	<i>Soufre,</i>	brimstone, sulphur.
<i>Principe,</i>	principle.	<i>Spectre,</i>	spectre, ghost.
<i>Prodige,</i>	prodigy.	<i>Squelette,</i>	skeleton.
<i>Prophète,</i>	prophet.	<i>Style,</i>	style.
<i>Proverbe,</i>	proverb.	<i>Subside,</i>	subsidy, aid.
<i>Pupitre,</i>	desk.	<i>Sucre,</i>	sugar.
<i>Régime,</i>	regime.	<i>Supplice,</i>	torment.
<i>Règne,</i>	reign.	<i>Symbole,</i>	symbol.
<i>Relâche,</i>	relaxation.	<i>Synonyme,</i>	synonyme.
<i>Remède,</i>	remedy.	<i>Télescope,</i>	telescope.
<i>Reproche,</i>	reproach.	<i>Temple,</i>	temple.
<i>Reptile,</i>	reptile.	<i>Terme,</i>	limit, term, bound.
<i>Reste,</i>	remainder.	<i>Texte,</i>	text.
<i>Rêve,</i>	dream.	<i>Thème,</i>	theme.
<i>Rhône,</i>	Rhone.	<i>Tigre,</i>	tiger.
<i>Rhume,</i>	cold.	<i>Tire-botte,</i>	boot-jack.
<i>Risque,</i>	risk.	<i>Tonnerre,</i>	thunder.
<i>Rôle,</i>	part, roll.	<i>Triangle,</i>	triangle.
<i>Sable,</i>	sand.	<i>Triomphe,</i>	triumph.
<i>Sabre,</i>	sabre.	<i>Trône,</i>	throne.
<i>Sacrifice,</i>	sacrifice.	<i>Trophée,</i>	trophy.
<i>Sanctuaire,</i>	sanctuary.	<i>Tropique,</i>	tropic.
<i>Scandale,</i>	scandal.	<i>Trouble,</i>	trouble.
<i>Sceptre,</i>	sceptre.	<i>Tube,</i>	tube, pipe.
<i>Schisme,</i>	schism.	<i>Tumulte,</i>	tumult.
<i>Scrupule,</i>	scruple.	<i>Ulcère,</i>	ulcer.
<i>Seigle,</i>	rye.	<i>Vase,</i>	vase.
<i>Sépulchre,</i>	sepulchre.	<i>Vacarme,</i>	uproar.
<i>Service,</i>	service.	<i>Vaudeville,</i>	vaudeville, ballad.
<i>Sexe,</i>	sex.	<i>Ventre,</i>	belly.
<i>Siècle,</i>	age, century.	<i>Verbe,</i>	verb.
<i>Siège,</i>	seat.	<i>Verre,</i>	glass.
<i>Signe,</i>	sign.	<i>Vestibule,</i>	vestibule.
<i>Silence,</i>	silence.	<i>Vice,</i>	vice.
<i>Singe,</i>	ape.	<i>Vinaigre,</i>	vinegar.
<i>Site,</i>	site, situation.	<i>Voile,</i>	veil.
<i>Somme,</i>	sleep, nap.	<i>Volume,</i>	volume.
<i>Songe,</i>	dream.	<i>Zèle,</i>	zeal.
<i>Souffle,</i>	breath.	<i>Zéphyre,</i>	zephyr.

The cardinal numbers *quatre, onze, douze, treize, quatorze, quinze, seize, trente, quarante, cinquante, soixante*, are also masculine. The ordinal, *deuxième, troisième, &c.*, are likewise masculine, unless they precede a substantive feminine, in which case they are feminine.

3. Exceptions to Nouns ending with *é* accented preceded by *t*.

The following nouns ending with *é* accented, preceded by *t*, are masculine:—*bénédicté*, a prayer before meals; *comité*, committee; *comté*, county; *côté*, side; *député*, deputy; *été*, summer; *pâté*, pie; *traité*, treaty.

PARTICULAR OBSERVATIONS.

The following remarks on the genders of some particular substantives will be found highly useful, although the gender of some of them may be ascertained from the above general rule and exceptions.

Gens of masc. when it comes before
its adj. and feminine when it fol-
lows it. Thus be soub des gens ri-
sols; be soub des bonnes gens.

Beh, though the adj coming before
gens is feminine, if another adjective
or participle follows, then latter
must be masculine, as Il y a de
certaines gens qui sont bien sots
non sottes. R.L. 102

Enfant *is* masc. when speaking of a boy.
feminine, when it is said of a girl.

Leire *masc.*, a book. *few*, a house.

Gen. requires all words preceding it
and relating to it to be in the fem-
inine, and all words following it to
be in the masculine. However in-
stead of *trates* *trés* is employed, 1st
when that adj. is the only one which
precedes the subst. gens. 2^d when
gens is preceded by an adj. which
has only one and the same termina-
tion for both genders, such as *ai-
mable*, *brave*, *honorable* etc. See p. 38

Mémoire, a bill, *masc.*: the memory, *few*.

Personne, nobody *masc.* a person, *few*

Quelque chose, *masc.* when it signifies
something. *quelque chose m'a été dit*.
It is *few*. when it means something
thing. *quelque chose qu'il ait dit*.
When immediately followed by an adj.
it takes *de* before that adj. as
quelque chose de curieux.

Tour, a turn, *masc.*: a tower *few*.

Toile, a veil *masc.*: a sail *few*.

1. All substantives commonly used with reference to men alone, or male animals, are, as before said, masculine, whatever their terminations may be: as—*usurpateur*, usurper; *vainqueur*, conqueror; *juge*, judge; whereas all those usually attributable to women, or female animals, are feminine, although their terminations may be masculine.

2. The names of days, months and seasons, are masculine: as—*Dimanche dernier*, on Sunday last. *Février prochain*, next February. *Le printemps*, the spring; *un été pluvieux*, a wet summer; *un bel automne*, a fine autumn; *un hiver froid*, a cold winter.

3. When *mi*, middle, is used before the name of a month, it forms with it a compound word, which is feminine: as—*la mi-Juin*, the middle of June; *la mi-Août*, the middle of August; &c.

4. The names of mountains are masculine: as—*le Mont-blanc*, Mount-blanc; *le Vésuve*, Vesuvius; &c.; but *les Alpes*, the Alps; *les Pyrénées*, the Pyrenees; *les Cordillères*, the Cordilleras; *les Vosges*, the Vosges, are feminine.

5. Words denoting the language of a country are masculine: as—*le Français*, French; *le Hollandais*, Dutch; &c.

6. The names of metals, half-metals, minerals and colours, are masculine: as—*l'or*, gold; *l'argent*, silver; *le platine*, platina; *le cuivre*, copper; *l'étain*, pewter; *le rouge*, red; *le vert*, green; &c.

7. The names of trees and shrubs are masculine: as—*chêne*, oak; *hêtre*, beech-tree: but *aubépine*, white thorn; *épine*, thorn; *ronce*, bramble; *yeuse*, holm-oak; *vigne*, vine; are feminine.

8. The infinitives of verbs, adjectives, adverbs, prepositions, and even sentences taken substantively, are masculine: as—*le manger*, eating; *le boire*, drinking; *le bon et le mauvais*, good and bad; *un car*, a for; *un si*, an if; *un qu'en dira-t-on*, a—what will they say.

9. Words compounded of a substantive and a verb are usually masculine, although the substantive itself may be feminine: as—*tire-botte*, boot-jack; *casse-noisette*, nut-cracker; &c.: but *garde-robe*, wardrobe, is feminine.

N.B. For further explanations on the genders of substantives, see the octavo edition, in 2 vol., page 10, and following.

ESSAY VIII.

The French and English have had a terrible sea-fight.—Have
Français m. pl. *Anglais m. pl.* ——— *combat naval*
 you been to the play this winter? No; but I (am going) this evening to the
comédie *hiver* *vous* *soir*
 opera.—We have some very nice brandy, (will you have any)? Yes, (give
opéra *excellente eau-de-vie* *en voulez-vous* *donnez-*
 me some, if you please.)—(I want) a new hat.—We all went in
m'en *s'il vous plaît* *Il me faut* *neuf* *chapeau* *tous l'âmes dans*
 a boat.—Do* you sell coffee?—No; we (only sell) tea.—He had a fine
bateau *vous vendez café* *ne vendons que du thé* *imp.* *beau*

horse.—She has not a very sonorous voice.—(It was) a forgetfulness.—
cheval ²fort ³sonore ¹voix C'était oublié

Give me an apple and a pear.—Lend her a needle.—Goodness is the basis
Donnez-moi pomme poire Prêtez-lui aiguille Bonté base

of her character.—My sister is gone out.—The French nation is very powerful.
caractère m. sœur sortie ²Française ¹— très-puissante

—A bad nut.—Where is the Fleet-prison?—She sang a pretty song.—
mauvaise noix Où ²de ³la ⁴flotte ¹— chanta jolie chanson

The key is on the table.—The children are in the yard.—I have a loose
clef sur — enfans m. pl. dans cour ²qui ³branle

tooth, which (pains me very much).—That water is not good.—The end of the
¹dent me fait un mal terrible eau bonne fin

book.—(It is) the first time.— Had they not a park and a river in the forest?
livre C'est première fois imp. parc rivière forêt

—This law will be abolished.—The hand of that young lady.—Stop, sir,
loi abolie main demoiselle Attendez

my mamma (is coming).—The harvest is not yet finished.—She has had a
maman vient moisson encore finie

bad night.—The sea is rough.—He (does not fear) death.—(There is) his
mauvaise nuit mer agitée ne craint pas mort Voilà

portion.—Thirst is worse than hunger.—Virtue has its charms.—A great
— Soif pire que ~~faim~~ Vertu ses charmes ⁴grand

misfortune befell them in America.—Her happiness is not (to be envied).—
⁶malheur ¹il ³arriva ²leur en Amérique bonheur à envier

We had a* sickness at the stomach all the way.—She has
pret. def. mal cœur pendant trajet

made a good choice.—Call the waiter.—The horizon is red.—Upon my
fait bon choix Appelez garçon — rouge Sur

honour.—(There was) nearly a million of men.—(It is) an enormous price.
honneur Il y avait près d' — hommes C'est ²énorme ¹prix

—Do* not drink that, (it is) poison.—A great age.—She will not have a great
ne buvez pas c'est — grand âge

fortune. Her salary is small.—The kingdom of Naples.—Have you not a cage?
— salaire modique royaume de —

—This cream is sour.—A silver inkstand.—He told me a long story.—
crème aigre ²d'argent ¹encrier ²conta ¹me longue histoire

I have not a good memory.—She read a page of the Bible.—(He is) an atheist.
bonne mémoire lut — C'est athée

—The churchyard of the parish.— Was she not in her carriage?—A fine
cimetière paroisse Imp. voiture belle

night.—(There was) a fire last week.—An interval of two or
nuit — Il y a eu incendie ²dernière ¹semaine intervalle ou

three days.—A magnificent building.—(Let us go) to the play.—(Shall we go
40 jours ²magnifique ¹édifice Allons spectacle Irons-nous

into the) pit?—Will you lend me an umbrella?—(There was) a great
au parterre Voulez- ²prêter ¹me parapluie Il régna profond

silence, when the thunder (was heard).—The county of Essex is not so
— quand tonnerre se fit entendre comté — si

peopled as that of Middlesex.—She had a* pain (in her) side.—A com-
peuplé que ————— *imp. mal au côté* ³ ⁴co-
mittee (was held).—We have had a fine summer.—Give me a little of that pie.
mité ¹on ²tint *bel été* *peu pâté*
—The treaty is made.—(He is) an usurper.—She was a* good judge.—
traité fait C'est usurpateur imp. bon juge
Do* you learn French?—Copper is not dear.—A fine oak.—A young vine.
² ¹apprenez Français *Cuivre cher beau chêne jeune vigne*

LESSON IX.

2. Of Number in Substantives.

Number is the distinction of one from many. Substantives admit of two numbers, the singular and the plural. The singular is used, when reference is made to one person or thing only, and the plural when reference is made to more than one.

Formation of the plural of substantives.

GENERAL RULE.—The plural of substantives, either masculine or feminine, is generally formed by the addition of *s* to the singular: as—*le jour*, the day; *les jours*, the days.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Nouns ending with *s*, *x*, or *z*, in the singular, are alike in the plural: as—*le fils*, the son; *les fils*, the sons. *La noix*, the nut; *les noix*, the nuts. *Le nez*, the nose; *les nez*, the noses.

2. Nouns which are terminated with *ant* or *ent* in the singular, have their final *t* changed into *s* for the plural, in words of more than one syllable; but the *t* is retained in words of one syllable only, and *s* is added to it: as—*enfant*, child; *enfants*, children; *appartement*, apartment; *appartemens*, apartments. *Dent*, tooth; *dents*, teeth.

3. Nouns, the terminations of which are either *au*, *eu* or *ou*, in the singular, have their plural formed by the addition of *x*: as—*chapeau*, hat; *chapeaux*, hats; *jeu*, game; *jeux*, games; *chou*, cabbage; *choux*, cabbages.

But *clou*, nail; *cou*, neck; *filou*, pickpocket; *fou*, fool; *hibou*, owl; *licou*, halter; *verrou*, bolt; *trou*, hole; follow the general rule, taking *s* for the plural.

4. The greater part of nouns ending in *al* or *ail* in the singular, become plural by changing *al* or *ail* into *aux*: as—*cheval*, horse; *chevaux*, horses; *travail*, work; *travaux*, works.

Éventail, fan, follows the general rule, taking *s* for the plural: thus—*éventails*, fans. 41

Ciel, heaven; *œil*, eye; make in the plural—*cieux*, heavens; *yeux*, eyes: but the plural *ciels* is used to denote the shades of a picture or the tops of beds: as,—*les ciels de ce tableau sont admirables*, the shades of that picture are beautiful. *Les ciels de ces lits sont de toute beauté*, the tops of these beds are magnificent.

The plural *ciels* is likewise used, when we speak of the sky under which a country lies: as—*l'Italie est sous un des plus beaux ciels de l'Europe*, Italy is under one of the finest skies in Europe.

Aïeul, grandfather, makes *aïeuls* in the plural, when we speak of our paternal and maternal grandfathers: as—*mes deux aïeuls ont rempli les premières charges*, my two grandfathers have filled the highest situations. But if we wish to denote those from whom our grandfathers descended, and all those who have preceded them, *aïeul* makes then *aïeux* in the plural: as—*nos aïeux*, our ancestors.

Ancêtres, ancestors; *catacombes*, catacombs; *ciseaux*, scissors; *entrailles*, bowels; *funérailles*, funeral; *hardes*, clothes; *mœurs*, morals; *mouchettes*, snuffers; *munitions*, ammunition; *ténèbres*, darkness; *vivres*, provisions, victuals, have no singular.

PLURAL OF COMPOUND WORDS.

GENERAL RULE.—Compound words which are united by a hyphen, either do or do not admit the mark of the plural, according as the sense or nature of each word, taken separately, expresses the singular or the plural.

The only words which can never take the mark of the plural in compound words, are the verb, the preposition, and the adverb: as—*des porte-mouchettes*, snuffer-stands; *des avant-coureurs*, fore-runners, &c.

Words also composed of Latin or foreign words do not generally take the mark of the plural: thus we write—*des forté-piano*, as *un forté-piano*; *des auto-da-fé*, as *un auto-da-fé*. We also write *des in-douze*, *des in-dix-huit*, &c., as *un in-douze*, *un in-dix-huit*, &c. ^

N.B. See the octavo edition, in 2 vol., for a list of compound words; as, likewise, for those substantives and expressions which have no plural, and for those which have no singular.

ESSAY. IX.

The pupil not having yet seen the rules for the formation of the plural of adjectives, it has been thought advisable, in the following essay, to give the adjectives in the plural, in order that they may agree with their respective substantives which are to be put in that number.

His daughters are young and handsome.—The flowers of these gardens are almost withered.—The kings of France and England have magnificent palaces.—These lilies belong to my little sisters.—All these nuts are bad.—Children (are fond of play).—(Are there) any apartments to let?—She has had a^a tooth-ache all the night.—These two bridges are the finest in Europe.—(Do you not hear) the singing of birds?—Their voices are not very sweet.—His sister's jewels are beautiful.—The gods of the pagans were despicable.—What delightful spots!—(Does she not sell) (ladies') hats?—No.—Send me some cabbages and turnips.—(Are there) (a great many)

filles *jeunes* *belles* *fleur* *jardin*
almost withered.—The kings of France and England have magnificent
presque flétries *Angleterre* *magnifiques*
palaces.—These lilies belong to my little sisters.—All these nuts are
palais *lis appartiennent* *petites sœur* *Toutes* *noix*
bad.—Children (are fond of play).—(Are there) any apartments to let?—She
mauvaises *Enfant* *aiment à jouer* *Y a-t-il* *appartement à louer*

42 *aux* *dents* *mal toute* *nuît* *pont* *plus beaux de*

Europe.—(Do you not hear) the singing of birds?—Their voices are not very
l'— N'entendez-vous point *chant* *oiseau* *voix* *fort*

sweet.—His sister's jewels are beautiful.—The gods of the pagans were
douces *De sa sœur* *les bijoux* *superbes* *dieu* *païens imp.*

despicable.—What delightful spots!—(Does she not sell) (ladies') hats?
méprisables *Quels charmans* *lieu* *Ne vend-elle pas* *de dames* *chapeau*

—No.—Send me some cabbages and turnips.—(Are there) (a great many)
Non *Envoyez-moi* *chou* *navet* *Y a-t-il* *beaucoup* *de*

But des braves, des opéras

S.S. 205

Words naturally invariable, and which
are only accidentally employed as sub-
stantives take no plural form such
as, les pourquoi, les car, les oui.

S.S. 205

Handwritten text, possibly a list or a series of notes, written in a cursive script. The text is arranged in several lines, with some words appearing to be underlined or emphasized. The handwriting is somewhat slanted and dense.

pickpockets in Paris?—No; (not so many) as in London.—(There are) more
filou à — pas autant qu' à Londres Il y a plus de
 fools than wise men.—They had two English horses.—Have you seen the
fou que de sages imp. Anglais cheval vu
 wild beasts?—He offered some fans to the ladies.—I have (a pain) (in my)
sauvages bête présenta éventail dame mal aux
 eyes.—Italy is under one of the finest skies in Europe.—My two grandfathers
œil Italie sous plus beaux ciel de l' aïeul
 have filled the highest situations.—Posterity will admire the victories of these
rempli premières charge Postérité admirera victoire
 generals.—Where are the estates of your parents?—(Are not these) the
général Où terre parent Ne sont-ce pas là
 playthings of our children?—Have you seen the catacombs?—Give me my
joujou enfant catacombe Donnez-moi
 scissors.—(Her funeral was performed) (the day before yesterday.)—His morals
ciseaux On lui fit ses funérailles avant-hier mœurs
 are corrupt.—Have you not got* the snuffers?—Your brothers have been
corrompus mouchettes frère
 very imprudent.—He has several pretty pictures.—Are provisions dear in
très-imprudens plusieurs jolis tableau sont-ils les vivres chers dans
 that country?—(Were there) any handsome ladies?—Tell him to bring
pays Y avait-il de belles dame Dites-lui de apporter
 me two small knives and two small forks.
m' petits couteau petites fourchette

LESSON X.

Of Adjectives and Participles Adjectively used.

An adjective, or a participle adjectively used, is a word which we add to a substantive to express its quality or manner of being.

Now, as substantives are either masculine or feminine, singular or plural, it follows that adjectives or participles adjectively used, referring to them, must take the same gender and number to express, with correctness, their different properties.

Adjectives may express the quality or manner of being of substantives to a greater or less extent: which produces the degrees of comparison.

Three things are therefore to be considered in adjectives:—the gender, number, and degrees of comparison or signification.

1. *Of the Gender of Adjectives and Participles Adjectively used;—*
or, Formation of the Feminine of Adjectives and Participles Adjectively used. 43

GENERAL RULE.—Adjectives and participles adjectively used, ending in the masculine singular with a consonant, or any other vowel than *e* mute, usually become feminine by the addition of *e* mute to their termination; whereas those which end with *e* mute are alike in both gen-

ders : as—*grand*, m. sing. *grande*, f. sing. great. *Poli*, m. sing. *polie*, f. sing. polite. *Aimé*, m. sing. *aimée*, f. sing. loved. *Sage*, m. sing. *sage*, f. sing. wise ; &c.

We must except :—1. Adjectives ending in *f* in the masculine singular, the feminine of which is formed by changing *f* into *ve* : as—*neuf*, m. *neuve*, f. new.

2. Adjectives ending in *eux*, in the masculine singular, which become feminine by changing *eux* into *euse* : as—*heureux*, m. *heureuse*, f. happy.—*Vieux*, old, makes *vieille* in the feminine.

3. Adjectives ending with any of the ten following terminations :—*ais*, *as*, *et*, *el*, *eil*, *ien*, *on*, *os*, *ot*, *ul*, of which the feminine is formed by doubling the final consonant, and adding *e* mute to it : as—*épais*, *épaisse*, thick ; *gras*, *grasse*, fat ; *sujet*, *sujette*, subject ; *cruel*, *cruelle*, cruel ; *pareil*, *pareille*, like ; *ancien*, *ancienne*, ancient ; *bon*, *bonne*, good ; *gros*, *grosse*, big ; *sot*, *sotte*, foolish ; *nul*, *nulle*, nul.

Mauvais, however, makes *mauvaise* in the feminine.

Complet, complete ; *discret*, discreet ; *dévo*t, devout ; *indiscret*, indiscreet ; *inquiet*, uneasy ; *incomplet*, incomplete ; *prêt*, ready ; *replet*, replete ; *secret*, secret ; likewise follow the general rule in the formation of their feminine : that is, they merely take an *e* mute, without doubling their last consonant ; but they require a grave accent over the *e* which precedes the *t* in their termination : as, *complet*, *complète* ; *discret*, *discrète* ; &c. ; *prêt* must be excepted, as it preserves the same circumflex accent which it has in the masculine : thus—*prêt*, *prête*.

4. The following adjectives, of which the feminine is quite irregularly formed :—

<i>Beau</i> ,	<i>belle</i> ,	fine.	<i>Jaloux</i> ,	<i>jalouse</i> ,	jealous.
<i>Bénin</i> ,	<i>bénigne</i> ,	benign.	<i>Jumeau</i> ,	<i>jumelle</i> ,	twin.
<i>Blanc</i> ,	<i>blanche</i> ,	white.	<i>Long</i> ,	<i>longue</i> ,	long.
<i>Caduc</i> ,	<i>caduque</i> ,	decayed.	<i>Malin</i> ,	<i>maligne</i> ,	mischievous.
<i>Doux</i> ,	<i>douce</i> ,	sweet.	<i>Mou</i> ,	<i>molle</i> ,	soft.
<i>Faux</i> ,	<i>fausse</i> ,	false.	<i>Nouveau</i> ,	<i>nouvelle</i> ,	new.
<i>Favori</i> ,	<i>favorite</i> ,	favourite.	<i>Public</i> ,	<i>publique</i> ,	public.
<i>Fou</i> ,	<i>folle</i> ,	foolish.	<i>Roux</i> ,	<i>rousse</i> ,	reddish.
<i>Frais</i> ,	<i>fraîche</i> ,	fresh.	<i>Sec</i> ,	<i>sèche</i> ,	dry.
<i>Franc</i> ,	<i>franche</i> ,	frank.	<i>Tiers</i> ,	<i>tierce</i> ,	third.
<i>Genti</i> l,	<i>gentille</i> ,	pretty.	<i>Traître</i> ,	<i>traîtresse</i> ,	traitor.
<i>Grec</i> ,	<i>Grecque</i> ,	Greek.	<i>Turc</i> ,	<i>Turque</i> ,	Turkish.

Observe.—*Beau*, *nouveau*, *fou*, *mou*, *vieux*, are changed into *bel*, *nouvel*, *fol*, *mol*, *vieil*, when coming before a substantive masculine which begins with a vowel or *h* mute : as—*un BEL homme*, a fine man ; *un NOUVEL acteur*, a new actor ; *un VIEIL habit*, an old coat ; &c. It is by adding *le* to this last termination that their feminine is formed ; thus—*bel*, *belle* ; *nouvel*, *nouvelle* ; &c.

Remark.—Several words ending in *eur*, whether adjectives or substantives, have a peculiar termination in the feminine : thus—*accusateur*, accuser, makes *accusa-trice* ; *acteur*, actor, *actrice* ; *buveur*, drinker, *buveuse* ; *chanteur*, singer, *cantatrice*, when meaning a woman celebrated in the art of singing, and *chanteuse*, any woman who can sing ; *empereur*, emperor, *impératrice* ; *inspecteur*, overseer, *inspectrice* ; *instituteur*, institutor, *institutrice* ; *pêcheur*, sinner, *pécheresse* ; *protecteur*, protector, *protectrice* ; &c.

But *antérieur*, anterior; *inférieur*, inferior; *majeur*, of age; *meilleur*, better; *mineur*, under age; *supérieur*, superior, and a few others, quoted in the octavo edition, in 2 vol., follow the general rule in the formation of their feminine, that is to say, merely take an *e* mute: as—*antérieur*, *antérieure*; *majeur*, *majeure*; *meilleur*, *meilleure*; &c.

PLACE AND AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES
ADJECTIVELY USED.

GENERAL RULE.—Adjectives, and participles adjectively used, generally follow their respective substantives in French, and agree with them in gender and number: as—a sensible woman, *une femme sensible*; a well written letter, *une lettre bien écrite*.

The twenty-two following:—*ancien*, ancient; *aucun*, none, not any; *beau*, fine; *bon*, good; *cher*, dear; *digne*, worthy; *grand*, great; *gros*, big; *habile*, clever; *jeune*, young; *joli*, pretty; *mauvais*, bad; *méchante*, wicked; *meilleur*, better; *moindre*, least; *nouveau*, new; *petit*, little; *saint*, holy; *seul*, alone; *vieux* and *vieil*, old; *vilain*, ugly; *triste*, sad; or their feminine, must however be excepted, as they usually precede their respective substantives, when used in immediate conjunction with them; but still agreeing in gender and number with them: as—*une ANCIENNE coutume*, an old custom; *un BEAU cheval*, a fine horse; *une JOLIE fille*, a pretty girl; &c.

The articles, the demonstrative, the possessive and indefinite pronouns, as likewise the numerical adjectives, precede also their respective substantives: as—*LES hommes*, the men; *CETTE maison*, this house; *VOTRE livre*, your book; *le dixième régiment*, the tenth regiment; &c.

ESSAY X.

His wife is tall and handsome.—Their house is too small.—That church
femme grand beau maison trop petit église
 is badly built.—My sister was beloved by him.—That woman has been very
mal bâti sœur imp. chéri de lui femme très-
 imprudent.— Was she not faithful to* him?—This apple is not ripe
imprudent ¹Ne imp.³ ⁴pas ⁵fidèle ²lui pomme ²mûr
 enough.—The meat is cold.—The road (in the) north of that country is
¹assez viande froid route du nord pays
 bad, unsafe, and very dangerous over the steep mountains.—(Will the
mauvais peu sûr dangereux sur escarpées montagne La porte
 door be) open?—I have (read) a very entertaining story.—Is that gown
sera-t-elle ouvert lu amusant histoire ³Est-elle ¹ ²robe
 new?—His sister is not very active; but she is well-informed, polite, and
neuf sœur fort actif mais ⁴bien instruit ¹affable ³
 sensible.—Mrs. F** has been very unfortunate.—Is she not virtuous?—She
*²— Mme. F** malheureux vertueux*
 has always been deceitful and jealous.—That cow is not very fat.—This law is
toujours trompeur jaloux vache gras loi
 cruel and barbarous.—(It is) an ancient custom.—(She is) a drunkard.—Miss
cruel barbare C'est ancien coutume C'est buveur Mlle.
 O** was a beautiful artress, and a sweet singer: she had, above
imp. ¹charmant ²actrice délicieux cantatrice imp. sur-

all, a most benevolent disposition.—We have (seen) a very fine woman, (with)
 tout ²la ³plus ⁴béniⁿ ¹l'humeur vu beau qui avait
 a white scarf on*.—Your cousin will be a very good singer.—The rose is my
 blanc écharpe cousine bon chanteur —
 favourite flower.—(Is) this water fresh? It is not very clean.—These
 favori fleur ²Est-elle ¹ ²eau ⁴frais elle clair
 oranges are not sweet.—That (young lady) is so foolish.—This news is false.
 ——— doux demoiselle sot nouvelle faux
 —I shall write a very long letter to* you.—(There is) a new fashion (every
¹ ²écrirai ⁴ ⁵ ³ ⁷lettre ² Il paraît nouveau mode tous les
 year).—(It is) the public opinion.—She had an old woman with her.—He
 ans C'est public ——— imp. vieux avec elle
 always wears an old coat.—(He is) a very clever young man.—The paint will
² ¹porte habit C'est habile jeune homme peinture
 soon be dry.—(It was) a mere evasion.—Is she not attentive?—These old
²bientôt ¹ sec C'était ¹pur ²défaite attentif vieux
 clothes (are good for nothing.)
 hardes f. pl. ne sont bonnes à rien

LESSON XI.

2. Plural of Adjectives and Participles Adjectively used.

GENERAL RULE.—The plural of adjectives and participles adjectively used, of whichever gender, is generally formed like that of substantives, by the addition of *s* to the singular: as—*grand*, m. sing. *grands*, m. pl. *grande*, f. sing. *grandes*, f. pl. *great*. *Poli*, m. sing. *polis*, m. pl. *polie*, f. sing. *polies*, f. pl. *polite*. *Aimé*, m. sing. *aimés*, m. pl. *aimée*, f. sing. *aimées*, f. pl. *loved*; &c. This rule admits of no exception, with respect to the formation of the feminine plural of adjectives; but, in forming the masculine plural, the following anomalies must be attended to.

1. Adjectives ending in *s* or *x* in the masculine singular, do not change their termination in the masculine plural: as—*heureux*, m. sing. *heureux*, m. pl. *happy*; *gras*, m. sing. *gras*, m. pl. *fat*.

2. Adjectives which end in *ant* or *ent* in the masculine singular, have their masculine plural formed by changing the final *t* into *s*, when they consist of more than one syllable, whereas the *t* is retained and *s* is added to it, when they consist of one syllable only: as—*reconnaissant*, *reconnaissans*, grateful; *diligent*, *diligens*, diligent; *lent*, *lents*, slow.

Tout, all, makes *tous* in the masculine plural, and *toutes* in the feminine plural.

3. Adjectives which are terminated with *au* in the masculine singular, take *x* for their masculine plural: as—*beau*, *beaux*, fine; *nouveau*, *nouveaux*, new.

46 4. Some adjectives ending in *al* in the masculine singular, become masculine plural by changing *al* into *aux*: as—*égal*, *égaux*, equal; *général*, *généraux*, general.

Observe.—To form the feminine plural of the above adjectives, or of any other belonging to the same general rule and exceptions, it is necessary to find, first, their feminine singular, and then to add *s* to it, according to the general rule : as—*heureux*, m. sing. *heureuse*, f. sing. *heureuses*, f. pl. *Gras*, m. sing. *grasse*, f. sing. *grasses*, f. pl. *Prudent*, m. sing. *prudente*, f. sing. *prudentes*, f. pl. *Tout*, m. sing. *toute*, f. sing. *toutes*, f. pl. *Beau*, m. sing. *belle*, f. sing. *belles*, f. pl. *Egal*, m. sing. *égale*, f. sing. *égales*, f. pl. &c.

ESSAY XI.

For the future, the verbs, which the pupil will find in the present of the infinitive mood in French, must be put in the same tense and person as the English verbs to which they correspond.

He has great talents.—Her friends will be glad to see her.—Young men
de talent ami bien-aise de ²voir ¹la Jeune gens
 (incur) great expenses.—These ladies are so graceful that they are admired by
font de dépense dame si gracieux qu' admirer de
 everybody.—Your brothers have been very fortunate, and your sisters extremely
heureux extrêmement
 unfortunate.—Those women are cruel and revengeful.—Are your pupils very
malheureux femme vindicatif. ³Sont-ils ¹ ²élève
 diligent?—No; they are extremely lazy.—My servants are not so slow as
puressoux domestique si lent que
 yours.—All our sheep are very fat.—(Are these) all your children?—No; I have
brebis très-gras Sont-ce-là
 two pretty little girls in the country.—His horses are not so fine as mine.—We
joli fille à campagne si que
 have (seen) the two new operas.—Are the general officers (assembled?)—
vu nouveau ⁴Sont-ils ¹ ³ ²officier assemblés
 All men are equal after death.—The two handsome ladies, who came yesterday
les après la mort beau dame qui vinrent hier
 to* see us, are dead.—(There are) red and grey partridges.—
²voir ¹nous mort ¹Il y a ²des ⁴rouge ⁵ ⁶des ⁷perdrix ⁸gris ⁹perdrix
 All these filberts are bad.—These stories (are not at all) entertaining.—
aveline mauvais histoire ne sont point du tout amusant
 Have they (bought) the five white houses (which I mentioned to you) the other day?
acheté blanc maison dont je vous parlai autre
 —These tables are not new.
neuf

LESSON XII.

3. Of the Degrees of Signification or Comparison in Adjectives and Participles Adjectively used.

There are commonly reckoned three degrees of comparison in adjectives and participles adjectively used;—the positive, the comparative, and the superlative.

48 OF THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON IN ADJECTIVES.

47 1. The *positive*, which is improperly termed a degree of comparison, is nothing but the adjective or participle itself, merely expressing the quality or manner of being of the substantive, to which it refers, without any increase or decrease by a comparison with any other object: as—*un enfant sage et studieux*, a wise and studious youth.

2. The *comparative* is the adjective or participle which, preceded by one of the words *plus*, more; *moins*, less or not so; *aussi*, as; and followed by *que*, than or as, expresses a comparison, in a degree of superiority, inferiority, or equality, between two or more objects: as—*il est plus estimé que son frère*, he is more esteemed than his brother. *Elle est moins instruite que sa sœur*, she is not so clever as her sister. *Il est aussi grand que vous*, he is as tall as you.

These three degrees of comparison are also expressed by *plus de*, *moins de*, or *autant de*, before a substantive, and *que* after it; or *que de*, if another substantive, denoting a quantity or number, succeeds; and by *autant* with a verb and *que* after it: as—*ils ont plus de noix que nous*, they have more nuts than we. *Il a moins de pratiques que son voisin*, he has less customers than his neighbour. *Elle a autant de tableaux que de livres*, she has as many pictures as books. *Mr. C*** est autant estimé que Mr. T*** est haï*, Mr. C*** is as much esteemed as Mr. T*** is hated.

We may likewise express a comparison in a degree of inferiority, by using the verb in the negative in French as in English, and placing *si* before the next adjective or participle and *que* after it, or *autant de* before a substantive with *que* or *que de*, according as the sense implies, after it: as—*elle n'est pas si instruite que sa sœur*, she is not so clever as her sister. *Il n'a pas autant de pratiques que son voisin*, he has not so many customers as his neighbour; &c.

The following words express a comparison of themselves, without the help of any other word:—1. *meilleur*, better, which is the comparative of *bon*, good, and *le meilleur*, the best, its superlative: as—*le vin est meilleur que l'eau*, wine is better than water, and not *plus bon*. We, however, say:—*il n'est plus bon à rien*, he is no longer good for any thing; but, in this case, *plus* is not a comparative, but a negative adverb. 2. *Pire*, worse, the comparative of *mauvais*, bad; and *le pire*, the worst, its superlative. 3. *Moindre*, less, the comparative of *petit*, little, and *le moindre*, the least, its superlative: as—*cette colonne est moindre que l'autre*, this column is less than the other. 4. *Mieux*, better, the comparative of *bien*, well, and *le mieux*, the best, its superlative. 5. *Pis*, worse, the comparative of *mal*, badly, and *le pis*, the worst, its superlative. 6. *Moins*, less, the comparative of *peu*, little, and *le moins*, the least, its superlative.

48 *Observe.*—*Meilleur* and *mieux*, being expressed by the same word, *better*, in English, offer some difficulty to beginners, who are frequently at a loss which to use in French. The difficulty will disappear, by considering that, whenever *better* is an adjective in English, it is always

{ bon
petit
mauvais

e. { meilleur (ou le plus bon)
moindre ou plus petit
pire ou plus mauvais

{ bien
mal
peu

e. { mieux
pis ou plus mal
moins

More or less, or any comparison
are expressed by de plus and de
moins, in sentences like the fol-
lowing.

What signifies one pound more or less?
Ça importe une livre de plus ou de moins.
Give him five shillings more
Donnez-lui cinq schellings de plus.
H. & P. 25/91

Aussi, comparison of equality.
Si comparison of inferiority.

expressed by *meilleur* in French, and by *mieux*, when it is an adverb : as,—this pear is better than yours, *cette poire est meilleure que la vôtre*, because *better* is an adjective ; but—I like him better than his brother, *je l'aime mieux que son frère*, because *better* is an adverb.

The following rule may be inferred from the above general observations.

GENERAL RULE.—1. Whenever an adjective is used in the comparative in English, with the syllable *er* at its termination, it is expressed in French by its corresponding adjective, with *plus* before it, and when *than* follows, it is construed by *que* : as,—meat is dearer than bread, *la viande est plus chère que le pain*.

2. When *more* or *less* occurs either before an adjective, a participle, or a substantive, or even is used by itself in English, *more* is construed into French by *plus*, and *less* by *moins*, before an adjective or a participle ; and by—*plus de*, and *moins de*, before a substantive expressing a quantity. The conjunction *than* which follows is rendered into French by *que*, before an adjective, a participle, a pronoun or an adverb, or even before a substantive which does not denote a quantity ; but it is expressed by *que de* before a substantive denoting a quantity, and by *de* only before a noun of number : as,—London is larger than Paris, *Londres est plus grand que Paris*. He has more prudence than you, *il a plus de prudence que vous*. We have more plums than apples, *nous avons plus de prunes que de pommes*. This young lady is more than twenty, *cette demoiselle a plus de vingt ans*.

The preposition *above*, used in the sense of *more than*, is likewise expressed by *plus de* : as,—she is not above four years old, *elle n'a pas plus de quatre ans*.

3. When *as*, *as much*, *as many*, and *so*, *so much*, *so many*, are used in English to denote a comparison of equality between two or more persons or things, *as* is expressed in French by *aussi*, before an adjective or a participle ; *as much*, by *autant*, with a verb ; *as much* or *as many*, by *autant de*, before a substantive ; *so*, by *si*, before an adjective or a participle ; *so much*, by *tant*, with a verb ; and *so much*, *so many*, by *tant de*, before a substantive : *as* or *that*, which follows, is construed by *que*, before an adjective, a participle, a pronoun or an adverb, or even before a substantive which does not denote a quantity, but by *que de* before a substantive denoting a quantity : as—he is as tall and clever as his brother, *il est aussi grand et aussi habile que son frère*. She is not so handsome as her niece, *elle n'est pas si belle que sa nièce*. I like her as much as her sister, *je l'aime autant que sa sœur*. They have as much money and as many playthings as you, *ils ont autant d'argent et autant de joujoux que vous*. I have not so many friends as you, *je n'ai pas autant d'amis que vous*. She is so foolish that I will not speak to her, *elle est si sotte que je ne veux pas lui parler*. I hate them so much that *Je les hais tant que* She has not so much beauty nor so many fine things as *Elle n'a pas tant de beauté ni tant de belles choses que*

4. The *superlative* is the adjective or participle expressing the quality or manner of being of the substantive in a very high, or in the highest degree; and, also, in a very low, or in the lowest degree: as—*the wisest man; the least wise* of all.

49 From this definition, it may be inferred that there are two sorts of superlatives,—the superlative relative, and the superlative absolute.

The superlative relative, as the term implies, always expresses a comparison with some other thing, and requires *de* or *du*, *des* or *de la*, before it, if a noun, and *que* if a verb, as in the following examples:—he is the most beloved of all, *il est le plus aimé de tous*. She is the most amiable young lady that I know, *c'est la demoiselle la plus aimable que je connaisse*. In any such case, the verb is usually put in the subjunctive mood.

The superlative absolute never expresses a comparison with or relation to any other thing, but merely increases or lessens to the highest or lowest degree the quality of the substantive. It is formed by placing, according to the import of the sentence, one of the words—*très*, *fort*, *bien*, very; *infiniment*, infinitely; *extrêmement*, extremely; before the adjective or participle: as,—*elles sont très-belles*, they are very handsome. *Il fut infiniment mal reçu*, he was extremely ill received.

GENERAL RULE.—When an adjective or a participle is used in the superlative degree in English, either with *st* or *est* at its termination, or when the adverb *most* or *least*, preceded by the article *the*, occurs before an adjective or a participle, as—*the tallest and most clever of the boys; she is the least lazy of the girls*; the adjective or participle is construed into French by its corresponding adjective or participle, preceded by *plus*, in the sense of *most*, and by *moins*, in the sense of *least*; and one of the articles *le*, *la*, *les*, *du*, *de la*, *des*, or *au*, *à la*, *aux*, according to the import of the sentence, is prefixed to *plus* or *moins*, to correspond with *the* in English; and when *that* either follows or is implied, it is expressed by *que*: as,—*the tallest and most clever of the boys*, *LE PLUS grand et le plus habile des garçons*. *She is the least lazy of the girls*, *c'est la moins paresseuse des filles*.

Observe.—If the adjective or participle in the superlative precedes the substantive which it qualifies in French,—as *le plus grand homme de l'armée Française*, the greatest man in the French army; there is no article used before the substantive; but if the substantive precedes the adjective or participle in the superlative, both take the definite article, *le*, *la*, or *les*: as,—*c'est l'homme le plus maladroit que je connaisse*, he is the most awkward man I know.

Plus and *moins*, and *le plus* and *le moins*, are repeated in French before every adjective or participle which they qualify; and every adjective or participle, either in the comparative or superlative, agrees in gender and number with its respective substantive: as,—*Russia is more powerful and more independent than Sweden*, *la Russie est PLUS puissante et PLUS indépendante que la Suède*.

52

ESSAY XII.

The simplicity of nature is more pleasing than all the embellishments of art.—
simplicité agréable tous embellissement —

The English navy is more powerful than you (think).—Miss S*** would be
Anglais marine puissant ne croyez M^{lle}

much more esteemed, if she were less proud of her beauty.—The rose is not
beaucoup estimé était fier sa beauté —

less beautiful than the tulip, but the tulip is more gaudy.—Is he less subject to
beau tulipe brillant sujet

the (head-ache) than he was?—I am older than you.—Mr. S*** (is) more
mal de tête imp. n' âgé a

than sixty.—I (did not think he was) above fifty.—The consumption
soixante ans ne croyais pas qu'il eût cinquante ans consommation

of wheat in London is not more than six millions and* seventy-nine thousand
blé à mille

bushels a year.—England has more than two hundred men of war.—That
boisseau par Angleterre cents vaisseau guerre

country has never less than eighteen thousand sailors.—I (should think there
pays n' jamais matelot croirais qu'il n'y

were not) less than twelve hundred (people) at the ball (last night).—Your
avait pas cents personnes bal hier au soir

mother is not so old as she looks.—Paris is not so populous nor so large as
vieux le paraît peuplé grand

London.—The Thames is much deeper than the Seine.—Your daughter (will
Londres l'amise profond fille ne

never be) so tall as you.—We shall not have so many plums this year as we
sera jamais grand autant de

(had) the last; but I think we shall have more apples.—This
en eûmes année dernière crois que de pomme

young gentleman is as much esteemed as his brother is despised.—This
jeune monsieur estimer frère mépriser

champagne is not better than mine.—These children are worse than you
enfant ne

think.—He speaks much better than he writes.—Is that peach better than
penser parler n'écrit est-elle¹ pêche

the other?—The public buildings in Paris are the finest (in the) world.—You
autre édifice à beau du monde

will give this wreath of pearls to the most amiable and the most clever (of the)
donner parure perle aimable habile des

three.—Though this young lady is the handsomest and the most accomplished
Quoique demoiselle soit beau accompli

(I ever saw), I can assure you that she is not my best friend.—Ignorant
que j'aie jamais vue puis assurer¹ vous qu' meilleur amie Ignorant

men* are more conceited than others.—You make greater progress than I
vain les autres faites de grand progrès je n'

should have thought.—China is the largest empire in the world.—I think
Chine grand crois que

Napoleon one of the most absolute princes who (ever reigned).—The most
Napoléon était absolu prince ment jamais régné

learned men are not always the most virtuous.—The Alps are very high
savant homme toujours vertueux Alpes f. pl. haut

and very steep.—The style of Fenelon is very rich and very harmonious.—

escarpé — *Fénélon* *riche* *harmonieux*

London is the richest city in Europe.—God is infinitely merciful.—Gold

riche ville de l'— *infiniment miséricordieux* Or

is the most pure, the most precious, the most ductile, and the heaviest of all

pur *précieux* — *pesant*

metals.

métal

LESSON XIII.

Of the Numeral Adjectives.

Numeral adjectives are either cardinal or ordinal : cardinal, as,—*un*, *une*, one ; *deux*, two ; *trois*, three, &c. ordinal ; as,—*premier*, *première*, first ; *second*, *seconde*, *deuxième*, second ; *troisième*, third ; &c.

57 The first are called cardinal, because they are the root of the ordinal, which are formed from them.

1. EXAMPLES OF THE CARDINAL NUMBERS.

1 One,	<i>un</i> , m. <i>une</i> , f.	36 Thirty-six,	<i>trente-six</i> .
2 Two,	<i>deux</i> .	37 Thirty-seven,	<i>trente-sept</i> .
3 Three,	<i>trois</i> .	38 Thirty-eight,	<i>trente-huit</i> .
4 Four,	<i>quatre</i> .	39 Thirty-nine,	<i>trente-neuf</i> .
5 Five,	<i>cinq</i> .	40 Forty,	<i>quarante</i> .
6 Six,	<i>six</i> .	41 Forty-one,	<i>quarante et un</i> .
7 Seven,	<i>sept</i> .	42 Forty-two,	<i>quarante-deux</i> .
8 Eight,	<i>huit</i> .	43 Forty-three,	<i>quarante-trois</i> .
9 Nine,	<i>neuf</i> .	44 Forty-four,	<i>quarante-quatre</i> .
10 Ten,	<i>dix</i> .	45 Forty-five,	<i>quarante-cinq</i> .
11 Eleven,	<i>onze</i> .	46 Forty-six,	<i>quarante-six</i> .
12 Twelve,	<i>douze</i> .	47 Forty-seven,	<i>quarante-sept</i> .
13 Thirteen,	<i>treize</i> .	48 Forty-eight,	<i>quarante-huit</i> .
14 Fourteen,	<i>quatorze</i> .	49 Forty-nine,	<i>quarante-neuf</i> .
15 Fifteen,	<i>quinze</i> .	50 Fifty,	<i>cinquante</i> .
16 Sixteen,	<i>seize</i> .	51 Fifty-one,	<i>cinquante et un</i> .
17 Seventeen,	<i>dix-sept</i> .	52 Fifty-two,	<i>cinquante-deux</i> .
18 Eighteen,	<i>dix-huit</i> .	53 Fifty-three,	<i>cinquante-trois</i> .
19 Nineteen,	<i>dix-neuf</i> .	54 Fifty-four,	<i>cinquante-quatre</i> .
20 Twenty,	<i>vingt</i> .	55 Fifty-five,	<i>cinquante-cinq</i> .
21 Twenty-one,	<i>vingt et un</i> .	56 Fifty-six,	<i>cinquante-six</i> .
22 Twenty-two,	<i>vingt-deux</i> .	57 Fifty-seven,	<i>cinquante-sept</i> .
23 Twenty-three,	<i>vingt-trois</i> .	58 Fifty-eight,	<i>cinquante-huit</i> .
24 Twenty-four,	<i>vingt-quatre</i> .	59 Fifty-nine,	<i>cinquante-neuf</i> .
25 Twenty-five,	<i>vingt-cinq</i> .	60 Sixty,	<i>soixante</i> .
26 Twenty-six,	<i>vingt-six</i> .	61 Sixty-one,	<i>soixante et un</i> .
27 Twenty-seven,	<i>vingt-sept</i> .	62 Sixty-two,	<i>soixante-deux</i> .
28 Twenty-eight,	<i>vingt-huit</i> .	63 Sixty-three,	<i>soixante-trois</i> .
29 Twenty-nine,	<i>vingt-neuf</i> .	64 Sixty-four,	<i>soixante-quatre</i> .
30 Thirty,	<i>trente</i> .	65 Sixty-five,	<i>soixante-cinq</i> .
31 Thirty-one,	<i>trente et un</i> .	66 Sixty-six,	<i>soixante-six</i> .
32 Thirty-two,	<i>trente-deux</i> .	67 Sixty-seven,	<i>soixante-sept</i> .
33 Thirty-three,	<i>trente-trois</i> .	68 Sixty-eight,	<i>soixante-huit</i> .
34 Thirty-four,	<i>trente-quatre</i> .	69 Sixty-nine,	<i>soixante-neuf</i> .
35 Thirty-five,	<i>trente-cinq</i> .	70 Seventy,	<i>soixante-dix</i> .

12

71	Seventy-one,	<i>soixante et onze.</i>	105	A hundred and	<i>cent cinq.</i>
72	Seventy-two,	<i>soixante-deux.</i>		five,	
73	Seventy-three,	<i>soixante-treize.</i>	106	A hundred and	<i>cent six.</i>
74	Seventy-four,	<i>soixante-quatorze.</i>		six,	
75	Seventy-five,	<i>soixante-quinze.</i>	107	A hundred and	<i>cent sept.</i>
76	Seventy-six,	<i>soixante-seize.</i>		seven,	
77	Seventy-seven,	<i>soixante-dix-sept.</i>	108	A hundred and	<i>cent huit.</i>
78	Seventy-eight,	<i>soixante-dix-huit.</i>		eight,	
79	Seventy-nine,	<i>soixante-dix-neuf.</i>	109	A hundred and	<i>cent neuf.</i>
80	Eighty,	<i>quatre-vingt.</i>		nine,	
81	Eighty-one,	<i>quatre-vingt-un.</i>	110	A hundred and	<i>cent dix.</i>
82	Eighty-two,	<i>quatre-vingt-deux.</i>		ten,	
83	Eighty-three,	<i>quatre-vingt-trois.</i>	111	A hundred and	<i>cent onze.</i>
84	Eighty-four,	<i>quatre-vingt-quatre.</i>		eleven,	
85	Eighty-five,	<i>quatre-vingt-cinq.</i>	112	A hundred and	<i>cent douze.</i>
86	Eighty-six,	<i>quatre-vingt-six.</i>		twelve,	
87	Eighty-seven,	<i>quatre-vingt-sept.</i>	113	A hundred and	<i>cent treize.</i>
88	Eighty-eight,	<i>quatre-vingt-huit.</i>		thirteen,	
89	Eighty-nine,	<i>quatre-vingt-neuf.</i>	114	A hundred and	<i>cent quatorze.</i>
90	Ninety,	<i>quatre-vingt-dix.</i>		fourteen,	
91	Ninety-one,	<i>quatre-vingt-onze.</i>	115	A hundred and	<i>cent quinze.</i>
92	Ninety-two,	<i>quatre-vingt-douze.</i>		fifteen,	
93	Ninety-three,	<i>quatre-vingt-treize.</i>	116	A hundred and	<i>cent seize.</i>
94	Ninety-four,	<i>quatre-vingt-quatorze.</i>		sixteen,	
95	Ninety-five,	<i>quatre-vingt-quinze.</i>	117	A hundred and	<i>cent dix-sept.</i>
96	Ninety-six,	<i>quatre-vingt-seize.</i>		seventeen,	
97	Ninety-seven,	<i>quatre-vingt-dix-sept.</i>	118	A hundred and	<i>cent dix-huit.</i>
98	Ninety-eight,	<i>quatre-vingt-dix-huit.</i>		eighteen,	
99	Ninety-nine,	<i>quatre-vingt-dix-neuf.</i>	119	A hundred and	<i>cent dix-neuf.</i>
100	A hundred,	<i>cent.</i>		nineteen,	
52 101	A hundred and	<i>cent un.</i>	120	A hundred and	<i>cent vingt.</i>
	one,			twenty,	
102	A hundred and	<i>cent deux.</i>	121	A hundred and	<i>cent vingt et un.</i>
	two,			twenty-one,	
103	A hundred and	<i>cent trois.</i>	122	A hundred and	<i>cent vingt-deux.</i>
	three,			twenty-two,	
104	A hundred and	<i>cent quatre.</i>	1000	A thousand,	<i>mille.</i>
	four,				

It is obvious, from the above examples, that the word *a* or *one*, by which the numbers *hundred* and *thousand* are preceded in English, and the conjunction *and*, by which they are usually followed, are left out in French: whereas *et* is used to join the numbers *vingt*, *trente*, *quarante*, *cinquante*, *soixante*, with *un* or *une*, and also *soixante* with *onze*, although *and* be not expressed in English.

The larger number must always take the precedence in French, whether the smaller be used the first in English or not: as,—*vingt-quatre*, twenty-four or four and twenty, and not *quatre et vingt*.

When the word *thousand* is used in mentioning a year or epoch, it is expressed in French by *mil*, with one *l* only: in other circumstances, it is spelled with *lle*—*mille*, which never takes an *s*, except when it is used for the English word *mile*, in the plural: as,—in the year one

thousand eight hundred and thirty,* *l'an, ou en, mil huit cent trente*.
Two thousand men, *deux mille hommes*. It is four miles from here,
il y a quatre milles d'ici.

53 *Vingt* and *cent* take an *s*, either when they occur immediately before a substantive plural, or when they refer to one understood, provided they be preceded by another number multiplying them: as,—six hundred men, *six cents hommes*; eighty gentlemen, *quatre-vingts messieurs*. We are only eighty now, but we shall soon be two hundred, *nous ne sommes que quatre-vingts à présent, mais nous serons bientôt deux cents*, namely *personnes*. But we should say,—*Nous étions cent*, and not *cents*, we were a hundred; because, in this case, only one hundred is mentioned.

When *quatre-vingt* and *cent* are used in quoting a year, or when they are immediately followed by another number, they then never take an *s*: ex.—in the year seven hundred and eighty, *l'an, ou en, sept cent quatre-vingt*. Three hundred and eighty-two pounds, *trois cent quatre-vingt-deux livres sterling*.

Million takes an *s* in the plural: *deux millions*, two millions.

Un is changed into *une*, when referring to a substantive feminine singular: *une bouteille*, a bottle. It is the only cardinal number which undergoes such a change. The other numbers serve both for the masculine and feminine genders.

Observe.—When after any tense of the unipersonal verb *to be there*, a noun of number comes before a substantive followed by a participle: as—*there were one thousand men killed*,—*DE* is elegantly used before the participle, and repeated before every other participle which may succeed, if any other number be added, likewise followed by a participle: as—*there were one thousand men killed, and eight hundred wounded, il y eut mille hommes DE tués, et huit cents DE blessés*; but if there is no substantive expressed after the noun of number, the pronoun *en* is then used instead before the verb *y avoir*, and *de* is always employed before the adjective or participle: as—*there were two hundred wounded, and fifty killed, il y en eut deux cents DE blessés, et cinquante DE tués*. In this case and any similar one, there is always a reference to something mentioned before or implied.

ESSAY XIII.

The infantry amounts to one hundred and twenty-six men.—He owes us
infanterie se monter *doit*

one thousand four hundred and fifty-six pounds.—(How many) days have
livre sterling *Combien de* *?*

you been detained there? One hundred.—How many guns have they ordered?
détenu y *fusil* *commandés*

54 About a thousand.—Napoleon went to Russia in the year one thousand
à peu près *alla en Russie*
eight hundred and thirteen, and (Lewis the Eighteenth) returned to France in
Louis dix-huit revint en

* When the preposition *in*, by which the substantive *year* is preceded, in mentioning a date, is expressed by *en*, the substantive, *the year*, is then left out; but when *the year* is expressed by *l'an*, *en* is omitted.

the year one thousand eight hundred and fifteen.—George (the Fourth)
quatre pret. def.
 was crowned in the year one thousand eight hundred and twenty, or one thou-
couronner
 sand eight hundred and twenty-one.—The army consists of two hundred and
armée consister
 fifty thousand four hundred and twenty-five men.—We lost in that battle three
perdimes bataille
 hundred and twenty-eight pieces of artillery.—How many miles (do they reckon
pièce artillerie compte-t-on
 it) (from here) to the Tower? Sixty-one or sixty-two.—I received yesterday five
d'ici reçus
 thousand six hundred and forty-six pounds eight shillings and eleven pence.—
schelling
 We (sat down) to table eight-and-twenty people, at the last dinner; but we
étions 4 5 2 1 3 personnes 1 dernier 2 diner
 (shall not amount to more) than fifteen at the next.—Will you lend me a
ne serons pas plus de prochain 2 prêter 1 me
 hundred and twenty-one pounds sixteen shillings? I would with all my heart,
le ferais de
 if I could; but I have paid, this morning, two hundred and eighty-one pounds
le pouvais payer
 which I owed, and I have not one shilling left.—Ninety-one pounds and nine
devais de reste
 pounds are one hundred pounds.—Sixty-one shillings and nine shillings are
font font
 three pounds ten shillings.—We have now three hundred beautiful frigates,
à présent 1 superbe 2 frégate
 and two hundred (line-of-battle-ships,) ready (to sail).—(There will be) a hun-
vaisseaux de ligne prêt à faire voile Il y aura
 dred and twenty ladies; but I do* not think (there will be) more than eighty
crois qu'il y ait de
 gentlemen.—We mustered six hundred and eighty, at the last ball; but we
messieurs 4 5 étions 6 7 8 1 2 3 bal
 (shall not muster) more than three hundred at the next.—How many ladies
ne serons pas de
 (will there be)? A hundred.—Only a hundred! (How is that?) You have
y aura-t-il D'où vient cela
 invited four hundred.—I (will give you) a receipt for eighty-one pounds, if
invité vais vous donner reçu
 you like.—(Did you not give him) eight hundred pounds twelve shillings?
voulez Ne lui donndtes-vous point
 No; he (only wanted) six hundred.—That celebrated actor died in
n'en avait besoin que de 2 célèbre 1 mourut
 the year one thousand seven hundred and eighty.—This man is worth two
riche de
 millions sterling.—(There were) ninety-five men killed and thirty-two wounded
Il y eut
 in the two first battles; whereas there were nine hundred killed and seven hundred
bataille mais
 wounded in the last.

EXAMPLES OF THE CARDINAL NUMBERS

used with the word fois, time.

Particular attention must be paid that, whenever the word *time* is used with a noun of number in English, it must be construed into French by *fois*, and never by *temps* : as,—six or seven times, *six ou sept fois*, and not—*six ou sept temps*.

Fois, being feminine, requires *un* to be changed into *une*, whenever used with it : as—*une fois*, once ; *vingt et une fois*, twenty-one times ; &c.

Once,	<i>une fois.</i>	Fifty-one times,	<i>cinquante et une fois,</i>
Twice,	<i>deux fois.</i>	&c.	<i>&c.</i>
Three times,	<i>trois fois.</i>	Sixty times,	<i>soixante fois.</i>
Four times,	<i>quatre fois.</i>	Sixty-one times,	<i>soixante et une fois,</i>
Five times,	<i>cinq fois.</i>	&c.	<i>&c.</i>
Six times,	<i>six fois.</i>	Seventy times,	<i>soixante-dix fois.</i>
Seven times,	<i>sept fois.</i>	Seventy-one times,	<i>soixante et onze fois,</i>
Eight times,	<i>huit fois.</i>	&c.	<i>&c.</i>
Nine times,	<i>neuf fois.</i>	Eighty times,	<i>quatre-vingts fois.</i>
Ten times,	<i>dix fois.</i>	Eighty-one times,	<i>quatre-vingt-une</i>
Eleven times,	<i>onze fois.</i>	&c.	<i>fois, &c.</i>
Twelve times,	<i>douze fois.</i>	Ninety times,	<i>quatre-vingt-dix</i>
Thirteen times,	<i>treize fois.</i>		<i>fois.</i>
Fourteen times,	<i>quatorze fois.</i>	Ninety-one times,	<i>quatre-vingt-onze</i>
Fifteen times,	<i>quinze fois.</i>	&c.	<i>fois, &c.</i>
Sixteen times,	<i>seize fois.</i>	A hundred times,	<i>cent fois.</i>
Seventeen times,	<i>dix-sept fois.</i>	A hundred and one	<i>cent une fois.</i>
Eighteen times,	<i>dix-huit fois.</i>	times,	
Nineteen times,	<i>dix-neuf fois.</i>	A hundred and two	<i>cent deux fois.</i>
Twenty times,	<i>vingt fois.</i>	times,	
Twenty-one times,	<i>vingt et une fois,</i>	A hundred and three	<i>cent trois fois.</i>
&c.	<i>&c.</i>	times,	
Thirty times,	<i>trente fois.</i>	A hundred and four	<i>cent quatre fois.</i>
Thirty-one times,	<i>trente et une fois,</i>	times,	
&c.	<i>&c.</i>	A hundred and five	<i>cent cinq fois.</i>
Forty times,	<i>quarante fois.</i>	times,	
Forty-one times,	<i>quarante et une fois,</i>	A hundred and six	<i>cent six fois.</i>
&c.	<i>&c.</i>	times,	
Fifty times,	<i>cinquante fois.</i>	A thousand times,	<i>mille fois,</i>

and so on, without expressing *a* which precedes *hundred*, and *and* which follows it.

LESSON XIV.

2. OF THE ORDINAL NUMBERS.

The ordinal numbers are formed by adding *ième* to the terminations of the cardinal that end with a consonant : as,—*huit*, *huitième* : except *neuf*, which is changed into *neuvième*, and *cinq* into *cinquième*. Those which are terminated with *e* mute take *ième* in its stead : as,—*quatre*, *quatrième*.

After *vingt*, *trente*, *quarante*, *cinquante*, *soixante*, and *quatre-vingt*, the French do not use *premier* and *second*, as the English do *first* and *second* after *twenty*, *thirty*, *forty*, *fifty*, *sixty*, and *eighty*, but

1. The first part of the document is a list of names and addresses, which are arranged in a columnar fashion. The names are written in a cursive script, and the addresses are written in a more formal, printed style. The list is organized into three columns, with the names in the first column, the addresses in the second column, and the names in the third column. The list is organized into three columns, with the names in the first column, the addresses in the second column, and the names in the third column.

Unieme is never used but after
vingt, trente, quarante, cinquante
soixante, quatre-vingt, cent and
mille. S.S. 224

Deuxieme awakens the idea of a
series - second that of order with-
out that of series. S.S. 224

The French say le onze, le onzi-
eme, vers les une heure, &c, pro-
nouncing . onze &c. as if they
were written with an h aspi-
rated S.S. 224.

Jus les une heure, is an elliptical
phrase for vers les moments qui
précèdent, ou qui suivent une
heure. S.S. p. 224

The numeral onze does not require
the elision before or after vowels
as de onze heures. S.S. 37.

they employ *unième* and *deuxième*: thus,—*vingt et unième*, twenty-first; *vingt-deuxième*, twenty-second; *trente et unième*, thirty-first; *trente-deuxième*, thirty-second; *quarante et unième*, forty-first; *quarante-deuxième*, forty-second; *cinquante et unième*, fifty-first; *cinquante-deuxième*, fifty-second; *soixante et unième*, sixty-first; *soixante-deuxième*, sixty-second; &c.

The ordinal numbers take the mark of the plural when they refer to a noun plural: as,—*les premiers essais*, the first essays.

EXAMPLES OF THE ORDINAL NUMBERS.

	M.	F.	M. & F.
First,	1 ^{er}	1 ^{ère}	<i>premier, première, unième.</i>
Second,	2 ^d	2 ^{de} or 2 ^{ème}	<i>second, seconde, deuxième.</i>
Third,	3 ^e		<i>troisième.</i>
Fourth,	4 ^e		<i>quatrième.</i>
Fifth,	5 ^e		<i>cinquième.</i>
Sixth,	6 ^e		<i>sixième.</i>
Seventh,	7 ^e		<i>septième.</i>
Eighth,	8 ^e		<i>huitième.</i>
Ninth,	9 ^e		<i>neuvième.</i>
Tenth,	10 ^e		<i>dixième.</i>
Eleventh,	11 ^e		<i>onzième.</i>
Twelfth,	12 ^e		<i>douzième.</i>
Thirteenth,	13 ^e		<i>treizième.</i>
Fourteenth,	14 ^e		<i>quatorzième.</i>
Fifteenth,	15 ^e		<i>quinzième.</i>
Sixteenth,	16 ^e		<i>seizième.</i>
Seventeenth,	17 ^e		<i>dix-septième.</i>
Eighteenth,	18 ^e		<i>dix-huitième.</i>
Nineteenth,	19 ^e		<i>dix-neuvième.</i>
Twentieth,	20 ^e		<i>vingtième.</i>
Twenty-first,	21 ^e		<i>vingt et unième.</i>
Twenty-second, &c.	22 ^e		<i>vingt-deuxième, &c.</i>
Thirtieth,	30 ^e		<i>trentième.</i>
Thirty-first,	31 ^e		<i>trente et unième.</i>
Thirty-second, &c.	32 ^e		<i>trente-deuxième, &c.</i>
Fortieth,	40 ^e		<i>quarantième.</i>
Forty-first,	41 ^e		<i>quarante et unième.</i>
Forty-second, &c.	42 ^e		<i>quarante-deuxième, &c.</i>
Fiftieth,	50 ^e		<i>cinquantième.</i>
Fifty-first,	51 ^e		<i>cinquante et unième.</i>
Fifty-second, &c.	52 ^e		<i>cinquante-deuxième, &c.</i>
Sixtieth,	60 ^e		<i>soixantième.</i>
Sixty-first,	61 ^e		<i>soixante et unième.</i>
Sixty-second, &c.	62 ^e		<i>soixante-deuxième, &c.</i>
Seventieth,	70 ^e		<i>soixante-dixième.</i>
Seventy-first, &c.	71 ^e		<i>soixante et onzième, &c.</i>
Eightieth,	80 ^e		<i>quatre-vingtième.</i>
Eighty-first,	81 ^e		<i>quatre-vingt-unième,</i>
Eighty-second, &c.	82 ^e		<i>quatre-vingt-deuxième, &c.</i>
Ninetieth,	90 ^e		<i>quatre-vingt-dixième.</i>
Ninety-first, &c.	91 ^e		<i>quatre-vingt-onzième, &c.</i>
Hundredth,	100 ^e		<i>centième.</i>
Hundred and first,	101 ^e		<i>cent unième.</i>
Hundred and second, &c.	102 ^e		<i>cent deuxième, &c.</i>
Thousandth, &c.	1000 ^e		<i>millième, &c.</i>

Observe.—The ordinal numbers, which are used in English with the article *the* after the names of sovereigns, whom they serve to demonstrate or specify, are expressed in French by the cardinal, leaving out the article: except, however, *the first*, which must be construed by the ordinal *premier*, but still without the article: as,—George the fourth, *Georges quatre*. Lewis the first, *Louis premier*. Charles the second, *Charles deux ou second*; as for *second* either may be used.

When the ordinal numbers are used to express a date, they are likewise rendered into French by the cardinal: except still *the first*, which must be construed, as above, by the ordinal *premier*; but, in this case, the definite article *le* is required before the number expressing the date; and both the article and number precede the month mentioned in French, although they sometimes follow it in English: as,—the 4th of May, *le 4 Mai*. June the 10th, *le 10 Juin*. The 2nd of August, *le 2 Août*. The 1st of September, *le 1^{er} Septembre*: as if it were in English,—*the four May; the ten June; the two August; the first September*. *De* may also be used before the month in French: as,—*le 4 de Mai; le 10 de Juin; le 2 d'Août; le 1^{er} de Septembre; &c.*

If the day of the week be mentioned with that of the month in a date: as,—*Monday, 10 or the 10th; Tuesday, 12 or the 12th; Wednesday, 14 or the 14th; &c.*, the noun of number expressing the date ought then to follow the day in French as in English, but without using any article in French: as,—*Monday, 10 or the 10th; Lundi, 10. Tuesday, 12 or the 12th, Mardi, 12. Wednesday, 14 or the 14th; Mercredi, 14: &c.*

The preposition *on*, which is used in English before the days of both the week and the month, when any particular day or date is mentioned, is not expressed in French: as,—*I shall write to them on Monday, je leur écrirai Lundi*. He will come on the 15th of August, *il viendra le 15 d'Août; &c.*, as if it were in English:—*I shall write to them Monday; he will come the 15 August.*

Note.—The adverbs of number are formed by adding *ment* to the ordinal numbers which end in *ième*: as—*quatrième*, fourth; *quatrièmement*, fourthly; *cinquième*, fifth; *cinquèmement*, fifthly; &c.; but *ment* is added to the feminine terminations of *premier* and *second*: as—*premier*, m. *première*, f. first; *premièrement*, first, adv.; *second*, m. *seconde*, f. second; *secondement*, secondly, adv.

EXAMPLES OF THE ORDINAL NUMBERS

used with the word fois, time.

♪

When the ordinal numbers are used with the word *fois*, they are preceded in French by the definite article *la*, in the sense of *the*, in English: as,—

The first time,
The second time,
The third time,
The fourth time,
The fifth time,
The sixth time,

la première fois.
la seconde ou la deuxième fois.
la troisième fois.
la quatrième fois.
la cinquième fois.
la sixième fois.

Get me say l'emperours Charles
Quint. And the pope Sixtus Quint.

The seventh time,	<i>la septième fois.</i>
The eighth time,	<i>la huitième fois.</i>
The ninth time,	<i>la neuvième fois.</i>
The tenth time,	<i>la dixième fois.</i>
The eleventh time,	<i>la onzième fois.</i>
The twelfth time,	<i>la douzième fois.</i>
The thirteenth time,	<i>la treizième fois.</i>
The fourteenth time,	<i>la quatorzième fois.</i>
The fifteenth time,	<i>la quinzième fois.</i>
The sixteenth time,	<i>la seizième fois.</i>
The seventeenth time,	<i>la dix-septième fois.</i>
The eighteenth time,	<i>la dix-huitième fois.</i>
The nineteenth time,	<i>la dix-neuvième fois.</i>
The twentieth time,	<i>la vingtième fois.</i>
The twenty-first time,	<i>la vingt et unième fois.</i>
The twenty-second time, &c.	<i>la vingt-deuxième fois, &c.</i>
The thirtieth time,	<i>la trentième fois.</i>
The thirty-first time,	<i>la trente et unième fois.</i>
The thirty-second time, &c.	<i>la trente-deuxième fois, &c.</i>
The fortieth time,	<i>la quarantième fois.</i>
The forty-first time,	<i>la quarante et unième fois.</i>
The forty-second time, &c.	<i>la quarante-deuxième fois, &c.</i>
The fiftieth time,	<i>la cinquantième fois.</i>
The fifty-first time,	<i>la cinquante et unième fois.</i>
The fifty-second time, &c.	<i>la cinquante-deuxième fois, &c.</i>
The sixtieth time,	<i>la soixantième fois.</i>
The sixty-first time,	<i>la soixante et unième fois.</i>
The sixty-second time, &c.	<i>la soixante-deuxième fois, &c.</i>
The seventieth time,	<i>la soixante-dixième fois.</i>
The seventy-first time, &c.	<i>la soixante et onzième fois, &c.</i>
The eightieth time,	<i>la quatre-vingtième fois.</i>
The eighty-first time,	<i>la quatre-vingt-unième fois.</i>
The eighty-second time, &c.	<i>la quatre-vingt-deuxième fois, &c.</i>
The ninetieth time,	<i>la quatre-vingt-dixième fois.</i>
The ninety-first time, &c.	<i>la quatre-vingt-onzième fois, &c.</i>
The hundredth time,	<i>la centième fois.</i>
The thousandth time, &c.	<i>la millièmè fois, &c.</i>

ESSAY XIV.

George the Third was good, peaceable and beneficent. Napoleon the
imp. bon pacifique bienfaisant
 First, on the contrary, was warlike and ambitious.—(Did you see) Charles the
au contraire imp. guerrier ambitieux Avez-vous vu
 Tenth at the review this morning?—I wrote to your brother in Ireland, on
revue ⁵*J'écrivis* ⁶ ⁷ ⁸ ⁹*en* ¹⁰*Irlande* ¹¹*à*
 that subject, on the ninth of June; but he answered me, on the twentieth of
¹² ¹³*surjet* ¹ ² ³ ⁴ ⁵*mais* ⁶ ⁷*répondit* ⁸ ⁹ ¹⁰
 July, that he (intended) to set out for Paris on the first of August, if his
¹¹ ¹²*avait intention de partir*
 affairs (allowed him.)—Your letter of the tenth of April reached us on
affaire le lui permettaient ²*est* ³*parvenue* ¹
 the fifteenth of May.—She came twice yesterday; but, the first time she
¹*Mai* ²*vint* ³*hier* ⁴*qu'*
 called, I was absent; and the second time I was so engaged
pret. def. passer imp. — imp. occupé

that I (could not) speak (to her.)—They go there eleven or twelve times
que ne pus pas lui vont y

(in the course of the) year.—He sends us the papers five or six times a week.—

Combien par an envoie papier par
 (How many) times have you been there?—A hundred times.—(This is) the
Combien de y Voici

twenty-first or twenty-second letter that I have received to-day.—The person
aie reçue aujourd'hui personne

who has just knocked at the door (looks) extremely ill.—She (has been here)
frapper porte à l'air malade est venue

at least fifty times, (without ever being able) to* speak (to you). Well!
au moins sans jamais pouvoir vous Eh bien

tell her that, if she (will call again), on Friday next, I shall be very happy
dites-lui que veut revenir prochain bien-aise

to see her.—I have done that a thousand times.—(Has not any body been
de voir la fait N'est-il venu personne me

here for me to-day)?—Yes; (there are) two or three gentlemen (waiting for*
demande aujourd'hui il y a messieurs qui attendent

you) in the (drawing-room.)—Where does* his mother live? In Oxford
vous salon Où demeure Dans

street, No. 72 or 73.—I beg your pardon, (it is) in Parliament-street,
demande vous c'est

No. 90.—(Does not your cousin live) at* No. 31, Cheapside?—No; it is in
Votre cousine ne demeure-t-elle pas

King-street, No. 12.—If you (will go) to No. 41, Strand, you (will see)
voulez aller au verrez

some one who wishes to speak to* you.—We have lived fifteen years in the
quelqu'un désirer de vous

City, and one and twenty at the (West end) of the town.—My father comes
Cité c'est vient

(every morning) to town, and returns in* the evening to the country, after
tous les matins il retourner soir campagne après

(having) paid seven or eight visits, which he (never fails to make.)—London,
avoir fait visite ne manque jamais de rendre

September 12th, 1827.—Tuesday, 24th.—Come on Friday or Saturday.

LESSON XV.

Of Pronouns.

There are four kinds of pronouns: namely,—the *personal*, the *adjective*, the *relative*, and the *indefinite*.

1. Of the Personal Pronouns.

Personal pronouns are words which we use instead of the names of persons or things, to avoid the too frequent repetition of the same. They are used in French, as in English, for the nominative or object of the verb.

By nominative or subject of the verb is understood the person or thing of which anything is affirmed or denied: as,—*l'enfant dort*, the child

sleeps: and by object, the person or thing on which the action expressed by the verb either directly or indirectly falls: directly, that is, without the help of a preposition: as,—*J'aime Louise*, I love Louisa; in this sentence, *Louise* is immediately affected by the verb *aime*, without the medium of any preposition: indirectly, that is, with the help of a preposition: as,—*j'ai parlé à votre sœur*, I have spoken to your sister; *votre sœur* is here affected by the participle *parlé* with the help of the preposition *à*.

1. *Of the Personal Pronouns which fill the place of the Nominative or subject of the Verb.*

I, thou, he, she, it, we, ye or you, and they, are the eight personal pronouns which fill the place of the nominative of the verb. *I* is expressed in French by *je*, or *j'* before a vowel or *h* mute; *thou*, by *tu*; *he*, by *il*; *she*, by *elle*; *it*, by *il* or *elle*; *we*, by *nous*; *ye or you*, by *vous*; *they*, by *ils* or *elles*.

JE is used for the first person singular of both genders; *TU*, for the second singular, likewise of both genders; *IL*, for the third person singular masculine, and *ELLE* for the third feminine; *NOUS*, for the first person plural of both genders; *VOUS*, for the second person, either singular or plural, likewise of both genders; *ILS*, for the third plural masculine, and *ELLES* for the third feminine.

Je, tu, il, elle, represent the singular, and *nous, vous, ils, elles*, the plural; but *vous* is likewise singular when it refers to one person only.

Gender affects the pronouns of the third persons singular and plural only: as,—*il, elle; ils, elles*. *Il* and *ils* are masculine, and *elle* and *elles* feminine. The pronouns of the first and second persons are either masculine or feminine, according as the person or persons whom they represent is or are masculine or feminine.

GENERAL RULE—1. When a verb is used affirmatively or negatively, and has one of the personal pronouns, *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils* or *elles*, for its nominative, the pronoun usually precedes the verb; but if the verb be used interrogatively, the pronoun follows it: as,—I speak, *JE parle*; he does not speak, *IL ne parle pas*; do you speak? *parlez-vous*? do you not speak? *ne parlez-vous pas*?

2. When the words of somebody are quoted, the pronoun, which serves as nominative to the verb, is placed after the verb: as,—*J'y consens, dit-il*, I consent to it, said he.

Particular Observations.—The pronouns *I, thou, he, they*, besides being construed by *je, tu, il, ils* or *elles*, are also expressed by *moi, toi, lui, eux*:

1. When they come after each other in a series or kind of enumeration: as,—*I, thou, he, they, &c.*; *moi, toi, lui, eux*.

2. When they are joined either together or to another pronoun or noun, or even to a part of a sentence, by a conjunction: as,—*he and I, LUI et MOI*, and not *il et je*. *They and my son, EUX et MON FILS*, and

not *ils et mon fils*. Neither *they* nor *you*, ni *EUX* ni *vous*, and not ni *ils* ni *vous* ; &c.

61 3. When they are preceded by one of the expressions :—*it is, it was, it will be, it would be*, or any similar one, either in the affirmative, negative, or interrogative form of the verb : as,—*it is thou, c'est toi*, and not *tu* ; *it was not he, ce n'était pas lui*, and not *il* ; *was it they ? étaient-ce eux ?* and not *ils* ; &c. ; or when they are used in answer to a question : as,—*who has done that ? I ; qui a fait cela ? moi*, and not *je*, &c. Or, again, when they occur by themselves, either by way of exclamation or interrogation : as,—*I ! moi !*

4. When they are used either by themselves after the conjunction *than (que)*, in a comparative sentence, or when they come before the word *alone (seul or seuls)* ; as, also, when they precede or follow one of the relative pronouns *who, whom, that* or *which (qui, que)*, and are employed in a determinate sense : as,—*she is younger than I, elle est plus jeune que moi*, and not *que je*. They alone were speaking, *EUX seuls parlaient*, and not *ils seuls*. Was it he who was singing ? *était-ce lui qui chantait ?* and not *il*. They whom I loved so much, *EUX que j'aimais tant*, and not *ils*.

5. When they are employed to denote a contrast or opposition between two parts of a sentence : as,—*you think so, and I think differently, vous êtes de cet avis, et moi-je pense différemment* : in any such case, *moi, toi, lui, eux*, must be followed by their corresponding pronouns *je, tu, il, ils*, as in the sentence just quoted.

Moi and *je*, *lui* and *il*, and *eux* and *ils*, are also, sometimes, conjointly used before a verb ; or *je, il* or *ils*, before, with *moi, lui* or *eux*, after it, in a familiar style. The same are also used to impart more energy to the sentence, and express astonishment or surprise, in the sense of *I, he, and they*, in English : as,—*I have said so ! moi ! j'ai dit cela !* or, *j'ai dit cela, moi !* *He has done that ! lui ! il a fait cela !* or, *il a fait cela, lui !*

Finally ;—*moi, lui*, and *eux*, are used before a verb in the present of the infinitive, for *I, he, and they*, before the conditional in English, to denote also astonishment or surprise : as,—*I would betray my best friend !—moi ! trahir le meilleur de mes amis !* *He would be guilty of cowardice !—lui ! faire une lâcheté ;* or, *faire une lâcheté, lui !* as if it were in English :—*I to betray the best of my friends ! He to be guilty of cowardice !* or, *to be guilty of cowardice, he !*

ESSAY XV.

You speak too fast.—He reads very well.—She does* not dance well.—They
trop vite lit très-bien danser
 (will come), if the weather (permit.)—Is she handsome?—Does* it rain?—
viendront temps le permet beau ?il pleut-
 Yes ; it has (been raining) all the morning.—I think (it will be) fine weather
plu matinée crois qu'il fera beau
 to-day.—(Are you going) to the play this evening?—No ; I (am going) into
aujourd'hui Allez-vous ? comédie ?air vais à

the country.—If you do* (not come) and* spend the day with me, I shall
campagne ne venez pas passer journée ne 62
 never* ask you again.—Have you finished your letter?—No; not yet.—
inviter plus finir lettre pas encore 1 Ne
 Has he not sent you your coat?—Yes; I (have just received it.)—(How
point envoyer habit viens de le recevoir Com-
 much) did it cost you?—Six guineas and (a half.)—Does* she sell gloves?—
bien a-t-il coûté guinée demie vendre gant
 Has she breakfasted?—Do* you speak French?—At what o'clock do* they dine?
déjeuner parler quelle heure dîner
 —At five.—What o'clock is it now?—(Half past three.)—Pray,
à présent Trois heures et demie Je vous prie
 which is the way to go to the Park?—He and your sister were there.—You
quel chemin pour aller parc y
 and I (will go) together.—They and your daughter (went) to the English
nous irons ensemble allèrent Anglais
 Opera yesterday evening.—(Is it) he who was (so much) offended?—
hier au soir Est-ce imp. si fâché
 (Was it) they who knocked at the door?—No; it was I.—Their brother
Etaient-ce imp. frapper porte c' imp. Leur
 is taller than I; but he is not so strong as I.—He alone can do that.—(It
grand si fort seul peut faire Ce
 will be) neither he nor I.—That lady maintains that this proposition is true,
ne sera ni ni dame soutient que vrai
 and I pretend the contrary.—You tell me she is dead, and he says it
prétendre contraire dîtes qu' morte dit que cela
 is not so*.—We (will take) a walk, this evening, you, your mother
irons faire tour de promenade soir
 and I.—I said so!—He (will do) that!—I do* not believe it.—I would reveal
ai dit cela fera crois le révéler
 the secret of my friend! No; never.—Who was speaking (to you)? He or
jamais imp. vous
 Mrs. W***.—You like the town, and I like the country.—(Look at) that
Mme. aimer ville Regardez
 magnificent building; it unites gracefulness with beauty, and elegance with
magnifique édifice réunir grâce à élégance à
 simplicity.—(There is) a fine pear-tree; it blossoms every spring, yet it
simplicité Voilà poirier fleurir tous les printemps cependant
 seldom produces any fruit.
rarement produit du

LESSON XVI.

Of the Personal Pronouns me, thee, him, her, it, us, ye or you, and them, which are used as objects of the Verb.

GENERAL RULE.—Whenever any one of the above pronouns is governed by a verb in English, without the intervention of a preposition, either expressed or understood, *me* is rendered into French by *me*; *thee*, by *te*; *him* or *it*, by *le*; *her* or *it*, by *la*; *us*, by *nous*; *ye* or

63 *you*, by *vous* ; and *them*, by *les* ; provided the French corresponding verb, of which the pronoun is to be the object, requires no preposition : *me*, *te*, *nous*, *vous*, *le*, *la* or *les*, is then placed before the verb in a simple tense, and before the auxiliary in a compound one : as,—he loves me, *il m'aime* ; I have followed you, *je vous ai suivi* ; he esteems her, *il l'estime* ; we have seen them, *nous les avons vus*.

When, on the contrary, any one of the above pronouns is governed by a verb, through the medium of the preposition *to*, expressed or implied in English, and the corresponding verb in French requires *à*, *me* is again construed into French by *me* ; *thee*, by *te* ; *us*, by *nous* ; *ye* or *you*, by *vous* ; but *him* and *her* are rendered by *lui* ; and *them* is expressed by *leur*, with reference to persons or animate objects, and *it* or *them* by *y*, with reference to inanimate things, leaving out the preposition : *me*, *te*, *nous*, *vous*, *lui*, *leur* and *y*, are, as above, placed before the verb in a simple tense, and before the auxiliary in a compound one : as,—she has written to us, *elle nous a écrit*. He told me to go there, for he told *to* me, *il me dit d'y aller*. We have sent her some money, *nous lui avons envoyé de l'argent*. I shall speak to them, *je leur parlerai*. Have you thought of it? *y avez-vous pensé*?

Me or—*at* or *to me*, occurring after a verb, affirmatively used, in the second person singular or plural of the imperative, is expressed in French by *moi*, and placed after the verb : as,—tell me, *dis* or *dites-moi* ; speak to me, *parle* or *parlez-moi*. But *me* or—*at* or *to me*, following a verb, negatively used, in the second person singular or plural of the imperative, is expressed by *me*, and placed before the verb, as in the other tenses : as,—do not speak to me, *ne me parle pas*, or *ne me parlez pas*.

When *me* or—*at* or *to me* is used with the third person singular or plural of the imperative of a verb, affirmatively or negatively used, both *me* and *at* or *to me* are usually construed into French by *me*, and placed before the verb : as,—let him or them pay me, *qu'il me paie*, or *qu'ils me paient*. Let her not look at me, *qu'elle ne me regarde pas*.

64 *Le*, *la*, *les*, *lui*, *leur*, *nous*, *y* and *en*, being employed with a verb, in the second person singular, or in the first and second persons plural of the imperative, affirmatively used, are placed after it, whereas they precede it, as in the other tenses, if the verb be used negatively :—as, follow him, her or them, *suis-le*, *la* or *les* ; let us write to him, to her or to them, *écrivons-lui* or *leur* ; take some, *prenez-en* ; do not lose it, *ne le perds* or *ne le perdez pas* ; do not speak to him, to her, or to them, *ne lui* or *ne leur parle pas* ; do not think of it, *n'y pensez pas* ; do not eat any, *n'en mangez pas*, &c. ; but if the verb be in the third person singular or plural, whether affirmatively or negatively used, *le*, *la*, *les*, *lui*, *leur*, *nous*, *y* and *en*, always precede it : as,—let her take it, *qu'elle le prenne* ; let her not answer him, *qu'elle ne lui réponde pas*.

Observe.—Whenever two or more pronouns are governed by a verb, they are placed in the following order before the verb in a simple tense,

and before the auxiliary in a compound one: 1. *me, te, se, nous, vous*, precede *le, la, les, en* and *y*. 2. *lui, leur*, precede *y* and *en*. 3. *le, la, les*, precede *lui* and *leur*. 4. *y* precedes *en*; as it is pointed out in the syntax, where all the possible combinations of the personal pronouns occurring with a verb, are exemplified in affirmative, negative, and interrogative sentences.

Cases in which to me is expressed in French by À MOI; to thee, by À TOI; to him, by À LUI; to her, by À ELLE; to us, by À NOUS; to ye or you, by À VOUS; to them, by À EUX or À ELLES, and placed after the verb in a simple tense, and after the participle in a compound one.

1. When they are governed by an English verb which, being a reflective one in French, requires *à* after it, whatever may be the preposition used in English: as,—she applied to me, *elle s'adressa À MOI*; because *s'adressa* is a reflective verb which governs *à*.

2. When they depend on any of the following verbs which require *à* after them in French:—to go, *aller*; to have business with, *avoir affaire*; to have consideration for, *avoir égard*; to have recourse to, *avoir recours*; to run, *courir*; to be, to belong, *être*; to appeal to, *en appeler*; to pay attention, *faire attention*; to mind, *prendre garde*; to think, *penser*; and to come, *venir*: as,—I have some business with you, *j'ai affaire À VOUS*; we shall have recourse to them, *nous aurons recours À EUX*, &c.

3. *To me, to thee, to him, to her, to us, to you and to them*, are also expressed in French by *à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux or à elles*, when they depend on any other verb than those just enumerated, provided it governs *à* in French, and the pronouns are joined either together or to a noun by a conjunction: as,—I shall speak to you and to him, *je vous parlerai À VOUS et À LUI*. It was to the lady, and not to you, I was speaking, *c'était à madame, et non pas à vous que je parlais*.

If *me, thee, him, her, us, ye, you or them*, should be governed by a verb requiring *de*, in French, instead of *à*, whether it be a reflective one or not, *me* should then be expressed by *DE MOI*; *thee*, by *DE TOI*; *him*, by *DE LUI*; *her*, by *D'ELLE*; *us*, by *DE NOUS*; *ye or you*, by *DE VOUS*; *them*, by *D'EUX or D'ELLES*, and placed after the verb in a simple tense, and after the participle in a compound one: as,—I was laughing at him, *je me moquais DE LUI*. She does not pity me, *elle n'a pas pitié DE MOI*; because the verbs *se moquer* and *avoir pitié* govern *de*.

It is necessary to observe that *him, her or them*, referring to persons, and *it or them*, to things, that have been mentioned before, are also, when depending on a verb which governs *de*, expressed in French by *en*, which is put before the verb in a simple tense, and before the auxiliary in a compound one, except when the verb is in the imperative affirma- 65

tively used, in which case *en* follows it in the second person singular; and in the first and second persons plural, whereas *en* precedes it if it be used negatively: in any case, *de* and the preposition which may be governed by the English verb, are left out: as,—I am not satisfied with him, her, or them, *je n'en suis pas content*; he is glad of it, *il en est bien-aise*; I wonder at it, *je m'en étonne*; she is very sorry for it, *elle en est bien fâchée*; complain of it, *plaignez-vous-en*; &c.; because the verbs *être content*, *être bien-aise*, *être fâché*, *s'étonner* and *se plaindre* govern *de*.

En is of great use in the French language, and is generally employed to recall the idea of anything that may have been said before, and in many instances is used for *its*.

Me, thee, him, her, us, ye, you, or them, coming after a preposition, in any other circumstance than the cases which have been mentioned, must be expressed in French by—*moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux or elles*, and placed after the preposition: as,—this is for me and that for thee; *ceci est pour moi et cela pour toi*.

Le, la, les, are always articles when they are used for *the*, before a noun: as,—the brother and sister, *LE frère et la sœur*; but they are pronouns when they are governed by a verb, and stand for *him, her, it or them*: as,—I have it or them, *je l'ai or je les ai*.

For any further explanations on the Pronouns, see the Syntax.

ESSAY XVI.

Have you seen Charles the Tenth? Yes, I have seen him several times;
vu plusieurs fois
 but I have never spoken to him.—I know them very well by sight.—Do* you
ne jamais parler connais de vue
 believe her?—Neglect the pleasures of life: the pains which follow them
croyez- Négliger plaisir vie peine suivent en
 prove their vanity.—Jupiter, vexed that Saturn laid snares for* him, took
prouver la vanité — irrité que Saturne tendit piège lui prit
 up* arms against him, drove him out* of his kingdom, and
arme contre pret. def. chasser royaume pret. def.
 compelled him to quit heaven.—Do* you admire her? Yes, and I love her
forcer à quitter ciel admirer aimer
 with all my heart.—To please her, (you must never) flatter her.—I
de tout cœur Pour plaire lui il ne faut jamais —
 (shall write) to you, in two or three days.—Do* you not see him
écrirai dans 1Ne 4voyez- 5point 2
 sometimes? Yes; I frequently meet him at the Exchange.—Prosperity
quelquesfois 14fréquemment 2rencontrer 2 à Bourse Prospérité
 gets us friends, and adversity tries them.—Have you thought (of it)?—No;
fait adversité éprouver penser y
 I have quite forgotten it.—Think of it for Sunday next.—Do* not
tout-à-fait oublier pour Dimanche prochain 1n
 think (of it) (any more).—When truth appears in all its brightness, (no
2y 3plus Quand vérité paraît dans éclat per-

body. can) resist it.—Tell me the truth.—Do* not tell her that you have
sonne ne peut résister y Dites- que
 seen me.—Do* not speak to me.—Your dogs are hungry and thirsty, give
chien ont faim soif donner
 them something* to eat and drink.—I shall apply to you.—Do* not
à manger à boire X s'adresser
 trust him.—She came to me, and asked me to go with her.—You
se fier vint pret. def. prier d' 1 2 ne
 never think of me.—He has some* business with you.—We shall have
jamais penser à affaire
 recourse to her, if we want any thing.—(It is) to you and me.—
recours avoir besoin de quelque chose C'est
 They appealed to me.—He never pays attention (to it).—I
pret. def. en appeler 1 2 n' jamais fait 3 y vous
 forgive both you and her, because I hope you will behave better
pardonner et à parce que espérer que se conduire mieux
 in future.—Will you do that for me?—It depends upon you to merit her
à l'avenir faire dépend de de mériter
 esteem.—I do* not pity them.—She has recourse to them.—Come and*
estime avoir pitié d' Venez
 speak to me.—Go and* dress yourself.—Answer me.—Go to him.—Write
Allez habiller vous Répondre Écrivez-
 to her.—Forgive them.—Listen to* me.—Lend us that book; I (cannot),
Pardonner Écouter Prêter livre ne saurais
 (I must) return it to day.—That belongs to you or to your sister.—
il faut que je rende aujourd'hui vous appartient ou
 It was not to you, it was to the* gentleman, I was speaking.—
Ce imp. c' imp. monsieur que imp.
 (Has he complained) of me?—We were laughing at him.—I wonder at it.
S'est-il plaint imp. se moquer de s'étonner
 —Are you glad of it?—No; I am very sorry for it.—Life is a gift of God;
bien-aise bien fâché don
 to* destroy it is a crime.—Keep this for* me, I shall want it.—(There is)
disposer en — Garder 2 1 moi avoir besoin en voilà
 your book, we do* not want it.—Pisistratus said of a drunken man, who had
Pisistrate dit ivre avait
 spoken against him :—I am no more angry with him than (I should be with
ne pas plus fâché contre que je ne le serais contre
 a blind man who would have run) against me.
un aveugle qui se serait jeté

LESSON XVII.

Of Adjective Pronouns.

Adjective pronouns are of a mixed nature, participating the properties both of pronouns and adjectives.

They may be subdivided into two kinds,—the possessive and the demonstrative.

1. *Of the Possessive Pronouns.*

Possessive pronouns are words which we use to express the possession or property of anything.

They are divided into *conjunctive* and *relative*, as before explained.

The conjunctive possessive pronouns are:—*mon, ma, mes, my; ton, ta, tes, thy; son, sa, ses, his, her, or its; notre, nos, our; votre, vos, your; and leur, leurs, their.* These pronouns are called conjunctive, because they always precede the substantives of which they express the possession: as,—*mon chapeau, my hat.*

67 The relative possessive pronouns are:—*le mien, la mienne, les miens, les miennes, mine; le tien, la tienne, les tiens, les tiennes, thine; le sien, la sienne, les siens, les siennes, his, hers, or its; le nôtre, la nôtre, les nôtres, ours; le vôtre, la vôtre, les vôtres, yours; and le leur, la leur, les leurs, theirs.** They are so termed relative, because they are never prefixed to any substantive, but always refer to one: as,—*mon livre et le vôtre, my book and yours.*

PARTICULAR OBSERVATIONS ON THE CONJUNCTIVE AND RELATIVE
POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

1. *On the Conjunctive Possessive Pronouns.*

GENERAL RULE.—The conjunctive possessive pronouns *mon, ma, mes; ton, ta, tes; son, sa, ses; &c.*, are usually employed in French before the name of everything of which we express the possession, and agree with it in gender and number; although *my, thy, his, her, its, &c.*, never vary in English, and are, when referring to several nouns following each other in a sentence, usually put before the first, and understood before those which succeed: as,—*my father, mother, and sisters are gone into the country, mon père, ma mère, et mes sœurs sont allés à la campagne.*

The relative possessive pronouns *le mien, la mienne, les miens, les miennes, &c.*, likewise agree with their respective substantives in French: as,—*your sister and mine, votre sœur et la mienne. Her friends and mine, ses amis et les miens.*

The two possessive pronouns *son* and *sa* always agree in gender with the thing possessed, in French, and not with the possessor, as *his, her, and its* do in English: as,—*he loves his wife, il aime sa femme, and not son femme. She has lost her property, elle a perdu son bien, and not sa bien; &c.*; always making them agree with the following noun.

Mon, ton, son, are used in French instead of *ma, ta, sa*, before nouns feminine singular, beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, in order to avoid the harsh sound which would otherwise result from the meeting of two vowels: as,—*MON oreille, my ear, instead of ma oreille. Ton épée, thy sword, instead of ta épée. Son humeur, his temper, instead of sa humeur; but notre, votre, leur, are indifferently employed before a noun masculine or feminine singular, either beginning with a vowel, a*

consonant, or *h* mute: as,—*NOTRE ami*, our friend; *VOTRE horloge*, your clock; &c.

Leur, their, must not be confounded with *leur*, to them; the former being a possessive conjunctive pronoun which is prefixed to substantives, and takes an *s* in the plural: as,—*LEURS enfans*, their children; whereas the latter is a personal pronoun which goes before a verb, and never takes an *s*: as,—*il LEUR parla de vous*, he spoke to them of you.

Notre and *votre* are pronounced short, when conjunctive pronouns, but when they are relative they are pronounced long, taking besides a circumflex accent over the *o*: as,—*notre maison est neuve, la vôtre ne l'est pas*, our house is new, yours is not.

One of the conjunctive possessive pronouns *mon*, *ma*, *mes*, is used in French before the name or names of such of our friends or relations as we address, although *my* be not generally employed in such a case in English: as,—How do you do, father? *Comment vous portez-vous, MON père?*—Adieu, children, *adieu, MES enfans*.

When inquiring about or speaking of persons for whom we feel some respect or consideration, and with whom we are not upon terms of intimacy, one of the qualifications, *Monsieur*, *Madame*, *Mademoiselle*, or *Messieurs*, *Mesdames*, *Mesdemoiselles*, according as we speak of one or several, is used before the possessive pronoun *votre* or *vos*, which precedes the name of the person or persons mentioned, although there be no equivalent expression made use of in English: as,—present my compliments to your mother, *présentez mes complimens à MADAME votre mère*. Give my kind regards to your sisters, *dites bien des choses aimables de ma part à MESDEMOISELLES vos sœurs*.

But *friends*, *brothers*, *sisters*, inquiring about or speaking of each other: *parents* speaking of their children, and children of their parents, will never use these preliminaries: as, for instance,—a friend inquiring after the health of his friend's sister, will say:—*comment se porte ta sœur?* how is your sister? and not *comment se porte mademoiselle ta sœur?*

Neither are these preliminaries used when speaking of or inquiring about *servants*, *workmen*, or any other such persons who may be considered as inferior: for instance,—when inquiring after the health of a gardener, we must say:—*comment se porte Jacques?* how is James? and not, *comment se porte Monsieur Jacques?*

One's, employed in a general and indefinite sense for *his*, is expressed in French by one of the possessive pronouns, *son*, *sa*, *ses*, according to the gender and number of the substantive following: as,—one must live according to *one's* income, *il faut vivre suivant SON revenu*.

2. ON THE RELATIVE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

GENERAL RULE.—When any one of the relative possessive pronouns *mine*, *thine*, *his*, *hers*, *ours*, *yours*, *theirs*, is preceded by the preposition

of and placed after the substantive to which it relates in English: as,—a friend OF MINE; a book OF YOURS; a countryman OF HIS; it is expressed in French by its corresponding conjunctive possessive pronoun *mes, tes, ses, nos, vos, or leurs*, before which the preposition *de* is used: —*mes, tes, ses, nos, vos, or leurs*, is immediately prefixed to the substantive to which it refers, and the substantive is put in the plural: as,—a friend of mine, *un DE MES amis*; a book of yours, *un DE vos livres*; a countryman of his, *un DE SES compatriotes*; as if it were in English,—one of my friends, one of your books, &c.

But *mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs*, coming after any tense of the verb *to be*, employed in the sense of *to belong*: as,—this coat is mine; that music is yours; are usually expressed in French by *à moi, à toi, à lui, à elle, à nous, à vous, à eux or à elles*, and placed similarly to *mine, thine, his, &c.* in English: as,—this coat is mine, *cet habit est à moi*. That music is yours, *cette musique est à vous*.

The word *own*, which is sometimes used after the possessive pronouns *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their*, to give more energy to the expression, is rendered into French by the adjective *propre*: as,—I heard it with my own ears, *je l'ai entendu de mes PROPRES oreilles*. I saw it with my own eyes, *je l'ai vu de mes PROPRES yeux*.

ESSAY XVII.

My father, mother, and sisters loved him tenderly.—His wife is very ugly.—I have spoken to her husband.—Her hope is ill grounded.—Her son is not very learned.—(How old is) his (mother-in-law)?—His wit, his talents, his honesty, and his good nature, (make him admired) by every body.—My principles, my taste for study, and my love of retirement, have made me choose a retired life.—If you wish (to keep) my friendship and protection, do* not speak ill of me.—He has received these presents from my uncle and

aunt.—(Shall I send) this pheasant to your friend?—Has she lost all her property?—We expect a letter from our correspondent to-morrow.—Have you not yet (heard) from your amiable cousin?—All their projects have (failed.)—Is* your (grand-father) still living?—Yes; but my grand-mother is dead.—(Come), friends, let us fly to glory.—How do* you do, children?—Give my love to your sisters.—Is your mother (at home)?—No; but

7
10

11

12

13

my father (is), and he will be very glad to see you.—Do* your nieces
y est bien-aise de voir nièces

learn French?—One cannot always satisfy one's wishes.—My
apprennent-elles le On ne peut pas satisfaire désir

horse and yours are very bad, but I think mine is a little better than yours.
mauvais crois que peu meilleur que

—(Is it) her temper or yours that hinders you from living well together?
Est-ce humeur f. qui empêcher de ²vivre ¹ensemble

If (it be) yours, it is easy for* you to remedy it, by (keeping a check)
c'est il ² ³ ¹ d'apporter remède ⁵y en prenant

upon, yourself; if it be hers, redouble your attention, complaisance, and
sur vous-même redoubler d' ——— de ——— de

good behaviour; it is very seldom that this method (proves unsuccessful).—All
bons procédés il rare que moyen ne réussisse pas 70

the pictures are arrived from Italy, except yours, hers, and mine, which we
tableau arriver Italie excepté que

expect to-morrow.—We know what are your amusements in town, whereas
attendons savons quels amusement à la ville au lieu

you (are quite ignorant) of ours in the country; but I assure you that ours
que n'avez nulle idée à campagne mais

are infinitely superior to yours.—They have (returned) us our music, where
infinitement préférables rendu musique où

is theirs?—Our field is cultivated, theirs (is not).—Her morals are correct,
champ cultiver ne l'est pas mœurs bon

theirs are corrupt.—My books are new, his are old.—Take this to my son,
corrompu livre neuf vieux Porter

and that to yours.—You may send these pistols to their country
pouvez envoyer pistolet ²de ³campagne

house, if you like, but (not) to mine.—She has learnt her lesson, and he
¹maison voulez non pas appris leçon lui il

has not learnt his.—He has found a cravat of yours among his. A cravat of
trouver cravate parmi

mine, you say? show it (to me).—I (saw) a countryman of yours
¹dites- montrer moi ai vu ² ³compatriote ³ ⁴

yesterday.—This money is mine.—(That is) a trick of his.—Will you take this
¹hier argent Voilà tour porter

watch to your sister? I think it is hers.—Whose great coat is this? It is my
montre crois que c' ¹à ²qui ³surtout ³ ⁴ à

(brother's.) I thought it was yours. No; it is not mine.—Did you really
frère croyais que c' ce Avez- réellement

hear that?—Yes; I heard it with my own ears.—I tell you that I
entendu ²ai entendu ¹l' de oreille dis que

saw it with my own eyes.
²ai vu ¹l' de

LESSON XVIII.

2. Of the Demonstrative Pronouns.

The demonstrative pronouns are words which we use to point out the person or thing spoken of, as previously explained.

It must be recollected that *this, that, these, those*, are expressed in French by—*ce, cet, cette, ces*, when they come immediately before the substantives which they particularise : as,—this gentleman, *ce monsieur* ; that bird, *cet oiseau* ; that man, *cet homme* ; this lady, *cette dame* ; these young ladies, *ces demoiselles* ; those children, *ces enfans* ; of those men, *de ces hommes* ; &c. ; always using *ce* before a noun masculine singular, beginning with a consonant or *h* aspirated ; and *cet* before a noun likewise masculine singular, but beginning with a vowel or *h* mute. *Cette*, on the contrary, is always required before a noun feminine singular, whether it begins with a vowel, an *h* mute, or a consonant ; and *ces* before a noun plural, whatever its initial or gender may be.

71 But *this, that, these, those*, are expressed in French by *celui, celle, ceux, celles*, when, instead of immediately preceding a substantive, they refer to one ; this is generally the case, when they are followed either by the preposition *of* in English, or by one of the relative pronouns *who, whom, that* or *which* : as,—the term of life is short, that of beauty is still more so, *le temps de la vie est court, CELUI de la beauté l'est encore davantage*. Madame, I bring you your gown, and that of your daughter, *Madame, je vous apporte votre robe, et CELLE de votre fille*. Lend me that which you bought yesterday, *prêtez-moi CELUI que vous achetâtes hier* ; speaking of a parasol.

Celui-ci, celle-ci, ceux-ci, celles-ci, *this* and *these*, are used to denote, among two or several objects or things, the nearest to the person who speaks ; and *celui-là, celle-là, ceux-là* or *celles-là*, to point out the most remote object : as,—which of these two horses would you advise me to buy? *this* is four years old, and *that* five ; *lequel de ces deux chevaux me conseillerez-vous d'acheter ? CELUI-CI a quatre ans, et CELUI-LÀ cinq*.

Ceci and *cela* are used in the sense of *this* and *that*, not joined to any noun nor referring to any, but taken in an indefinite collective sense, when we either mention or point at some thing, without specifying what it is by its own name. They have no plural, and are used only in the singular, both for the masculine and feminine gender. *Ceci* refers to the nearest object or thing to the person who speaks, and *cela* to the most remote object : as,—what does *this* mean? *que veut dire CECI ?* what did you do *that* for? *pourquoi avez-vous fait CELA ?* Give *this* to the lady, *donnez CECI à madame*. Bring me *that*, *apportez-moi CELA*.

GENERAL RULE.—The demonstrative pronouns, *ce, cet, cette, ces ; de ce, de cet, de cette, de ces* ; and *à ce, à cet, à cette, à ces*, are used in French before every substantive which they serve to demonstrate, and agree with it in gender and number, although, when several substantives follow each other in a sentence in English, *this, that, these, those*, be frequently used before the first substantive only, and understood before those which succeed : as,—see how this man, woman, and child are playing together! *voyez comme CET homme, CETTE femme, et CET enfant jouent ensemble !*

The relative demonstrative pronouns *celui, celle, ceux, celles*, likewise agree in gender and number with their respective substantives in French: as,—*ce parapluie et CELUI de votre sœur*, this umbrella and that of your sister.

The following lines of Racine beautifully exemplify the repetition of the demonstrative pronouns *ce, cet, cette* and *ces*.

De *cette* nuit, Phénice, as-tu vu la splendeur ?
 Tes yeux ne sont-ils pas tout pleins de sa grandeur ?
Ces flambeaux, *ce* bûcher, *cette* nuit enflammée,
Ces aigles, *ces* faisceaux, *ce* peuple, *cette* armée,
Cette foule de rois, *ces* consuls, *ce* sénat,
 Qui tous de mon amant empruntaient leur éclat ;
Cette pourpre, *cet* or, que rehaussait sa gloire,
 Et *ces* lauriers encor témoins de sa victoire.

(Rac. *Bérénice*, 1, 5.)

ESSAY XVIII.

This portrait is (beautiful.)—The term of life is short, that of beauty is still
 ——— *de toute beauté* *temps* *vie* *court* *beauté* ^{2e} *encore*
 more so.—These peaches are not so ripe as those which I
⁴ *bien davantage* ^{1e} *pêche* *aussi mûr que* *pret. def.* 72
 bought yesterday.—We gave the money to that man.—Look at* the
acheter hier *pret. def. donner argent* *Regarder*
 beak of that bird.—(Is it) far from that house to the river?—(Such a) happiness
bec oiseau Y a-t-il loin rivière Un pareil bonheur
 is infinitely superior to that which one can enjoy in this world.—
infiniment au-dessus de dont on peut jouir dans monde
 The climate of England is not comparable to that of Switzerland.—This
climat l' ——— la Suisse
 hatred, long restrained, broke forth, and was the unhappy
haine long-temps contenu pret. def. éclater pret. def. 1e malheureux
 cause of those dreadful events.—What gown shall I lend her?—That which
^{2e} ——— ^{1e} *terrible 2e événement* *Quelle robe* *prêter lui*
 you showed Miss S*** last week.—I have just bought these two
pret. def. montrer à dernier acheter
 silk umbrellas: this costs me twenty-four shillings, and that thirty.—Do*
^{2e} *de 2e soie 1e parapluie* *coûte me* *schelling*
 not mention that to (any body).—If she does that, she will repent it.—
parler de personne Si fait 1e 2e repentir 2e en
 Is this good to eat?—That is very bad to drink.—Take this (to the)
^{2e} *Est-il 1e à manger mauvais à boire Porter à*
 lady, and keep that for yourself.—What (is the meaning of) this?—See
madame garder pour vous Que veut dire Voyez
 how these men and women are playing together!—You (ought not to trust)
comme jouer ensemble ne devriez pas vous fier à
 those who are interested in (deceiving you).—He may tell these stories to
intéressé à 2e tromper 1e vous peut conter histoire
 those who will listen to* him.
voudront bien 2e écouter 1e

LESSON XIX.

Of the Relative Pronouns.

The nature of the relative pronouns having been already explained, and their different variations exemplified, the object of this article is to point out the mode of using them.

The relative pronouns are (as shown in the beginning of this Grammar), *qui, que, lequel, dont*, who, whom, that, which, of whom or which.

GENERAL RULE.—Whenever the relative pronouns *who, whom, that* or *which*, are used in an English sentence, which is not interrogative, and refer to a substantive expressed before: as,—*the young lady who sings; the children who are amiable; the gentlemen whom I have seen; &c.*; *who, that* and *which*, are expressed in French by *qui*, for the nominative of the following verb, and *whom, that* or *which*, by *que*, for its direct object; both *qui* and *que* are used with reference to persons and things of whichever gender and number, and are immediately placed after the noun to which they relate: as,—*the young lady who sings, la demoiselle qui chante. The children who are amiable, les enfans qui sont aimables. The gentlemen whom I have seen, les messieurs que j'ai vus.*

But *who*, employed interrogatively for the nominative of the following verb: as,—*who is there? who has done that?* is construed into French by *qui* or *qui est-ce qui*: as,—*who is there? qui est là? or qui est-ce qui est là?—who has done that? qui a fait cela? or qui est-ce qui a fait cela?*

Whom, likewise used in an interrogative manner for the object of the succeeding verb: as,—*whom do you call? whom do you speak to? from whom have you received that news?* is also expressed by *qui*, but never by *qui est-ce qui*, or *que*: as,—*whom do you call? qui appelez-vous? and not qui est-ce qui or que appelez-vous?—whom do you speak to? à qui parlez-vous? and not à qui est-ce qui, &c., from whom have you received that news? de qui avez-vous reçu cette nouvelle? and not de qui est-ce qui, &c.*

Whose, employed in an interrogative manner before a substantive followed by a tense of the verb *to be*, signifying either to belong to or whose turn it is to do anything: as,—*whose book is this? whose turn is it to speak?* is expressed in French by *à qui*, before the corresponding tense of the verb *être*: as,—*whose book is this? à qui est ce livre? Whose turn is it to speak? à qui est-ce à parler?*

Which, followed by the preposition *of*, and used to ask which person or thing out of several, or when, without being followed by *of*, it is used relatively to a noun going before: as,—*which of your sisters?—to which of these flowers do you give the preference?—from which of your brothers have you heard?* &c.—is expressed in French by *lequel, laquelle, lesquels* or *lesquelles*; *duquel, de laquelle, desquels* or

Lequel relates to persons and things, and is chiefly used after propositions, or to avoid ambiguity.

The disorder in which he found them
le désordre dans lequel il les trouva
The man with whom I live
l'homme avec lequel je demeure.

As qui (que, dont) is of both genders and numbers, the sense is not always sufficiently distinguished: we therefore employ its synonym lequel (lequel &c) which on account of its different terminations, and of the article prefixed to it, removes every ambiguity. C'est un effet de la providence qui... as qui relates to effect, and not to providence, say lequel. The same pronoun lequel &c. is preferred whenever the relation qui is necessarily separated from its antecedent, as in the above sentence.

R. 183.

desquelles ; auquel, à laquelle, auxquels or auxquelles : as,—which of your sisters ? laquelle de vos sœurs ? to which of these flowers do you give the preference ? à laquelle de ces fleurs donnez-vous la préférence ? from which of your brothers have you heard ? duquel de vos frères avez-vous reçu des nouvelles ?

Which, followed by the preposition *of*, as in the above sentences, is also sometimes expressed by *quel est celui de* or *quelle est celle de*, before the substantive following, with one of the relative pronouns *qui*, *que* or *dont*, &c., before the next verb, according as the relative pronoun stands for its nominative, or its direct or indirect object : as,—which of your brothers has done that ? *quel est celui de vos frères qui a fait cela ?* which of these ladies do you like best, *quelle est celle de ces dames que vous aimez le mieux ?*

When *what*, coming before a substantive, or before a tense of the verb *to be*, followed by a substantive, is used either by way of interrogation, or to express satisfaction, pleasure, or astonishment : as,—*what lesson have you learnt ?—what pleasure ! what are her motives ?* it is expressed in French by *quel, quelle, quels or quelles* : as,—*what lesson have you learnt ? quelle leçon avez-vous apprise ? what pleasure ! quel plaisir ! what are her motives ? quels sont ses motifs ?*

What, followed by *a* or *an*, either immediately before a substantive alone, or before an adjective followed by a substantive, and used also to express pleasure, satisfaction, or astonishment, is likewise expressed by *quel ! quelle ! quels ! or quelles !* and *a* or *an* is left out : as,—*What a rogue ! quel coquin ! What a fine lady ! quelle belle dame !*

But *what*, used immediately before a verb, in the beginning of an interrogative sentence, in the sense of *what thing ?* as,—*what does he say ? what are you doing there ?* is construed into French by *que ?* or *qu'est-ce que ?* with this difference that, should *que* be used, the succeeding verb must be followed by its nominative ; whereas, if *qu'est-ce que ?* be employed, the verb is usually preceded by its nominative : as,—*what do you say ? que dites-vous ? or qu'est-ce que vous dites ? what are you doing there ? que faites-vous là ? or qu'est-ce que vous faites là ?*

What, forming an interrogative sentence of itself, as when one is not exactly certain of the thing which the person speaking has said, is expressed in French by *quoi ?* or *comment ?* as,—*what ? quoi ? or comment ?*

What, depending on a preposition, whether the preposition immediately precedes *what*, or comes after the verb by which it is governed, is likewise expressed by *quoi* : as,—*what are you thinking of ? à quoi pensez-vous ? what does he complain of ? de quoi se plaint-il ?* as if it were in English—*or what think you ? or what complains he ?*

When *whose*, without being used in an interrogative manner, is followed by a substantive, which is either the nominative or direct object of the succeeding verb : as,—*God, whose decrees are eternal ; God, whose works we admire ;* it is expressed in French by *dont*, for all

sorts of objects of whichsoever gender and number. The same order which exists in the English sentence is retained in the French, if the substantive following *whose* be the nominative of the next verb, as in the first of the above examples ; but, if it be its direct object, as in the second, it is then placed after the verb. In either case, the article *le*, *la*, or *les*, must be placed before the substantive : as,—God, whose decrees are eternal, *Dieu, dont les décrets sont éternels*. God, whose works we admire, *Dieu, dont nous admirons les ouvrages* ; as if it were in English,—*God, of whom the decrees are eternal ; God, of whom we admire the works*.

But if the substantive following *whose* should be the object of a preposition expressed, or governed by a verb requiring one in French : as,—*he is a man to whose honour I dare not trust : God, whose laws all men should obey ; the tree, on whose boughs those trophies hung ; whose* should then be expressed by *de qui*, and sometimes by *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels* or *desquelles*, with reference to persons or personified objects ; but never by *de qui*, with reference to inanimate things,—*duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels* or *desquelles*, being then always used. *De qui* or *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels* and *desquelles*, must follow the substantive which *whose* precedes in English, and the preposition on which that substantive depends, comes first, although it frequently follows the verb in English : as,—*he is a man to whose honour I dare not trust ; c'est un homme à l'honneur de qui je n'ose me fier*. God, 75 *whose laws all men should obey, Dieu, aux lois de qui tous les hommes doivent obéir*. The tree, on whose boughs those trophies hung, *l'arbre, aux branches duquel ces trophées étaient suspendus* ; as if it were in English—*he is a man to the honour of whom I dare not trust ; God, to the laws of whom all men should obey ; the tree, to the boughs of which those trophies hung*.

Of whom or *of which*, coming after a substantive which is also either the nominative or direct object of the following verb : as,—*there are roses, the smell of which is very agreeable ; it is a disease, the nature of which the doctors do not know* ; is expressed in French, like the pronoun *whose*, by *dont*, for all sorts of objects of whichsoever gender and number, placing the substantive after *dont*, if it be the nominative of the following verb, as in the first of the examples just quoted ; but after the verb, if it be its direct object, as in the second example. In any case, *dont* must precede the verb : as,—*there are roses, the smell of which is very agreeable, voilà des roses dont l'odeur est très-agréable*. It is a disease, the nature of which the doctors do not know, *c'est une maladie dont les médecins ne connaissent pas la nature* ; as if it were in English—*there are roses of which the smell is very agreeable ; it is a disease of which the doctors do not know the nature*.

Should *of whom* or *of which* come after a substantive, either depending on a preposition, or governed by a verb requiring one in French :

When the relative requires to be dis-
cussed from its antecedent instead of doubt
we are obliged and de laquelle in speak-
ing of things or animals, as

La Janine dans le lit de laquelle
In speaking of persons, it is generally a
matter of indifference whether we use
de qui or de quel de laquelle 99.250

Those used without reference to a noun
expressed before, implies the word person
understood. If it can be changed into
of whom, it is expressed by de qui

De qui êtes-vous fils?
If whom can be changed into to whom
it is expressed by à qui

À qui est ce chapeau?

99.251

When whom and which come after
any preposition (except of) whom is
expressed by qui, and which by le-
quel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles, i.e.
qui preceded by a preposition is ne-
ver said of things, but only of persons;
99.251

Doubt may relate either to persons
or things, but is always placed be-
tween two substantives, or between
a subst. and the verb which governs it.
Le cheval dont je me sers

De quorū and à quorū: often supplied the
place of duquel, auquel, de laquelle
à laquelle, but only when relating
to inanimate objects R. 185.

as,—the ladies FOR the sake OF WHOM I sang; it was a sentence, to the rigour OF WHICH he could not submit; of whom is then expressed by *de qui* or *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels* or *desquelles*, with reference to persons or personified objects; and of which, by *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels* or *desquelles*, with reference to things, but never by *dont*. In this case, the construction of the sentence runs the same in French as in English: as,—the ladies for the sake of whom I sang, *les dames pour l'amour DE QUI, or DESQUELLES, je chantai*. It was a sentence, to the rigour of which he could not submit, *c'était une sentence, à la rigueur DE LAQUELLE il ne pouvait se soumettre*.

If *whom*, *that* or *which*, depend on a verb governing the preposition *de* in French: as,—the person WHOM I speak of; the advantages WHICH you enjoy; the circumstances WHICH you mention; they are expressed, like *whose*, of *whom* or of *which*, by *DONT* for all sorts of objects, and the preposition *de* required by the French verb is left out, as also the preposition on which they depend in English: example,—the person whom I speak of, *la personne DONT je parle*. The advantages which you enjoy, *les avantages DONT vous jouissez*. The circumstances which you mention, *les circonstances DONT vous faites mention*; because we say—*parler de*;—*jouer de*;—*faire mention de*.

Should the verb governing *whom*, *that* or *which*, require *à* after it in French, instead of *de*: as,—the person whom I trusted has deceived me; it is a misfortune which I did not expect: WHOM is then expressed by *à qui*, with reference to both persons and personified objects, and sometimes, also, by *auquel*, *à laquelle*, *auxquels* or *auxquelles*, according to the gender and number of the substantive; but *which* and *that*, referring to inanimate things, are always construed by *auquel*, *à laquelle*, *auxquels* or *auxquelles*: as,—the person whom I trusted has deceived me, *la personne à qui, or à laquelle, je me suis trompé*. It is a misfortune which I did not expect, *c'est un malheur auquel je ne m'attendais pas*; because the verbs *se fier* and *s'attendre* govern the preposition *à*.

Whom, preceded by the preposition *from*, and used with reference to persons, is always expressed by *de qui*, and never by *dont*: as,—the person from whom I have received that information, *la personne DE QUI j'ai reçu cette nouvelle*; and not *dont*.

Dont can never be used to ask a question: whenever, therefore, of or from *whom* or *which* is employed interrogatively, it must be expressed in French by *de qui*, (with reference to persons only,) and by *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels* or *desquelles*, with reference either to persons or things, if depending on a verb which governs the preposition *de* in French: as,—from whom have you received this letter? *DE QUI avez-vous reçu cette lettre?* and not *dont*. Of which of them do you speak? *DUQUEL parlez-vous?* and not *dont*; because the verbs *recevoir* and *parler* govern the preposition *de*.

Observe.—When the relative pronouns *whom*, *that* or *which*, depend on a preposition, which is to be construed into French by any other preposition than *de* or *à*, they are then expressed by *qui*, and sometimes by *lequel*, *laquelle*, *lesquels* or *lesquelles*, with reference to persons or personified objects; but they are always construed by *lequel*, *laquelle*, *lesquels* or *lesquelles*, with reference to things, and never by *qui*: as,—the child on whom I fell, *l'enfant sur qui je tombai*. The Palladium, in which the Trojans had a particular confidence, was a statue of Minerva, *le Palladium, dans lequel les Troyens avaient une confiance particulière, était une statue de Minerve*; and not *dans qui*, &c.

Repetition of the Relative Pronouns.

GENERAL RULE.—Whenever *qui* stands for the nominative, and *que* or *dont*, &c., for the object of two or more verbs following each other in a sentence, they are repeated before each verb in French, although *who*, *whom*, *that* or *which*, may be used before the first verb only in English, and understood before those which succeed: as,—she is a young lady who is handsome, sings well, plays on several instruments, and is admired by everybody, *c'est une demoiselle qui est belle, qui chante bien, qui joue de plusieurs instrumens, et qui est admirée de tout le monde*. He is a man whom I know and respect, *c'est un homme que je connais et que je respecte*.

Taste and perspicuity are, however, in many instances, the best guides for the repetition or non-repetition of the pronouns. *Qui*, for instance, ought not to be repeated in the following sentence: the man who likes the country and inhabits the town is not happy, *l'homme qui aime la campagne et habite la ville n'est point heureux*; and not *l'homme qui aime la campagne et qui habite la ville*, &c.

Whom, *that* and *which*, are frequently understood in English; but their equivalents *que*, *dont*, *à qui*, &c., must always be expressed in French: as,—she is a lady I love, *c'est une dame que j'aime*; and not *c'est une dame j'aime*.

Observe.—The relative pronouns cannot be separated in French, as they are sometimes in English, from the prepositions by which they are governed; they must always be preceded by them: as,—the young lady whom I was speaking to, *la demoiselle à qui je parlais*; and not—*la demoiselle qui* or *que je parlais à*.

ESSAY XIX.

The gentleman who is at the window.—The lady who (has just gone out).—
monsieur fenêtre dame vient de sortir
 The bird which sings on that tree is very fine.—(It is) the young man whom
oiseau chanter sur arbre C'est jeune
 you recommended to me.—The apples which you have (bought) are all
avez recommander m' pommes achetées
 rotten.—(Send me back) the dictionary which I lent you.—Children who
pourries Renvoyez-moi dictionnaire ai prêté Enfants

are obedient are loved (by everybody).—Who has given you that?—Whom
obéissant aimer de tout le monde donner

have you met in the street?—Whom (are you going) to* write to?—Whom
rencontrer vous allez- écrire

have you (received) these letters from?—Whom do* you wish to speak to?—
reçu lettre désirer parler

Whose house is this?—Whose gloves are these?—Which of your brothers-
maison gant frère

(learns) French?—To which of these houses do* you wish to* go?—From which of
apprend Français voulez- aller

his sisters has he heard?—(There is) red and white wine,
sœur recevoir des nouvelles Voilà rouge du vin blanc vin

which will you have*?—What fault has she (committed), (that she should be
de quel commise pour la

punished so severely)?—What is the news to-day?—What are her
punir si sévèrement sent nouvelles f. pl. aujourd'hui

motives?—What satisfaction!—To what hotel do* you go?—What grammar
motif hôtel aller De

do* you (use)?—What have I done?—What does* he (want)?—What
vous servez-vous fait veut-

was* she (telling) you?—What were* they (doing) there?—What have you
disait- faisaient-

done with your money?—In what have I neglected to fulfil my duty?—What
de En négliger de remplir devoir

(do they charge her) with?—What does* his brother (apply himself) to?—What
l'accuse-t-on de s'applique-t-il

do* they aim at?—The man, whose genius is grand and sublime like nature....
viser génie comme

The Lady, whose wit and talents you admired (so much)....—Napoleon,
esprit talent imp. admirer tant

whose greatness of soul is* so much (praised), and to whose valour the French
grandeur ame tant on vante

owe so many victories, died at forty-five years of age.—The man, whose
devoir tant de est mort 1 4 5 3 2p

conduct is regular, and whose actions are upright, is a hundred times
conduite régulier irréprochable

happier than he who passes his life in wantonness and iniquity.—She is a
celui dissipation C

woman to whose caprices I (shall never submit).—We have some foreign
ne me soumettrai jamais étranger

flowers, the smell of which is very sweet.—(Is not that) the young lady of
fleur odeur agréable N'est-ce pas là demoiselle

whom your mother complains?—Providence, without the assistance of (whom)
se plaindre sans secours laquelle

we (cannot) succeed....—The daughter of Minos gave a thread to
ne pouvons réussir — pret. def. donner fil

Theseus, (by means) of which he (went out) of the labyrinth.—The Alps, on
Thésée au moyen sortit labyrinthe Alpes sur

the summit of which reign perpetual snow and ice, present,
sommet régner perpétuel des neiges f. pl. des glaces f. pl. présenter

at sunset, the most striking and magnificent spectacle the eye
au soleil couchant *imposant* *magnifique* *que*
 (ever beheld).—The person whom you (pitied so much) is dead.—The good
ait jamais contemplé *dont* *aviez si pitié* *mort*
 reputation which he enjoys.....—Have you seen the house which I mentioned to
jouir *vu* *ai parlé*
 you?—The money I wanted was for the relief of that unfortunate
dont *avais besoin imp.* *soulagement* *malheureux*
 family.—(That is) what I wanted to* speak to you about.—The person whom I
¹*voilà* ²*quoi* ³*voulais* ⁴*de*
 trusted (the most) has deceived me.—(It is) a misfortune which I did not
¹*le plus* *tromper* *C'est* *malheur*
 expect.—The ladies from whom I received that information are gone to
s'attendre *pret. indef. recevoir* *nouvelle* *allées en*
 America.—Idleness is a vice to which (young people) are (very much) inclined.
Amérique Paresse *jeunes gens* *très-* *enclin*
 —If I had known the deplorable situation to which she is reduced, I should
avais su *état* *réduisant* ¹
 have lent her some money.—The studies he applies himself to are not very
³*avoir* ⁴*prêter* ²*lui* *argent* *étude* *s'appliquer.* *très-*
 difficult.—It is the gentleman I was running after.—London and Paris are two
difficile *C'est* *monsieur* *courais* *après*
 large stages, on which men are always masked.—Who goes there?—Whom
grand théâtre sur *masqué* *va là*
 shall I apply to?—What a* shocking accident!—What is your opinion on
s'adresser *terrible* *avis*
 that affair?—What are* you doing there?—Is the exercise, which I gave
¹*affaire* *faites-* ²*Est-il* ³*thème* ⁴*ai donné*
 you to write, too difficult?—The wine we drank yesterday was not very
⁵*à* ⁶*trop difficile* *vin* *bûmes hier imp.*
 good.—(She is) a young lady who sings well, plays on several instruments,
C'est *demoiselle* *chanter* *jouer de plusieurs*
 and is admired by every body.—(Is not) that man unhappy who likes the
admirer de ¹*N'est-il pas* ²*malheureux* *aimer*
 town and inhabits the country?
habiter *campagne*

LESSON XX.

Of Indefinite Pronouns.

Indefinite pronouns are words which we use to denote persons and things in an indefinite manner. They are the following :—

One, people, they,

On.

Whoever,

Whosoever,

Any one who or that,

Any body who or that,

Quiconque ; qui que ce soit qui : this last governs the subjunctive.

Whomsoever,

Qui que ce soit que, with the succeeding verb in the subjunctive mood.

Somebody, Some one, Any body, Any one,	}	<i>Quelqu'un, quelqu'une.</i>
Each,		
Every body, Every one,	}	<i>Chacun, chacune.</i>
Every,		
No body, No one, Not any body, Not any one,	}	<i>Tout le monde.</i>
No,		
None,	}	<i>Chaque ; tous les, toutes les ; tout, toute.</i>
Not one, Not any,		
Nothing, Not any thing,	}	<i>Personne.</i>
Nothing at all, Nothing whatever or what- [soever,		
The same,	}	<i>Nul, nulle ; aucun, aucune.</i>
Many, Several,		
Such,	}	<i>Aucun, aucune.</i>
Such a one,		
Som', Any,	}	<i>Pas un, pas une.</i>
Whatever, Whatsoever,		
However, Howsoever, Though ever so much, Though ever so little, Let ever so,	}	<i>Rien.</i>
Whatever, Whatsoever, Whichsoever,		
All,	}	<i>Rien du tout.</i>
All the, The whole of, The whole,		
	}	<i>Le même, la même, les mêmes.</i>
	}	<i>Plusieurs.</i>
	}	<i>Tel, telle ; tels, telles.</i>
	}	<i>Un tel, une telle.</i>
	}	<i>Quelque, quelques ; and, sometimes, quelconque, quelconques.</i>
	}	<i>Quelque, quelques, before a substantive, with que before the following verb, which is put in the subjunctive mood ; and, also, quel que, quelle que, quels que, quelles que, in two words, before a tense of the verb être, which is likewise put in the subjunctive mood.</i>
	}	<i>Quelque and tout, indeclinable, before an adjective or a participle, with que before the next verb, which is put in the subjunctive mood after quelque, and in the indicative after tout.</i>
	}	<i>Quelque chose que ; quoi qu'il ce soit que ; quoi que ; with the succeeding verb in the subjunctive mood, if depending on these words.</i>
	}	<i>Tout, toute ; tous, toutes.</i>
	}	<i>Tout le, toute la ; tous les, toutes les.</i>
	}	<i>Le tout.</i>

All that, Every thing that,	} <i>Tout ce qui, tout ce que.</i>
Another,	<i>Un autre, une autre.</i>
Others,	<i>Les autres ;</i> and <i>autrui</i> after a preposition.
Each other, One another,	} <i>L'un l'autre, l'une l'autre ; les uns les autres, les unes les autres.</i>
Both, One and another,	{ <i>L'un et l'autre, l'une et l'autre ; les uns et les autres, les unes et les autres ; tous les deux, toutes les deux ;</i> and <i>tous deux, toutes deux.</i>
Either,	{ <i>L'un ou l'autre, l'une ou l'autre ; les uns ou les autres, les unes ou les autres.</i>
Neither,	{ <i>Ni l'un ni l'autre, ni l'une ni l'autre ; ni les uns ni les autres, ni les unes ni les autres.</i>

GENERAL RULE.—Whenever the pronouns *one*, *we*, *you*, *they*, and *people*, are used in an indeterminate sense, as in these sentences,—*one says ; people say ; they say ; we are not always happy ; one is not always young and handsome ; they fought like desperate men ; &c.*, they are expressed in French by *on*, which always requires the verb of which it is the nominative, in the third person singular of the active voice, and the adjective or participle which may refer to it, (viz. to *on*,) in the singular masculine, if reference be made to men, and in the feminine singular, if to women ; but in the plural, either masculine or feminine, according to the sense, if including an idea of plurality : as,—*one says*, *people say*, *they say*, *on dit* ; *we are not always happy*, *on n'est pas toujours heureux* ; *one is not always young and handsome*, *on n'est pas toujours jeune et jolie* ; *they fought like desperate men*, *on se battit en désespérés*. This pronoun is likewise used to express all indefinite and general expressions of reports : such as,—*it is said*, *it is reported*, *on dit* ; and all passive and indeterminate phrases : as,—*I was told of it yesterday*, *on me le dit hier* ; *he has been informed of it*, *on le lui a mandé*.

When *one* is not employed in an indefinite sense, but is used by way of distinction, as when, speaking of two boxes, we say:—*in one* you will find books, and in the other money ;—it is expressed in French by *l'un* or *l'une*, according to the gender ; and *they*, referring to a substantive or pronoun plural going before, by *ils* or *elles*, according as the substantive or pronoun is masculine or feminine. *We* is also expressed by *nous*, and *you* by *vous*, when not taken in an indefinite sense : as,—*you will receive two boxes : in one you will find books, and in the other money*, *vous recevrez deux boîtes : dans l'une vous trouverez des livres, et dans l'autre de l'argent*. *I have invited them, but they will not come*, *je les ai invités, mais ils ne veulent pas venir*. *We shall go*, *nous irons* ; &c.

Whenever also a verb, being used in the passive voice, is not taken in an indeterminate sense, but is followed by the preposition *by* and a substantive particularising it : as,—*I was told by Mrs. L*** that.....* ;

When they is used with reference to a
plural noun expressed before, it is
rendered in French by ils or elles
and not by on

On is usually repeated before every
verb to which it is nominative.
But on cannot be repeated in
the same sentence when it refers
to different substantives. R. 204

THE
JOURNAL
OF
THE
AMERICAN
MEDICAL
ASSOCIATION
PUBLISHED WEEKLY
CHICAGO, ILL., U.S.A.
Vol. 41, No. 1, January 1, 1929

he was attacked by four thieves ; she was run over by a cart or horse ; &c., the pronoun *on* cannot be used, but the verb is sometimes expressed by changing the passive voice into the active, using the substantive following for its nominative, and leaving out the preposition *by* ; and, sometimes, the passive voice is used in French as in English, if the verb and sense will admit of it : as,—I was told by Mrs. L**** that , *Madame L*** me dit que* He was attacked by four thieves, *il fut attaqué par quatre voleurs*. She was run over by a cart or horse, *une charrette ou un cheval lui passa sur le corps ; &c.*

Observe.—*L'on* is used instead of *on*, after *et*, *si*, *ou*, to avoid the harsh sound which would result from the meeting of these words with *on* ; thus we say—*et l'on*, *si l'on*, *ou l'on* ; and not *et on*, *si on*, *ou on* : as,—*si L'ON faisait la paix, j'irais en France*, if peace were to be made, I should go to France, and not *si on faisait* ; &c.

L'on is also employed in lieu of *on*, after *que*, if the next word begins with *c* or *q*, for the like purpose of avoiding the harsh sound which would result from the meeting of *que* with *on* in this case : as,—*ce que L'ON conçoit bien s'exprime clairement* ; and not *ce qu'on conçoit bien*, &c.

But *on* must always be used after *et*, *si*, *ou*, *que*, when the succeeding word is one of the pronouns *le*, *la*, *les*, *lui*, *leur*, or any other word with which *l'on* would form a disagreeable sound : as,—*on le lui a dit*, he has been told of it ; and not *L'ON le lui a dit*.

On is in general to be preferred to *l'on* ; and *on* must be used at the beginning of either a whole sentence or of a part of it : as,—*on aime une femme aimable*, *on la chérit*, *on l'adore*, we love an amiable woman, we cherish and adore her ; and not *L'ON aime une femme aimable*, *L'ON la chérit*, *L'ON l'adore*.

On and *l'on* can only be used for the nominative of the verb : they precede it in affirmative and negative sentences ; but in an interrogative sentence, *on* alone can be used for the nominative of the verb, and it is placed after the verb in a simple tense, and after the auxiliary in a compound one ; and when the verb ends with a vowel in the third person singular, a *t*, with a hyphen on each side of it, is put between the verb and *on* : as,—*que fera-t-on ?* what will be done.

On or *l'on* is generally repeated in French before every verb of which it is the nominative, although the expression equivalent to it in English may, when several verbs follow each other in a sentence, be used before the first only, and understood before those which succeed. The conjunction *and*, which is used before the last verb in such a case in English, is elegantly suppressed in French : as—people love their children, caress and often spoil them, *on aime ses enfans, on les caresse, on les gâte souvent*.

Aucun, *nul*, *ni l'un ni l'autre*, *pas un*, or their feminine *aucune*, *nulle*, *ni l'une ni l'autre*, *pas une*, as also *personne* and *rien*, require *ne* before the verbs of which they are the nominatives or objects, and the adjectives or participles which refer to them are put in the masculine

singular, if reference be made to men, and in the feminine singular, if to women: as,—I say nothing, *je NE dis rien*; nobody told you so, *personne NE vous a dit cela*; &c., always putting the verb in the third person singular, if any one of these pronouns be its nominative.

For further explanations on this subject, see the Syntax, on the article of Indefinite Pronouns.

ESSAY XX.

Is one well attended there? Yes; very well.—One is always better (at
²Est ³ ⁴ ⁵servi ¹y *très-bien* *mieux chez*
home) than elsewhere.—You will receive two parcels: in one you will find a
soi qu' ailleurs recevoir paquet
bill of exchange, and in the other two (bank-notes).—I have been told by
lettre change. billets de banque
Mr. L** that your mother is much better.—My father was attacked by
se porter beaucoup mieux attaquer par
four thieves, in returning home, last night.—His sister was unfortunately
en retourner chez lui hier au soir malheureusement
bit by a mad dog.—Do* they talk of peace?—People attribute the
mordue enragé chien parler paix attribuer
invention of gunpowder to Berthold Sherward of Friburg.—They say
à canon poudre Fribourg dit
that the French will not succeed in Spain.—It is reported that the Spaniards
Français réussir en Espagne Espagnol
have won the last battle.—I was* told (of it) yesterday.—(What news
gagner dernier bataille me dit le Que dit-on
is there)? None.—(Is it thought) that Marshal N** (will be) acquitted? No;
*de nouveau Rien Croit-on Maréchal N** soit acquitter*
people think that he will be condemned to death.—If peace were to be made,
croit condamner à mort
I should go to France.—We learn better what we understand, than what we
en apprend ce que comprend que
² (do not).—Do that, or (you will be punished).—She has been* informed
ne comprend pas Faites l'on vous punira Lui mander
(of it)—Bring your papers, and they will be* examined.—False reports
le Appporter on les examiner Faux bruit
are* often circulated.—What do* they say in England of the Spanish
² ¹fait ³courir ⁴Que *en Angleterre d' Espagne*
war?—(I shall have some fruit sent) from the country.—We love an amiable
¹guerre *On m'enverra du fruit campagne*
woman, we cherish and* adore her.—Somebody told me so.—Well! whoever
chérir adorer a dit l' Eh bien! 1
told you so was wrong.—Has any body written (to him)?—Every body
⁴a dit ² ³l' avait tort ⁵A-t-il ¹ ⁴écrit ²lui
believes it.—Nobody (came here) to-day.—We have seen none of his friends.
croit le 4 il n'est venu ami
—She knows nothing.—Every one has his own* manner of (thinking and acting.)
sait manière penser et d'agir
—Every country has its laws and customs.—No man is free from error.—
Chaque pays loi ses usage exempt erreur

74.

(There was not) a single lady.—The same thing does* not please at all times.—
Il n'y avait pas seul dame chose plaît en temps
 Many people say so.—He does nothing.—When we apply ourselves to several
disent le fait on s'appliquer à
 sciences at once, we seldom succeed in any.—Such or such a* thing.—
à la fois rarement réussir dans aucun chose
 Whatsoever merit he may have, he will never succeed.—Whatever
mérite sub. pr.
 services you have rendered me, I have been thankful (for them).—
sub. pret. rendus 1 2 4 reconnaissant 2 en
 Whatever your birth and elevation may be, you ought not to*
1 naissance 5 votre élévation sub. pr. 2 être devoir
 despise any body.—However foolish fashions may be, people follow
mépriser personne 1 2 fou 4 mode sub. pr. 3 être suit
 them.—Whatever may happen, give me notice (of it).—All the
Quoi qu' sub. pr. arriver donner m' 2 avis 1 en
 ladies were so well (dressed).—Were all their friends there?—All that
imp. mises 5 Étaient-ils 1 2 3 4 y
 she says is not true.—Do* not speak ill of others.—(Another) would
dit vrai mal nulle autre personne
 not have behaved in that manner.—They will both come.—Either
se comporter de manière 2 tous les deux 1 viendront 3
 of* you* can render me that service.—Neither of* them* knows
1 vous 2 pouvez rendre service 6 1 ils 2 ne 3 savent
 what to* do.
4 que 5 faire

LESSON XXI.

Of Verbs.

Verbs are words by which we denote the actions or state of persons or things; or, again, verbs are words the principal use of which is to signify affirmation. 84

Verbs change their forms to agree with their nominatives. Particular attention must, therefore, be paid, when a verb is to be used, to ascertain the number and person of its nominative, that the verb may be made to agree with it.

There are five kinds of verbs, namely:—the *active*, the *passive*, the *neuter*, the *reflective*, and the *unipersonal*.

Active verbs express an action which an agent, called the nominative or subject, performs on an object or regimen, without the help of a preposition: as,—*PIERRE aime SOPHIE*, Peter loves Sophia.

Passive verbs are those of which the nominative or subject is affected, in some particular manner, by an agent: as,—*LOUISE est aimée DE PAUL*, Louisa is loved by Paul.

Neuter verbs are of two kinds in French: 1. Those the nominative of which performs an action that either is or can be directed towards an object or term with the help of a preposition: as,—*il nuit à ma réputation*.

tion, he injures my reputation. 2. Those which express an action performed by their nominative, but which action cannot be directed towards an object, or, in other words,—those which express the state, situation, or manner of being or existence of their nominative or subject: as,—*je dors*, I sleep; *j'existe*, I exist.

Reflective verbs express an action that falls on their nominative or subject, which is then represented in its function as object, by one of the governed personal pronouns *me, te, se, nous, vous*: as,—*JE ME flatte*, I flatter myself; *TU TE flattes*, thou flatterest thyself, &c.

Unipersonal verbs, otherwise called impersonal, are verbs which are only used in the third persons singular of their different tenses: as,—*il y a*, there is; *il faut*, it is necessary; *il importe*, it is of importance.

Defective verbs are not included in the division of verbs just given, as they are only those in which certain tenses or persons, not admitted by use, are wanting.

Of Number and Persons in Verbs.

There are two numbers in verbs as in nouns: *the singular* and *the plural*. The singular, when a single person or thing performs the action expressed by the verb: as,—I sing, *je chante*; thou walkest, *tu marches*; &c. The plural, when two or more persons or things concur in the same action: as,—we sing, *nous chantons*; they sleep, *ils dorment*.

In each number there are three persons: *the first, the second, and the third*. The first is the person who speaks; the second, the person spoken to; and the third, the person spoken of.

There are three pronouns to represent these three persons:—I, *je*; thou, *tu*; he, she, or it, *il* or *elle*, for the singular; we, *nous*; ye or you, *vous*; they, *ils* or *elles*, for the plural; but *vous* is likewise used for the singular, when referring to one person only, as before explained.

All substantives, either common or proper, are of the third person.

Observe.—A word is always ascertained to be a verb, when one of the above pronouns can be prefixed to it. *Lire* is, therefore, a verb; because we can say:—*je lis, tu lis, il ou elle lit*, &c.

Of Moods.

We call *moods* the different manners of using a verb, in order to express the different affections of our mind, or the various ways in which an action is performed or suffered.

A verb may be used in five different manners, namely,—in an *indefinite, positive, conditional, imperative, and subordinate manner*; which constitute five moods in verbs, called—*the infinitive, the indicative, the conditional, the imperative, and the subjunctive*.

The *infinitive* is so termed because it expresses a thing or action in an indefinite manner, without any reference to number or person: as,—*parler*, to speak; *finir*, to finish; *recevoir*, to receive.

The *indicative* affirms in a direct, positive, and absolute manner: as,—*je connais ces dames*, I know these ladies.

65

2

The *conditional* denotes that a thing or action, either would take or would have taken place, depending on a condition: as,—*je vous rendrais service, si je le pouvais*, I would render you service, if I could. *Il serait venu, s'il avait fait beau temps*, he would have come, if it had been fine weather.

The *imperative* is used for commanding, exhorting, entreating, or permitting: as,—*venez ici, que je vous parle*, come here, that I may speak to you.

The *subjunctive* represents a thing under a condition, motive, wish, or supposition, and is dependent on a conjunction: as,—*quoiqu'il pleuve, je veux qu'ils viennent*, though it rain, I wish them to come.

Of the Tenses or Times.

Tenses are the distinctions of time, or, in other words, the different forms which a verb assumes to express the present, past, or future.

Tenses may be divided into simple and compound. The simple tenses are those which consist of a single verb: as,—*écrire*, to write; *j'écris*, I write. The compound consist of two or more verbs, being formed with the different tenses of either the verb *avoir*, to have, or *être*, to be, and the past participle of another verb: as,—*j'ai parlé à M. C***; I have spoken to Mr. C**.

There are six tenses in the infinitive mood:—the *present*, the *preterit*, the *present participle*, the *present participle compound*, the *past participle*, and the *participle future*.

The indicative has eight tenses:—the *present*, the *imperfect*, the *preterit definite*, the *preterit indefinite*, the *preterit anterior definite*, the *pluperfect*, the *future simple*, and the *future anterior*.

The conditional has two:—the *present* and the *past*.

The imperative has only one tense, which is either *present* or *future*.

The subjunctive has four tenses:—the *present*, the *imperfect*, the *preterit*, and the *pluperfect*.

For a full explanation of the use of the tenses, see page 70 and following, in the large octavo Grammar, in two volumes; but for the cases in which the imperfect, and the preterit definite and the indefinite are used, refer to the observations under the tenses of the verb *avoir*, in this Grammar, pages 89, 90, and 91.

Of Conjugations.

The act of repeating or writing all the moods, tenses and persons of a verb, according to their regular combination or arrangement, is called conjugating that verb.

The verbs which undergo the same variations in all their tenses and persons are said to belong to the same class or conjugation; that is, to be conjugated alike.

All the verbs of the French language end, in the present of the infinitive mood, in one of these four manners:—*er*, *ir*, *oir*, or *re*: as,—*parler*,

to speak; *finir*, to finish; *recevoir*, to receive; and *entendre*, to hear; which constitute four general conjugations, distinguished from each other by their respective termination in the present of the infinitive; and called the *first*, the *second*, the *third*, and the *fourth* conjugation.

The verbs which follow through all their tenses and persons the variations of the verb, which is given as a model of its conjugation, are called regular; whereas those that differ in their variations from the given model are irregular. The verbs *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be, are irregular; and they are exemplified the first only on account of being much used in the formation of the compound tenses of other verbs.

1. Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb Avoir, to have, affirmatively.

Avoir is an auxiliary verb, when it is used in forming the compound tenses of other verbs: as,—*j'ai joué*, I have played. In other cases, it is an active verb: as,—*il a de l'argent*, he has money.

The pupil is particularly recommended to write, from memory, each of the verbs separately, after having learnt it; at least, the two auxiliaries *avoir* and *être*; the four models of the regular conjugations, and the models of reflective verbs; as also *aller*, to go, and *s'en aller*, to go away. He will thereby acquire a surprising readiness, not only in spelling the verbs, but in using them; as there is, perhaps, no better remembrancer than the eye.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

To have,
Avoir.

PRETERIT.

To have had,
Avoir eu.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Having,
*Ayant.**

PRESENT PART. COMPOUND.

Having had,
Ayant eu.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Had,
Eu, eue; eus, eues

PARTICIPLE FUTURE.

Being about to have,
Devant avoir.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

I have,
J'ai.†

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I have had,
J'ai eu.

* Though we write *ayant*, we pronounce *ai-ian*, as if it were in English, *a-iang*. The same is to be observed in all words in which *y* is used instead of two *i*'s.

† We write *j'ai* and pronounce *jé*.

Thou hast,
*Tu as.**

He has,
Il a.

She has,
Elle a.

We have,
Nous avons.

You have,
† *Vous avez.*

They have,
Ils or Elles ont.

Thou hast had,
Tu as eu.

He has had,
Il a eu.

She has had,
Elle a eu.

We have had,
Nous avons eu.

You have had,
Vous avez eu.

They have had,
Ils or Elles ont eu.

IMPERFECT.

I had,
‡ *J'avais.‡*

Thou hadst,
Tu avais.

PLUPERFECT.

I had had,
J'avais eu.

Thou hadst had,
Tu avais eu.

88

* The second person singular of every tense, except in the imperative mood, is terminated with *s*, in all verbs. The verbs *vouloir*, *pouvoir*, *valoir*, and *prévaloir*, however, are excepted, as their first and second persons singular of the present of the indicative take an *x* at their terminations: as—*vouloir*, *je veux*, *tu veux*; *pouvoir*, *je peux*, or better, *je puis*, *tu peux*; *valoir*, *je vaud*, *tu vaud*; *prévaloir*, *je prévaux*, *tu prévaux*.

† The second person plural of every tense, in all verbs, is terminated with *s* or *z*: it is terminated with *z*, when the *e*, which immediately precedes, is pronounced with the sound of *a* short in English, and with *s* when the *e* is not pronounced at all: as—*vous avez*, *vous aimez*; *vous eûtes*, *vous aimâtes*, *vous reçûtes*, &c.

Observe.—The *preterit indefinite* is generally employed in French, whether the preterit or compound of the present be used in English, when we speak of some action or thing that has been done, or has happened, in a time which is not yet completely over: the time is considered as not being completely over, in French, when one of the demonstrative pronouns *ce*, *cet*, *cette*, *ces*, this, that, these, those, either is or can be used before it: as—he paid us this morning, *il nous a payés ce matin*. I have seen him this week, this month, this year, *je l'ai vu cette semaine, ce mois, cette année*, &c.: in these sentences, the *preterit indefinite* is used, because *ce matin*, *cette semaine*, *ce mois*, *cette année*, are considered as parts of a time which is not entirely elapsed.

The *preterit indefinite* is also used, in French, when mention is made of an action or thing which has taken place in a time that is not specified, although quite past; in this case, the compound of the present is likewise employed in English: as—he has travelled much, *il a beaucoup voyagé*. I have seen him once, *je l'ai vu une fois*.

‡ *J'avais* is pronounced *j'avès*, as if it were in English—*Jahway*.

§ Cases in which the Imperfect is used in French.

GENERAL RULE.—The *imperfect* is used, in French, to represent the actions, inclinations, or qualifications;—the character, condition, or situation of persons and things, at some particular time which is past, whether it be specified or not: as,—when I was taking an airing yesterday, I saw a very fine lady, whose features, complexion, and dress, united all the graces of Venus, and whose hair, flowing in wavy ringlets down her shoulders, was tied with a beautiful riband; *comme je me promenais hier, je vis une charmante dame, dont les traits, le teint, l'habit, réunissaient toutes les grâces de Vénus, et dont les longs cheveux, qui descendaient en boucles ondoyantes sur ses épaules, étaient attachés avec un superbe ruban*.

He had,
Il avait.

She had,
Elle avait.

We had,
Nous avions.

You had,
Vous aviez.

They had,
Ils or Elles avaient.

He had had,
Il avait eu.

She had had,
Elle avait eu.

We had had,
Nous avions eu.

You had had,
Vous aviez eu.

They had had,
Ils or Elles avaient eu.

The imperfect is also used: 1st, in mentioning the habits, customs and manners, whether of private individuals or of nations: as—his father went every day to the play, son père allait tous les jours à la comédie. We played at cards every evening, nous jouions aux cartes tous les soirs. Running, swimming, hunting, were the favourite diversions of the ancient Romans, whilst the women and the old men were intrusted with the domestic affairs; la course, la nage, la chasse étaient les amusemens favoris des anciens Romains, tandis que les femmes et les vieillards étaient chargés des soins du ménage.

2. In describing the character of nations, whether ancient or modern, or of persons that are dead, though in some cases the preterit definite and the indefinite are also used: as—the Romans were very powerful, les Romains étaient très-puissans. Napoleon was a great general, Napoléon était un grand général.

3. In giving the character or describing the qualifications of persons who are still living; and, in this case, if a vague and undetermined period of time be expressed, the preterit indefinite may also be used: as—this lady was very beautiful in her youth, cette dame était très-belle dans sa jeunesse; or, a été très-belle, &c.

4. When the present participle of a verb is or can be used with *was* or *were*, in English, instead of the preterit: as—while they endeavoured to....; *that is*,—while they were endeavouring, tandis qu'ils tâchaient de, &c.

5. To denote things or actions which are often repeated: as—she was always in such a hurry, elle était toujours si pressée.

6. *The imperfect is likewise used to express any circumstance which happened to take place at the same time when an accident, fact, event, or action, occurred. The verb denoting the fact, event, action, or accident, in the second part of the sentence, is put in the preterit definite, if we allude to a thing which happened in a time now quite elapsed; and, in the indefinite, if the time be not yet quite elapsed. The imperfect expresses then a present with respect to something past: as—je passais quand vous tombâtes, I was passing by as you fell; alluding to a time quite past; but je passais quand vous êtes tombé, I was passing by when you fell, refers to a time that is not yet quite elapsed; to-day, for instance.*

The sentence frequently begins by the fact, event, action, or accident, and finishes by the circumstance which took place at the same time: as—il m'appela lorsque je passais, he called me as I was passing by.

If we wish to express two circumstances which happened to take place at the same time, they must be both put in the imperfect: as—vous dansiez lorsque je chantais, you were dancing when I was singing. Lorsque j'étais à la campagne, je me promenais tous les jours, when I was in the country, I took a walk every day.

Finally.—*The imperfect is sometimes used after si, (if,) to denote a condition or supposition: as—si je connaissais vos intentions, je les exécuterais, if I knew your intentions, I would fulfil them. Il ne serait pas si misérable, s'il faisait plus d'attention à ses affaires, he would not be so miserable, if he paid more attention to his business.*

The perfect definite denotes a time entirely past, and of which nothing is left. J'écris hier à Rome. To authorize the use of this tense, there must be the interval of at least one day.

The perfect anterior is used in the same sense as the perfect definite; it denotes a thing past, in a time of which no part remains to elapse; but it denotes, as before most commonly a thing past immediately before another, and is almost always constructed with the conjunctions quand, lorsque, dès que, aussitôt que &c. Quand j'étais fier de ma lettre, elle me pria de la lui lire.

The pluperfect imports that at a certain specified time past, the thing spoken of was also past. I had written my letter when he came in.

The action expressed by the perfect anterior is subordinate to the following sentence, which is the principal object of our attention. — dès que j'étais devenu mon erreur je lui fis des excuses. With the pluperfect j'avais écrit ma lettre quand il entra

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I had,
**J'eus*.†
Thou hadst,
Tu eus.
He had,
Il eut.
She had,
Elle eut.
We had,
Nous eûmes.‡
You had,
Vous eûtes.
They had,
Ils or Elles eurent.

PRETERIT ANTERIOR DEFINITE.

I had had,
J'eus eu.
Thou hadst had,
Tu eus eu.
He had had,
Il eut eu.
She had had,
Elle eut eu.
We had had,
Nous eûmes† *eu*.
You had had,
Vous eûtes eu.
They had had,
Ils or Elles eurent eu.

FUTURE SIMPLE.

I shall have,
J'aurai.§
Thou wilt have,
Tu auras.
He will have,
Il aura.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall have had,
J'aurai eu.
Thou wilt have had,
Tu auras eu.
He will have had,
Il aura eu.

* Cases in which the Preterit Definite is used in French.

GENERAL RULE.—The preterit definite is used in French to express real definite facts or actions of short duration, and entirely done with, finished, completely over, and that in a time past, at the distance at least of a day from the time in which we speak: as—he fell dead yesterday, *il tomba mort hier*. The verb *tomba mort* is in the preterit definite, because it expresses an action of short duration, which is done with, finished, completely over, and which took place in a time quite elapsed. This tense is particularly employed in narrations, whether historical or of daily events.

Observe.—The definite and indefinite preterits are sometimes indifferently used, in familiar conversation, especially when we speak of common events, in the general occurrences of life, though the time may be specified and entirely elapsed: as—I supped with him last night, *je soupai* or *j'ai soupé hier au soir avec lui*.

† *J'eus* is pronounced *j'u*.

‡ A circumflex accent (^) is required over the last vowel of the last syllable but one, in the first and second persons plural of the definite and anterior definite preterits of the indicative, in all verbs, as above.

§ The following manners of expression being very much used, require particular attention: they are formed with the present or imperfect of the verb *devoir*, in French, and the present or imperfect of the verb *to be*, in English, followed, in either language, by the infinitive of a verb.

1. I am to have,
Je dois avoir.

Thou art to have,
Tu dois avoir.

He is to have,
Il doit avoir.

2. I was to have,
Je devais avoir.

Thou wast to have,
Tu devais avoir.

He was to have,
Il devait avoir.

CONJUGATION OF AVOIR, TO HAVE.

She will have,
Elle aura.

We shall have,
Nous aurons.

You will have,
Vous aurez.

They will have,
Ils or Elles auront.

She will have had,
Elle aura eu.

We shall have had,
Nous aurons eu.

You will have had,
Vous aurez eu.

They will have had,
Ils or Elles auront eu.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

I should have,
J'aurais.

Thou wouldst have,
Tu aurais.

He would have,
Il aurait.

She would have,
Elle aurait.

We should have,
Nous aurions.

You would have,
Vous auriez.

They would have,
Ils or Elles auraient.

PAST.

I should have had,
*J'aurais eu.**

Thou wouldst have had,
Tu aurais eu.

He would have had,
Il aurait eu.

She would have had,
Elle aurait eu.

We should have had,
Nous aurions eu.

You would have had,
Vous auriez eu.

They would have had,
Ils or Elles auraient eu.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

No First Person in the Singular.

Have (thou),
Let him have,

Aie.
Qu'il ait.†

She is to have,
Elle doit avoir.

We are to have,
Nous devons avoir.

You are to have,
Vous devez avoir.

They are to have,
Ils or Elles doivent avoir.

She was to have,
Elle devait avoir.

We were to have,
Nous devions avoir.

You were to have,
Vous deviez avoir.

They were to have,
Ils or Elles devaient avoir.

* There are cases in which we also use *j'eusse eu, tu eusses eu, il or elle eût eu; nous eussions eu, vous eussiez eu, ils or elles eussent eu*, for the conditional past. A circumflex accent is then required over the *u*, which precedes the *t*, in the third person singular.

† We write *qu'il ait*, and not *qu'il aie*, (as also *qu'il soit*, and not *qu'il soie*, in the third persons singular of the imperative and of the present of the subjunctive of the verb *être*;) but these are exceptions to the general rule, which requires the third person singular of the imperative, and that of the present of the subjunctive, to be terminated with *e* mute, in all verbs.

Let her have,
Let us have,
Have (ye or you),
Let them have,

Qu'elle ait.
Ayons.
Ayez.
Qu'ils or Qu'elles aient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

That I have or may have,
Que j' aie.
That thou mayst have,
Que tu aies.
That he may have,
Qu'il ait.
That she may have,
Qu'elle ait.
That we may have,
Que nous ayons.
That you may have,
Que vous ayez.
That they may have,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles aient.

PRETERIT.

That I may have had,
Que j' aie eu.
That thou mayst have had,
Que tu aies eu.
That he may have had,
Qu'il ait eu.
That she may have had,
Qu'elle ait eu.
That we may have had,
Que nous ayons eu.
That you may have had,
Que vous ayez eu.
That they may have had,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles aient eu.

IMPERFECT.

That I might have,
Que j' eusse.
That thou mightst have,
Que tu eusses.
That he might have,
*Qu'il eût.**
That she might have,
Qu'elle eût.
That we might have,
Que nous eussions.
That you might have,
Que vous eussiez.
That they might have,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles eussent.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have had,
Que j' eusse eu.
That thou mightst have had,
Que tu eusses eu.
That he might have had,
*Qu'il eût * eu.*
That she might have had,
Qu'elle eût eu.
That we might have had,
Que nous eussions eu.
That you might have had,
Que vous eussiez eu.
That they might have had,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles eussent eu.

2. Conjugation of Avoir, to have, negatively.

A verb is used negatively when the word *not* is employed with it in English. *Not* is expressed in French by *ne pas* : both these words precede the verb in the present of the infinitive ; but, in any other tense, either simple or compound, *ne*, or *n'*, if the verb begins with a vowel or *h* mute, is placed before the verb in a simple tense, and *pas* after it ;

* A circumflex accent (^) is required over the last vowel which comes before the final *t*, in the *third person singular* of the imperfect and of the pluperfect of the subjunctive, in all verbs.

and *ne* or *n'* before the auxiliary in a compound one, with *pas* after it, that is to say, between the auxiliary and the participle, as may be seen in the following example. If any pronoun should occur as the object of the verb, it must be placed between *ne* and the verb in a simple tense, and between *ne* and the auxiliary in a compound one.

Not is also expressed by *ne point* with a verb, as may be seen on the subject of the negations.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

Not to have,
Ne pas avoir.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Not having,
N'ayant pas.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Had,
Eu, eue ; eus, eues.

Compound Tenses.

PRETERIT.

Not to have had,
N'avoir pas eu.

PRESENT PART. COMPOUND.

Not having had,
N'ayant pas eu.

PARTICIPLE FUTURE.

Not being about to have,
Ne devant pas avoir.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

I have not,
Je n'ai pas.

Thou hast not,
Tu n'as pas.

He has not,
Il n'a pas.

She has not,
Elle n'a pas.

We have not,
Nous n'avons pas.

You have not,
Vous n'avez pas.

They have not,
Ils or Elles n'ont pas.

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I have not had,
Je n'ai pas eu.

Thou hast not had,
Tu n'as pas eu.

He has not had,
Il n'a pas eu.

She has not had,
Elle n'a pas eu.

We have not had,
Nous n'avons pas eu.

You have not had,
Vous n'avez pas eu.

They have not had,
Ils or Elles n'ont pas eu.

IMPERFECT.

I had not,
Je n'avais pas.

Thou hadst not,
Tu n'avais pas.

He had not,
Il n'avait pas.

She had not,
Elle n'avait pas.

PLUPERFECT.

I had not had,
Je n'avais pas eu.

Thou hadst not had,
Tu n'avais pas eu.

He had not had,
Il n'avait pas eu.

She had not had,
Elle n'avait pas eu.

We had not,
Nous n'avions pas.
You had not,
Vous n'aviez pas.
They had not,
Ils or Elles n'avaient pas.

We had not had,
Nous n'avions pas eu.
You had not had,
Vous n'aviez pas eu.
They had not had,
Ils or Elles n'avaient pas eu.

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I had not,
Je n'eus pas.
Thou hadst not,
Tu n'eus pas.
He had not,
Il n'eut pas.
She had not,
Elle n'eut pas.
We had not,
Nous n'eûmes pas.
You had not,
Vous n'eûtes pas.
They had not,
Ils or Elles n'eurent pas.

PRETERIT ANTERIOR DEFINITE.

I had not had,
Je n'eus pas eu.
Thou hadst not had,
Tu n'eus pas eu.
He had not had,
Il n'eut pas eu.
She had not had,
Elle n'eut pas eu.
We had not had,
Nous n'eûmes pas eu.
You had not had,
Vous n'eûtes pas eu.
They had not had,
Ils or Elles n'eurent pas eu.

93

FUTURE SIMPLE.

I shall not have,
**Je n'aurai pas.*
Thou wilt not have,
Tu n'auras pas.
He will not have,
Il n'aura pas.
She will not have,
Elle n'aura pas.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall not have had,
Je n'aurai pas eu.
Thou wilt not have had,
Tu n'auras pas eu.
He will not have had,
Il n'aura pas eu.
She will not have had,
Elle n'aura pas eu.

* 1. I am not to have,
Je ne dois pas avoir.
Thou art not to have,
Tu ne dois pas avoir.
He is not to have,
Il ne doit pas avoir.
She is not to have,
Elle ne doit pas avoir.
We are not to have,
Nous ne devons pas avoir.
Ye or you are not to have,
Vous ne devez pas avoir.
They are not to have,
Ils or Elles ne doivent pas avoir.

* 2. I was not to have,
Je ne devais pas avoir.
Thou wast not to have,
Tu ne devais pas avoir.
He was not to have,
Il ne devait pas avoir.
She was not to have,
Elle ne devait pas avoir.
We were not to have,
Nous ne devions pas avoir.
Ye or you were not to have,
Vous ne deviez pas avoir.
They were not to have,
Ils or Elles ne devaient pas avoir.

We shall not have,
Nous n'aurons pas.

You will not have,
Vous n'aurez pas.

They will not have,
Ils or Elles n'auront pas.

We shall not have had,
Nous n'aurons pas eu.

You will not have had,
Vous n'aurez pas eu.

They will not have had,
Ils or Elles n'auront pas eu.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

I should not have,
Je n'aurais pas.

Thou wouldst not have,
Tu n'aurais pas.

He would not have,
Il n'aurait pas,

She would not have,
Elle n'aurait pas.

We should not have,
Nous n'aurions pas.

You would not have,
Vous n'auriez pas.

They would not have,
Ils or Elles n'auraient pas.

PAST.

I should not have had,
Je n'aurais pas eu.

Thou wouldst not have had,
Tu n'aurais pas eu.

He would not have had,
Il n'aurait pas eu.

She would not have had,
Elle n'aurait pas eu.

We should not have had,
Nous n'aurions pas eu.

You would not have had,
Vous n'auriez pas eu.

They would not have had,
Ils or Elles n'auraient pas eu.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

Have not (thou),
Let him not have,
Let her not have,
Let us not have,
Have not (ye or you),
Let them not have,

N'aie pas.
Qu'il n'ait pas.
Qu'elle n'ait pas.
N'ayons pas.
N'ayez pas.
Qu'ils or Qu'elles n'aient pas.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

That I have not or may not have,
Que je n'aie pas.

That thou mayst not have,
Que tu n'aies pas.

That he may not have,
Qu'il n'ait pas.

That she may not have,
Qu'elle n'ait pas.

That we may not have,
Que nous n'ayons pas.

That you may not have,
Que vous n'ayez pas.

That they may not have,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles n'aient pas.

PRETERIT.

That I may not have had,
Que je n'aie pas eu.

That thou mayst not have had,
Que tu n'aies pas eu.

That he may not have had,
Qu'il n'ait pas eu.

That she may not have had,
Qu'elle n'ait pas eu.

That we may not have had,
Que nous n'ayons pas eu.

That you may not have had,
Que vous n'ayez pas eu.

That they may not have had,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles n'aient pas eu.

IMPERFECT.

That I might not have,
Que je n'eusse pas.
 That thou mightst not have,
Que tu n'eusses pas.
 That he might not have,
Qu'il n'eût pas.
 That she might not have,
Qu'elle n'eût pas.
 That we might not have,
Que nous n'eussions pas.
 That you might not have,
Que vous n'eussiez pas.
 That they might not have,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles n'eussent pas.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might not have had,
Que je n'eusse pas eu.
 That thou mightst not have had,
Que tu n'eusses pas eu.
 That he might not have had,
Qu'il n'eût pas eu.
 That she might not have had,
Qu'elle n'eût pas eu.
 That we might not have had,
Que nous n'eussions pas eu.
 That you might not have had,
Que vous n'eussiez pas eu.
 That they might not have had,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles n'eussent pas eu.

3. Conjugation of Avoir, to have, interrogatively.

To use a verb interrogatively, or to ask questions, it is necessary to place the pronoun which serves as nominative to the verb, after the verb in a simple tense, and after the auxiliary in a compound one. Both the verb and pronoun are united by a hyphen in French, and when a verb ends with a vowel in the third person singular of any of its tenses, a *t*, with a hyphen on each side of it, is put between the verb and the pronoun, in order to avoid the harsh sound which would otherwise result from the meeting of two vowels. A verb can only be used interrogatively, and interrogatively and negatively, in French, in the different tenses of the indicative and conditional moods, as shown hereafter.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

Have I,
Ai-je ?
 Hast thou,
As-tu ?
 Has he,
A-t-il ?
 Has she,
A-t-elle ?
 Have we,
Avons-nous ?
 Have you,
Avez-vous ?
 Have they,
Ont-ils or Ont-elles ?

Compound Tenses.

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

Have I had,
Ai-je eu ?
 Hast thou had,
As-tu eu ?
 Has he had,
A-t-il eu ?
 Has she had,
A-t-elle eu ?
 Have we had,
Avons-nous eu ?
 Have you had,
Avez-vous eu ?
 Have they had,
Ont-ils or Ont-elles eu ?

75

IMPERFECT.

Had I,
Avais-je ?
Hadst thou,
Avais-tu ?
Had he,
Avait-il ?
Had she,
Avait-elle ?
Had we,
Avions-nous ?
Had you,
Aviez-vous ?
Had they,
Avaient-ils or Avaient-elles ?

PLUPERFECT.

Had I had,
Avais-je eu ?
Hadst thou had,
Avais-tu eu ?
Had he had,
Avait-il eu ?
Had she had,
Avait-elle eu ?
Had we had,
Avions-nous eu ?
Had you had,
Aviez-vous eu ?
Had they had,
Avaient-ils eu or Avaient-elles eu ?

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Had I,
Eus-je ?
Hadst thou,
Eus-tu ?
Had he,
Eut-il ?
Had she,
Eut-elle ?
Had we,
Eûmes-nous ?
Had you,
Eûtes-vous ?
Had they,
Eurent-ils or Eurent-elles ?

PRETERIT ANTERIOR DEFINITE.

Had I had,
Eus-je eu ?
Hadst thou had,
Eus-tu eu ?
Had he had,
Eut-il eu ?
Had she had,
Eut-elle eu ?
Had we had,
Eûmes-nous eu ?
Had you had,
Eûtes-vous eu ?
Had they had,
Eurent-ils eu or Eurent-elles eu ?

FUTURE SIMPLE.

Shall I have,
** Aurai-je ?*

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Shall I have had,
Aurai-je eu ?

- * 1. Am I to have,
Dois-je avoir ?
Art thou to have,
Dois-tu avoir ?
Is he to have,
Doit-il avoir ?
Is she to have,
Doit-elle avoir ?
Are we to have,
Devons-nous avoir ?
Are ye or you to have,
Devez-vous avoir ?
Are they to have,
Doivent-ils or elles avoir ?

2. Was I to have,
Devais-je avoir ?
Wast thou to have,
Devais-tu avoir ?
Was he to have,
Devait-il avoir ?
Was she to have,
Devait-elle avoir ?
Were we to have,
Devions-nous avoir ?
Were ye or you to have,
Deviez-vous avoir ?
Were they to have,
Devaient-ils or elles avoir ?

Wilt thou have,
Auras-tu ?

Will he have,
Aura-t-il ?

Will she have,
Aura-t-elle ?

Shall we have,
Aurons-nous ?

Will you have,
Aurez-vous ?

Will they have,
Auront-ils or Auront-elles ?

Wilt thou have had,
Auras-tu eu ?

Will he have had,
Aura-t-il eu ?

Will she have had,
Aura-t-elle eu ?

Shall we have had,
Aurons-nous eu ?

Will you have had,
Aurez-vous eu ?

Will they have had,
Auront-ils eu or Auront-elles eu ?

96

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

Should I have,
Aurais-je ?

Wouldst thou have,
Aurais-tu ?

Would he have,
Aurait-il ?

Would she have,
Aurait-elle ?

Should we have,
Aurions-nous ?

Would you have,
Auriez-vous ?

Would they have,
Aurraient-ils or Aurraient-elles ?

PAST.

Should I have had,
Aurais-je eu ?

Wouldst thou have had,
Aurais-tu eu ?

Would he have had,
Aurait-il eu ?

Would she have had,
Aurait-elle eu ?

Should we have had,
Aurions-nous eu ?

Would you have had,
Auriez-vous eu ?

Would they have had,
Aurraient-ils eu or Aurraient-elles eu ?

4. Conjugation of Avoir, to have, interrogatively and negatively.

When a verb is used interrogatively and negatively in French, the same method is followed as when it is used interrogatively, except that *ne* or *n'* is placed before the verb in a simple tense, with *pas* after it, and *ne* or *n'* before the auxiliary in a compound one, with *pas* after it, that is, between the auxiliary and the participle.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

Have I not,
N'ai-je pas ?

Hast thou not,
N'as-tu pas ?

Has he not,
N'a-t-il pas ?

Compound Tenses.

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

Have I not had,
N'ai-je pas eu ?

Hast thou not had,
N'as-tu pas eu ?

Has he not had,
N'a-t-il pas eu ?

Has she not,
N'a-t-elle pas ?

Have we not,
N'avons-nous pas ?

Have you not,
N'avez-vous pas ?

Have they not,
N'ont-ils pas or *N'ont-elles*
pas ?

Has she not had,
N'a-t-elle pas eu ?

Have we not had,
N'avons-nous pas eu ?

Have you not had,
N'avez-vous pas eu ?

Have they not had,
N'ont-ils pas eu or *N'ont-elles*
pas eu ?

IMPERFECT.

Had I not,
N'avais-je pas ?

Hadst thou not,
N'avais-tu pas ?

Had he not,
N'avait-il pas ?

Had she not,
N'avait-elle pas ?

Had we not,
N'avions-nous pas ?

Had you not,
N'aviez-vous pas ?

Had they not,
N'avaient-ils pas or *N'avaient-*
elles pas ?

PLUPERFECT.

Had I not had,
N'avais-je pas eu ?

Hadst thou not had,
N'avais-tu pas eu ?

Had he not had,
N'avait-il pas eu ?

Had she not had,
N'avait-elle pas eu ?

Had we not had,
N'avions-nous pas eu ?

Had you not had,
N'aviez-vous pas eu ?

Had they not had,
N'avaient-ils pas eu or *N'avaient-*
elles pas eu ?

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

Had I not,
N'eus-je pas ?

Hadst thou not,
N'eus-tu pas ?

Had he not,
N'eut-il pas ?

Had she not,
N'eut-elle pas ?

Had we not,
N'eûmes-nous pas ?

Had you not,
N'eûtes-vous pas ?

Had they not,
N'eurent-ils pas or *N'eurent-elles*
pas ?

PRETERIT ANTERIOR DEFINITE.

Had I not had,
N'eus-je pas eu ?

Hadst thou not had,
N'eus-tu pas eu ?

Had he not had,
N'eut-il pas eu ?

Had she not had,
N'eut-elle pas eu ?

Had we not had,
N'eûmes-nous pas eu ?

Had you not had,
N'eûtes-vous pas eu ?

Had they not had,
N'eurent-ils pas eu or *N'eurent-*
elles pas eu ?

FUTURE SIMPLE.

Shall I not have,
* *N'aurai-je pas ?*

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

Shall I not have had,
N'aurai-je pas eu ?

* 1. Am I not to have,
Ne dois-je pas avoir ?

* 2. Was I not to have,
Ne devais-je pas avoir ?

Wilt thou not have,
N'auras-tu pas ?

Will he not have,
N'aura-t-il pas ?

Will she not have,
N'aura-t-elle pas ?

Shall we not have,
N'aurons-nous pas ?

Will you not have,
N'aurez-vous pas ?

Will they not have,
N'auront-ils pas or *N'auront-elles pas ?*

Wilt thou not have had,
N'auras-tu pas eu ?

Will he not have had,
N'aura-t-il pas eu ?

Will she not have had,
N'aura-t-elle pas eu ?

Shall we not have had,
N'aurons-nous pas eu ?

Will you not have had,
N'aurez-vous pas eu ?

Will they not have had,
N'auront-ils pas eu or *N'auront-elles pas eu ?*

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

Should I not have,
N'aurais-je pas ?

Wouldst thou not have,
N'aurais-tu pas ?

Would he not have,
N'aurait-il pas ?

Would she not have,
N'aurait-elle pas ?

Should we not have,
N'aurions-nous pas ?

Would you not have,
N'auriez-vous pas ?

Would they not have,
N'auraient-ils pas or *N'auraient-elles pas ?*

PAST.

Should I not have had,
N'aurais-je pas eu ?

Wouldst thou not have had,
N'aurais-tu pas eu ?

Would he not have had,
N'aurait-il pas eu ?

Would she not have had,
N'aurait-elle pas eu ?

Should we not have had,
N'aurions-nous pas eu ?

Would you not have had,
N'auriez-vous pas eu ?

Would they not have had,
N'auraient-ils pas eu or *N'auraient-elles pas eu ?*

Art thou not to have,
Ne dois-tu pas avoir ?

Is he not to have,
Ne doit-il pas avoir ?

Is she not to have,
Ne doit-elle pas avoir ?

Are we not to have,
Ne devons-nous pas avoir ?

Are ye or you not to have,
Ne devez-vous pas avoir ?

Are they not to have,
Ne doivent-ils or elles pas avoir ?

Wast thou not to have,
Ne devais-tu pas avoir ?

Was he not to have,
Ne devait-il pas avoir ?

Was she not to have,
Ne devait-elle pas avoir ?

Were we not to have,
Ne devions-nous pas avoir ?

Were ye or you not to have,
Ne deviez-vous pas avoir ?

Were they not to have,
Ne devaient-ils or elles pas avoir ?

Conjugation of the Unipersonal Verb y avoir, to be there.

As the unipersonal verb *y avoir*, to be there, is of very great use in *speaking* and writing French, the pupil must learn it immediately after *avoir*. Its tenses are formed by placing *y*, there, before the third persons singular of the different tenses of *avoir*, whether they be used affirmatively, negatively, or interrogatively, as shown hereafter.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

To be there,
Y avoir.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Being there,
Y ayant.

Compound Tenses.

PRETERIT.

To have been there,
Y avoir eu.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE COMPOUND.

Having been there,
Y ayant eu.

PARTICIPLE FUTURE.

Being about to be there,
Devant y avoir.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

There is or are,
Il y a.

There is or are not,
Il n'y a pas.

Is or are there?
Y a-t-il ?

Is or are there not?
N'y a-t-il pas ?

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

There has or have been,
Il y a eu.

There has or have not been,
Il n'y a pas eu.

Has or have there been?
Y a-t-il eu ?

Has or have there not been?
N'y a-t-il pas eu ?

IMPERFECT.

There was or were,
Il y avait.

There was or were not,
Il n'y avait pas.

Was or were there?
Y avait-il ?

Was or were there not?
N'y avait-il pas ?

PLUPERFECT.

There had been,
Il y avait eu.

There had not been,
Il n'y avait pas eu.

Had there been?
Y avait-il eu ?

Had there not been?
N'y avait-il pas eu ?

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

There was or were
Il y eut.

There was or were not,
Il n'y eut pas.

PRETERIT ANTERIOR DEFINITE.

There had been,
Il y eut eu.

There had not been,
Il n'y eut pas eu.

Was or were there?
Y eut-il ?

Was or were there not?
N'y eut-il pas ?

Had there been?
Y eut-il eu ?

Had there not been?
N'y eut-il pas eu ?

FUTURE SIMPLE.

*There will be,
Il y aura.

There will not be,
Il n'y aura pas.

Will there be?
Y aura-t-il ?

Will there not be?
N'y aura-t-il pas ?

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

There will have been,
Il y aura eu.

There will not have been,
Il n'y aura pas eu.

Will there have been?
Y aura-t-il eu ?

Will there not have been?
N'y aura-t-il pas eu ?

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

There would be,
Il y aurait.

There would not be,
Il n'y aurait pas.

Would there be?
Y aurait-il ?

Would there not be?
N'y aurait-il pas ?

PAST.

There would have been,
Il y aurait eu.

There would not have been,
Il n'y aurait pas eu.

Would there have been?
Y aurait-il eu ?

Would there not have been?
N'y aurait-il pas eu ?

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

That there may be,
Qu'il y ait.

That there may not be,
Qu'il n'y ait pas.

PRETERIT.

That there may have been,
Qu'il y ait eu.

That there may not have been,
Qu'il n'y ait pas eu.

IMPERFECT.

That there might be,
Qu'il y eût.

That there might not be,
Qu'il n'y eût pas.

PLUPERFECT.

That there might have been,
Qu'il y eût eu.

That there might not have been,
Qu'il n'y eût pas eu.

* 1. There is or are to be,
Il doit y avoir.

There is or are not to be,
Il ne doit pas y avoir.

Is or are there to be?
Doit-il y avoir ?

Is or are there not to be?
Ne doit-il pas y avoir ?

2. There was or were to be,
Il devait y avoir.

There was or were not to be,
Il ne devait pas y avoir.

Was or were there to be?
Devait-il y avoir ?

Was or were there not to be?
Ne devait-il pas y avoir ?

Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb Être, to be.

OBSERVE.—The verb *être* and those which succeed are all written affirmatively; but the pupil must practise them after the four different manners in which a verb can be used: that is—in the *affirmative*, *negative*, *interrogative*, and *interrogative and negative* forms of the verb, the better to be enabled to use them any way when required.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

To be,
Être.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Being,
Étant.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Been,
*Été.**

Compound Tenses.

PRETERIT.

To have been,
Avoir été.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE COMPOUND.

Having been,
Ayant été.

PARTICIPLE FUTURE.

Being about to be,
Devant être.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

I am,
Je suis.
Thou art,
Tu es.
He is,
Il est.
She is,
Elle est.
We are,
Nous sommes.
You are,
Vous êtes.
They are,
Ils or Elles sont.

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I have been,
J'ai été.
Thou hast been,
Tu as été.
He has been,
Il a été.
She has been,
Elle a été.
We have been,
Nous avons été.
You have been,
Vous avez été.
They have been,
Ils or Elles ont été.

IMPERFECT.

I was,
J'étais.
Thou wast,
Tu étais.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been,
J'avais été.
Thou hadst been,
Tu avais été.

* The past participle *été* never changes its termination, whether it be used with reference to a substantive masculine or feminine, singular or plural.

He was,
Il était.

She was,
Elle était.

We were,
Nous étions.

You were,
Vous étiez.

They were,
Ils or Elles étaient.

He had been,
Il avait été.

She had been,
Elle avait été.

We had been,
Nous avions été.

You had been,
Vous aviez été.

They had been,
Ils or Elles avaient été.

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I was,
Je fus.

Thou wast,
Tu fus.

He was,
Il fut.

She was,
Elle fut.

We were,
Nous fûmes.

You were,
Vous fûtes.

They were,
Ils or Elles furent.

PRETERIT ANTERIOR DEFINITE.

I had been,
J'eus été.

Thou hadst been,
Tu eus été.

He had been,
Il eut été.

She had been,
Elle eut été.

We had been,
Nous eûmes été.

You had been,
Vous eûtes été.

They had been,
Ils or Elles eurent été.

FUTURE SIMPLE.

I shall be,
**Je serai.*

Thou wilt be,
Tu seras.

He will be,
Il sera.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall have been,
J'aurai été.

Thou wilt have been,
Tu auras été.

He will have been,
Il aura été.

- * 1. I am to be,
Je dois être.
- Thou art to be,
Tu dois être.
- He is to be,
Il doit être.
- She is to be,
Elle doit être.
- We are to be,
Nous devons être.
- You are to be,
Vous devez être.
- They are to be,
Ils or Elles doivent être.

2. I was to be,
Je devais être.
- Thou wast to be,
Tu devais être.
- He was to be,
Il devait être.
- She was to be,
Elle devait être.
- We were to be,
Nous devions être.
- You were to be,
Vous deviez être.
- They were to be,
Ils or Elles devaient être.

CONJUGATION OF ÊTRE, TO BE.

She will be,
Elle sera.

We shall be,
Nous serons.

You will be,
Vous serez.

They will be,
Ils or Elles seront.

She will have been,
Elle aura été.

We shall have been,
Nous aurons été.

You will have been,
Vous aurez été.

They will have been,
Ils or Elles auront été.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

I should be,
Je serais.

Thou wouldst be,
Tu serais.

He would be,
Il serait.

She would be,
Elle serait.

We should be,
Nous serions.

You would be,
Vous seriez.

They would be,
Ils or Elles seraient.

PAST.

I should have been,
J'aurais or J'eusse été.

Thou wouldst have been,
Tu aurais or Tu eusses été.

He would have been,
Il aurait or Il eût été.

She would have been,
Elle aurait or Elle eût été.

We should have been,
Nous aurions or Nous eussions été.

You would have been,
Vous auriez or Vous eussiez été.

They would have been,
Ils or Elles auraient or Ils or Elles eussent été.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

Be (thou),
Let him be,
Let her be,
Let us be,
Be (ye or you),
Let them be,

Sois.
Qu'il soit.
Qu'elle soit.
Soyons.
Soyez.
Qu'ils or Qu'elles soient.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

That I may be,
Que je sois.

That thou mayst be,
Que tu sois.

That he may be,
Qu'il soit.

That she may be,
Qu'elle soit.

That we may be,
Que nous soyons.

PRETERIT.

That I may have been,
Que j'aie été.

That thou mayst have been,
Que tu aies été.

That he may have been,
Qu'il ait été.

That she may have been,
Qu'elle ait été.

That we may have been,
Que nous ayons été.

That you may be,
Que vous soyez.

That they may be,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles soient.

That you may have been,
Que vous ayez été.

That they may have been,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles aient été.

IMPERFECT.

That I might be,
Que je fusse.

That thou mightst be,
Que tu fusses.

That he might be,
Qu'il fût.

That she might be,
Qu'elle fût.

That we might be,
Que nous fussions.

That you might be,
Que vous fussiez.

That they might be,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles fussent.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have been,
Que j'eusse été.

That thou mightst have been,
Que tu eusses été.

That he might have been,
Qu'il eût été.

That she might have been,
Qu'elle eût été.

That we might have been,
Que nous eussions été.

That you might have been,
Que vous eussiez été.

That they might have been,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles eussent été.

Of the Regular Conjugations.

It has been already explained that there are four general conjugations, distinguished from each other by their respective termination in the present of the infinitive mood: the first ends in *er*, like *parler*, to speak; the second in *ir*, like *finir*, to finish; the third in *oir*, like *recevoir*, to receive; and the fourth in *re*, like *entendre*, to hear.

As all the verbs of the French language cannot be conjugated like these four regular models, there being irregular verbs, that is, verbs the variations of which are not exactly similar in all their tenses and persons to those of the four given examples, I shall more particularly point out, at the head of each conjugation, the verbs which are regular and conjugated after the same model.

First Conjugation : Parler, to speak.

Every verb ending in *er*, in the present of the infinitive mood, is regular, and conjugated precisely after the same manner as *parler*; that is, it undergoes exactly the same variations in all its tenses and persons: except *aller*, to go; *s'en aller*, to go away; *envoyer*, to send; and *renvoyer*, to send back; which are irregular, and have conjugations peculiar to themselves.

When, therefore, an English verb being translated into French proves to be a regular one of the first conjugation, the same changes must be made in that verb, as those which occur in *parler*; that is, the termina-

tion *er* of the present of the infinitive mood must be changed into the different terminations of the tense wanted, as in *parler*.

To, before the infinitive of a verb, denotes the present of the infinitive ; *was*, before a present participle, represents the imperfect of the indicative ; *did*, before the infinitive of a verb which is not preceded by *to*, represents also, sometimes, the imperfect of the indicative ; *shall* or *will* denotes the future ; *should* or *would*, the conditional ; *let*, the imperative ; *may*, the present of the subjunctive ; and *might*, the imperfect of the subjunctive.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

To speak,
Parler.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Speaking,
Parlant.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Spoken,
Parlé, ée ; és, ées.

Compound Tenses.

PRETERIT.

To have spoken,
Avoir parlé.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE COMPOUND.

Having spoken,
Ayant parlé.

PARTICIPLE FUTURE.

Being about to speak,
Devant parler.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.*

I speak, do speak, or am speaking,
Je parle.

Thou speakest, dost speak, or art speaking,
Tu parles.

He speaks, does speak, or is speaking,
Il parle.

She speaks, does speak, or is speaking,
Elle parle.

We speak, do speak, or are speaking,
Nous parlons.

You speak, do speak, or are speaking,
Vous parlez.

They speak, do speak, or are speaking,
Ils or Elles parlent.

IMPERFECT.

I was speaking,
Je parlais.

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I have spoken or been speaking,
J'ai parlé.

Thou hast spoken or been speaking,
Tu as parlé.

He has spoken or been speaking,
Il a parlé.

She has spoken or been speaking,
Elle a parlé.

We have spoken or been speaking,
Nous avons parlé.

You have spoken or been speaking,
Vous avez parlé.

They have spoken or been speaking,
Ils or Elles ont parlé.

PLUPERFECT.

I had spoken or been speaking,
J'avais parlé.

* The auxiliary *do* or *does*, which the English use in affirmative, negative and interrogative sentences, is not expressed in French.

Thou wast speaking,
Tu parlais.

He was speaking,
Il parlait.

She was speaking,
Elle parlait.

We were speaking,
Nous parlions.

You were speaking,
Vous parliez.

They were speaking,
Ils or Elles parlaient.

Thou hadst spoken *or* been speaking,
Tu avais parlé.

He had spoken *or* been speaking,
Il avait parlé.

She had spoken *or* been speaking,
Elle avait parlé.

We had spoken *or* been speaking,
Nous avions parlé.

You had spoken *or* been speaking,
Vous aviez parlé.

They had spoken *or* been speaking,
Ils or Elles avaient parlé.

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I spoke,
Je parlai.

Thou spoked,
Tu parlas.

He spoke,
Il parla.

She spoke,
Elle parla.

We spoke,
Nous parlâmes.

You spoke,
Vous parlâtes.

They spoke,
Ils or Elles parlèrent.

PRETERIT ANTERIOR DEFINITE.

I had spoken,
J'eus parlé.

Thou hadst spoken,
Tu eus parlé.

He had spoken,
Il eut parlé.

She had spoken,
Elle eut parlé.

We had spoken,
Nous eûmes parlé.

You had spoken,
Vous eûtes parlé.

They had spoken,
Ils or Elles eurent parlé.

FUTURE SIMPLE.

I shall speak,
**Je parlerai.*

Thou wilt speak,
Tu parleras.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall have spoken,
J'aurai parlé.

Thou wilt have spoken,
Tu auras parlé.

- * 1. I am to speak,
Je dois parler.
- Thou art to speak,
Tu dois parler.
- He is to speak,
Il doit parler.
- She is to speak,
Elle doit parler.
- We are to speak,
Nous devons parler.
- You are to speak,
Vous devez parler.
- They are to speak,
Ils or Elles doivent parler.

2. I was to speak,
Je devais parler.
- Thou wast to speak,
Tu devais parler.
- He was to speak,
Il devait parler.
- She was to speak,
Elle devait parler.
- We were to speak,
Nous devions parler.
- You were to speak,
Vous deviez parler.
- They were to speak,
Ils or Elles devaient parler.

He will speak,
Il parlera.
 She will speak,
Elle parlera.
 We shall speak,
Nous parlerons.
 You will speak,
Vous parlerez.
 They will speak,
Ils or Elles parleront.

He will have spoken,
Il aura parlé.
 She will have spoken,
Elle aura parlé.
 We shall have spoken,
Nous aurons parlé.
 You will have spoken,
Vous aurez parlé.
 They will have spoken,
Ils or Elles auront parlé.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

I should speak,
Je parlerais.
 Thou wouldst speak,
Tu parlerais.
 He would speak,
Il parlerait.
 She would speak,
Elle parlerait.
 We should speak,
Nous parlerions.
 You would speak,
Vous parleriez.
 They would speak,
Ils or Elles parleraient.

PAST.

I should have spoken,
J'aurais or J'eusse parlé.
 Thou wouldst have spoken,
Tu aurais or Tu eusses parlé.
 He would have spoken,
Il aurait or Il eût parlé.
 She would have spoken,
Elle aurait or Elle eût parlé.
 We should have spoken,
Nous aurions or Nous eussions parlé.
 You would have spoken,
Vous auriez or Vous eussiez parlé.
 They would have spoken,
Ils or Elles auraient or Ils or Elles eussent parlé.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

Speak (thou),
 Let him speak,
 Let her speak,
 Let us speak,
 Speak (ye or you),
 Let them speak,

Parle.
Qu'il parle.
Qu'elle parle.
Parlons.
Parlez.
Qu'ils or Qu'elles parlent.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

That I may speak,
Que je parle.
 That thou mayst speak,
Que tu parles.
 That he may speak,
Qu'il parle.
 That she may speak,
Qu'elle parle.
 That we may speak,
Que nous parlions.

PRETERIT.

That I may have spoken,
Que j'aie parlé.
 That thou mayst have spoken,
Que tu aies parlé.
 That he may have spoken,
Qu'il ait parlé.
 That she may have spoken,
Qu'elle ait parlé.
 That we may have spoken,
Que nous ayons parlé.

That you may speak,
Que vous parliez.
That they may speak,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles parlent.

That you may have spoken,
Que vous ayez parlé.
That they may have spoken,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles aient parlé.

IMPERFECT.

That I might speak,
Que je parlasse.
That thou mightst speak,
Que tu parlasses.
That he might speak,
Qu'il parlât.
That she might speak,
Qu'elle parlât.
That we might speak,
Que nous parlussions.
That you might speak,
Que vous parlassiez.
That they might speak,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles parlassent.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have spoken,
Que j'eusse parlé.
That thou mightst have spoken,
Que tu eusses parlé.
That he might have spoken,
Qu'il eût parlé.
That she might have spoken,
Qu'elle eût parlé.
That we might have spoken,
Que nous eussions parlé.
That you might have spoken,
Que vous eussiez parlé.
That they might have spoken,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles eussent parlé.

The two following additional tenses, which may be termed *past just elapsed*, and *past elapsed before another thing or action took place*, require particular attention.

1. The *past just elapsed* is used to denote a thing or action which has just been done; it is Englished by the present of the indicative of the verb *to have*, with the adverb *just*, and the past participle of another verb: as—*I have just spoken; she has just read; &c.*

2. The *past elapsed before another thing or action took place*, denotes that a thing or action had just been done when another took place: it is formed in English by the imperfect of the verb *to have*, with the adverb *just*, and, as above, the past participle of another verb: as—*I had just spoken; thou hadst just spoken; &c.*

Have just is expressed in French by the present of the indicative of the verb *venir*, and *had just* by the imperfect of the same verb; *de* is put immediately after the person of the verb *VENIR* which is used, and the succeeding past participle is placed in the present of the infinitive; as follows:—

1. PAST JUST ELAPSED.

I have just spoken or been speaking,
Je viens de parler.
Thou hast just spoken or been speaking,
Tu viens de parler.
He has just spoken or been speaking,
Il vient de parler.
She has just spoken or been speaking,
Elle vient de parler.
We have just spoken or been speaking,
Nous venons de parler.
You have just spoken or been speaking,
Vous venez de parler.
They have just spoken or been speaking,
Ils or Elles viennent de parler.

2. PAST ELAPSED BEFORE ANOTHER THING OR ACTION TOOK PLACE.

I had just spoken or been speaking,
Je venais de parler.
Thou hadst just spoken or been speaking,
Tu venais de parler.
He had just spoken or been speaking,
Il venait de parler.
She had just spoken or been speaking,
Elle venait de parler.
We had just spoken or been speaking,
Nous venions de parler.
You had just spoken or been speaking,
Vous veniez de parler.
They had just spoken or been speaking,
Ils or Elles venaient de parler.

He will speak,
Il parlera.
 She will speak,
Elle parlera.
 We shall speak,
Nous parlerons.
 You will speak,
Vous parlerez.
 They will speak,
Ils or Elles parleront.

He will have spoken,
Il aura parlé.
 She will have spoken,
Elle aura parlé.
 We shall have spoken,
Nous aurons parlé.
 You will have spoken,
Vous aurez parlé.
 They will have spoken,
Ils or Elles auront parlé.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

I should speak,
Je parlerais.
 Thou wouldst speak,
Tu parlerais.
 He would speak,
Il parlerait.
 She would speak,
Elle parlerait.
 We should speak,
Nous parlerions.
 You would speak,
Vous parleriez.
 They would speak,
Ils or Elles parleraient.

PAST.

I should have spoken,
J'aurais or J'eusse parlé.
 Thou wouldst have spoken,
Tu aurais or Tu eusses parlé.
 He would have spoken,
Il aurait or Il eût parlé.
 She would have spoken,
Elle aurait or Elle eût parlé.
 We should have spoken,
Nous aurions or Nous eussions parlé.
 You would have spoken,
Vous auriez or Vous eussiez parlé.
 They would have spoken,
Ils or Elles auraient or Ils or Elles eussent parlé.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

Speak (thou),
 Let him speak,
 Let her speak,
 Let us speak,
 Speak (ye or you),
 Let them speak,

Parle.
Qu'il parle.
Qu'elle parle.
Parlons.
Parlez.
Qu'ils or Qu'elles parlent.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

That I may speak,
Que je parle.
 That thou mayst speak,
Que tu parles.
 That he may speak,
Qu'il parle.
 That she may speak,
Qu'elle parle.
 That we may speak,
Que nous parlions.

PRETERIT.

That I may have spoken,
Que j'aie parlé.
 That thou mayst have spoken,
Que tu aies parlé.
 That he may have spoken,
Qu'il ait parlé.
 That she may have spoken,
Qu'elle ait parlé.
 That we may have spoken,
Que nous ayons parlé.

That you may speak,
Que vous parliez.
 That they may speak,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles parlent.

That you may have spoken,
Que vous ayez parlé.
 That they may have spoken,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles aient parlé.

IMPERFECT.

That I might speak,
Que je parlasse.
 That thou mightst speak,
Que tu parlasses.
 That he might speak,
Qu'il parlât.
 That she might speak,
Qu'elle parlât.
 That we might speak,
Que nous parlussions.
 That you might speak,
Que vous parlassiez.
 That they might speak,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles parlassent.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have spoken,
Que j'eusse parlé.
 That thou mightst have spoken,
Que tu eusses parlé.
 That he might have spoken,
Qu'il eût parlé.
 That she might have spoken,
Qu'elle eût parlé.
 That we might have spoken,
Que nous eussions parlé.
 That you might have spoken,
Que vous eussiez parlé.
 That they might have spoken,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles eussent parlé.

The two following additional tenses, which may be termed *past just elapsed*, and *past elapsed before another thing or action took place*, require particular attention.

1. The *past just elapsed* is used to denote a thing or action which has just been done; it is Englished by the present of the indicative of the verb *to have*, with the adverb *just*, and the past participle of another verb: as—*I have just spoken; she has just read; &c.*

2. The *past elapsed before another thing or action took place*, denotes that a thing or action had just been done when another took place: it is formed in English by the imperfect of the verb *to have*, with the adverb *just*, and, as above, the past participle of another verb: as—*I had just spoken; thou hadst just spoken; &c.*

Have just is expressed in French by the present of the indicative of the verb *venir*, and *had just* by the imperfect of the same verb; *de* is put immediately after the person of the verb *VENIR* which is used, and the succeeding past participle is placed in the present of the infinitive; as follows:—

1. PAST JUST ELAPSED.

I have just spoken or been speaking,
Je viens de parler.
 Thou hast just spoken or been speaking,
Tu viens de parler.
 He has just spoken or been speaking,
Il vient de parler.
 She has just spoken or been speaking,
Elle vient de parler.
 We have just spoken or been speaking,
Nous venons de parler.
 You have just spoken or been speaking,
Vous venez de parler.
 They have just spoken or been speaking,
Ils or Elles viennent de parler.

2. PAST ELAPSED BEFORE ANOTHER THING OR ACTION TOOK PLACE.

I had just spoken or been speaking,
Je venais de parler.
 Thou hadst just spoken or been speaking,
Tu venais de parler.
 He had just spoken or been speaking,
Il venait de parler.
 She had just spoken or been speaking,
Elle venait de parler.
 We had just spoken or been speaking,
Nous venions de parler.
 You had just spoken or been speaking,
Vous veniez de parler.
 They had just spoken or been speaking,
Ils or Elles venaient de parler.

Particular Observations on the Verbs which end in the Present of the Infinitive in—ayer, eyer, oyer, uyer, cer, éer, ger, ier, eler, eter and uer.

1. Verbs in *ayer, eyer, oyer* and *uyer* : as,—*payer*, to pay ; *grasseyer*, to lisp ; *nettoyer*, to clean ; *essuyer*, to wipe ; &c.

The *y* of the termination of the present of the infinitive mood in these verbs is changed into *i*, in the tenses in which *y* would occur before *e*, *es*, or *ent* mute. This takes place, 1. In the three persons singular, and in the third person plural, of the present of the indicative : as,—*payer, je paie, tu paies, il ou elle paie, ils ou elles paient* : 2. In all the persons of both the future and conditional simple : as,—*je paierai, tu paieras, &c.*, and *je paierais, tu paierais, &c.* 3. In the second and third persons singular, and in the third plural of the imperative : as,—*paie, qu'il ou qu'elle paie, qu'ils ou qu'elles paient*. 4. In the three persons singular, and in the third plural of the present of the subjunctive : as,—*que je paie, que tu paies, qu'il ou qu'elle paie, qu'ils ou qu'elles paient* ; and not—*je paye, tu payes, &c.* But the *y* is preserved before any other termination than *e*, *es*, or *ent* mute : as,—*nous payons, vous payez, &c.*

In the above verbs, and in all those of which the present participle ends in *yant* : as,—*croire, croyant ; voir, voyant ; fuir, fuyant ; s'asseoir, s'asseyant ; &c.*, both a *y* and an *i* are required in the two first persons plural of the imperfect of the indicative and of the present of the subjunctive : as,—*nous payions, vous payiez ; nous croyions, vous croyiez ; que nous payions, que vous payiez ; que nous croyions, que vous croyiez ; &c.*

What has just been said with reference to the verb *payer* is applicable to the verbs *grasseyer, nettoyer, essuyer*, and, in general, to all those which are terminated, in the present of the infinitive mood, with *eyer, oyer*, and *uyer*.

2. In verbs in *cer* : as,—*commencer*, to begin, &c.—a cedilla is required under the *c* in those tenses in which it occurs before *a* or *o*, in order to preserve its soft pronunciation of *s* : as,—*commençant ; nous commençons ; &c.*

3. In verbs in *éer* : as,—*agréer*, to accept of ; &c.—an *e* only is used in the tenses in which the first letter of the different terminations is either *a*, *o* or *i* : as,—*agréant, nous agréons, vous agréiez, &c.* ; but when the first letter is not one of these three vowels, the two *e*'s of the infinitive are preserved : as *j'agréerais, tu agréerais ; &c.* The past participle is spelt with three *e*'s, in the feminine : thus,—*agréée*.

4. In verbs in *ger* : as,—*manger*, to eat ; &c.—the *e* of the infinitive is kept after *g* in the tenses in which *g* would be followed by *a* or *o*, in order to preserve its soft pronunciation of *j* : as,—*mangeant ; nous mangeons ; &c.*, and not—*mangant, nous mangons*.

5. In verbs in *ier* : as,—*prier*, to pray ; *étudier*, to study, &c.—two *i*'s must be used in the two first persons plural of the imperfect of the indicative and of the present of the subjunctive ; that is, the *i* which immediately precedes the termination *er* in the present of the infinitive, and that belonging to the plural terminations—*ions*, *iez*, of the imperfect of the indicative and of the present of the subjunctive : as,—*nous priions*, *vous priez* ; *que nous étudiions*, *que vous étudiiez* ; &c.

6. In verbs in *eler* and *eter* : as,—*appeler*, to call ; *jeter*, to throw ; &c.—the *l* and the *t* are generally doubled before *e*, *es*, or *ent* mute : as,—*j'appelle*, *tu appelles*, *il ou elle appelle*, *ils ou elles appellent* ;—*je jette*, *tu jettes*, *il ou elle jette*, *ils ou elles jettent* ; &c. But these letters are not doubled before any other termination : thus we write—*nous appelons*, *vous appelez*, &c., and *nous jetons*, *vous jetez*, &c.

The following verbs :—*bourreler*, to torment, to rack ; *congeler*, to congeal ; *décéler*, to detect ; *dégeler*, to thaw ; *geler*, to freeze ; *harcéler*, to teaze, to torment ; *peler*, to peal ; *recéler*, to secrete ; *regeler*, to freeze again ; *acheter*, to buy ; *colleter*, to collar ; *coqueter*, to coquet ; *décolleter*, to make bare, to uncover the neck ; *étiqueter*, to ticket ; *suracheter*, to overbuy ; *trompeter*, to trumpet ; must however be excepted from the above rule, as, instead of doubling the *l* or *t* in the tenses in which these letters come before *e*, *es*, or *ent* mute, a grave accent is used over the *e* which precedes them : as,—*il gèle*, it freezes ; *il gèlera*, it will freeze ; *il dégèle*, it thaws ; *il dégèlera*, it will thaw ; *j'achète*, I buy ; *tu achètes*, *il ou elle achète* ; *ils ou elles achètent* ; &c., and not *il gelle*, *il dégelle*, *j'achette*, *tu achettes*, &c.

In verbs ending in *écer*, *emer*, *ener*, *ever*, *evrer* : as,—*dépécer*, to carve ; *semer*, to sow ; *mener*, to take, to lead ; *achever*, to finish ; *sevrer*, to wean ; a grave accent is likewise used over the *e* which precedes *c*, *m*, *n*, or *v*, before *e*, *es*, or *ent* mute, instead of doubling these consonants : as,—*je mène*, *tu mènes*, *il mène*, *ils ou elles mènent* ; *je mènerai*, *tu mèneras*, &c. ; *je mènerais*, *tu mènerais*, &c. ; and not *je menne*, *tu mennes*, &c.

Verbs ending in *ébrer* ; as *célébrer*, to celebrate ; *écer*, as *rapiécer*, to piece ; *écher*, as *lécher*, to lick ; *éder*, as *posséder*, to possess ; *égler*, as *régler*, to regulate ; *égnér*, as *régner*, to reign ; *égrer*, as *réintégrer*, to reintegrate ; *éguer*, as *alléguer*, to allege ; *éler*, as *révéler*, to reveal ; *émer*, as *blasphémer*, to blaspheme ; *éner*, as *aliéner*, to alienate ; *équer*, as *hypothéquer*, to mortgage ; *érer*, as *espérer*, to hope ; *éter*, as *inquiéter*, to make uneasy ; *étrer*, as *pénétrer*, to penetrate ; have their acute accent which precedes the first consonant of the last syllable in the infinitive, changed into a grave one, before *e*, *es*, or *ent* mute : as,—*espérer*, *j'espère*, *tu espères*, *il espère*, *ils ou elles espèrent* ; *j'espérerai*, *tu espèreras*, &c. ; *j'espèrerais*, *tu espèrerais*, &c. ; *que j'espère*, *que tu espères*, &c.

7. In verbs in *ouer* and *uer* : as,—*jouer*, to play ; *contribuer*, to contribute, &c.—a diæresis is required over the *i*, in the terminations of

the two first persons plural of the imperfect of the indicative and of the present of the subjunctive : as,—*nous jouïons, vous jouïez ; que nous contribuïons, que vous contribuïez.*

The neuter verb *puer*, to stink, is only used in the present of the infinitive, as likewise in the present, imperfect and future of the indicative, and in the conditional : as,—*puer, je pue, tu pues, il pue, ils ou elles puent ; &c.*

A diæresis (¨) is required over the *e*, in the verb *arguer*, in the tenses in which *e* is mute : as,—*j'arguë, tu arguës, il arguë, ils ou elles arguënt ; j'arguërai, tu arguëras, &c. ; j'arguërais, tu arguërais, &c.*

When, in verbs of the first conjugation, the termination *er* of the present of the infinitive is preceded by another vowel, as in the verbs *prier*, to pray ; *jouer*, to play ; *avouer*, to confess ; &c., the *e* of the termination may be preserved or suppressed, in poetry, in the future and conditional ; if it be suppressed, a circumflex accent is put over the vowel preceding it : as,—*je jouerai ou jôurai ; j'avouerai ou avoûrai ; j'arguërai ou argûrai ; j'appuierais ou appuîrais ; je prierais ou prîrais ; &c.*

The unipersonal verbs,—*bruiner*, to drizzle ; *dégeler*, to thaw ; *éclairer*, to lighten ; *geler*, to freeze ; *grêler*, to hail ; *importer*, to matter ; *neiger*, to snow ; *résulter*, to result ; *tonner*, to thunder ; &c., though only used in the third persons singular of their different tenses, take, in those persons, precisely the same terminations as *parler* does.

Second Conjugation : *Finir*, to finish.

All verbs ending in *ir*, in the present of the infinitive mood, and *issant* in the present participle, are regular, and conjugated precisely after the same manner as *finir*. Every other verb, of which the present participle does not end in *issant*, although terminated with *ir*, in the present of the infinitive mood, is irregular, and will be found exemplified under the article of irregular verbs.

The changes which the regular verbs of this conjugation undergo in their different tenses and persons, fall on the last letter *r* only ; the other letters remain the same ; but the *i*, by which *r* is preceded in the present of the infinitive mood, will be found printed in roman letters in the following verb *finir*, as it occurs in every tense and person in all the regular verbs of this conjugation, either as a part of the termination or immediately before it.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

To finish,
Finir.

Compound Tenses.

PRETERIT.

To have finished,
Avoir fini.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Finishing,
Finissant.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE COMPOUND.

Having finished,
Ayant fini.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Finished,
Fini, ie ; is, ies.

PARTICIPLE FUTURE.

Being about to finish,
Devant finir.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

I finish, do finish, or am finishing,
Je finis.
Thou finishest, dost finish, or art finishing,
Tu finis.
He finishes, does finish, or is finishing,
Il finit.
She finishes, does finish, or is finishing,
Elle finit.
We finish, do finish, or are finishing,
Nous finissons.
You finish, do finish, or are finishing,
Vous finissez.
They finish, do finish, or are finishing,
Ils or Elles finissent.

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I have finished,
J'ai fini.
Thou hast finished,
Tu as fini.
He has finished,
Il a fini.
She has finished,
Elle a fini.
We have finished,
Nous avons fini.
You have finished,
Vous avez fini.
They have finished,
Ils or Elles ont fini.

IMPERFECT.

I was finishing,
Je finissais.
Thou wast finishing,
Tu finissais.
He was finishing,
Il finissait.
She was finishing,
Elle finissait.
We were finishing,
Nous finissions.
You were finishing,
Vous finissiez.
They were finishing,
Ils or Elles finissaient.

PLUPERFECT.

I had finished,
J'avais fini.
Thou hadst finished,
Tu avais fini.
He had finished,
Il avait fini.
She had finished,
Elle avait fini.
We had finished,
Nous avions fini.
You had finished,
Vous aviez fini.
They had finished,
Ils or Elles avaient fini.

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I finished,
Je finis.

PRETERIT ANTERIOR DEFINITE.

I had finished,
J'eus fini.

Thou finishedst,
Tu finis.
 He finished,
Il finit.
 She finished,
Elle finit.
 We finished,
Nous finimes.
 You finished,
Vous finites.
 They finished,
Ils or Elles finirent.

Thou hadst finished,
Tu eus fini.
 He had finished,
Il eut fini.
 She had finished,
Elle eut fini.
 We had finished,
Nous eûmes fini.
 You had finished,
Vous eûtes fini.
 They had finished,
Ils or Elles eurent fini.

FUTURE SIMPLE.

I shall finish,
*Je finirai.**
 Thou wilt finish,
Tu finiras.
 He will finish,
Il finira.
 She will finish,
Elle finira.
 We shall finish,
Nous finirons.
 You will finish,
Vous finirez.
 They will finish,
Ils or Elles finiront.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall have finished,
J'aurai fini.
 Thou wilt have finished,
Tu auras fini.
 He will have finished,
Il aura fini.
 She will have finished,
Elle aura fini.
 We shall have finished,
Nous aurons fini.
 You will have finished,
Vous aurez fini.
 They will have finished,
Ils or Elles auront fini.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

I should finish,
Je finirais.

PAST.

I should have finished,
J'aurais or J'eusse fini.

- * 1. I am to finish,
Je dois finir.
 Thou art to finish,
Tu dois finir.
 He is to finish,
Il doit finir.
 She is to finish,
Elle doit finir.
 We are to finish,
Nous devons finir.
 You are to finish,
Vous devez finir.
 They are to finish,
Ils or Elles doivent finir.

2. I was to finish,
Je devais finir.
 Thou wast to finish,
Tu devais finir.
 He was to finish,
Il devait finir.
 She was to finish,
Elle devait finir.
 We were to finish,
Nous devions finir.
 You were to finish,
Vous deviez finir.
 They were to finish,
Ils or Elles devaient finir.

Thou wouldst finish,
Tu finirais.

He would finish,
Il finirait.

She would finish,
Elle finirait.

We should finish,
Nous finirions.

You would finish,
Vous finiriez.

They would finish,
Ils or Elles finiraient.

Thou wouldst have finished,
Tu aurais or Tu eusses fini.

He would have finished,
Il aurait or Il eût fini.

She would have finished,
Elle aurait or Elle eût fini.

We should have finished,
Nous aurions or Nous eussions fini.

You would have finished,
Vous auriez or Vous eussiez fini.

They would have finished,
Ils or Elles auraient, or Ils or Elles eussent fini.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

Finish (thou),
Let him finish,
Let her finish,
Let us finish,
Finish (ye or you),
Let them finish,

Finis.
Qu'il finisse.
Qu'elle finisse.
Finissons.
Finissez.
Qu'ils or Qu'elles finissent.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

That I may finish,
Que je finisse.
That thou mayst finish,
Que tu finisses.
That he may finish,
Qu'il finisse.
That she may finish,
Qu'elle finisse.
That we may finish,
Que nous finissions.
That you may finish,
Que vous finissiez.
That they may finish,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles finissent.

PRETERIT.

That I may have finished,
Que j'aie fini.
That thou mayst have finished,
Que tu aies fini.
That he may have finished,
Qu'il ait fini.
That she may have finished,
Qu'elle ait fini.
That we may have finished,
Que nous ayons fini.
That you may have finished,
Que vous ayez fini.
That they may have finished,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles aient fini.

IMPERFECT.

That I might finish,
Que je finisse.
That thou mightst finish,
Que tu finisses.
That he might finish,
Qu'il finît.
That she might finish,
Qu'elle finît.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have finished,
Que j'eusse fini.
That thou mightst have finished,
Que tu eusses fini.
That he might have finished,
Qu'il eût fini.
That she might have finished,
Qu'elle eût fini.

118 THIRD CONJUGATION: RECEVOIR, TO RECEIVE.

That we might finish,
Que nous finissions.

That you might finish,
Que vous finissiez.

That they might finish,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles finissent.

That we might have finished,
Que nous eussions fini.

That you might have finished,
Que vous eussiez fini.

That they might have finished,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles eussent fini.

ADDITIONAL TENSES.

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

I have just finished,
Je viens de finir.

Thou hast just finished,
Tu viens de finir.

He has just finished,
Il vient de finir.

She has just finished,
Elle vient de finir.

We have just finished,
Nous venons de finir.

You have just finished,
Vous venez de finir.

They have just finished,
Ils or Elles viennent de finir.

PAST ELAPSED BEFORE ANOTHER THING OR ACTION TOOK PLACE.

I had just finished,
Je venais de finir.

Thou hadst just finished,
Tu venais de finir.

He had just finished,
Il venait de finir.

She had just finished,
Elle venait de finir.

We had just finished,
Nous venions de finir.

You had just finished,
Vous veniez de finir.

They had just finished,
Ils or Elles venaient de finir.

Third Conjugation: Recevoir, to receive.

All verbs ending in *evoir*, in the present of the infinitive mood, and *evant* in the present participle, are regular, and conjugated precisely after the same manner as *recevoir*: such are *apercevoir* and *s'apercevoir*, to perceive; *concevoir*, to conceive; *dévoir*, to owe, to be indebted; *décevoir*, to deceive; *percevoir*, to gather, to collect, (taxes); *redevoir*, to owe again; which, with *recevoir*, are the only regular ones of the third conjugation. Any other verb ending in *oir*, in the present of the infinitive mood, is irregular, and will be found exemplified under the article of irregular verbs.

112 The changes which the regular verbs of this conjugation undergo in their different tenses and persons, fall sometimes on the five last letters, *evoir*, and sometimes on the three last, *oir*, only: as,—*recevoir*, je reçois, je recevrai.

A cedilla (,) is placed under c, in verbs ending in *cevoir*, in all the persons in which c is followed by o or u, in order to preserve its soft pronunciation of s: as,—je reçois, je reçus, &c.

Devoir is the only verb which takes a c in the participle. So...

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

To receive,
Recevoir.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Receiving,
Recevant.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Received,
Reçu, ue; us, ues.

Compound Tenses.

PRETERIT.

To have received,
Avoir reçu.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE COMPOUND.

Having received,
Ayant reçu.

PARTICIPLE FUTURE.

Being about to receive,
Devant recevoir.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

I receive, do receive, or am receiving,
Je reçois.

Thou receivest, dost receive, or art receiving,
Tu reçois.

He receives, does receive, or is receiving,
Il reçoit.

She receives, does receive, or is receiving,
Elle reçoit.

We receive, do receive, or are receiving,
Nous recevons.

You receive, do receive, or are receiving,
Vous recevez.

They receive, do receive, or are receiving,
Ils or Elles reçoivent.

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I have received,
J'ai reçu.

Thou hast received,
Tu as reçu.

He has received,
Il a reçu.

She has received,
Elle a reçu.

We have received,
Nous avons reçu.

You have received,
Vous avez reçu.

They have received,
Ils or Elles ont reçu.

IMPERFECT.

I was receiving,
Je recevais.

Thou wast receiving,
Tu recevais.

He was receiving,
Il recevait.

She was receiving,
Elle recevait.

We were receiving,
Nous recevions.

PLUPERFECT.

I had received,
J'avais reçu.

Thou hadst received,
Tu avais reçu.

He had received,
Il avait reçu.

She had received,
Elle avait reçu.

We had received,
Nous avions reçu.

120 THIRD CONJUGATION: RECEVOIR, TO RECEIVE.

You were receiving,
Vous receviez.

They were receiving,
Ils or Elles recevaient.

You had received,
Vous aviez reçu.

They had received,
Ils or Elles avaient reçu.

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I received,
Je reçus.

Thou receivedst,
Tu reçus.

He received,
Il reçut.

She received,
Elle reçut.

We received,
Nous reçûmes.

You received,
Vous reçûtes.

They received,
Ils or Elles reçurent.

PRETERIT ANTERIOR DEFINITE

I had received,
J'eus reçu.

Thou hadst received,
Tu eus reçu.

He had received,
Il eut reçu.

She had received,
Elle eut reçu.

We had received,
Nous eûmes reçu.

You had received,
Vous eûtes reçu.

They had received,
Ils or Elles eurent reçu.

FUTURE SIMPLE.

*I shall receive,
Je recevrai.

Thou wilt receive,
Tu recevras.

He will receive,
Il recevra.

She will receive,
Elle recevra.

We shall receive,
Nous recevrons.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall have received,
J'aurai reçu.

Thou wilt have received,
Tu auras reçu.

He will have received,
Il aura reçu.

She will have received,
Elle aura reçu.

We shall have received,
Nous aurons reçu.

* 1. I am to receive,
Je dois recevoir.

Thou art to receive,
Tu dois recevoir.

He is to receive,
Il doit recevoir.

She is to receive,
Elle doit recevoir.

We are to receive,
Nous devons recevoir.

You are to receive,
Vous devez recevoir.

They are to receive,
Ils or Elles doivent recevoir.

2. I was to receive,
Je devais recevoir.

Thou wast to receive,
Tu devais recevoir.

He was to receive,
Il devait recevoir.

She was to receive,
Elle devait recevoir.

We were to receive,
Nous devions recevoir.

You were to receive,
Vous deviez recevoir.

They were to receive,
Ils or Elles devaient recevoir.

You will receive,
Vous recevrez.

They will receive,
Ils or Elles recevront.

You will have received,
Vous aurez reçu.

They will have received,
Ils or Elles auront reçu.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

I should receive,
Je recevrais.

Thou wouldst receive,
Tu recevrais.

He would receive,
Il recevrait.

She would receive,
Elle recevrait.

We should receive,
Nous recevriions.

You would receive,
Vous recevriez.

They would receive,
Ils or Elles recevraient.

PAST.

I should have received,
J'aurais or J'eusse reçu.

Thou wouldst have received,
Tu aurais or Tu eusses reçu.

He would have received,
Il aurait or Il eût reçu.

She would have received,
Elle aurait or Elle eût reçu.

We should have received,
Nous aurions or Nous eussions reçu.

You would have received,
Vous auriez or Vous eussiez reçu.

They would have received,
Ils or Elles auraient or Ils or Elles eussent reçu.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

Receive (thou),
Let him receive,
Let her receive,
Let us receive,
Receive (ye or you),
Let them receive,

Reçois.
Qu'il reçoive.
Qu'elle reçoive.
Recevons.
Recevez.
Qu'ils or Qu'elles reçoivent.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

That I may receive,
Que je reçoive.

That thou mayst receive,
Que tu reçoives.

That he may receive,
Qu'il reçoive.

That she may receive,
Qu'elle reçoive.

That we may receive,
Que nous recevions.

That you may receive,
Que vous receviez.

That they may receive,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles reçoivent.

PRETERIT.

That I may have received,
Que j'aie reçu.

That thou mayst have received,
Que tu aies reçu.

That he may have received,
Qu'il ait reçu.

That she may have received,
Qu'elle ait reçu.

That we may have received,
Que nous ayons reçu.

That you may have received,
Que vous ayez reçu.

That they may have received,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles aient reçu.

122 FOURTH CONJUGATION: ENTENDRE, TO HEAR.

IMPERFECT.

That I might receive,
Que je reçusse.
 That thou mightst receive,
Que tu reçusses.
 That he might receive,
Qu'il reçût.
 That she might receive,
Qu'elle reçût.
 That we might receive,
Que nous reçussions.
 That you might receive,
Que vous reçussiez.
 That they might receive,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles reçussent.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have received,
Que j'eusse reçu.
 That thou mightst have received,
Que tu eusses reçu.
 That he might have received,
Qu'il eût reçu.
 That she might have received,
Qu'elle eût reçu.
 That we might have received,
Que nous eussions reçu.
 That you might have received,
Que vous eussiez reçu.
 That they might have received,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles eussent reçu.

ADDITIONAL TENSES.

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

115 I have just received,
Je viens de recevoir.
 Thou hast just received,
Tu viens de recevoir.
 He has just received,
Il vient de recevoir.
 She has just received,
Elle vient de recevoir.
 We have just received,
Nous venons de recevoir.
 You have just received,
Vous venez de recevoir.
 They have just received,
Ils or Elles viennent de recevoir.

PAST ELAPSED BEFORE ANOTHER THING OR ACTION TOOK PLACE.

I had just received,
Je venais de recevoir.
 Thou hadst just received,
Tu venais de recevoir.
 He had just received,
Il venait de recevoir.
 She had just received,
Elle venait de recevoir.
 We had just received,
Nous venions de recevoir.
 You had just received,
Vous veniez de recevoir.
 They had just received,
Ils or Elles venaient de recevoir.

Fourth Conjugation : Entendre, to hear, to understand.

All verbs ending in *dre*, in the present of the infinitive mood, in *dant* in the present participle, and *du* in the past participle, are regular, and conjugated precisely after the same manner as *entendre*: such are the forty-five which are quoted after this conjugation, and which, with *entendre*, are the only regular ones of the fourth conjugation.

The changes which the regular verbs of this conjugation undergo in their different tenses and persons, fall on the two last letters *re* only; but as the *d*, by which these letters *re* are preceded in the present of the infinitive mood, is repeated immediately before the termination of

FOURTH CONJUGATION: *ENTENDRE*, TO HEAR. 123

each person, and as it constitutes itself the termination of the third person singular of the present of the indicative, I have exemplified it in Roman letters in the following verb.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

To hear,
Entendre.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Hearing,
Entendant.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Heard,
Entendu, ue ; us, ues.

Compound Tenses.

PRETERIT.

To have heard,
Avoir entendu.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE COMPOUND.

Having heard,
Ayant entendu.

PARTICIPLE FUTURE.

Being about to hear,
Devant entendre.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

I hear, do hear, or am hearing,
J'entends.
Thou hearest, dost hear, or art hearing,
Tu entends.
He hears, does hear, or is hearing,
Il entend.
She hears, does hear, or is hearing,
Elle entend.
We hear, do hear, or are hearing,
Nous entendons.
You hear, do hear, or are hearing,
Vous entendez.
They hear, do hear, or are hearing,
Ils or Elles entendent.

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I have heard,
J'ai entendu.
Thou hast heard,
Tu as entendu.
He has heard,
Il a entendu.
She has heard,
Elle a entendu.
We have heard,
Nous avons entendu.
You have heard,
Vous avez entendu.
They have heard,
Ils or Elles ont entendu.

IMPERFECT.

I did hear,
J'entendais.
Thou didst hear,
Tu entendais.
He did hear,
Il entendait.
She did hear,
Elle entendait.
We did hear,
Nous entendions.

PLUPERFECT.

I had heard,
J'avais entendu.
Thou hadst heard,
Tu avais entendu.
He had heard,
Il avait entendu.
She had heard,
Elle avait entendu.
We had heard,
Nous avions entendu.

124 FOURTH CONJUGATION: *ENTENDRE*, TO HEAR.

You did hear,
Vous entendiez.

They did hear,
Ils or Elles entendaient.

You had heard,
Vous aviez entendu.

They had heard,
Ils or Elles avaient entendu.

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I heard,
J'entendis.

Thou heardest,
Tu entendis.

He heard,
Il entendit.

She heard,
Elle entendit.

We heard,
Nous entendîmes.

You heard,
Vous entendîtes.

They heard,
Ils or Elles entendirent.

PRETERIT ANTERIOR DEFINITE.

I had heard,
J'eus entendu.

Thou hadst heard,
Tu eus entendu.

He had heard,
Il eut entendu.

She had heard,
Elle eut entendu.

We had heard,
Nous eûmes entendu.

You had heard,
Vous eûtes entendu.

They had heard,
Ils or Elles eurent entendu.

FUTURE SIMPLE.

117 I shall hear,
**J'entendrai.*

Thou wilt hear,
Tu entendras.

He will hear,
Il entendra.

She will hear,
Elle entendra.

We shall hear,
Nous entendrons.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall have heard,
J'aurai entendu.

Thou wilt have heard,
Tu auras entendu.

He will have heard,
Il aura entendu.

She will have heard,
Elle aura entendu.

We shall have heard,
Nous aurons entendu.

*1. I am to hear,
Je dois entendre.

Thou art to hear,
Tu dois entendre.

He is to hear,
Il doit entendre.

She is to hear,
Elle doit entendre.

We are to hear,
Nous devons entendre.

Ye or you are to hear,
Vous devez entendre.

They are to hear,
Ils or Elles-doivent entendre.

2. I was to hear,
Je devais entendre.

Thou wast to hear,
Tu devais entendre.

He was to hear,
Il devait entendre.

She was to hear,
Elle devait entendre.

We were to hear,
Nous devions entendre.

Ye or you were to hear,
Vous deviez entendre.

They were to hear,
Ils or Elles devaient entendre.

You will hear,
Vous entendrez.
They will hear,
Ils or Elles entendront.

You will have heard,
Vous aurez entendu.
They will have heard,
Ils or Elles auront entendu.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

I should hear,
J'entendrais.
Thou wouldst hear,
Tu entendrais.
He would hear,
Il entendrait.
She would hear,
Elle entendrait.
We should hear,
Nous entendrions.
You would hear,
Vous entendriez.
They would hear,
Ils or Elles entendraient.

PAST.

I should have heard,
J'aurais or J'eusse entendu.
Thou wouldst have heard,
Tu aurais or Tu eusses entendu.
He would have heard,
Il aurait or Il eût entendu.
She would have heard,
Elle aurait or Elle eût entendu.
We should have heard,
Nous aurions or Nous eussions entendu.
You would have heard,
Vous auriez or Vous eussiez entendu.
They would have heard,
Ils or Elles auraient or Ils or Elles eus-
sent entendu.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

Hear (thou),
Let him hear,
Let her hear,
Let us hear,
Hear (ye or you),
Let them hear,

Entends.
Qu'il entende.
Qu'elle entende.
Entendons.
Entendez.
Qu'ils or Qu'elles entendent.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

That I may hear,
Que j'entende.
That thou mayst hear,
Que tu entendes.
That he may hear,
Qu'il entende.
That she may hear,
Qu'elle entende.
That we may hear,
Que nous entendions.
That you may hear,
Que vous entendiez.
That they may hear,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles entendent.

PRETERIT.

That I may have heard,
Que j'aie entendu.
That thou mayst have heard,
Que tu aies entendu.
That he may have heard,
Qu'il ait entendu.
That she may have heard,
Qu'elle ait entendu.
That we may have heard,
Que nous ayons entendu.
That you may have heard,
Que vous ayez entendu.
That they may have heard,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles aient entendu.

118

126 FOURTH CONJUGATION: *ENTENDRE*, TO HEAR.

IMPERFECT.

That I might hear,
Que j'entendisse.
 That thou mightst hear,
Que tu entendisses.
 That he might hear,
Qu'il entendît.
 That she might hear,
Qu'elle entendît.
 That we might hear,
Que nous entendissions.
 That you might hear,
Que vous entendissiez.
 That they might hear,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles entendissent.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have heard,
Que j'eusse entendu.
 That thou mightst have heard,
Que tu eusses entendu.
 That he might have heard,
Qu'il eût entendu.
 That she might have heard,
Qu'elle eût entendu.
 That we might have heard,
Que nous eussions entendu.
 That you might have heard,
Que vous eussiez entendu.
 That they might have heard,
Qu'ils or Qu'elles eussent entendu.

ADDITIONAL TENSES.

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

I have just heard,
Je viens d'entendre.
 Thou hast heard,
Tu viens d'entendre.
 He has just heard,
Il vient d'entendre.
 She has just heard,
Elle vient d'entendre.
 We have just heard,
Nous venons d'entendre.
 You have just heard,
Vous venez d'entendre.
 They have just heard,
Ils or Elles viennent d'entendre.

PAST ELAPSED BEFORE ANOTHER THING OR ACTION TOOK PLACE.

I had just heard,
Je venais d'entendre.
 Thou hadst just heard,
Tu venais d'entendre.
 He had just heard,
Il venait d'entendre.
 She had just heard,
Elle venait d'entendre.
 We had just heard,
Nous venions d'entendre.
 You had just heard,
Vous veniez d'entendre.
 They had just heard,
Ils or Elles venaient d'entendre.

Conjugate, after the same manner, the following verbs which, with *entendre*, are the only regular ones of this conjugation.

<i>Apprendre,</i>	to append.	<i>Distendre,</i>	to distend.
<i>Attendre,</i>	to wait or wait for; to expect.	<i>Épandre,</i>	to scatter.
<i>Condescendre,</i>	to condescend.	<i>Étendre,</i>	to spread.
<i>Confondre,</i>	to confound.	<i>Fendre,</i>	to cleave.
<i>Correspondre,</i>	to correspond.	<i>Fondre,</i>	to melt.
<i>Défendre,</i>	to defend, to forbid.	<i>Méprendre,</i>	to undersell.
<i>Démordre,</i>	to recede from.	<i>Mordre,</i>	to bite.
<i>Dépendre,</i>	to depend.	<i>Parfondre,</i>	to melt equally.
<i>Descendre,</i>	to come or go down, to descend, to take down.	<i>Pendre,</i>	to hang.
<i>Détendre,</i>	to unbend.	<i>Perdre,</i>	to lose.
<i>Détordre,</i>	to untwist.	<i>Pondre,</i>	to lay eggs.
		<i>Pourfendre,</i>	to split a man in two with a single blow.

<i>Prétendre,</i>	to pretend.	<i>Retordre,</i>	to twist again.
<i>Refendre,</i>	to split or cleave again.	<i>Revendre,</i>	to sell again, to sell by retail.
<i>Refondre,</i>	to melt or cast again.	<i>Se morfondre,</i>	to wait in vain; to catch cold upon heat.
<i>Remordre,</i>	to bite again.	<i>Sous-entendre,</i>	to understand.
<i>Rendre,</i>	to render, to return.	<i>Survendre,</i>	to sell too dear.
<i>Répandre,</i>	to spill, to shed, to spread.	<i>Suspendre,</i>	to suspend.
<i>Rependre,</i>	to hang up again.	<i>Tendre,</i>	to bend, to lay.
<i>Reperdre,</i>	to lose again.	<i>Tondre,</i>	to shear.
<i>Répondre,</i>	to answer, to reply.	<i>Tordre,</i>	to twist.
<i>Rétendre,</i>	to stretch again.	<i>Vendre,</i>	to sell.
<i>Retendre,</i>	to bend again.		
<i>Retondre,</i>	to shear again.		

Any other verb ending in *re*, in the present of the infinitive mood, is irregular, and must be conjugated after its own model, as exemplified under the article of irregular verbs.

Manner of finding the different Tenses and Persons of regular Verbs, from the Knowledge of the Infinitive.

The simplest manner of finding the different tenses and persons of regular verbs is to derive, first, from the present of the infinitive, the first person singular of every tense, and then to deduce the other persons from the first, as follows:—

First Conjugation: Parler, to speak.

In verbs of the first conjugation, the termination *er* of the present of the infinitive is changed into *ant*, for the present participle; *é* accented with an acute accent, for the past participle; *e* mute, for the first person singular of the present of the indicative; *ais*, for the imperfect; *ai*, for the preterit definite; *erai*, for the future; *erais*, for the conditional; *e* mute, for the imperative and the present of the subjunctive; and *asse*, for the imperfect: as,—*parler, parlant, parlé, je parle, je parlais, je parlai, je parlerai, je parlerais, parle, que je parle, que je parlasse.*

Second Conjugation: Finir, to finish.

In verbs of the second conjugation, the termination *ir* of the present of the infinitive is changed into *issant*, for the present participle; *i*, for the past participle; *is*, for the present of the indicative; *issais*, for the imperfect; *is*, for the preterit definite; *irai*, for the future; *irais*, for the conditional; *is*, for the imperative; *isse*, for the present of the subjunctive; and *isse*, for the imperfect: as,—*finir, finissant, fini, je finis, je finissais, je finis, je finirai, je finirais, finis, que je finisse, que je finisse.*

Third Conjugation: Recevoir, to receive.

In verbs of the third conjugation, the termination *voir* of the present of the infinitive is changed into *evant*, for the present participle; *u*, for the past participle; *ois*, for the present of the indicative; *evais*, for the imperfect; *us*, for the preterit definite; *evrai*, for the future; *evrais*, for the conditional; *ois*, for the imperative; *oive*, for the present of the subjunctive; and *usse*, for the imperfect: as,—*recevoir, recevant, reçu, je reçois, je recevais, je reçus, je recevrai, je recevrais, reçois, que je reçoive, que je reçusse.*

Fourth Conjugation : Entendre, to hear.

In verbs of the fourth conjugation, the termination *dre* of the present of the infinitive is changed into *dant*, for the present participle ; *du*, for the past participle ; *ds*, for the present of the indicative ; *dais*, for the imperfect ; *dis*, for the preterit definite ; *drai*, for the future ; *drais*, for the conditional ; *ds*, for the imperative ; *de*, for the present of the subjunctive ; and *disse*, for the imperfect : as,—*entendre*, *entendant*, *entendu*, *j'entends*, *j'entendais*, *j'entendis*, *j'entendrai*, *j'entendrais*, *entends*, *que j'entende*, *que j'entendisse*.

When the first person singular of every tense is thus found, the others may be ascertained in the following manner:—

PRESENT OF THE INDICATIVE.

Singular.

1. When the first person singular of the present of the indicative is terminated with *e* mute : as,—*je parle* ; an *s* is added for the second, and the third is like the first : thus—*je parle*, *tu parles*, *il parle*.

2. When the first person singular ends with *s* : as,—*je finis*, *je reçois* ; the second is like the first, and the *s* is changed into *t* for the third : thus,—*je finis*, *tu finis*, *il finit* ; *je reçois*, *tu reçois*, *il reçoit*.

3. When the first person singular is terminated with *ds* : as,—*j'entends* ; the second is like the first, and the *s* is left out for the third : thus,—*j'entends*, *tu entends*, *il entend*.

Plural.

The three persons plural of the present of the indicative are always terminated, in regular verbs,—

1. With *ons*, *ez*, *ent*, in those of the first conjugation : as,—*nous parlons*, *vous parlez*, *ils parlent*.

2. With *issons*, *issez*, *issent*, in those of the second : as,—*nous finissons*, *vous finissez*, *ils finissent*.

3. With *evons*, *eviez*, *oivent*, in those of the third : as,—*nous recevons*, *vous recevez*, *ils reçoivent*.

4. With *dons*, *dez*, *dent*, in those of the fourth : as,—*nous entendons*, *vous entendez*, *ils entendent*.

IMPERFECT OF THE INDICATIVE.

The imperfect of the indicative is terminated, in all regular verbs,—

1. With *ais*, *ais*, *ait*, *ions*, *iez*, *aient*, in those of the first conjugation : as,—*je parlais*, *tu parlais*, *il parlait* ; *nous parlions*, *vous parliez*, *ils parlaient*.

2. With *issais*, *issais*, *issait*, *issions*, *issiez*, *issaient*, in those of the second :—as,—*je finissais*, *tu finissais*, *il finissait* ; *nous finissions*, *vous finissiez*, *ils finissaient*.

3. With *evais*, *evais*, *evait*, *evions*, *eviez*, *evaient*, in those of the third : as,—*je recevais*, *tu recevais*, *il recevait* ; *nous recevions*, *vous receviez*, *ils recevaient*.

4. With *dais*, *dais*, *dait*, *dions*, *diez*, *daient*, in those of the fourth : as,—*j'entendais*, *tu entendais*, *il entendait* ; *nous entendions*, *vous entendiez*, *ils entendaient*.

PRETERIT DEFINITE OF THE INDICATIVE.

This tense ends, in all regular verbs,—

1. With *ai*, *as*, *a*, *âmes*, *âtes*, *èrent*, in those of the first conjugation : as,—*je parlai*, *tu parlas*, *il parla* ; *nous parlâmes*, *vous parlâtes*, *ils parlèrent*.

2. With *is, is, it, îmes, îtes, irent*, in those of the second: as,—*je finis, tu finis, il finit; nous finîmes, vous finîtes, ils finirent*.

3. With *us, us, ut, ûmes, ûtes, urent*, in those of the third: as,—*je reçus, tu reçus, il reçut; nous reçûmes, vous reçûtes, ils reçurent*.

4. With *dis, dis, dit, dîmes, dîtes, dirent*, in those of the fourth: as,—*j'entendis, tu entendis, il entendit; nous entendîmes, vous entendîtes, ils entendirent*.

FUTURE OF THE INDICATIVE.

The future of the indicative ends, in all regular verbs,—

1. With *erai, eras, era, erons, erez, eront*, in those of the first conjugation: as,—*je parlerai, tu parleras, il parlera; nous parlerons, vous parlerez, ils parleront*.

2. With *irai, iras, ira, irons, irez, iront*, in those of the second: as,—*je finirai, tu finiras, il finira; nous finirons, vous finirez, ils finiront*.

3. With *evrai, evras, evra, evrons, evrez, evront*, in those of the third: as,—*je recevrai, tu recevras, il recevra; nous recevrons, vous recevrez, ils recevront*.

4. With *drai, dras, dra, drons, drez, dront*, in those of the fourth: as,—*j'entendrai, tu entendras, il entendra; nous entendrons, vous entendrez, ils entendront*.

CONDITIONAL PRESENT.

This tense is always terminated, in all regular verbs,—

1. With *erais, erais, erait, erions, eriez, eraient*, in those of the first conjugation: as,—*je parlerais, tu parlerais, il parlerait; nous parlerions, vous parleriez, ils parleraient*.

2. With *irais, irais, irait, irions, iriez, iraient*, in those of the second: as,—*je finirais, tu finirais, il finirait; nous finirions, vous finiriez, ils finiraient*.

3. With *evrais, evrais, evrait, evrions, evriez, evraient*, in those of the third: as,—*je recevrais, tu recevrais, il recevrait; nous recevrons, vous recevriez, ils recevraient*.

4. With *drais, drais, draît, drions, driez, draient*, in those of the fourth: as,—*j'entendrais, tu entendrais, il entendrait; nous entendrions, vous entendriez, ils entendraient*.

IMPERATIVE.

The terminations of this mood are :—

1. *E, e, ons, ez, ent*, in all regular verbs of the first conjugation: as,—*parle, qu'il parle; parlons, parlez, qu'ils parlent*.

2. *Is, isse, issons, issez, issent*, in those of the second: as,—*finis, qu'il finisse; finissons, finissez, qu'ils finissent*.

3. *Ois, oive, evons, evez, oivent*, in those of the third: as,—*reçois, qu'il reçoive; recevons, recevez, qu'ils reçoivent*.

4. *Ds, de, dons, dez, dent*, in those of the fourth: as,—*entends, qu'il entende; entendons, entendez, qu'ils entendent*.

PRESENT OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

This tense is terminated, in all regular verbs,—

1. With *e, es, e, ions, iez, ent*, in those of the first conjugation: as,—*que je parle, que tu parles, qu'il parle; que nous parlions, que vous parliez, qu'ils parlent*.

2. With *isse, isses, isse, issions, issiez, issent*, in those of the second: as,—*que je finisse, que tu finisses, qu'il finisse; que nous finissions, que vous finissiez, qu'ils finissent*.

3. With *oive, oives, oive, evions, eviez, oivent*, in those of the third: as,—*que je reçoive, que tu reçoives, qu'il reçoive; que nous recevions, que vous receviez, qu'ils reçoivent*.

4. With *de, des, de, diens, diez, dent*, in those of the fourth: as,—*que j'entende, que tu entendes, qu'il entende; que nous entendions, que vous entendiez, qu'ils entendent.*

IMPERFECT OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

This tense has the four following terminations:—

1. *Asse, asses, ât, assions, assiez, assent*, in the regular verbs of the first conjugation: as,—*que je parlasse, que tu parlasses, qu'il parlât; que nous parlussions, que vous parlassiez, qu'ils parlassent.*

2. *Isse, isses, ît, issions, issiez, issent*, in those of the second: as,—*que je finisse, que tu finisses, qu'il finît; que nous finissions, que vous finissiez, qu'ils finissent.*

3. *Usse, usses, ût, ussions, ussiez, ussent*, in those of the third: as,—*que je reçusse, que tu reçusses, qu'il reçût; que nous reçussions, que vous reçussiez, qu'ils reçussent.*

4. *Disse, disses, dît, dissions, dissiez, dissent*, in those of the fourth: as,—*que j'entendisse, que tu entendisses, qu'il entendît; que nous entendissions, que vous entendissiez, qu'ils entendissent.*

As it would lead into explanations much too long and diffuse to give the terminations of the different tenses and persons of the irregular verbs, the learner must pay particular attention to their various models which are given hereafter.

Of Reflective Verbs.

Reflective verbs have not conjugations peculiar to themselves; they admit precisely the same variations throughout all their tenses and persons as the verbs of the respective conjugations to which they belong.

The pronoun *se* or *s'*, by which these verbs are preceded in the present of the infinitive mood and in its compound, in French, and also in the present participle and in its compound, must be changed, in those tenses, into the different objective personal pronouns representing the person or persons speaking or spoken to, according to the sense of the sentence: as,—to rise, to get up, *se lever*; I have just got up, *je viens de me lever*; thou hast just got up, *tu viens de te lever*; he or she has just got up, *il ou elle vient de se lever*; we have just got up, *nous venons de nous lever*; you have just got up, *vous venez de vous lever*; they have just got up, *ils ou elles viennent de se lever.*

In the different tenses of the indicative, as likewise in those of the conditional and of the subjunctive, *se* or *s'* is changed into *je me, tu te, il ou elle se; nous nous, vous vous, ils ou elles se*, in the sense of *myself, thyself, himself, herself or itself; ourselves, yourselves and themselves*, either expressed or implied in English: as,—*JE ME flatte*, I flatter myself; *TU TE flattes*, thou flatterest thyself; &c.

In the imperative, when the verb is used affirmatively, *se* or *s'* is changed as follows: ex.—*se lever*, to rise; *lève-toi*, rise thou; *qu'il ou qu'elle se lève*, let him or her rise; *levons-nous*, let us rise; *levez-vous*, rise ye or you; *qu'ils ou qu'elles se lèvent*, let them rise. But, when the verb is used negatively, *se* or *s'* admits of the following

changes:—*ne te lève pas*, do not rise or rise not thou, *qu'il* ou *qu'elle ne se lève pas*, let him or her not rise; *ne nous levons pas*, let us not rise; *ne vous levez pas*, do not rise or rise not ye or you; *qu'ils* ou *qu'elles ne se lèvent pas*, let them not rise.

The compound tenses of reflective verbs are formed by the addition of their past participle to the simple tenses of *être*, with the pronouns *je me*, *tu te*, *il* ou *elle se*, *nous nous*, *vous vous*, *ils* ou *elles se*. These tenses are Englished by the corresponding ones of *to have*. The past participle of those verbs agrees in gender and number with its direct object, when this is represented by one of the personal pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, *vous*, which precede it: as,—*elle s'est beaucoup négligée*, she has neglected herself much; *nous nous sommes promenés ce matin*, we have taken a walk this morning.

When reflective verbs are used either in the affirmative, negative or interrogative, or also in the interrogative and negative form, the pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous vous*, must precede the verb in the simple tenses, and the auxiliary in the compound ones, except in the imperative mood, as exemplified above: as,—*Je me promène*, *tu te promènes*, *il* ou *elle se promène*; *nous nous promenons*, *vous vous promenez*, *ils* ou *elles se promènent*; *je me suis promené*, *tu t'es promené*, &c.—*je ne me promène pas*, *tu ne te promènes pas*, &c.—*je ne me suis pas promené*, *tu ne t'es pas promené*, &c.—*me promenais-je?* *te promenais-tu?* &c.—*ne me promenais-je pas?* *ne te promenais-tu pas?* &c.—*ne m'étais-je pas promené?* *ne t'étais-tu pas promené?* &c.

First Conjugation of Reflective Verbs: Se promener, to walk.

Every reflective verb of this conjugation follows the same variations as—*se promener*.

The three following:—*aller*, to go; *envoyer*, to send; and *renvoyer*, to send back; if employed in a reflective way, are excepted: they require the same pronouns and in the same order as—*se promener*; but, being irregular verbs, they are liable to the variations of their own conjugations, as exemplified hereafter under the article of irregular verbs.

124

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

To walk,
Se promener.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Walking,
Se promenant.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Walked,
Promené, ée; és, ées.

Compound Tenses.

PRETERIT.

To have walked,
S'être promené, ou ée.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE COMPOUND.

Having walked,
S'étant promené, ou ée.

PARTICIPLE FUTURE.

Being about to walk,
Devant se promener.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

I walk, do walk, *or* am walking,
Je me promène.
 Thou walkest, dost walk, *or* art walking,
Tu te promènes.
 He walks, does walk, *or* is walking,
Il se promène.
 She walks, does walk, *or* is walking,
Elle se promène.
 We walk, do walk, *or* are walking,
Nous nous promenons.
 You walk, do walk, *or* are walking,
Vous vous promenez.
 They walk, do walk, *or* are walking,
Ils ou Elles se promènent.

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I have walked *or* been walking,
Je me suis promené, ou ée.
 Thou hast walked *or* been walking,
Tu t'es promené, ou ée.
 He has walked *or* been walking,
Il s'est promené.
 She has walked *or* been walking,
Elle s'est promenée.
 We have walked *or* been walking,
Nous nous sommes promenés, ou ées.
 You have walked *or* been walking,
Vous vous êtes promenés, ou ées.
 They have walked *or* been walking,
Ils se sont promenés ou Elles se sont promenées.

IMPERFECT.

I was walking,
Je me promenais.
 Thou wast walking,
Tu te promenais.
 He was walking,
Il se promenait.
 She was walking,
Elle se promenait.
 We were walking,
Nous nous promenions.
 You were walking,
Vous vous promeniez.
 They were walking,
Ils ou Elles se promenaient.

PLUPERFECT.

I had walked *or* been walking,
Je m'étais promené, ou ée.
 Thou hadst walked *or* been walking,
Tu t'étais promené, ou ée.
 He had walked *or* been walking,
Il s'était promené.
 She had walked *or* been walking,
Elle s'était promenée.
 We had walked *or* been walking,
Nous nous étions promenés, ou ées.
 You had walked *or* been walking,
Vous vous étiez promenés, ou ées.
 They had walked *or* been walking,
Ils s'étaient promenés ou Elles s'étaient promenées.

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I walked,
Je me promenai.
 Thou walkedst,
Tu te promenâs.
 He walked,
Il se promena.
 She walked,
Elle se promena.
 We walked,
Nous nous promenâmes.

PRETERIT ANTERIOR DEFINITE.

I had walked,
Je me fus promené, ou ée.
 Thou hadst walked,
Tu te fus promené, ou ée.
 He had walked,
Il se fut promené.
 She had walked,
Elle se fut promenée.
 We had walked,
Nous nous fîmes promenés, ou ées

You walked,
Vous vous promenâtes.
They walked,
Ils ou Elles se promenèrent.

You had walked,
Vous vous fûtes promenés, ou ées.
They had walked,
Ils se furent promenés ou Elles se furent promenées.

FUTURE SIMPLE.

I shall walk,
* *Je me promènerai.*
Thou wilt walk,
Tu te promèneras.
He will walk,
Il se promènera.
She will walk,
Elle se promènera.
We shall walk,
Nous nous promènerons.
You will walk,
Vous vous promènerez.
They will walk,
Ils ou Elles se promèneront.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall have walked,
Je me serai promené, ou ée.
Thou wilt have walked,
Tu te seras promené, ou ée.
He will have walked,
Il se sera promené.
She will have walked,
Elle se sera promenée.
We shall have walked,
Nous nous serons promenés, ou ées.
You will have walked,
Vous vous serez promenés, ou ées. 126
They will have walked,
Ils se seront promenés ou Elles se seront promenées.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

I should walk,
Je me promènerais.
Thou wouldst walk,
Tu te promènerais.
He would walk,
Il se promènerait.

PAST.

I should have walked,
Je me serais ou Je me fusse promené, ou ée.
Thou wouldst have walked,
Tu te serais ou Tu te fusses promené, ou ée.
He would have walked,
Il se serait ou Il se fût promené.

-
- * 1. I am to walk,
Je dois me promener.
Thou art to walk,
Tu dois te promener.
He is to walk,
Il doit se promener.
She is to walk,
Elle doit se promener.
We are to walk,
Nous devons nous promener.
Ye or you are to walk,
Vous devez vous promener.
They are to walk,
Ils ou Elles doivent se promener.

- * 2. I was to walk,
Je devais me promener.
Thou wast to walk,
Tu devais te promener.
He was to walk,
Il devait se promener.
She was to walk,
Elle devait se promener.
We were to walk,
Nous devions nous promener.
Ye or you were to walk,
Vous deviez vous promener.
They were to walk,
Ils ou Elles devaient se promener.

134 FIRST CONJUGATION OF REFLECTIVE VERBS.

She would walk,
Elle se promènerait.
We should walk,
Nous nous promènerions.

126 You would walk,
Vous vous promèneriez.

They would walk,
Ils ou Elles se promèneraient.

She would have walked,
Elle se serait ou Elle se fût promenée.
We should have walked,
Nous nous serions ou Nous nous fus-
sions promenés, ou ées.

You would have walked,
Vous vous seriez ou Vous vous fussiez
promenés, ou ées.

They would have walked,
Ils se seraient ou Ils se fussent pro-
menés, ou Elles se seraient ou Elles
se fussent promenées.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

1. Affirmatively.

Walk (thou),
Let him walk,
Let her walk,
Let us walk,
Walk (ye or you),
Let them walk,

Promène-toi.
Qu'il se promène.
Qu'elle se promène.
Promenons-nous.
Promenez-vous.
Qu'ils ou Qu'elles se promènent.

2. Negatively.

Do not walk or walk not (thou),
Let him not walk,
Let her not walk,
Let us not walk,
Do not walk or walk not (ye or you),
Let them not walk,

Ne te promène pas.
Qu'il ne se promène pas.
Qu'elle ne se promène pas.
Ne nous promenons pas.
Ne vous promenez pas.
Qu'ils ou Qu'elles ne se promènent pas.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

That I may walk,
Que je me promène.
That thou mayst walk,
Que tu te promènes.
That he may walk,
Qu'il se promène.
That she may walk,
Qu'elle se promène.
That we may walk,
Que nous nous promenions.
That you may walk,
Que vous vous promeniez.
That they may walk,
Qu'ils ou Qu'elles se promènent.

PRETERIT.

That I may have walked,
Que je me sois promené, ou ée.
That thou mayst have walked,
Que tu te sois promené, ou ée.
That he may have walked,
Qu'il se soit promené.
That she may have walked,
Qu'elle se soit promenée.
That we may have walked,
Que nous nous soyons promenés, ou ées.
That you may have walked,
Que vous vous soyez promenés, ou ées.
That they may have walked,
Qu'ils se soient promenés ou Qu'elles se
soient promenées.

IMPERFECT.

That I might walk,
Que je me promenasse.
 That thou mightst walk,
Que tu te promenasses.
 That he might walk,
Qu'il se promenât.
 That she might walk,
Qu'elle se promenât.
 That we might walk,
Que nous nous promenassions.
 That you might walk,
Que vous vous promenassiez.
 That they might walk,
Qu'ils ou Qu'elles se promenassent.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have walked,
Que je me fusse promené, ou ée.
 That thou mightst have walked,
Que tu te fusses promené, ou ée.
 That he might have walked,
Qu'il se fût promené.
 That she might have walked,
Qu'elle se fût proménée.
 That we might have walked,
Que nous nous fussions promenés, ou ées.
 That you might have walked,
Que vous vous fussiez promenés, ou ées.
 That they might have walked,
Qu'ils se fussent promenés ou Qu'elles se fussent proménées.

ADDITIONAL TENSES.

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

I have just been walking,
Je viens de me promener.
 Thou hast just been walking,
Tu viens de te promener.
 He has just been walking,
Il vient de se promener.
 She has just been walking,
Elle vient de se promener.
 We have just been walking,
Nous venons de nous promener.
 You have just been walking,
Vous venez de vous promener.
 They have just been walking,
Ils ou Elles viennent de se promener.

PAST ELAPSED BEFORE ANOTHER THING OR ACTION TOOK PLACE.

I had just been walking,
Je venais de me promener.
 Thou hadst just been walking,
Tu venais de te promener.
 He had just been walking,
Il venait de se promener.
 She had just been walking,
Elle venait de se promener.
 We had just been walking,
Nous venions de nous promener.
 You had just been walking,
Vous veniez de vous promener.
 They had just been walking,
Ils ou Elles venaient de se promener.

Second Conjugation of Reflective Verbs : Se réjouir, to rejoice.

Conjugate after the following manner every reflective regular verb of this conjugation.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

To rejoice,
Se réjouir.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Rejoicing,
Se réjouissant.

Compound Tenses.

PRETERIT.

To have rejoiced,
S'être réjoui, ou ie.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE COMPOUND.

Having rejoiced,
S'étant réjoui, ou ie.

136 SECOND CONJUGATION OF REFLECTIVE VERBS.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Rejoiced,
Réjoui, ie ; is, ies.

PARTICIPLE FUTURE.

Being about to rejoice,
Devant se réjouir.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

128' I rejoice, do rejoice, *or* am rejoicing,
Je me réjouis.
Thou rejoicest, dost rejoice, *or* art rejoicing,
Tu te réjouis.
He rejoices, does rejoice, *or* is rejoicing,
Il se réjouit.
She rejoices, does rejoice, *or* is rejoicing,
Elle se réjouit.
We rejoice, do rejoice, *or* are rejoicing,
Nous nous réjouissons.
You rejoice, do rejoice, *or* are rejoicing,
Vous vous réjouissez.
They rejoice, do rejoice, *or* are rejoicing,
Ils ou Elles se réjouissent.

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I have rejoiced *or* been rejoicing,
Je me suis réjoui, ou ie.
Thou hast rejoiced *or* been rejoicing,
Tu t'es réjoui, ou ie.
He has rejoiced *or* been rejoicing,
Il s'est réjoui.
She has rejoiced *or* been rejoicing,
Elle s'est réjouie.
We have rejoiced *or* been rejoicing,
Nous nous sommes réjouis, ou ies.
You have rejoiced *or* been rejoicing,
Vous vous êtes réjouis, ou ies.
They have rejoiced *or* been rejoicing,
Ils se sont réjouis ou Elles se sont réjouies.

IMPERFECT.

I was rejoicing,
Je me réjouissais.
Thou wast rejoicing,
Tu te réjouissais.
He was rejoicing,
Il se réjouissait.
She was rejoicing,
Elle se réjouissait.
We were rejoicing,
Nous nous réjouissions.
You were rejoicing,
Vous vous réjouissiez.
They were rejoicing,
Ils ou Elles se réjouissaient.

PLUPERFECT.

I had rejoiced *or* been rejoicing,
Je m'étais réjoui, ou ie.
Thou hadst rejoiced *or* been rejoicing,
Tu t'étais réjoui, ou ie.
He had rejoiced *or* been rejoicing,
Il s'était réjoui.
She had rejoiced *or* been rejoicing,
Elle s'était réjouie.
We had rejoiced *or* been rejoicing,
Nous nous étions réjouis, ou ies.
You had rejoiced *or* been rejoicing,
Vous vous étiez réjouis, ou ies.
They had rejoiced *or* been rejoicing,
Ils s'étaient réjouis ou Elles s'étaient réjouies.

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I rejoiced,
Je me réjouis.
Thou rejoicedst,
Tu te réjouis.
He rejoiced,
Il se réjouit.
She rejoiced,
Elle se réjouit.

PRETERIT ANTERIOR DEFINITE.

I had rejoiced,
Je me fus réjoui, ou ie.
Thou hadst rejoiced,
Tu te fus réjoui, ou ie.
He had rejoiced,
Il se fut réjoui.
She had rejoiced,
Elle se fut réjouie.

We rejoiced,
Nous nous réjouîmes.

You rejoiced,
Vous vous réjouîtes.

They rejoiced,
Ils ou Elles se réjouirent.

We had rejoiced,
Nous nous fûmes réjouis, ou ies.

You had rejoiced,
Vous vous fûtes réjouis, ou ies.

They had rejoiced,
Ils se furent réjouis ou Elles se furent réjouies.

FUTURE SIMPLE.

- * I shall rejoice,
Je me réjouirai.
- Thou wilt rejoice,
Tu te réjouiras.
- He will rejoice,
Il se réjouira.
- She will rejoice,
Elle se réjouira.
- We shall rejoice,
Nous nous réjouirons.
- You will rejoice,
Vous vous réjouirez.
- They will rejoice,
Ils ou Elles se réjouiront.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

- I shall have rejoiced,
Je me serai réjoui, ou ie.
- Thou wilt have rejoiced,
Tu te seras réjoui, ou ie.
- He will have rejoiced,
Il se sera réjoui.
- She will have rejoiced,
Elle se sera réjouie.
- We shall have rejoiced,
Nous nous serons réjouis, ou ies.
- You will have rejoiced,
Vous vous serez réjouis, ou ies.
- They will have rejoiced,
Ils se seront réjouis, ou Elles se seront réjouies. ¹²⁹

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

- I should rejoice,
Je me réjouirais.
- Thou wouldst rejoice,
Tu te réjouirais.
- He would rejoice,
Il se réjouirait.

PAST.

- I should have rejoiced,
Je me serais ou Je me fusse réjoui, ou ie.
- Thou wouldst have rejoiced,
Tu te serais ou Tu te fusses réjoui, ou ie.
- He would have rejoiced,
Il se serait ou Il se fût réjoui.

-
- * 1. I am to rejoice,
Je dois me réjouir.
 - Thou art to rejoice,
Tu dois te réjouir.
 - He is to rejoice,
Il doit se réjouir.
 - She is to rejoice,
Elle doit se réjouir.
 - We are to rejoice,
Nous devons nous réjouir.
 - Ye or you are to rejoice,
Vous devez vous réjouir.
 - They are to rejoice,
Ils ou Elles doivent se réjouir.

- 2. I was to rejoice,
Je devais me réjouir.
- Thou wast to rejoice,
Tu devais te réjouir.
- He was to rejoice,
Il devait se réjouir.
- She was to rejoice,
Elle devait se réjouir.
- We were to rejoice,
Nous devions nous réjouir.
- Ye or you were to rejoice,
Vous deviez vous réjouir.
- They were to rejoice,
Ils ou Elles devaient se réjouir.

138 SECOND CONJUGATION OF REFLECTIVE VERBS.

She would rejoice,
Elle se réjouirait.

We should rejoice,
Nous nous réjouirions.

You would rejoice,
Vous vous réjouiriez.

They would rejoice,
Ils ou Elles se réjouiraient.

She would have rejoiced,
Elle se serait ou Elle se fût réjouie.

We should have rejoiced,
Nous nous serions ou Nous nous fussions réjouis, ou ies.

You would have rejoiced,
Vous vous seriez ou Vous vous fussiez réjouis, ou ies.

They would have rejoiced,
Ils se seraient ou Ils se fussent réjouis, ou Elles se seraient ou Elles se fussent réjouies.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

1. Affirmatively.

Rejoice (thou),
Let him rejoice,
Let her rejoice,
Let us rejoice,
Rejoice (ye or you),
Let them rejoice,

Réjouis-toi.
Qu'il se réjouisse.
Qu'elle se réjouisse.
Réjouissons-nous.
Réjouissez-vous.
Qu'ils ou Qu'elles se réjouissent.

2. Negatively.

Do not rejoice *or* rejoice not (thou),
Let him not rejoice,
Let her not rejoice,
Let us not rejoice,
Do not rejoice *or* rejoice not (ye or you),
Let them not rejoice,

Ne te réjouis pas.
Qu'il ne se réjouisse pas.
Qu'elle ne se réjouisse pas.
Ne nous réjouissons pas.
Ne vous réjouissez pas.
Qu'ils ou Qu'elles ne se réjouissent pas.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

That I may rejoice,
Que je me réjouisse.
That thou mayst rejoice,
Que tu te réjouisses.
That he may rejoice,
Qu'il se réjouisse.
That she may rejoice,
Qu'elle se réjouisse.
That we may rejoice,
Que nous nous réjouissions.
That you may rejoice,
Que vous vous réjouissiez.
That they may rejoice,
Qu'ils ou Qu'elles se réjouissent.

PRETERIT.

That I may have rejoiced,
Que je me sois réjoui, ou ie.
That thou mayst have rejoiced,
Que tu te sois réjoui, ou ie.
That he may have rejoiced,
Qu'il se soit réjoui.
That she may have rejoiced,
Qu'elle se soit réjouie.
That we may have rejoiced,
Que nous nous soyons réjouis, ou ies.
That you may have rejoiced,
Que vous vous soyez réjouis, ou ies.
That they may have rejoiced,
Qu'ils se soient réjouis ou Qu'elles se soient réjouies.

IMPERFECT.

That I might rejoice,
Que je me réjouisse.
 That thou mightst rejoice,
Que tu te réjouisses.
 That he might rejoice,
Qu'il se réjouît.
 That she might rejoice,
Qu'elle se réjouît.
 That we might rejoice,
Que nous nous réjouissions.
 That you might rejoice,
Que vous vous réjouissiez.
 That they might rejoice,
Qu'ils ou Qu'elles se réjouissent.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have rejoiced,
Que je me fusse réjoui, ou ie.
 That thou mightst have rejoiced,
Que tu te fusses réjoui, ou ie.
 That he might have rejoiced,
Qu'il se fût réjoui.
 That she might have rejoiced,
Qu'elle se fût réjouie.
 That we might have rejoiced,
Que nous nous fussions réjouis, ou ies.
 That you might have rejoiced,
Que vous vous fussiez réjouis, ou ies.
 That they might have rejoiced,
Qu'ils se fussent réjouis ou Qu'elles se fussent réjouies.

ADDITIONAL TENSES.

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

I have just rejoiced *or* been rejoicing,
Je viens de me réjouir.
 Thou hast just rejoiced *or* been rejoicing,
Tu viens de te réjouir.
 He has just rejoiced *or* been rejoicing,
Il vient de se réjouir.
 She has just rejoiced *or* been rejoicing,
Elle vient de se réjouir.
 We have just rejoiced *or* been rejoicing,
Nous venons de nous réjouir.
 You have just rejoiced *or* been rejoicing,
Vous venez de vous réjouir.
 They have just rejoiced *or* been rejoicing,
Ils ou Elles viennent de se réjouir.

PAST ELAPSED BEFORE ANOTHER THING OR ACTION TOOK PLACE.

I had just rejoiced *or* been rejoicing,
Je venais de me réjouir.
 Thou hadst just rejoiced *or* been rejoicing, *est*
Tu venais de te réjouir.
 He had just rejoiced *or* been rejoicing,
Il venait de se réjouir.
 She had just rejoiced *or* been rejoicing,
Elle venait de se réjouir.
 We had just rejoiced *or* been rejoicing,
Nous venions de nous réjouir,
 You had just rejoiced *or* been rejoicing,
Vous veniez de vous réjouir.
 They had just rejoiced *or* been rejoicing,
Il ou Elles venaient de se réjouir.

Third Conjugation of Reflective Verbs : S'apercevoir, to perceive.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

To perceive,
S'apercevoir.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Perceiving,
S'apercevant.

Compound Tenses.

PRETERIT.

To have perceived,
S'être aperçu.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE COMPOUND.

Having perceived,
S'étant aperçu.

140 THIRD CONJUGATION OF REFLECTIVE VERBS.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Perceived,
Aperçu, ue ; us, ues.

PARTICIPLE FUTURE.

Being about to perceive,
Devant s'apercevoir.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

I perceive *or* do perceive,
Je m'aperçois.
Thou perceivest *or* dost perceive,
Tu t'aperçois.
He perceives *or* does perceive,
Il s'aperçoit.
She perceives *or* does perceive,
Elle s'aperçoit.
We perceive *or* do perceive,
Nous nous apercevons.
You perceive *or* do perceive,
Vous vous apercevez.
They perceive *or* do perceive,
Ils ou Elles s'aperçoivent.

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I have perceived *or* been perceiving,
Je me suis aperçu, ou ue.
Thou hast perceived *or* been perceiving,
Tu t'es aperçu, ou ue.
He has perceived *or* been perceiving,
Ils s'est aperçu.
She has perceived *or* been perceiving,
Elle s'est aperçue.
We have perceived *or* been perceiving,
Nous nous sommes aperçus, ou ues.
You have perceived *or* been perceiving,
Vous vous êtes aperçus, ou ues.
They have perceived *or* been perceiving,
Ils se sont aperçus ou Elles se sont aperçues.

IMPERFECT.

132

I was perceiving,
Je m'apercevais.
Thou wast perceiving,
Tu t'apercevais.
He was perceiving,
Il s'apercevait.
She was perceiving,
Elle s'apercevait.
We were perceiving,
Nous nous apercevions.
You were perceiving,
Vous vous aperceviez.
They were perceiving,
Ils ou Elles s'apercevaient.

PLUPERFECT.

I had perceived,
Je m'étais aperçu, ou ue.
Thou hadst perceived,
Tu t'étais aperçu, ou ue.
He had perceived,
Il s'était aperçu.
She had perceived,
Elle s'était aperçue.
We had perceived,
Nous nous étions aperçus, ou ues.
You had perceived,
Vous vous étiez aperçus, ou ues.
They had perceived,
Ils s'étaient aperçus ou Elles s'étaient aperçues.

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I perceived,
Je m'aperçus.
Thou perceivedst,
Tu t'aperçus.
He perceived,
Il s'aperçut.
She perceived,
Elle s'aperçut.

PRETERIT ANTERIOR DEFINITE.

I had perceived,
Je me fus aperçu, ou ue.
Thou hadst perceived,
Tu te fus aperçu, ou ue.
He had perceived,
Il se fut aperçu.
She had perceived,
Elle se fut aperçue.

We perceived,
Nous nous aperçûmes.
You perceived,
Vous vous aperçûtes.
They perceived,
Ils ou Elles s'aperçurent.

We had perceived,
Nous nous fûmes aperçus, ou ues.
You had perceived,
Vous vous fûtes aperçus, ou ues.
They had perceived,
Ils se furent aperçus ou Elles se furent aperçues.

FUTURE SIMPLE.

* I shall perceive,
Je m'apercevrai.
Thou wilt perceive,
Tu t'apercevras.
He will perceive,
Il s'apercevra.
She will perceive,
Elle s'apercevra.
We shall perceive,
Nous nous apercevrons.
You will perceive,
Vous vous apercevrez.
They will perceive,
Ils ou Elles s'apercevront.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall have perceived,
Je me serai aperçu, ou ue.
Thou wilt have perceived,
Tu te seras aperçu, ou ue.
He will have perceived,
Il se sera aperçu.
She will have perceived,
Elle se sera aperçue.
We shall have perceived,
Nous nous serons aperçus, ou ues.
You will have perceived,
Vous vous serez aperçus, ou ues.
They will have perceived,
Ils se seront aperçus ou Elles se seront aperçues.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

I should perceive,
Je m'apercevrais.
Thou wouldst perceive,
Tu t'apercevrais.

PAST.

I should have perceived,
Je me serais ou Je me fusse aperçu, ou ue.
Thou wouldst have perceived,
Tu te serais ou Tu te fusses aperçu, ou ue.

* 1. I am to perceive,
Je dois m'apercevoir.
Thou art to perceive,
Tu dois t'apercevoir.
He is to perceive,
Il doit s'apercevoir.
She is to perceive,
Elle doit s'apercevoir.
We are to perceive,
Nous devons nous apercevoir.
Ye or you are to perceive,
Vous devez vous apercevoir.
They are to perceive,
Ils ou Elles doivent s'apercevoir.

2. I was to perceive,
Je devais m'apercevoir.
Thou wast to perceive,
Tu devais t'apercevoir.
He was to perceive,
Il devait s'apercevoir.
She was to perceive,
Elle devait s'apercevoir.
We were to perceive,
Nous devions nous apercevoir.
Ye or you were to perceive,
Vous deviez vous apercevoir.
They were to perceive,
Ils ou Elles devaient s'apercevoir.

142 THIRD CONJUGATION OF REFLECTIVE VERBS.

He would perceive,
Il s'apercevrait.

She would perceive,
Elle s'apercevrait.

We should perceive,
Nous nous apercevriions.

You would perceive,
Vous vous apercevriez.

They would perceive,
Ils ou Elles s'apercevraient.

He would have perceived,
Il se serait aperçu.

She would have perceived,
Elle se serait aperçue.

We should have perceived,
*Nous nous serions ou Nous nous fussions
aperçus, ou ues.*

You would have perceived,
*Vous vous seriez ou Vous vous fussiez
aperçus, ou ues.*

They would have perceived,
*Ils se seraient ou Ils se fussent aperçus,
ou Elles se seraient ou Elles se fus-
sent aperçues.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

1. Affirmatively.

Perceive (thou),
Let him perceive,
Let her perceive,
Let us perceive,
Perceive (ye or you),
Let them perceive,

*Aperçois-toi.
Qu'il s'aperçoive.
Qu'elle s'aperçoive.
Apercevons-nous.
Apercevez-vous.
Qu'ils ou Qu'elles s'aperçoivent.*

2. Negatively.

Perceive not (thou),
Let him not perceive,
Let her not perceive,
Let us not perceive,
Perceive not (ye or you),
Let them not perceive,

*Ne t'aperçois pas.
Qu'il ne s'aperçoive pas.
Qu'elle ne s'aperçoive pas.
Ne nous apercevons pas.
Ne vous apercevez pas.
Qu'ils ou Qu'elles ne s'aperçoivent pas.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

That I may perceive,
Que je m'aperçoive.

That thou mayst perceive,
Que tu t'aperçoives.

That he may perceive,
Qu'il s'aperçoive.

That she may perceive,
Qu'elle s'aperçoive.

That we may perceive,
Que nous nous apercevions.

That you may perceive,
Que vous vous aperceviez.

That they may perceive,
Qu'ils ou Qu'elles s'aperçoivent.

PRETERIT.

That I may have perceived,
Que je me sois aperçu, ou ue.

That thou mayst have perceived,
Que tu te sois aperçu, ou ue.

That he may have perceived,
Qu'il se soit aperçu.

That she may have perceived,
Qu'elle se soit aperçue.

That we may have perceived,
Que nous nous soyons aperçus, ou ues.

That you may have perceived,
Que vous vous soyez aperçus, ou ues.

That they may have perceived,
*Qu'ils se soient aperçus ou Qu'elles se
soient aperçues.*

IMPERFECT.

That I might perceive,
Que je m'aperçusse.
 That thou mightst perceive,
Que tu t'aperçusses.
 That he might perceive,
Qu'il s'aperçût.
 That she might perceive,
Qu'elle s'aperçût.
 That we might perceive,
Que nous nous aperçussions.
 That you might perceive,
Que vous vous aperçussiez.
 That they might perceive,
Qu'ils ou Qu'elles s'aperçussent.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have perceived,
Que je me fusse aperçu, ou ue.
 That thou mightst have perceived,
Que tu te fusses aperçu, ou ue.
 That he might have perceived,
Qu'il se fût aperçu.
 That she might have perceived,
Qu'elle se fût aperçue.
 That we might have perceived,
Que nous nous fussions aperçus, ou ues.
 That you might have perceived,
Que vous vous fussiez aperçus, ou ues.
 That they might have perceived,
Qu'ils se fussent aperçus ou Qu'elles se fussent aperçues.

ADDITIONAL TENSES.

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

I have just perceived,
Je viens de m'apercevoir.
 Thou hast just perceived,
Tu viens de t'apercevoir.
 He has just perceived,
Il vient de s'apercevoir.
 She has just perceived,
Elle vient de s'apercevoir.
 We have just perceived,
Nous venons de nous apercevoir.
 You have just perceived,
Vous venez de vous apercevoir.
 They have just perceived,
Ils ou Elles viennent de s'apercevoir.

PAST ELAPSED BEFORE ANOTHER
THING OR ACTION TOOK PLACE.

I had just perceived,
Je venais de m'apercevoir.
 Thou hadst just perceived,
Tu venais de t'apercevoir.
 He had just perceived,
Il venait de s'apercevoir.
 She had just perceived,
Elle venait de s'apercevoir.
 We had just perceived,
Nous venions de nous apercevoir.
 You had just perceived,
Vous veniez de vous apercevoir.
 They had just perceived,
Ils ou Elles venaient de s'apercevoir.

If any other regular verb of the third conjugation should be used reflectively, it must follow the example which has just been given.

Fourth Conjugation of Reflective Verbs : Se rendre, to surrender.*

Every reflective regular verb of this conjugation follows the same variations as—*se rendre*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

To surrender,
Se rendre.

Compound Tenses.

PRETERIT.

To have surrendered,
S'être rendu, ou due.

* This verb signifies also, *to repair, to go to, to lead to.*

144 FOURTH CONJUGATION OF REFLECTIVE VERBS.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Surrendering,
Se rendant.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE COMPOUND.

Having surrendered,
S'étant rendu, ou due.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Surrendered,
Rendu, due; dus, dues.

PARTICIPLE FUTURE.

Being about to surrender,
Devant se rendre.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

I surrender, do surrender, *or* am surren-
Je me rends. [dering,

Thou surrenderest, dost surrender, *or* art
Tu te rends. [surrendering,

He surrenders, does surrender, *or* is sur-
Il se rend. [rendering,

She surrenders, does surrender, *or* is sur-
Elle se rend. [rendering,

We surrender, do surrender, *or* are sur-
Nous nous rendons. [rendering,

You surrender, do surrender, *or* are sur-
Vous vous rendez. [rendering,

They surrender, do surrender, *or* are sur-
Ils ou Elles se rendent. [rendering,

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I have surrendered,
Je me suis rendu, ou due.

Thou hast surrendered,
Tu l'es rendu, ou due.

He has surrendered,
Il s'est rendu.

She has surrendered,
Elle s'est rendue.

We have surrendered,
Nous nous sommes rendus, ou dues.

You have surrendered,
Vous vous êtes rendus, ou dues.

They have surrendered,
Ils se sont rendus ou Elles se sont rendues.

IMPERFECT.

I was surrendering,
Je me rendais.

Thou wast surrendering,
Tu te rendais.

He was surrendering,
Il se rendait.

She was surrendering,
Elle se rendait.

We were surrendering,
Nous nous rendions.

You were surrendering,
Vous vous rendiez.

They were surrendering,
Ils ou Elles se rendaient.

PLUPERFECT.

I had surrendered,
Je m'étais rendu, ou due.

Thou hadst surrendered,
Tu t'étais rendu, ou due.

He had surrendered,
Il s'était rendu.

She had surrendered,
Elle s'était rendue.

We had surrendered,
Nous nous étions rendus, ou dues.

You had surrendered,
Vous vous étiez rendus, ou dues.

They had surrendered,
Ils s'étaient rendus ou Elles s'étaient rendues.

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I surrendered,
Je me rendis.

Thou surrenderedst,
Tu te rendis.

He surrendered,
Il se rendit.

She surrendered,
Elle se rendit.

PRETERIT ANTERIOR DEFINITE.

I had surrendered,
Je me fus rendu, ou due.

Thou hadst surrendered,
Tu te fus rendu, ou due.

He had surrendered,
Il se fut rendu.

She had surrendered,
Elle se fut rendue.

We surrendered,
Nous nous rendîmes.

You surrendered,
Vous vous rendîtes.

They surrendered,
Ils ou Elles se rendirent.

We had surrendered,
Nous nous fûmes rendus, ou dues.

You had surrendered,
Vous vous fûtes rendus, ou dues.

They had surrendered,
Ils se furent rendus ou Elles se furent rendues.

FUTURE SIMPLE.

I shall surrender,
**Je me rendrai.*

Thou wilt surrender,
Tu te rendras.

He will surrender,
Il se rendra.

She will surrender,
Elle se rendra.

We shall surrender,
Nous nous rendrons.

You will surrender,
Vous vous rendrez.

They will surrender,
Ils ou Elles se rendront.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall have surrendered,
Je me serai rendu, ou due.

Thou wilt have surrendered,
Tu te seras rendu, ou due.

He will have surrendered,
Il se sera rendu.

She will have surrendered,
Elle se sera rendue.

We shall have surrendered,
Nous nous serons rendus, ou dues.

You will have surrendered,
Vous vous serez rendus, ou dues.

They will have surrendered,
Ils se seront rendus ou Elles se seront rendues.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

I should surrender,
Je me rendrais.

Thou wouldst surrender,
Tu te rendrais.

He would surrender,
Il se rendrait.

She would surrender,
Elle se rendrait.

PAST.

I should have surrendered,
Je me serais ou Je me fusse rendu, ou due.

Thou wouldst have surrendered, -
Tu te serais ou Tu te fusses rendu, ou due.

He would have surrendered,
Il se serait ou Il se fût rendu.

She would have surrendered,
Elle se serait ou Elle se fût rendue.

-
- *1. I am to surrender,
Je dois me rendre.
- Thou art to surrender,
Tu dois te rendre.
- He is to surrender,
Il doit se rendre.
- She is to surrender,
Elle doit se rendre.
- We are to surrender,
Nous devons nous rendre.
- Ye or you are to surrender,
Vous devez vous rendre.
- They are to surrender,
Ils ou Elles doivent se rendre.

2. I was to surrender,
Je devais me rendre.
- Thou wast to surrender,
Tu devais te rendre.
- He was to surrender,
Il devait se rendre.
- She was to surrender,
Elle devait se rendre.
- We were to surrender,
Nous devions nous rendre.
- Ye or you were to surrender,
Vous deviez vous rendre.
- They were to surrender,
Ils ou Elles devaient se rendre.

146 FOURTH CONJUGATION OF REFLECTIVE VERBS.

We should surrender,
Nous nous rendrions.

We should have surrendered,
Nous nous serions ou Nous nous fussions rendus, ou dues.

138 You would surrender,
Vous vous rendriez.

You would have surrendered,
Vous vous seriez ou Vous vous fussiez rendus, ou dues.

They would surrender,
Ils ou Elles se rendraient.

They would have surrendered,
Ils se seraient ou Ils se fussent rendus, ou Elles se seraient ou Elles se fussent rendues.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

1. Affirmatively.

Surrender (thou),
Let him surrender,
Let her surrender,
Let us surrender,
Surrender (ye or you),
Let them surrender,

Rends-toi.
Qu'il se rende.
Qu'elle se rende.
Rendons-nous.
Rendez-vous.
Qu'ils ou Qu'elles se rendent.

2. Negatively.

Do not surrender or surrender not (thou),
Let him not surrender,
Let her not surrender,
Let us not surrender,
Do not surrender or surrender not (ye or you),
Let them not surrender,

Ne te rends pas.
Qu'il ne se rende pas.
Qu'elle ne se rende pas.
Ne nous rendons pas.
Ne vous rendez pas.
Qu'ils ou Qu'elles ne se rendent pas.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

That I may surrender,
Que je me rende.
That thou mayst surrender,
Que tu te rendes.
That he may surrender,
Qu'il se rende.
That she may surrender,
Qu'elle se rende.
That we may surrender,
Que nous nous rendions.
That you may surrender,
Que vous vous rendiez.
That they may surrender,
Qu'ils ou Qu'elles se rendent.

PRETERIT.

That I may have surrendered,
Que je me sois rendu, ou due.
That thou mayst have surrendered,
Que tu te sois rendu, ou due.
That he may have surrendered,
Qu'il se soit rendu.
That she may have surrendered,
Qu'elle se soit rendue.
That we may have surrendered,
Que nous nous soyons rendus, ou dues.
That you may have surrendered,
Que vous vous soyez rendus, ou dues.
That they may have surrendered,
Qu'ils se soient rendus ou Qu'elles se soient rendues.

IMPERFECT.

That I might surrender,
Que je me rendisse.
That thou mightst surrender,
Que tu te rendisses.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have surrendered,
Que je me fusse rendu, ou due.
That thou mightst have surrendered,
Que tu te fusses rendu, ou due.

That he might surrender,
Qu'il se rendît.
 That she might surrender,
Qu'elle se rendît.
 That we might surrender,
Que nous nous rendissions.
 That you might surrender,
Que vous vous rendissiez.
 That they might surrender,
Qu'ils ou Qu'elles se rendissent.

That he might have surrendered,
Qu'il se fût rendu.
 That she might have surrendered, 138
Qu'elle se fût rendue.
 That we might have surrendered,
Que nous nous fussions rendus, ou dues.
 That you might have surrendered,
Que vous vous fussiez rendus, ou dues.
 That they might have surrendered,
Qu'ils se fussent rendus ou Qu'elles se fussent rendues.

ADDITIONAL TENSES.

PAST JUST ELAPSED.

I have just surrendered,
Je viens de me rendre.
 Thou hast just surrendered,
Tu viens de te rendre.
 He has just surrendered,
Il vient de se rendre.
 She has just surrendered,
Elle vient de se rendre.
 We have just surrendered,
Nous venons de nous rendre.
 You have just surrendered,
Vous venez de vous rendre.
 They have just surrendered,
Ils ou Elles viennent de se rendre.

PAST ELAPSED BEFORE ANOTHER
THING OR ACTION TOOK PLACE.

I had just surrendered,
Je venais de me rendre.
 Thou hadst just surrendered,
Tu venais de te rendre.
 He had just surrendered,
Il venait de se rendre.
 She had just surrendered,
Elle venait de se rendre.
 We had just surrendered,
Nous venions de nous rendre.
 You had just surrendered,
Vous veniez de vous rendre.
 They had just surrendered,
Ils ou Elles venaient de se rendre.

Observe.—If any irregular verb be employed reflectively, the pronouns follow the same order with it as with the regular verbs; but the irregularities belonging to its conjugation, in the variations of its tenses and persons, must be attended to. See *S'en aller*, to go away, page 156; and *S'asseoir*, to sit down, page 177.

Almost every active verb can be used in a reflective manner.

Of Reflective Unipersonal Verbs.

Reflective unipersonal verbs are generally active verbs which are used only in the third person singular of their different tenses. They have for antecedent one of these pronouns—*il* ou *elle*, it; *ceci*, this; *cela*, that; *celui-ci*, *celle-ci*, this; *celui-là*, *celle-là*, that; followed by *se*, or, also, a substantive likewise followed by *se*: as,—*il* ou *elle se vend bien*, it sells well; *ce drap ne se vend pas*, that cloth does not sell; *je crains que celui-ci ne se vende pas mieux*, I am afraid this will not sell better.

Should these verbs have for antecedent a pronoun plural: as,—*ceux-ci*, *celles-ci*, these; *ceux là*, *celles-là*, those; followed by *se*: or

148 CONJUG. OF REFLECTIVE UNIPERSONAL VERBS.

also, a substantive plural likewise followed by *se*: as,—*ces marchandises-ci se*, &c. these goods, &c.;—they should then be put in the third persons plural of their different tenses: as,—*ces marchandises-ci se vendent bien, mais celles-là ne se vendront pas si bien*, these goods sell well, but those will not sell so well.

The following example of reflective unipersonal verbs is of the fourth conjugation. With its assistance, the pupil will easily understand the manner of using any other reflective unipersonal verb, whatever may be its conjugation, as the pronouns and negatives always come in the same order, the verb only following the variations of its own conjugation.

Conjugation of the Reflective Unipersonal Verb—*Se vendre*, to sell.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

PRESENT.

To sell,
Se vendre.

PRETERIT.

To have sold,
S'être vendu, ou due.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Selling,
Se vendant.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE COMPOUND.

Having sold,
S'étant vendu, ou due.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Sold,
Vendu, due; dus, dues.

PARTICIPLE FUTURE.

Being to be sold,
Devant se vendre.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

It sells, does sell, or is selling,
Il ou elle se vend.

It does not sell,
Il ou elle ne se vend pas.

Does it sell?
Se vend-il ? ou se vend-elle ?

Does it not sell?
Ne se vend-il pas ? ou ne se vend-elle pas ?

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

It has sold,
Il s'est vendu, ou elle s'est vendue.

It has not sold,
Il ne s'est pas vendu, ou elle ne s'est pas vendue.

Has it sold?
S'est-il vendu ? ou s'est-elle vendue ?

Has it not sold?
Ne s'est-il pas vendu ? ou ne s'est-elle pas vendue ?

IMPERFECT.

It was selling,
Il ou elle se vendait.

It was not selling,
Il ou elle ne se vendait pas.

Was it selling?
Se vendait-il ? ou se vendait-elle ?

PLUPERFECT.

It had sold,
Il s'était vendu, ou elle s'était vendue.

It had not sold,
Il ne s'était pas vendu, ou elle ne s'était pas vendue.

Had it sold?
S'était-il vendu ? ou s'était-elle vendue ?

Was it not selling?

Ne se vendait-il pas ? ou ne se vendait-elle pas ?

Had it not sold ?

Ne s'était-il pas vendu ? ou ne s'était-elle pas vendue ?

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

It sold,

Il ou elle se vendit.

It did not sell,

Il ou elle ne se vendit pas.

Did it sell?

Se vendit-il ? ou se vendit-elle ?

Did it not sell?

Ne se vendit-il pas ? ou ne se vendit-elle pas ?

PRETERIT ANTERIOR DEFINITE.

It had sold,

Il se fut vendu, ou elle se fut vendue.

It had not sold,

Il ne se fut pas vendu, ou elle ne se fut pas vendue.

Had it sold?

Se fut-il vendu ? ou se fut-elle vendue ?

Had it not sold?

Ne se fut-il pas vendu ? ou ne se fut-elle pas vendue ?

FUTURE SIMPLE.

It will sell,

**Il ou elle se vendra.*

It will not sell,

Il ou elle ne se vendra pas.

Will it sell?

Se vendra-t-il ? ou se vendra-t-elle ?

Will it not sell?

Ne se vendra-t-il pas ? ou ne se vendra-t-elle pas ?

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

It will have sold,

Il se sera vendu, ou elle se sera vendue.

It will not have sold,

Il ne se sera pas vendu, ou elle ne se sera pas vendue.

Will it have sold?

Se sera-t-il vendu ? ou se sera-t-elle vendue ?

Will it not have sold?

Ne se sera-t-il pas vendu ? ou ne se sera-t-elle pas vendue ?

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

It would sell,

Il ou elle se vendrait.

It would not sell,

Il ou elle ne se vendrait pas.

Would it sell?

Se vendrait-il ? ou se vendrait-elle ?

PAST.

It would have sold,

Il se serait ou Il se fût vendu, ou elle se serait ou elle se fût vendue.

It would not have sold,

Il ne se serait pas ou Il ne se fût pas vendu, ou elle ne se serait pas ou elle ne se fût pas vendue.

Would it have sold?

Se serait-il ou Se fût-il vendu ? ou se serait-elle ou se fût-elle vendue ?

*1. It is to be sold,
Il ou elle doit se vendre.

It is not to be sold,
Il ou elle ne doit pas se vendre.

Is it to be sold?
Doit-il ou elle se vendre ?

Is it not to be sold?
Ne doit-il ou elle pas se vendre ?

2. It was to be sold,
Il ou elle devait se vendre.

It was not to be sold,
Il ou elle ne devait pas se vendre.

Was it to be sold?
Devait-il ou elle se vendre ?

Was it not to be sold?
Ne devait-il ou elle pas se vendre ?

Would it not sell?

Ne se vendrait-il pas ? ou ne se vendrait-elle pas ?

Would it not have sold?

Ne se serait-il pas ou Ne se fût-il pas vendu ? ou ne se serait-elle pas ou ne se fût-elle pas vendue ?

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

141 That it may sell,
Qu'il ou qu'elle se vende.

That it may not sell,
Qu'il ou qu'elle ne se vende pas.

PRETERIT.

That it may have sold,
Qu'il se soit vendu, ou qu'elle se soit vendue.

That it may not have sold,
Qu'il ne se soit pas vendu, ou qu'elle ne se soit pas vendue.

IMPERFECT.

That it might sell,
Qu'il ou qu'elle se vendît.

That it might not sell,
Qu'il ou qu'elle ne se vendît pas.

PLUPERFECT.

That it might have sold,
Qu'il se fût vendu, ou qu'elle se fût vendue.

That it might not have sold,
Qu'il ne se fût pas vendu, ou qu'elle ne se fût pas vendue.

The present and preterit of the infinitive of *reflective unipersonal verbs* may be used with another verb, as follows: *ceci pourra se vendre*, this may sell: *cela pourrait s'être vendu*, that might have sold. The *participles* accord well with a demonstrative pronoun or a substantive: as,—*ceci se vendant à....*, this selling at....; *cela s'étant vendu à....*, that having sold at....; *cet article devant se vendre à....*, that article being to be sold at....

A list of Verbs, which, though not admitting in English the pronouns *one's self, myself, thyself, himself, herself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves*, are nevertheless reflective in French.

to Abstain,	<i>s'abstenir.</i>	to Boast,	<i>se vanter.</i>
to Agree,	<i>s'accorder.</i>	to Break loose,	<i>se déchaîner.</i>
to Apply,	<i>s'adresser.</i>	to Catch cold,	<i>s'enrhumer.</i>
to Bathe,	<i>se baigner.</i>	to Care for,	<i>se soucier.</i>
to Be angry, to be offended,	<i>se fâcher.</i>	to Complain,	<i>se plaindre.</i>
to Become liquid,	<i>se liquéfier.</i>	to Confer,	<i>s'aboucher.</i>
to Be dying,	<i>se mourir.</i>	to Congeal,	<i>se figer.</i>
to Be eager,	<i>s'empresser.</i>	to Delight in,	<i>se plaire, se complaire.</i>
to Be moved,	<i>s'attendrir.</i>	to Desist, to give over,	<i>se désister.</i>
to Be obstinate in a thing,	<i>s'opiniâtrer.</i>	to Discharge,	<i>s'acquitter.</i>
to Be out of conceit with,	<i>se dégoûter.</i>	to Discourse with,	<i>s'entretenir.</i>
to Be renewed,	<i>se renouveler.</i>	to Distrust,	<i>se défier.</i>
to Be resolved, to determine,	<i>se résoudre, se déterminer.</i>	to Exclaim,	<i>se récrier.</i>
to Be silent,	<i>se taire.</i>	to Expect,	<i>s'attendre.</i>
to Beware, to keep from,	<i>se garder.</i>	to Evaporate,	<i>s'évaporer.</i>
to Blow,	<i>s'épanouir.</i>	to Fade away,	<i>se flétrir.</i>
		to Faint away,	<i>s'évanouir.</i>
		to Fall asleep,	<i>s'endormir.</i>
		to Fall asleep again,	<i>se rendormir.</i>

to Fall furiously upon or to fall tooth and nail upon, to Fancy,	<i>s'acharner.</i> <i>se figurer, s'ima-</i> <i>giner.</i>	to Overflow, to Paint, to Perceive, to Persist, to be ob- stinate, to Putrefy, to Quit one's country, to Rebel, to Recant, to go from one's word, to Recollect, to Rejoice, to Remember, to Repent, to Resign, to give up, to Retract, to Rise, to get up, to Run into debt, to Run away, to Seize, to lay hold of, to Seize, to invade, to Sell, to Set off, to Shrink, to diminish, to Sit down, to Sit down to table, to Slip, to creep into, to Stay, to stop, to Steal away, to Stick to, to Stiffen, to bear up against, to Stoop, to Strive, to try, to do one's endeavours, to Struggle, to Submit, to Subscribe, to Surrender, to Take a strong fancy, to be conceited with, to Take delight in, to Take offence, to Take pet, to Take refuge, to Take rest, to Take root, to Trust, to Vanish away, to be eclipsed, to Walk, to Withdraw, to Wonder,	<i>se déborder.</i> <i>se farder.</i> <i>s'apercevoir.</i> <i>s'obstiner.</i> <i>se putréfier.</i> <i>s'expatrier.</i> <i>se révolter.</i> <i>se dédire.</i> <i>se rappeler.</i> <i>se réjouir.</i> <i>se souvenir.</i> <i>se repentir.</i> <i>se démettre.</i> <i>se rétracter.</i> <i>se lever.</i> <i>s'endetter.</i> <i>s'enfuir.</i> 142 <i>se saisir.</i> <i>s'emparer.</i> <i>se vendre.</i> <i>s'acheminer.</i> <i>s'apetisser.</i> <i>s'asseoir.</i> <i>s'attabler.</i> <i>se glisser.</i> <i>s'arrêter.</i> <i>s'esquiver.</i> <i>s'attacher, à.</i> <i>se raidir.</i> <i>se baisser.</i> <i>s'efforcer.</i> <i>se débattre.</i> <i>se soumettre.</i> <i>s'abonner.</i> <i>se rendre.</i> <i>s'entêter.</i> <i>se plaire.</i> <i>se formaliser.</i> <i>se piquer.</i> <i>se réfugier.</i> <i>se reposer.</i> <i>s'enraciner.</i> <i>se fier.</i> <i>s'éclipser.</i> <i>se promener.</i> <i>se retirer.</i> <i>s'étonner, s'émer-</i> <i>veiller.</i>
to New feather, to be- gin to thrive, to Flock in crowds, to Flow out, to elapse, to Fly away, to Fly into a passion, to Gangrene, to Get intoxicated, to Get palsied, to Get weary, to Go away, to Go to bed, to Grieve, 142 to Grow better, to Grow bold, to Grow drowsy, to Grow familiar, to Grow impatient, to Grow milder, to Grow poor, to Grow proud, to Grow rich, to Grow tired, to Heal, to Inquire, to Intermeddle,	<i>se remplumer.</i> <i>s'attrouper.</i> <i>s'écouler.</i> <i>s'envoler.</i> <i>s'emporter.</i> <i>se gangréner.</i> <i>s'enivrer.</i> <i>se paralyser.</i> <i>s'ennuyer.</i> <i>s'en aller.</i> <i>se coucher.</i> <i>s'attrister.</i> <i>s'amender.</i> <i>s'enhardir.</i> <i>s'assoupir.</i> <i>se familiariser.</i> <i>s'impacienter.</i> <i>se radoucir.</i> <i>s'appauvrir.</i> <i>s'enorgueillir.</i> <i>s'enrichir.</i> <i>se laisser.</i> <i>se guérir.</i> <i>s'enquérir.</i> <i>s'entremettre,</i> <i>s'ingérer.</i> <i>s'agenouiller.</i> <i>se moquer.</i> <i>se liquer.</i> <i>s'accouder.</i> <i>s'appuyer, sur.</i> <i>se dépêcher, se</i> <i>hâter.</i> <i>s'évader, s'échap-</i> <i>per.</i> <i>s'étudier.</i> <i>se marier.</i> <i>s'allier.</i> <i>se mêler.</i> <i>se fondre.</i> <i>se méprendre.</i> <i>se méfier.</i> <i>s'avancer.</i> <i>se mutiner.</i> <i>s'opposer.</i>		
to Kneel down, to Laugh at, to League, to Lean on one's elbow, to Lean upon, to Make haste, to Make one's escape, to Make one's study, to Marry, to Match or make an alliance, to Meddle with, to Melt, to Mistake, to Mistrust, to Move, to come or go forward, to get preferment, to Mutiny, to Oppose,			

There are several other verbs which do not admit the pronouns *one's*

152 IRREG. VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

self, myself, thyself, himself, &c. in English, and which are, however, reflective in French; but they must be learnt by practice.

Of Irregular and Defective Verbs.

Irregular verbs are those which differ in the variations of some of their tenses and persons from the verbs which serve as models for the regular conjugations. Defective verbs are those in which some tenses or persons, not admitted by use, are wanting.

However great the irregularity of a verb may be, its anomalies never occur but in the simple tenses, the compound always being regular.

The only irregular verbs of the first conjugation are: *aller*, to go; *s'en aller*, to go away; *envoyer*, to send; and *renvoyer*, to send back. The defective unipersonals are: *bruiner*, to drizzle; *neiger*, to snow; *grêler*, to hail; *éclairer*, to lighten; *tonner*, to thunder; *geler*, to freeze; *dégeler*, to thaw; and *résulter*, to result.

The four irregular verbs of the first conjugation are here exemplified; but the defective unipersonals will be reserved for the article of unipersonal verbs. The defective unipersonal verbs of the first conjugation admit, in the third person singular of their different tenses, precisely the same variations as *parler*.

Irregular Verbs of the First Conjugation.

1. *Aller*, to go [NEUTER VERB].

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

PRESENT.

To go,
Aller.

PRETERIT.

To have or to be gone,
Être allé ou allée.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Going,
Allant.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE COMPOUND.

Having or being gone,
Êtant allé ou allée.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Gone,
Allé, ée; és, ées.

PARTICIPLE FUTURE.

Being about to go,
Devant aller.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

I go, do go, or am going,
Je vais.

Thou goest, dost go, or art going,
Tu vas,

He goes, does go, or is going,
Il va.

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I have gone,
Je suis allé ou allée.

Thou hast or art gone,
Tu es allé ou allée.

He has or is gone,
Il est allé.

She goes, does go, or is going,
Elle va.

We go, do go, or are going,
Nous allons.

You go, do go, or are going,
Vous allez.

They go, do go, or are going,
Ils ou Elles vont.

She has or is gone,
Elle est allée.

We have gone,
Nous sommes allés ou allées.

You have or are gone,
Vous êtes allés ou allées.

They have or are gone,
Ils sont allés ou Elles sont allées.

IMPERFECT.

I was going,
J'allais.

Thou wast going,
Tu allais.

He was going,
Il allait.

She was going,
Elle allait.

We were going,
Nous allions.

You were going,
Vous alliez.

They were going,
Ils ou Elles allaient.

PLUPERFECT.

I had or was gone,
J'étais allé ou allée.

Thou hadst or wast gone,
Tu étais allé ou allée.

He had or was gone,
Il était allé.

She had or was gone,
Elle était allée.

We had or were gone,
Nous étions allés ou allées.

You had or were gone,
Vous étiez allés ou allées.

They had or were gone,
Ils étaient allés ou Elles étaient allées.

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I went,
J'allai.

Thou didst go,
Tu allas.

He went,
Il alla.

She went,
Elle alla.

We went,
Nous allâmes.

You went,
Vous allâtes.

They went,
Ils ou Elles allèrent.

PRETERIT ANTERIOR DEFINITE.

I had or was gone,
Je fus allé ou allée.

Thou hadst or wast gone,
Tu fus allé ou allée.

He had or was gone,
Il fut allé.

She had or was gone,
Elle fut allée.

We had or were gone,
Nous fûmes allés ou allées.

You had or were gone,
Vous fûtes allés ou allées.

They had or were gone,
Ils furent allés ou elles furent allées.

FUTURE SIMPLE.

I shall go,
* *J'irai.*

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall have gone,
Je serai allé ou allée.

*1. I am to go,
Je dois aller.

Thou art to go,
Tu dois aller.

He is to go,
Il doit aller.

2. I was to go,
Je devais aller.

Thou wast to go,
Tu devais aller.

He was to go,
Il devait aller.

154 IRREG. VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

Thou wilt go,
Tu iras.

He will go,
Il ira.

She will go,
Elle ira.

We shall go,
Nous irons.

You will go,
Vous irez.

They will go,
Ils ou Elles iront.

Thou wilt have gone,
Tu seras allé ou allée.

He will have gone,
Il sera allé.

She will have gone,
Elle sera allée.

We shall have gone,
Nous serons allés ou allées.

You will have gone,
Vous serez allés ou allées.

They will have gone,
Ils seront allés ou Elles seront allées.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

145 I should go,
J'irais.

Thou wouldst go,
Tu irais.

He would go,
Il irait.

She would go,
Elle irait.

We should go,
Nous irions.

You would go,
Vous iriez.

They would go,
Ils ou Elles iraient.

PAST.

I should have gone,
Je serais ou Je fusse allé ou allée.

Thou wouldst have gone,
Tu serais ou Tu fusses allé ou allée.

He would have gone,
Il serait ou Il fût allé.

She would have gone,
Elle serait ou elle fût allée.

We should have gone,
Nous serions ou Nous fussions allés ou allées.

You would have gone,
Vous seriez ou Vous fussiez allés ou allées.

They would have gone,
Ils seraient ou Ils fussent allés, ou Elles seraient ou Elles fussent allées.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

Go (thou),
Let him go,
Let her go,
Let us go.
Go (ye or you),
Let them go,

Va.
Qu'il aille.
Qu'elle aille.
Allons.
Allez.
Qu'ils ou Qu'elles aillent.

She is to go,
Elle doit aller.

We are to go,
Nous devons aller.

You are to go,
Vous devez aller.

They are to go,
Ils ou Elles doivent aller.

She was to go,
Elle devait aller.

We were to go,
Nous devions aller.

You were to go,
Vous deviez aller.

They were to go,
Ils ou Elles devaient aller.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

That I may go,
Que j'aile.
That thou mayst go,
Que tu ailles.
That he may go,
Qu'il aille.
That she may go,
Qu'elle aille.
That we may go,
Que nous allions.
That you may go,
Que vous alliez.
That they may go,
Qu'ils ou Qu'elles aillent.

PRETERIT.

That I may have gone,
Que je sois allé ou allée.
That thou mayst have gone,
Que tu sois allé ou allée.
That he may have gone,
Qu'il soit allé.
That she may have gone,
Qu'elle soit allée.
That we may have gone,
Que nous soyons allés ou allées.
That you may have gone,
Que vous soyez allés ou allées.
That they may have gone,
Qu'ils soient allés ou Qu'elles soient allées.

IMPERFECT.

That I might go,
Que j'allasse.
That thou mightst go,
Que tu allasses.
That he might go,
Qu'il allât.
That she might go,
Qu'elle allât.
That we might go,
Que nous allussions.
That you might go,
Que vous allassiez.
That they might go,
Qu'ils ou Qu'elles allassent.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have gone,
Que je fusse allé ou allée.
That thou mightst have gone,
Que tu fusses allé ou allée.
That he might have gone,
Qu'il fût allé.
That she might have gone,
Qu'elle fût allée.
That we might have gone,
Que nous fussions allés ou allées.
That you might have gone,
Que vous fussiez allés ou allées.
That they might have gone,
Qu'ils fussent allés ou Qu'elles fussent allées.

Observe.—There is a very common error prevalent in France in the application of the compound tenses of the above verb:—*être allé, je suis allé, tu es allé, il est allé, elle est allée, &c.* being used instead of—*avoir été, j'ai été, tu as été, il ou elle a été, &c.* when it is intended to express that a person has been somewhere.

The general rule to follow on this subject is that, whenever the return from the place mentioned has taken place—*avoir été, j'ai été, tu as été, il ou elle a été, &c.* must be used; and when the return has not been effected—*être allé, je suis allé, tu es allé, il est allé ou elle est allée,* is required: for instance—*Joséphine est allée à l'opéra*, Josephine is gone to the opera; implies that she is gone there and is not yet returned; whereas—*Joséphine a été à l'opéra*, Josephine has been to the opera, expresses that she has been there and is returned, or at least has left the opera.

The following mode of expression—*I will come and see you*, is frequently erroneously used in English instead of—*I will go and see you*; whenever such is the case, the different tenses of *aller* must be employed, in French, in the sense of going from the place where one is to any other place: as,—*j'irai vous voir*, I will go and see you. *Venir* always denotes coming to the place where the person speaking is:

156 IRREG. VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

as,—*je ne crois pas que je puisse venir ici demain*, I do not think I shall be able to come here to-morrow.

2. *S'en aller*, to go away [REFLECTIVE VERB].

S'en aller, being the verb *aller* itself, reflectively used with the particle *en*, is conjugated after the same manner as *aller*. The particle *en* comes immediately before the verb in the simple tenses, and before the auxiliary in the compound ones, whether the sentence be affirmative, negative, or interrogative: as,—*je m'en vais*, I am going away; *je ne m'en vais pas*, I am not going away; *s'en va-t-il ?* is he going away? *ne s'en va-t-il pas ?* is he not going away? &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

PRESENT.

To go away,
S'en aller.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Going away,
S'en allant.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Gone away,
Allé, allée; és, ées.

Compound Tenses.

PRETERIT.

To have gone away,
S'en être allé ou allée.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE COMPOUND.

Having gone away,
S'en étant allé ou allée.

PARTICIPLE FUTURE.

Being about to go away,
Devant s'en aller.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

I go, do go, or am going away,
Je m'en vais.

Thou goest, dost go, or art going away,
Tu t'en vas.

He goes, does go, or is going away,
Il s'en va.

She goes, does go, or is going away,
Elle s'en va.

We go, do go, or are going away,
Nous nous en allons.

You go, do go, or are going away,
Vous vous en allez.

They go, do go, or are going away,
Ils ou Elles s'en vont.

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I have gone away,
Je m'en suis allé ou allée.

Thou hast gone away,
Tu t'en es allé ou allée.

He has gone away,
Il s'en est allé.

She has gone away,
Elle s'en est allée.

We have gone away,
Nous nous en sommes allés ou allées.

You have gone away,
Vous vous en êtes allés ou allées.

They have gone away,
Ils s'en sont allés ou Elles s'en sont allées.

IMPERFECT.

I was going away,
Je m'en allais.

Thou wast going away,
Tu t'en allais.

He was going away,
Il s'en allait.

PLUPERFECT.

I had gone away,
Je m'en étais allé ou allée.

Thou hadst gone away,
Tu t'en étais allé ou allée.

He had gone away,
Il s'en était allé.

She was going away,
Elle s'en allait.

We were going away,
Nous nous en allions.

You were going away,
Vous vous en alliez.

They were going away,
Ils ou Elles s'en allaient.

She had gone away,
Elle s'en était allée.

We had gone away,
Nous nous en étions allés ou allées.

You had gone away,
Vous vous en étiez allés ou allées.

They had gone away,
Ils s'en étaient allés ou Elles s'en étaient allées.

PRETERIT DEFINITE.

I went away,
Je m'en allai.

Thou didst go away,
Tu t'en allas.

He went away,
Il s'en alla.

She went away,
Elle s'en alla.

We went away,
Nous nous en allâmes.

You went away,
Vous vous en allâtes.

They went away,
Ils ou Elles s'en allèrent.

PRETERIT ANTERIOR DEFINITE.

I had gone away,
Je m'en fus allé ou allée.

Thou hadst gone away,
Tu t'en fus allé ou allée.

He had gone away,
Il s'en fut allé.

She had gone away,
Elle s'en fut allée.

We had gone away,
Nous nous en fûmes allés ou allées.

You had gone away,
Vous vous en fûtes allés ou allées. 178

They had gone away,
Ils s'en furent allés ou Elles s'en furent allées.

FUTURE SIMPLE.

I shall go away,
* *Je m'en irai.*

Thou wilt go away,
Tu t'en iras.

He will go away,
Il s'en ira.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall have gone away,
Je m'en serai allé ou allée.

Thou wilt have gone away,
Tu t'en seras allé ou allée.

He will have gone away,
Il s'en sera allé.

-
- * 1. I am to go away,
Je dois m'en aller.
- Thou art to go away,
Tu dois t'en aller.
- He is to go away,
Il doit s'en aller.
- She is to go away,
Elle doit s'en aller.
- We are to go away,
Nous devons nous en aller.
- You are to go away,
Vous devez vous en aller.
- They are to go away,
Ils ou Elles doivent s'en aller.

2. I was to go away,
Je devais m'en aller.
- Thou wast to go away,
Tu devais t'en aller.
- He was to go away,
Il devait s'en aller.
- She was to go away,
Elle devait s'en aller.
- We were to go away,
Nous devions nous en aller.
- You were to go away,
Vous deviez vous en aller.
- They were to go away,
Ils ou Elles devaient s'en aller.

158 IRREG. VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

She will go away,
Elle s'en ira.

We shall go away,
Nous nous en irons.

You will go away,
Vous vous en irez.

They will go away,
Ils ou Elles s'en iront.

She will have gone away,
Elle s'en sera allée.

We shall have gone away,
Nous nous en serons allés ou allées.

You will have gone away,
Vous vous en serez allés ou allées.

They will have gone away,
Ils s'en seront allés ou Elles s'en seront allées.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

I should go away,
Je m'en irais.

Thou wouldst go away,
Tu t'en irais.

He would go away,
Il s'en irait.

She would go away,
Elle s'en irait.

We should go away,
Nous nous en irions.

You would go away,
Vous vous en iriez.

They would go away,
Ils ou Elles s'en metaient.

PAST.

I should have gone away,
Je m'en serais ou je m'en fusse allé ou allée.

Thou wouldst have gone away,
Tu t'en serais ou tu t'en fusses allé, ou allée.

He would have gone away,
Il s'en serait ou il s'en fût allé.

She would have gone away,
Elle s'en serait ou Elle s'en fût allée.

We should have gone away,
Nous nous en serions ou Nous nous en fussions allés, ou allées.

You would have gone away,
Vous vous en seriez ou Vous vous en fussiez allés, ou allées.

They would have gone away,
Ils s'en metaient ou Ils s'en fussent allés, ou Elles s'en metaient ou Elles s'en fussent allées.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

1. Affirmatively.

Go away (thou),
Let him go away,
Let her go away,
Let us go away,
Go away (ye or you),
Let them go away,

Va-t'en.
Qu'il s'en aille.
Qu'elle s'en aille.
Allons-nous-en.
Allez-vous-en.
Qu'ils ou Qu'elles s'en aillent.

2. Negatively.

Do not go away or go not away (thou),
Let him not go away,
Let her not go away,
Let us not go away,
Do not go away or go not away (ye or you),
Let them not go away,

Ne t'en va pas.
Qu'il ne s'en aille pas.
Qu'elle ne s'en aille pas.
Ne nous en allons pas.
Ne vous en allez pas.
Qu'ils ou Qu'elles ne s'en aillent pas.

149

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

That I may go away,
Que je m'en aille.
 That thou mayst go away,
Que tu t'en ailles.
 That he may go away,
Qu'il s'en aille.
 That she may go away,
Qu'elle s'en aille.
 That we may go away,
Que nous nous en allions.
 That you may go away,
Que vous vous en alliez.
 That they may go away,
Qu'ils ou Qu'elles s'en aillent.

PRETERIT.

That I may have gone away,
Que je m'en sois allé ou allée.
 That thou mayst have gone away,
Que tu t'en sois allé ou allée.
 That he may have gone away,
Qu'il s'en soit allé.
 That she may have gone away,
Qu'elle s'en soit allée.
 That we may have gone away,
Que nous nous en soyons allés ou allées.
 That you may have gone away,
Que vous vous en soyez allés ou allées.
 That they may have gone away,
Qu'ils s'en soient allés ou Qu'elles s'en soient allées.

IMPERFECT.

That I might go away,
Que je m'en allasse.
 That thou mightst go away,
Que tu t'en allasses.
 That he might go away,
Qu'il s'en allât.
 That she might go away,
Qu'elle s'en allât.
 That we might go away,
Que nous nous en allussions.
 That you might go away,
Que vous vous en allassiez.
 That they might go away,
Qu'ils ou Qu'elles s'en allassent.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have gone away,
Que je m'en fusse allé ou allée.
 That thou mightst have gone away,
Que tu t'en fusses allé ou allée.
 That he might have gone away,
Qu'il s'en fût allé.
 That she might have gone away,
Qu'elle s'en fût allée.
 That we might have gone away,
Que nous nous en fussions allés ou allées.
 That you might have gone away,
Que vous vous en fussiez allés ou allées.
 That they might have gone away,
Qu'ils s'en fussent allés ou Qu'elles s'en fussent allées.

3. *Envoyer*, to send [ACTIVE VERB];

Envoyant, *sending*; envoyé, envoyée, *sent*. Avoir envoyé, ayant envoyé.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i> J'envoie,	tu envoies,	il ou elle envoie;
Nous envoyons,	vous envoyez,	ils ou elles envoient.
<i>Imp.</i> J'envoyais,	tu envoyais,	il ou elle envoyait;
Nous envoyions,	vous envoyiez,	ils ou elles envoyaient.
<i>Pret. Def.</i> J'envoyai,	tu envoyas,	il ou elle envoya;
Nous envoyâmes,	vous envoyâtes,	ils ou elles envoyèrent.

160 IRREG. VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

<i>Fut.</i> J'enverrai*, Nous enverrons,	tu enverras, vous enverrez,	il <i>ou</i> elle enverra; ils <i>ou</i> elles enverront.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i> J'enverrais*, Nous enverrions,	tu enverrais, vous enverriez,	il <i>ou</i> elle enverrait; ils <i>ou</i> elles enverraient.
<i>Imperative.</i> [No 1st Person.] Envoyons,	envoie, envoyez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle envoie; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles envoient.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i> Que j'envoie, Que nous envoyions,	que tu envoies, que vous envoyiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle envoie; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles envoient.
<i>Imp.</i> Que j'envoyasse, Que nous envoyas- sions,	que tu envoyasses, que vous envoyas- siez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> quelle envoyât; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles envoyas- sent.

Conjugate after the same manner *renvoyer*, to send back.

Irregular verbs of the Second Conjugation.

1. Conjugation of the Irregular Neuter Verb—*Venir*, to come.

Page 159

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Simple Tenses.

Compound Tenses.

PRESENT.

To come,
Venir.

PRETERIT.

To have or to be come,
Être venu ou venue.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Coming,
Venant.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE COMPOUND.

Having or being come,
Étant venu ou venue.

PAST PARTICIPLE.

Come,
Venu, ue; us, ues.

PARTICIPLE FUTURE.

Being about to come,
Devant venir.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

I come, do come, or am coming,
Je viens.

Thou comest, dost come, or art coming,
Tu viens.

He comes, does come, or is coming,
Il vient.

She comes, does come, or is coming,
Elle vient.

We come, do come, or are coming,
Nous venons.

PRETERIT INDEFINITE.

I have or am come,
Je suis venu ou venue.

Thou hast or art come,
Tu es venu ou venue.

He has or is come,
Il est venu.

She has or is come,
Elle est venue.

We have or are come,
Nous sommes venus ou venues.

* The second *r* only is pronounced in all the persons of the future and conditional of these verbs, but the syllable *ve* becomes long: thus,—*j'enverrai*, *tu enverras*, &c. and *j'enverrais*, *tu enverrais*, &c. are pronounced—*j'envê-rai*, *tu envê-ras*, &c. and *j'envê-rai*, *tu envê-rai*, &c. *Je renverrai*, *tu renverras*, &c., and *je renverrais*, *tu renverrais*, &c. are also pronounced—*je renvê-rai*, *tu renvê-ras*, &c. and *je renvê-rai*, *tu renvê-rai*, &c.

IRREG. VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION. 161

You come, do come, or are coming,
Vous venez.

They come, do come, or are coming,
Ils ou Elles viennent.

IMPERFECT.

I was coming,
Je venais.

Thou wast coming,
Tu venais.

He was coming,
Il venait.

She was coming,
Elle venait.

We were coming,
Nous venions.

You were coming,
Vous veniez.

They were coming,
Ils ou Elles venaient.

PRÆTERIT DEFINITE.

I came,
Je vins.

Thou didst come,
Tu vins.

He came,
Il vint.

She came,
Elle vint.

We came,
Nous vîmes.

You came,
Vous vîtes.

They came,
Ils ou Elles vinrent.

FUTURE SIMPLE.

I shall come,
* *Je viendrai.*

You have or are come,
Vous êtes venus ou venues.

They have or are come,
Ils sont venus ou Elles sont venues.

PLUPERFECT.

I had or was come,
J'étais venu ou venue.

Thou hadst or wast come,
Tu étais venu ou venue.

He had or was come,
Il était venu.

She had or was come,
Elle était venue.

We had or were come,
Nous étions venus ou venues.

You had or were come,
Vous étiez venus ou venues.

They had or were come,
Ils étaient venus ou Elles étaient venues.

PRÆTERIT ANTERIOR DEFINITE.

I had or was come,
Je fus venu ou venue.

Thou hadst or wast come,
Tu fus venu ou venue.

He had or was come,
Il fut venu.

She had or was come,
Elle fut venue.

We had or were come,
Nous fîmes venus ou venues.

You had or were come,
Vous fûtes venus ou venues.

They had or were come,
Ils furent venus ou Elles furent venues.

FUTURE ANTERIOR.

I shall have come,
Je serai venu ou venue.

*1. I am to come,
Je dois venir.

Thou art to come,
Tu dois venir.

He is to come,
Il doit venir.

She is to come,
Elle doit venir.

2. I was to come,
Je devais venir.

Thou wast to come,
Tu devais venir.

He was to come,
Il devait venir.

She was to come,
Elle devait venir.

162 IRREG. VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Thou shalt or wilt come,
Tu viendras.

He shall or will come,
Il viendra.

She shall or will come,
Elle viendra.

We shall come,
Nous viendrons.

You shall or will come,
Vous viendrez.

They shall or will come,
Ils ou Elles viendront.

Thou shalt or wilt have come,
Tu seras venu ou venue.

He shall or will have come,
Il sera venu.

She shall or will have come,
Elle sera venue.

We shall have come,
Nous serons venus ou venues.

You shall or will have come,
Vous serez venus ou venues.

They shall or will have come,
Ils seront venus ou Elles seront venues.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

I should come,
Je viendrais.

Thou wouldst come,
Tu viendrais.

He would come,
Il viendrait.

She would come,
Elle viendrait.

We should come,
Nous viendrions.

You would come,
Vous viendriez.

They would come,
Ils ou Elles viendraient.

PAST.

I should have come,
Je serais ou Je fusse venu, ou venue.

Thou wouldst have come,
Tu serais ou Tu fusses venu, ou venue.

He would have come,
Il serait ou Il fût venu.

She would have come,
Elle serait ou Elle fût venue.

We should have come,
Nous serions ou Nous fussions venus, ou venues.

You would have come,
Vous seriez ou Vous fussiez venus, ou venues.

They would have come,
Ils seraient ou Ils fussent venus, ou Elles seraient ou Elles fussent venues.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT OR FUTURE.

Come (thou),
Let him come,
Let her come,
Let us come,
Come (ye or you),
Let them come,

Viens.
Qu'il vienne.
Qu'elle vienne.
Venons.
Venez.
Qu'ils ou Qu'elles viennent.

We are to come,
Nous devons venir.

You are to come,
Vous devez venir.

They are to come,
Ils ou Elles doivent venir.

We were to come,
Nous devions venir.

You were to come,
Vous deviez venir.

They were to come,
Ils ou Elles devaient venir.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

That I may come,
Que je vienne.
 That thou mayst come,
Que tu viennes.
 That he may come,
Qu'il vienne.
 That she may come,
Qu'elle vienne.
 That we may come,
Que nous venions.
 That you may come,
Que vous veniez.
 That they may come,
Qu'ils ou Qu'elles viennent.

PRETERIT.

That I may have come,
Que je sois venu ou venue.
 That thou mayst have come,
Que tu sois venu ou venue.
 That he may have come,
Qu'il soit venu.
 That she may have come,
Qu'elle soit venue.
 That we may have come,
Que nous soyons venus ou venues.
 That you may have come,
Que vous soyez venus ou venues.
 That they may have come,
Qu'ils soient venus ou Qu'elles soient venues.

IMPERFECT.

That I might come,
Que je vinsse.
 That thou mightst come,
Que tu vinsses.
 That he might come,
Qu'il vint.
 That she might come,
Qu'elle vint.
 That we might come,
Que nous vinssions.
 That you might come,
Que vous vinssiez.
 That they might come,
Qu'ils ou Qu'elles vinssent.

PLUPERFECT.

That I might have come,
Que je fusse venu ou venue.
 That thou mightst have come,
Que tu fusses venu ou venue.
 That he might have come,
Qu'il fût venu.
 That she might have come,
Qu'elle fût venue.
 That we might have come,
Que nous fussions venus ou venues.
 That you might have come,
Que vous fussiez venus ou venues.
 That they might have come,
Qu'ils fussent venus ou Qu'elles fussent venues.

ADDITIONAL TENSES.

The additional tenses of the above verb are formed with *arriver*, as follows:—

1st TENSE.

I am or have just come,
Je viens d'arriver.
 Thou art or hast just come,
Tu viens d'arriver.
 He is or has just come,
Il vient d'arriver.
 She is or has just come,
Elle vient d'arriver.

2d TENSE.

I had or was just come,
Je venais d'arriver.
 Thou hadst or wast just come,
Tu venais d'arriver.
 He had or was just come,
Il venait d'arriver.
 She had or was just come,
Elle venait d'arriver.

164 IRREG. VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

We are or have just come,
Nous venons d'arriver.

You are or have just come,
Vous venez d'arriver.

They are or have just come,
Ils ou Elles viennent d'arriver.

We had or were just come,
Nous venions d'arriver.

You had or were just come,
Vous veniez d'arriver.

They had or were just come,
Ils ou Elles venaient d'arriver.

Conjugate after the same manner every verb ending, in the present of the infinitive, in *enir* : as,—

† <i>Appartenir</i> ,	to belong.	† <i>Obtenir</i> ,	to obtain.
<i>Avenir</i> ,	to happen.	<i>Parvenir</i> ,	to come to preferment, to attain.
† <i>Circconvenir</i> ,	to circumvent.	† <i>Prévenir</i> ,	to prevent, to inform.
† <i>Contenir</i> ,	to contain.	<i>Provenir</i> ,	to proceed from.
† <i>Contrevenir</i> ,	to contravene.	<i>Redevenir</i> ,	to become again.
* <i>Convenir</i> ,	to agree, to suit.	† <i>Retenir</i> ,	to retain.
† <i>Déprévenir</i> ,	to unprepossess.	<i>Revenir</i> ,	to come again, to come back.
† <i>Détenir</i> ,	to detain.	<i>S'abstenir</i> ,	to abstain.
<i>Devenir</i> ,	to become.	† <i>Soutenir</i> ,	to sustain, to support.
<i>Disconvenir</i> ,	to disagree.	<i>Se souvenir & se ressouvenir</i> ,	} to remember.
† <i>Entretenir</i> ,	to entertain.	† <i>Subvenir</i> ,	
<i>Intervenir</i> ,	to intervene.	<i>Survénir</i> ,	to come unexpectedly.
† <i>Maintenir</i> ,	to maintain.	† <i>Tenir</i> ,	to hold.
<i>Mésavenir</i> ,	to succeed ill.		

The verbs which are marked with a (†), in the above list, take *avoir* in their compound tenses; whereas those which have not this mark take *être*.

* *Convenir* is conjugated with *avoir* in its compound tenses, when it is used in the sense of TO SUIT: as—that would have suited me, *cela m'aurait convenu*; but it takes *être*, in the sense of TO AGREE: as,—we have agreed on the price, *nous sommes convenus du prix*.

The *n*, in the above verbs, and in any other ending in *enir* in the present of the infinitive mood, is, as in the verb *venir*, doubled in the tenses, in which it comes before *e*, *es*, or *ent* mute: as,—*tenir*, to hold; *que je tienne*, *que tu tiennes*, *qu'ils ou qu'elles tiennent*, &c.

Avenir, to happen, can only be used in the third person singular of a few tenses, and in the present of the infinitive: as,—*s'il avient*, if it happens, &c.

Provenir, to proceed from, is seldom used but in its third persons singular and plural: as,—*cela provient de*, that proceeds from; *tous ces malheurs provenaient de*...., all these misfortunes proceeded from, &c.

2. *Acquérir*, to acquire [ACTIVE VERB];

Acquérent, *acquiring*; acquis, *acquire*, *acquired*. Avoir acquis, *ayant acquis*.

Ind. Pres.	J'acquiers,	tu acquiers,—	il ou elle acquiert;
	Nous acquérons,	vous acquérez,	ils ou elles acquièrent.
Imp.	J'acquérerais,	tu acquérerais,	il ou elle acquerrait;
	Nous acquérions,	vous acquériez,	ils ou elles acquerraient.
Pret. Def.	J'acquis,	tu acquis,	il ou elle acquit;
	Nous acquîmes,	vous acquîtes,	ils ou elles acquirent.

Fut. J'acquerrai, Nous acquerrons,	tu acquerras, vous acquerez,	il ou elle acquerra ; ils ou elles acquerront.
Cond. Pres. J'acquerrais, Nous acquerrions,	tu acquerrais, vous acqueriez,	il ou elle acquerrait ; ils ou elles acquerraient.
Imperative. [No 1st person.] Acquérons,	acquiers, acquérez,	qu'il ou qu'elle acquière ; qu'ils ou qu'elles acquièrent.
Sub. Pres. Que j'acquière, Que nous acquérions,	que tu acquières, que vous acquériez,	qu'il ou qu'elle acquière ; qu'ils ou qu'elles acquièrent.
Imp. Que j'acquisse, Que nous acquissions,	que tu acquisses, que vous acquissiez,	qu'il ou qu'elle acquît ; qu'ils ou qu'elles acquissent.

Conjugate after the same manner the verbs *conquérir*, to conquer ; *reconquérir*, to conquer again ; *requérir*, to require ; *s'enquérir*, to inquire ; and *quérir*, to fetch.

Conquérir is only used in the present of the infinitive, in the preterit definite, in the imperfect of the subjunctive, and in the compound tenses.

Reconquérir is chiefly used in the past participle.

S'enquérir is very little used, except in the present of the infinitive and in its compound tenses.

Quérir, to fetch, is only used in the present of the infinitive with the verbs *aller*, *venir*, and *envoyer* : as,—*Allez me quérir M. un tel*, go and fetch me Mr. such a one ; *je l'ai envoyé quérir*, I have sent for him ; *il m'est venu quérir*, he came to fetch me ; &c. This verb must not be used in an elevated style.

3. *Assaillir*, to assault [ACTIVE VERB] ;

Assaillant, *assaulting* ; *assailli*, *assaillie*, *assaulted*. *Avoir assailli*, *ayant assailli*.

Ind. Pres. J'assaille, Nous assaillons,	tu assailles, vous assailliez,	il ou elle assaille ; ils ou elles assaillent.
Imp. J'assaislais, Nous assaillions,	tu assaislais, vous assailliez,	il ou elle assaillait ; ils ou elles assaillaient.
Pret. Def. J'assailis, Nous assaillîmes,	tu assailis, vous assaillîtes,	il ou elle assaillit ; ils ou elles assaillirent.
Fut. J'assaillirai,* Nous assaillirons,	tu assailliras, vous assaillirez,	il ou elle assaillira ; ils ou elles assailliront.
Cond. Pres. J'assaillirais,* Nous assaillirions,	tu assaillirais, vous assailliriez,	il ou elle assaillirait ; ils ou elles assailliraient.
Imperative. [No 1st person.] Assaillons,	assaille, assailliez,	qu'il ou qu'elle assaille ; qu'ils ou qu'elles assaillent.
Sub. Pres. Que j'assaille, Que nous assaillions,	que tu assailles, que vous assailliez,	qu'il ou qu'elle assaille ; qu'ils ou qu'elles assaillent.
Imp. Que j'assaillisse, Que nous assaillissions,	que tu assaillisses, que vous assaillissiez,	qu'il ou qu'elle assaillît ; qu'ils ou qu'elles assaillissent.

Conjugate after the same manner *tressaillir*, to start : but *je tres-*

* *Wailly* is of opinion that *j'assaillirai*, *tu assailleras*, &c. may also be used in the future ; and *j'assaillirais*, *tu assaillerais*, &c. in the conditional.

166 IRREG. VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

saillirai, tu tressailliras, &c. or je tressaillirai, tu tressailleras, &c. may be used in the future, as also *je tressaillirais, tu tressaillirais, &c.* and *je tressaillerais, tu tressaillerais, &c.* in the conditional.

3 4. *Bouillir*, to boil [NEUTER VERB];

Bouillant, boiling; bouilli, bouillie, boiled. Avoir bouilli, ayant bouilli.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je bous, Nous bouillons,	tu bous. vous bouillez,	il <i>ou</i> elle bout; ils <i>ou</i> elles bouillent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je bouillais, Nous bouillions,	tu bouillais, vous bouilliez,	il <i>ou</i> elle bouillait; ils <i>ou</i> elles bouillaient.
<i>Pret. Def.</i>	Je bouillis, Nous bouillîmes,	tu bouillis, vous bouillîtes,	il <i>ou</i> elle bouillit; ils <i>ou</i> elles bouillirent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je bouillirai, Nous bouillirons,	tu bouilliras, vous bouillirez,	il <i>ou</i> elle bouillira; ils <i>ou</i> elles bouilliront.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je bouillirais, Nous bouillirions,	tu bouillirais, vous bouilliriez,	il <i>ou</i> elle bouillirait; ils <i>ou</i> elles bouilliraient.
<i>Imperative.</i>	[No 1st person.] Bouillons,	bous, bouillez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle bouille; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles bouillent.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i>	Que je bouille, Que nous bouillions,	que tu bouilles, que vous bouilliez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle bouille; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles bouillent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Que je bouillisse, Que nous bouillissions,	que tu bouillisses, que vous bouillissiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle bouillît; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles bouillissent.

The above verb can only be used properly in French in the third person singular and in the third plural of its different tenses; as,—*L'eau bout*, the water boils; *ces choux ne bouillaient pas*, these cabbages did not boil, &c. Should it be required to be used in any other of its persons in French, in the sense of *I boil, thou boilest, he or she boils; we boil, you boil, they boil, &c.* in English, it must be expressed by the corresponding person of the verb *faire*, putting *bouillir* in the present of the infinitive: thus,—*Je fais bouillir, tu fais bouillir, il ou elle fait bouillir; nous faisons bouillir, vous faites bouillir, ils ou elles font bouillir, &c.*: as,—*Je fais bouillir de la viande*, I boil some meat; and not *je bous*.

Rebouillir, to boil again, is conjugated after the same manner as *bouillir*, and follows the same rules.

4 5. *Courir*, to run [NEUTER AND ACTIVE VERB];

Courant, running; couru, courue, run. Avoir couru, ayant couru.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je cours, Nous courons,	tu cours, vous courez,	il <i>ou</i> elle court; ils <i>ou</i> elles courent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je courais, Nous courions,	tu courais, vous couriez,	il <i>ou</i> elle courait; ils <i>ou</i> elles couraient.
<i>Pret. Def.</i>	Je courus, Nous courûmes,	tu courus, vous courûtes,	il <i>ou</i> elle courut; ils <i>ou</i> elles coururent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je courrai, Nous courrons,	tu courras, vous courrez,	il <i>ou</i> elle courra; ils <i>ou</i> elles courront.

Cond. Pres. Je courrais,	tu courrais,	il <i>ou</i> elle courrait ;
Nous courrions,	vous courriez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles courraient.
Imperative. [No 1st person.]	cours,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle coure ;
Courons,	courez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles courent.
Sub. Pres. Que je coure,	que tu coures,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle coure ;
Que nous courions,	que vous couriez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles courent.
Imp. Que je courusse,	que tu courusses,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle courût ;
Que nous courus-	que vous courus-	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles courussent.
sions,	siez,	

Conjugate after the same manner the verbs *accourir*, to run to ; *concourir*, to concur ; *discourir*, to discourse ; *encourir*, to incur ; *parcourir*, to run over ; *secourir*, to succour ; *recourir*, to have recourse to.

Accourir, to run to, takes *avoir* or *être* in its compound tenses, according to the sense in which it is used : as,—*J'ai accouru* and *ie suis accouru*, &c.

6. Cueillir, to gather [ACTIVE VERB] ;

Cueillant, *gathering* ; cueilli, cueillie, *gathered*. Avoir cueilli, ayant cueilli.

Ind. Pres. Je cueille,	tu cueilles,	il <i>ou</i> elle cueille ;
Nous cueillons,	vous cueillez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles cueillent.
Imp. Je cueillais,	tu cueillais,	il <i>ou</i> elle cueillait ;
Nous cueillions,	vous cueilliez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles cueillaient.
Pret. Def. Je cueillis,	tu cueillis,	il <i>ou</i> elle cueillit ;
Nous cueillîmes,	vous cueillîtes,	ils <i>ou</i> elles cueillirent.
Fut. Je cueillerai,	tu cueilleras,	il <i>ou</i> elle cueillera ;
Nous cueillerons,	vous cueillerez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles cueilleront.
Cond. Pres. Je cueillerais,	tu cueillerais,	il <i>ou</i> elle cueillerait ;
Nous cueillerions,	vous cueilleriez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles cueilleraient.
Imperative. [No 1st person.]	cueille,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle cueille ;
Cueillons,	cueillez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles cueillent.
Sub. Pres. Que je cueille,	que tu cueilles,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle cueille ;
Que nous cueillions,	que vous cueilliez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles cueillent.
Imp. Que je cueillisse,	que tu cueillisses,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle cueillît ;
Que nous cueillis-	que vous cueillis-	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles cueillis-
sions,	siez,	sent.

Conjugate after the same manner *accueillir*, to make welcome, to receive kindly ; and *recueillir*, to gather, to reap, to receive.

7. Faillir, to fail [NEUTER AND DEFECTIVE VERB] ;

Faillant, *failing* ; failli, faillie, *failed*. Avoir failli, ayant failli.

Pret. Def. Je faillis,	tu faillis,	il <i>ou</i> elle faillit ;
Nous faillîmes,	vous faillîtes,	ils <i>ou</i> elles faillirent.

This verb is only used as above. Its compound tenses are regular, and formed with the different tenses of the auxiliary verb *avoir* and

its own past participle *failli*: as,—*j'ai failli, tu as failli, il ou elle a failli, &c.*

Faire faillite is more generally used than *faillir*, in the sense of *to fail, to break, to be a bankrupt*.

Défaillir, to fail, to decay, derived from *faillir*, is hardly ever used, except in the plural of the present of the indicative: *nous défaillons*; in the imperfect, *je défaillais*; in the preterit definite, *je défaillis, tu défaillis, &c.* in the preterit indefinite, *j'ai défailli, &c.* and in the present of the infinitive, *défaillir*.

8. Fleurir, to blossom, to flourish [NEUTER VERB].

When this verb is taken in the sense of shooting forth flowers, it is regular and conjugated like *finir*. But when it is used in a figurative sense, denoting prosperity, as when speaking of a kingdom or a town, we say, *It is in a flourishing state*, its present participle is then *florissant*, and its imperfect of the indicative *je florissais, tu florissais, il ou elle florissait, &c.* instead of *fleurissant, je fleurissais, tu fleurissais, il ou elle fleurissait, &c.* This is the only irregularity of *fleurir*, its other tenses being always regular.

Refleurir, to blossom or flourish again, is conjugated after the same manner as *fleurir*; its present participle is also, when used in its natural sense, *refleurissant*, and its imperfect of the indicative, *refleurissais*; but when it is employed in a figurative sense, its present participle is *reflorissant*, and its imperfect of the indicative *reflorissais, &c.*

9. Fuir, to fly, to shun [ACTIVE AND NEUTER VERB];

Fuyant, *flying*; fui, *fuie, fled*. Avoir fui, *ayant fui*.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je fuis, Nous fuyons,	tu fuis, vous fuyez,	il ou elle fuit; ils ou elles fuient.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je fuyais, Nous fuyions,	tu fuyais, vous fuyiez,	il ou elle fuyait; ils ou elles fuyaient.
<i>Pret. Def.</i>	Je fuis, Nous fuîmes,	tu fuis, vous fuîtes,	il ou elle fuit; ils ou elles fuirent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je fuirai, Nous fuirons,	tu fuiras, vous fuirez,	il ou elle fuira; ils ou elles fuiront.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je fuirais, Nous fuirions,	tu fuirais, vous fuiriez,	il ou elle fuirait; ils ou elles fuiraient.
<i>Imperative.</i> [No 1st person.]	Fuyons,	fuis, fuyez,	qu'il ou qu'elle fuie; qu'ils ou qu'elles fuient.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i>	Que je fuie, Que nous fuyions,	que tu fuies, que vous fuyiez,	qu'il ou qu'elle fuie; qu'ils ou qu'elles fuient.
<i>Imp.</i>	Que je fusse, Que nous fuissions,	que tu fusses, que vous fussiez,	qu'il ou qu'elle fût; qu'ils ou qu'elles fussent.

Conjugate after the same manner *s'enfuir*, to run away: in the imperative, it makes *enfuis-toi, &c.*

9 10. Gésir, to lie [NEUTER AND DEFECTIVE VERB];

Gisant, lying.

This verb, which formerly signified to be lying down, is no longer in use. We, however, sometimes say:—*il gît, nous gisons, ils gisent, il gisait, gisant.*

Ci-gît, here lies, is the common form by which an epitaph begins; this expression is also fine in a figurative sense, and particularly in poetry.

Ci-gît Ver-vert, ci-gisent tous les cœurs.—Gresset.

10 11. Haïr, to hate [ACTIVE VERB];

Haissant, hating; haï, haïe, hated. Avoir haï, ayant haï.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je haïs, Nous haïssons,	tu haïs, vous haïssez,	il ou elle haït; ils ou elles haïssent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je haïssais, Nous haïssions,	tu haïssais, vous haïssiez,	il ou elle haïssait; ils ou elles haïssaient.
<i>Pret. Def.</i>	Je haïs, Nous haïmes,	tu haïs, vous haïtes,	il ou elle haït; ils ou elles haïrent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je haïrai, Nous haïrons,	tu haïras, vous haïrez,	il ou elle haïra; ils ou elles haïront.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je haïrais, Nous haïrions,	tu haïrais, vous haïriez,	il ou elle haïrait; ils ou elles haïraient.
<i>Imperative.</i> [No 1st person.]	Haïssons,	haïs, haïssez,	qu'il ou qu'elle haïsse; qu'ils ou qu'elles haïssent.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i>	Que je haïsse, Que nous haïssions,	que tu haïsses, que vous haïssiez,	qu'il ou qu'elle haïsse; qu'ils ou qu'elles haïssent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Que je haïsse, Que nous haïssions,	que tu haïsses, que vous haïssiez,	qu'il ou qu'elle haït; qu'ils ou qu'elles haïssent.

The *h* is aspirated through all its tenses and persons.

A diæresis (") is required over the *i*, in all the persons and tenses of *haïr*, to show that the *i* is to be pronounced separately from the preceding vowel *a*: as,—*ha-ïr, je ha-ïssais, &c.* The three first letters of this verb form two syllables, except in the three persons singular of the present of the indicative, and in the second singular of the imperative, in which they form only one, and are written without the diæresis, thus—*je haïs, tu haïs, il ou elle haït; haïs*; pronounced—*je hé, tu hé, il ou elle hé; hé.* It is in this particular alone that consists the irregularity of *haïr*; for all its other tenses and persons are regular, and conjugated after the same manner as *finir*.

// 12. Issir, to descend [NEUTER AND DEFECTIVE VERB].

This verb, which was formerly employed for *sortir*, is now only used in its past participle, *issu, issue*, with the different tenses of the verb *être*; it signifies *venu, descendu, d'une personne, d'une race, &c.* as, —*il est issu de . . .*, he is descended from . . .

12 13. Mourir, to die [NEUTER VERB];

Mourant, *dying*; mort, morte, *died*. Être mort, étant mort.

Ind. Pres.	Je meurs, Nous mourons,	tu meurs, vous mourez,	il <i>ou</i> elle meurt; ils <i>ou</i> elles meurent.
Imp.	Je mourais, Nous mourions,	tu mourais, vous mouriez,	il <i>ou</i> elle mourait; ils <i>ou</i> elles mouraient.
Pret. Def.	Je mourus, Nous mourûmes,	tu mourus, vous mourûtes,	il <i>ou</i> elle mourut; ils <i>ou</i> elles moururent.
Fut.	Je mourrai, Nous mourrons,	tu mourras, vous mourrez,	il <i>ou</i> elle mourra; ils <i>ou</i> elles mourront.
Cond. Pres.	Je mourrais, Nous mourrions,	tu mourrais, vous mourriez,	il <i>ou</i> elle mourrait; ils <i>ou</i> elles mourraient.
Imperative. [No 1st person.]	Mourons,	meurs, mourez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle meure; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles meurent.
Sub. Pres.	Que je meure, Que nous mourions,	que tu meures, que vous mouriez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle meure; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles meurent.
Imp.	Que je mourusse, Que nous mourus- sions,	que tu mourusses, que vous mourus- siez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle mourût; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles mourus- sent.

The two *r*'s of the future and conditional of this verb are both pronounced. Its compound tenses are formed with the simple tenses of *être*.

13 14. Ouïr, to hear [ACTIVE AND DEFECTIVE VERB].

This verb can only be used now in the present of the infinitive *ouïr*, to hear; in the preterit definite, *j'ouïs*, I heard; *il ouït*, he heard; in the imperfect of the subjunctive, *que j'ouïsse*, that I might hear; *qu'il ouït*, that he might hear; and in its compound tenses, which are formed with the simple tenses of the auxiliary verb *avoir*, and its past participle *ouï*, *ouïe*. Any other verb which may follow in the sentence is put in the present of the infinitive: as,—I heard say, *j'ai ouï dire*, &c.

14 15. Ouvrir, to open [ACTIVE VERB];

Ouvrant, *opening*; ouvert, ouverte, *opened*. Avoir ouvert, ayant ouvert.

Ind. Pres.	J'ouvre, Nous ouvrons,	tu ouvres, vous ouvrez,	il <i>ou</i> elle ouvre; ils <i>ou</i> elles ouvrent.
Imp.	J'ouvrerais, Nous ouvririons,	tu ouvrerais, vous ouvririez,	il <i>ou</i> elle ouvrirait; ils <i>ou</i> elles ouvriraient.
Pret. Def.	J'ouvris, Nous ouvrîmes,	tu ouvris, vous ouvrîtes,	il <i>ou</i> elle ouvrit; ils <i>ou</i> elles ouvriraient.
Fut.	J'ouvrirai, Nous ouvrirons,	tu ouvriras, vous ouvrirez,	il <i>ou</i> elle ouvrira; ils <i>ou</i> elles ouvriront.
Cond. Pres.	J'ouvrirais, Nous ouvririons,	tu ouvrirais, vous ouvririez,	il <i>ou</i> elle ouvrirait; ils <i>ou</i> elles ouvriraient.
Imperative. [No 1st person.]	Ouvrons,	ouvre, ouvrez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle ouvre; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles ouvrent.

<i>Sub. Pres.</i>	Que j'ouvre, Que nous ouvrions,	que tu ouvres, que vous ouvriez,	qu'il ou qu'elle ouvre ; qu'ils ou qu'elles ouvrent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Que j'ouvrisse, Que nous ouvrissions,	que tu ouvrisses, que vous ouvrissiez,	qu'il ou qu'elle ouvrît ; qu'ils ou qu'elles ouvrissent.

Conjugate after the same manner the verbs—*couvrir*, to cover ; *découvrir*, to discover, to uncover ; *entr'ouvrir*, to open a little ; *més-offrir*, to underbid ; *offrir*, to offer ; *rouvrir*, to re-open ; *recouvrir*, to cover again : *souffrir*, to suffer ; and any other verb ending in *vrir* and *frir* in the present of the infinitive.

16. *Partir*, to set out, to go away [NEUTER VERB] ;

Partant, setting out ; *parti*, *partie*, set out. Être parti, étant parti.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je pars, Nous partons,	tu pars, vous partez,	il ou elle part ; ils ou elles partent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je partais, Nous partions,	tu partais, vous partiez,	il ou elle partait ; ils ou elles partaient.
<i>Pret. Def.</i>	Je partis, Nous partîmes,	tu partis, vous partîtes,	il ou elle partit ; ils ou elles partirent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je partirai, Nous partirons,	tu partiras, vous partirez,	il ou elle partira ; ils ou elles partiront.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je partirais, Nous partirions,	tu partirais, vous partiriez,	il ou elle partirait ; ils ou elles partiraient.
<i>Imperative.</i> [No 1st person.]	Partons,	pars, partez,	qu'il ou qu'elle parte ; qu'ils ou qu'elles partent.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i>	Que je parte, Que nous partions,	que tu partes, que vous partiez,	qu'il ou qu'elle parte ; qu'ils ou qu'elles partent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Que je partisse, Que nous partissions,	que tu partisses, que vous partissiez,	qu'il ou qu'elle partît ; qu'ils ou qu'elles partissent.

Conjugate after the same manner *repartir*, to set out again ; its compound tenses are also formed with *être*.

Repartir, in the sense of to reply, takes *avoir* in its compound tenses : as,—*il ne lui a reparti que des impertinences*, he only replied to her by impertinent words ; *il m'a reparti avec beaucoup d'esprit*, he replied to me with much ingenuity.

Répartir and *départir*, meaning to distribute, to divide, are regular verbs, and conjugated, in all their simple and compound tenses, like *finir*.

17. *Sentir*, to smell [ACTIVE AND NEUTER VERB] ;

Sentant, smelling ; *senti*, *sentie*, *smelt*. Avoir senti, ayant senti.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je sens, Nous sentons,	tu sens, vous sentez,	il ou elle sent ; ils ou elles sentent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je sentais, Nous sentions,	tu sentais, vous sentiez,	il ou elle sentait ; ils ou elles sentaient.
<i>Pret. Def.</i>	Je sentis, Nous sentîmes,	tu sentis, vous sentîtes,	il ou elle sentit ; ils ou elles sentirent.

172 IRREG. VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Fut. Je sentirai,	tu sentiras,	il ou elle sentira ;
Nous sentirons,	vous sentirez,	ils ou elles sentiront.
Cond. Pres. Je sentirais,	tu sentirais,	il ou elle sentirait ;
Nous sentirions,	vous sentiriez,	ils ou elles sentiraient.
Imperative. [No 1st person.]	sens,	qu'il ou qu'elle sente ;
Sentons,	sentez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles sentent.
Sub. Pres. Que je sente,	que tu sentes,	qu'il ou qu'elle sente ;
Que nous sentions,	que vous sentiez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles sentent.
Imp. Que je sentisse,	que tu sentisses,	qu'il ou qu'elle sentit.
Que nous sentissions,	que vous sentissiez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles sentissent.

Conjugate after the same manner the verbs *consentir*, to consent ; *démentir*, to give one the lie ; *mentir*, to lie ; *pressentir*, to foresee ; *ressentir*, to resent ; *se ressentir*, to feel still ; *se repentir*, to repent ; and in general all verbs ending in *entir* in the present of the infinitive.

158 18. Servir, to serve [ACTIVE VERB] ;

Servant, *serving* ; servi, servie, *served*. Avoir servi, ayant servi.

Ind. Pres. Je sers,	tu sers,	il ou elle sert ;
Nous servons,	vous servez,	ils ou elles servent.
Imp. Je servais,	tu servais,	il ou elle servait ;
Nous servions,	vous serviez,	ils ou elles servaient.
Pret. Def. Je servis,	tu servis,	il ou elle servit ;
Nous servîmes,	vous servîtes,	ils ou elles servirent.
Fut. Je servirai,	tu serviras,	il ou elle servira ;
Nous servirons,	vous servirez,	ils ou elles serviront.
Cond. Pres. Je servirais,	tu servirais,	il ou elle servirait ;
Nous servirions,	vous serviriez,	ils ou elles serviraient.
Imperative. [No 1st person.]	sers,	qu'il ou qu'elle serve ;
Servons,	servez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles servent.
Sub. Pres. Que je serve,	que tu serves,	qu'il ou qu'elle serve ;
Que nous servions,	que vous serviez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles servent.
Imp. Que je servisse,	que tu servisses,	qu'il ou qu'elle servît ;
Que nous servissions,	que vous servissiez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles servissent.

Conjugate after the same manner *desservir*, to clear the table, to injure, &c.

Asservir, to enslave, to subject, is regular, and conjugated like *finir*.

18 19. Sortir, to go out [NEUTER VERB] ;

Sortant, *going out* ; sorti, sortie, *gone out*. Être sorti, étant sorti *.

Ind. Pres. Je sors,	tu sors,	il ou elle sort ;
Nous sortons,	vous sortez,	ils ou elles sortent.

* This verb takes *être* in its compound tenses, when it is used to express that somebody is gone out and not returned : as,—is Mr. Douville at home ? no, he is gone out ; *M. Douville y est-il ? non, il est sorti* ; but, when it is employed to denote that some one has been out and is returned, it then takes *avoir* in its compound tenses : as, Mr. Douville has been out this morning, and is returned, *M. Douville a sorti ce matin, et il est de retour*.

sortir à quelqu'un to be useful to somebody
servir quelqu'un to serve somebody.

<i>Imp.</i> Je sortais, Nous sortions,	tu sortais, vous sortiez,	il <i>ou</i> elle sortait; ils <i>ou</i> elles sortaient.
<i>Pret. Def.</i> Je sortis, Nous sortîmes,	tu sortis, vous sortîtes,	il <i>ou</i> elle sortit; ils <i>ou</i> elles sortirent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je sortirai, Nous sortirons,	tu sortiras, vous sortirez,	il <i>ou</i> elle sortira; ils <i>ou</i> elles sortiront.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i> Je sortirais, Nous sortirions,	tu sortirais, vous sortiriez,	il <i>ou</i> elle sortirait; ils <i>ou</i> elles sortiraient.
<i>Imperative.</i> [No 1st person.] Sortons,	sors, sortez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle sorte; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles sortent.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i> Que je sorte, Que nous sortions,	que tu sortes, que vous sortiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle sorte; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles sortent.
<i>Imp.</i> Que je sortisse, Que nous sortissions,	que tu sortisses, que vous sortissiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle sortît; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles sortissent.

Conjugate after the same manner *ressortir*, to go out again; *dormir*, to sleep; *s'endormir*, to fall asleep; *se rendormir*, to fall asleep again; *endormir*, to lull asleep; &c.

Dormir and *endormir* take *avoir* in their compound tenses.

19 Venir from 109 to 160 1/2

20. *Vêtir*, to clothe [ACTIVE VERB];

Vêtant, clothing; *vêtu*, *vêtue*, clothed. *Avoir vêtu*, *ayant vêtu* *.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i> Je vêts, Nous vêtons,	tu vêts, vous vêtez,	il <i>ou</i> elle vêt; ils <i>ou</i> elles vêtent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je vêtais, Nous vêtions,	tu vêtais, vous vétiez,	il <i>ou</i> elle vêtait; ils <i>ou</i> elles vêtaient.
<i>Pret. Def.</i> Je vêtis, Nous vêtîmes,	tu vêtis, vous vêtîtes,	il <i>ou</i> elle vêtit; ils <i>ou</i> elles vêtirent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je vêtirai, Nous vêtirons,	tu vêtiras, vous vêtirez,	il <i>ou</i> elle vêtira; ils <i>ou</i> elles vêtiront.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i> Je vêtirais, Nous vêtirions,	tu vêtirais, vous vêtiriez,	il <i>ou</i> elle vêtirait; ils <i>ou</i> elles vêtiraient.
<i>Imperative.</i> [No 1st person.] Vêtons,	vêts, vêtez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle vête; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles vêtent.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i> Que je vête, Que nous vêtions,	que tu vêtes, que vous vétiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle vête; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles vêtent.
<i>Imp.</i> Que je vêtisse, Que nous vêtissions,	que tu vêtisses, que vous vêtissiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle vêtît; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles vêtissent.

Conjugate after the same manner *se vêtir*, to dress or clothe one's self; *revêtir*, to clothe; *dévêtir*, to strip, to undress; *se dévêtir*, to divest one's self.

Revêtir and *dévêtir* take *avoir* and sometimes *être* in their compound tenses.

* This verb takes also sometimes *être* in its compound tenses: as—*il est bien vêtu* he is well clothed..

161

Irregular Verbs of the Third Conjugation.

1. Déchoir, *to decay* [NEUTER AND DEFECTIVE VERB];Déchéant, *decaying*. Déchu, déchue, *decayed*.

Ind. Pres.	Je déchois, Nous déchoyons,	tu déchois, vous déchoyez,	il <i>ou</i> elle déchoit; ils <i>ou</i> elles déchoint.
[The imperfect is not used.]			
Pret. Def.	Je déchus, Nous déchûmes,	tu déchus, vous déchûtes,	il <i>ou</i> elle déchut; ils <i>ou</i> elles déchurent.
Fut.	Je décherrai, Nous décherrons,	tu décherras, vous décherrez,	il <i>ou</i> elle décherra; ils <i>ou</i> elles décherront.
Cond. Pres.	Je décherrais, Nous décherrions,	tu décherrais, vous décheriez,	il <i>ou</i> elle décherrait; ils <i>ou</i> elles décherraient.
Imperative. [No 1st person.]	Déchoyons,	déchois, déchoyez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle déchoie; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles déchoint.
Sub. Pres.	Que je déchoie, Que nous déchoyions,	que tu déchoies, que vous déchoyiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle déchoie; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles déchoint.
Imp.	Que je déchusse, Que nous déchussions,	que tu déchusses, que vous déchussiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle déchût; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles déchussent.

The above verb is seldom used, except in the present of the infinitive; as,—*son crédit, sa réputation, commencent à DÉCHOIR*, his credit and reputation begin to decrease; and in its compound tenses, in which it takes *être*, when it expresses the state of the subject; as,—*ils sont déchus de leurs privilèges*, they have lost their privileges; and *avoir*, when it denotes the action of declining: as, *depuis ce moment il a déchu de jour en jour*, from that moment he has declined every day.

2. Mouvoir, *to move* [ACTIVE VERB];Mouvant, *moving*; mu, mue, *moved*. Avoir mu, ayant mu.

Ind. Pres.	Je meus, Nous mouvons,	tu meus, vous mouvez,	il <i>ou</i> elle meut; ils <i>ou</i> elles meuvent.
Imp.	Je mouvais, Nous mouvions,	tu mouvais, vous moviez,	il <i>ou</i> elle mouvait; ils <i>ou</i> elles mouvaient.
Pret. Def.	Je mus, Nous mûmes,	tu mus, vous mûtes,	il <i>ou</i> elle mut; ils <i>ou</i> elles murent.
Fut.	Je mouvrai, Nous mouvrons,	tu mouvras, vous mouvrez,	il <i>ou</i> elle mouvra; ils <i>ou</i> elles mouvront.
Cond. Pres.	Je mouvrais, Nous mouvriions,	tu mouvrais, vous movriez,	il <i>ou</i> elle mouvrait; ils <i>ou</i> elles mouvraient.
Imperative. [No 1st person.]	Mouvons,	meus, mouvez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle meuve; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles meuvent.
Sub. Pres.	Que je meuve, Que nous mouvions,	que tu meuves, que vous moviez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle meuve; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles meuvent.

Imp. Que je ~~musse~~, que tu ~~misses~~, qu'il ~~ou~~ qu'elle ~~mât~~ ;
Que nous ~~missions~~, que vous ~~missiez~~, qu'ils ~~ou~~ qu'elles ~~missent~~.

162

The above verb is seldom used except in the present of the infinitive : as,—*je ne sais pas comment il a pu mouvoir cette pierre*, I do not know how he could move that stone.

The object, in exemplifying all its tenses, has been to give a model for the verbs which are conjugated after the same manner : such as,—*émouvoir*, to move ; *s'émouvoir*, to be concerned : this latter, being a reflective verb, requires *être* in its compound tenses.

Promouvoir, to promote, is only used in the present of the infinitive, and in its compound tenses, which are formed with *avoir* : as,—*on veut le promouvoir*, they wish to promote him ; *on l'a promu*, he has been promoted.

3. Pouvoir, to be able [ACTIVE AND DEFECTIVE VERB] ;

Pouvant, being able ; *pu* [indeclinable], been able. *Avoir pu*, ayant pu.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je puis <i>ou</i> Je peux,	tu peux,	il <i>ou</i> elle peut ;
	Nous pouvons,	vous pouvez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles peuvent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je pouvais,	tu pouvais,	il <i>ou</i> elle pouvait ;
	Nous pouvions,	vous pouviez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles pouvaient.
<i>Pret. Def.</i>	Je pus,	tu pus,	il <i>ou</i> elle put ;
	Nous pûmes,	vous pûtes,	ils <i>ou</i> elles purent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je pourrai *,	tu pourras,	il <i>ou</i> elle pourra ;
	Nous pourrons,	vous pourrez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles pourront.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je pourrais *,	tu pourrais,	il <i>ou</i> elle pourrait ;
	Nous pourrions,	vous pourriez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles pourraient.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i>	Que je puisse,	que tu puisses,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle puisse ;
	Que nous puissions,	que vous puissiez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles puissent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Que je pusse,	que tu pusses,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle pût ;
	Que nous pussions,	que vous pussiez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles pussent.

4. Pourvoir, to provide [ACTIVE AND NEUTER VERB] ;

Pourvoyant, providing ; *pourvu*, *pourvue*, provided. *Avoir pourvu*, ayant pourvu.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je pourvois,	tu pourvois,	il <i>ou</i> elle pourvoit ;
	Nous pourvoyons,	vous pourvoyez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles pourvoient.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je pourvoyais,	tu pourvoyais,	il <i>ou</i> elle pourvoyait ;
	Nous pourvoyions,	vous pourvoyiez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles pourvoaient.
<i>Pret. Def.</i>	Je pourvus,	tu pourvus,	il <i>ou</i> elle pourvut ;
	Nous pourvûmes,	vous pourvûtes,	ils <i>ou</i> elles pourvurent.

* The second *r* only is pronounced in all the persons of the future and conditional of this verb ; but the foregoing syllable becomes long : thus,—*je pourrai*, *tu pourras*, &c. are pronounced—*je poû-rai*, *tu poû-ras*, &c. and *je pourrais*, *tu pourrais*, &c. *je poû-raïs*, *tu poû-raïs*, &c.

176 IRREG. VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Fut. Je pourvoirai, Nous pourvoirons,	tu pourvoiras, vous pourvoirez,	il <i>ou</i> elle pourvoira ; ils <i>ou</i> elles pourvoiront.
Cond. Pres. Je pourvoirais, Nous pourvoirions,	tu pourvoirais, vous pourvoiriez,	il <i>ou</i> elle pourvoirait ; ils <i>ou</i> elles pourvoiraient.
Imperative. [No 1st person.] Pourvoyons,	pourvois, pourvoyez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle pourvoie ; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles pourvoient.
Sub. Pres. Que je pourvoie, Que nous pourvoyions,	que tu pourvoies, que vous pourvoyiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle pourvoie ; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles pourvoient.
Imp. Que je pourvusse, Que nous pourvussions,	que tu pourvusses, que vous pourvussiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle pourvût ; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles pourvussent.

5. Ravoir, *to have or get again* [ACTIVE AND DEFECTIVE VERB] ;

This verb is only used in the present of the infinitive : *as,—il plaide pour ravoir son bien*, he pleads to get his property again.

6. Savoir, *to know* [ACTIVE VERB] ;

Sachant, *knowing* ; su, sue, *known*. Avoir su, ayant su.

Ind. Pres. Je sais, Nous savons,	tu sais, vous savez,	il <i>ou</i> elle sait ; ils <i>ou</i> elles savent.
Imp. Je savais, Nous savions,	tu savais, vous saviez,	il <i>ou</i> elle savait ; ils <i>ou</i> elles savaient.
Pret. Def. Je sus, Nous sûmes,	tu sus, vous sûtes,	il <i>ou</i> elle sut ; ils <i>ou</i> elles surent.
Fut. Je saurai, Nous saurons,	tu sauras, vous saurez,	il <i>ou</i> elle saura ; ils <i>ou</i> elles sauront.
Cond. Pres. Je saurais, Nous saurions,	tu saurais, vous sauriez,	il <i>ou</i> elle saurait ; ils <i>ou</i> elles sauraient.
Imperative. [No 1st person.] Sachons,	sache, sachez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle sache ; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles sachent.
Sub. Pres. Que je sache, Que nous sachions,	que tu saches, que vous sachiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle sache ; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles sachent.
Imp. Que je susse, Que nous sussions,	que tu susses, que vous sussiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle sût ; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles sussent.

Observe.—Although *savoir* and *connaître* be Englished by the same word *to know*, there is a material difference in the use of them in French. *Savoir* is usually employed in speaking of sciences or things that are studied and learnt : *as,—Do you know Latin? Savez-vous le Latin?* I know my lesson, *Je sais ma leçon* ; whereas *connaître* is employed in mentioning things which are the objects of our senses, and properly signifies *to be acquainted with* : *as,—I know that gentleman, that country, &c. Je connais ce monsieur, ce pays, &c.*

7. *S'asseoir, to sit down* [REFLECTIVE VERB];

S'asseyant, sitting; assis, assise, sat. S'être assis, s'étant assis.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je m'assieds, Nous nous asseyons,	tu t'assieds, vous vous asseyez,	il ou elle s'assied; ils ou elles s'asseyent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je m'asseyais, Nous nous asseyions,	tu t'asseyais, vous vous asseyiez,	il ou elle s'asseyait; ils ou elles s'asseyaient.
<i>Pret. Def.</i>	Je m'assis, Nous nous assîmes,	tu t'assis, vous vous assîtes,	il ou elle s'assit; ils ou elles s'assirent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je m'assiérai*, Nous nous assiérons,	tu t'assiéras, vous vous assiérez,	il ou elle s'assiéra; ils ou elles s'assiéront.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je m'assiérais, Nous nous assiérions,	tu t'assiérais, vous vous assiériez,	il ou elle s'assiérait; ils ou elles s'assiéraient.
<i>Imperative.</i>	[No 1st person.] Asseyons-nous,	assieds-toi, asseyez-vous,	qu'il ou qu'elle s'asseye; qu'ils ou qu'elles s'asseyent.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i>	Que je m'asseye, Que nous nous asseyions,	que tu t'asseyes, que vous vous asseyiez,	qu'il ou qu'elle s'asseye; qu'ils ou qu'elles s'asseyent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Que je m'assisse, Que nous nous assissions,	que tu t'assisses, que vous vous assissiez,	qu'il ou qu'elle s'assît; qu'ils ou qu'elles s'assissent.

Conjugate after the same manner *se rasseoir*, to sit down again.

Asseoir, to set, follows also the same conjugation; but, being an active and not a reflective verb, it only takes the personal pronouns—*je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles*; its compound tenses are formed with *avoir*: as,—*J'ai assis l'enfant sur la chaise*, I set the child upon the chair.

Rasseoir, to settle, in speaking of liquids which purify by remaining still, is only used in the present of the infinitive, and sometimes in its compound tenses which are formed with *être*: as,—*laissez rasseoir le café*, let the coffee settle; *il est bien rassis*, it is quite settled.

8. *Surseoir, to reprieve, to supersede* [ACTIVE VERB];

Sursoyant, reprieving; sursis, sursise, reprieved. Avoir sursis, ayant sursis.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je sursois, Nous sursoyons,	tu sursois, vous sursoyez,	il ou elle sursoit; ils ou elles sursoient.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je sursoyais, Nous sursoyions,	tu sursoyais, vous sursoyiez,	il ou elle sursoyait; ils ou elles sursoyaient.
<i>Pret. Def.</i>	Je sursis, Nous sursîmes,	tu sursis, vous sursîtes,	il ou elle sursit; ils ou elles sursirent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je surseoirai, Nous surseoirons,	tu surseoiras, vous surseoierez,	il ou elle surseoira; ils ou elles surseoiront.

* *Je m'asseyerai, tu t'asseyeras, &c.* and *je m'asseyerais, tu t'asseyerais, &c.* may also be used in the future and conditional.

178 IRREG. VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

<i>Cond. Pres.</i> Je surseoirais,	tu surseoirais,	il <i>ou</i> elle surseoirait ;
Nous surseoirions,	vous surseoiriez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles surseoiraient.
<i>Imperative.</i> [No 1st person.]	sursois,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle sursoie ;
Sursoyons,	sursoyez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles sursoient.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i> Que je sursoie,	que tu sursoies,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle sursoie ;
Que nous sursoyions,	que vous sursoyiez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles sursoient.
<i>Imp.</i> Que je sursisse,	que tu sursisses,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle sursît ;
Que nous sursissions,	que vous sursissiez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles sursissent.

The above verb, which is principally used in proceedings at law, is seldom employed but in the present of the infinitive, and in its compound tenses: as,—*surseoir le jugement d'un procès*, to put off the verdict of an action, &c.

65 We also say—*surseoir à l'exécution d'un arrêt*, in which sense *surseoir* is neuter.

When *sursis*, past participle of *surseoir*, is taken adjectively, it is frequently used with the different tenses of *être*: as,—*le jugement est sursis*, the judgment is put off.

9. Valoir, to be worth [ACTIVE AND NEUTER VERB] ;

Valant, *being worth* ; valu [*indeclinable*], *been worth*. Avoir valu, ayant valu.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i> Je vaux,	tu vaux,	il <i>ou</i> elle vaut ;
Nous valons,	vous valez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles valent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je valais,	tu valais,	il <i>ou</i> elle valait ;
Nous valions,	vous valiez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles valaient.
<i>Pret. Def.</i> Je valus,	tu valus,	il <i>ou</i> elle valut ;
Nous valûmes,	vous valûtes,	ils <i>ou</i> elles valurent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je vaudrai,	tu vaudras,	il <i>ou</i> elle vaudra ;
Nous vaudrons,	vous vaudrez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles vaudront.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i> Je vaudrais,	tu vaudrais,	il <i>ou</i> elle vaudrait ;
Nous vaudrions,	vous vaudriez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles vaudraient.
<i>Imperative.</i> [No 1st person.]	vaux,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle vaille ;
Valons,	valez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles vaillent.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i> Que je vaille,	que tu vailles,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle vaille ;
Que nous valions,	que vous valiez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles vaillent.
<i>Imp.</i> Que je valusse,	que tu valusses,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle valût ;
Que nous valussions,	que vous valussiez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles valussent.

Conjugate after the same manner the verbs *prévaloir*, to prevail ; *équivaloir*, to be equivalent ; and *revaloir*, to repay.

The present of the subjunctive of *prévaloir* is *que je prévale*, *que tu prévales*, *qu'il prévale* ; *que nous prévalions*, *que vous prévaliez*, *qu'ils prévalent*. *Prévaloir* generally governs the preposition *sur*: as,—*il ne faut pas que la raison prévale sur l'usage*, reason must not prevail over custom. When *prévaloir* is taken in a reflective sense, it requires *de*: as,—*L'homme ne doit pas se prévaloir beaucoup de sa*

raison qui le trompe si souvent, men must not boast much of their reason which so often deceives them.

Équivaloir, to be equivalent, is seldom used, except sometimes in the third person singular of the present of the indicative: as,—*Ceci équivaut à cela*; and even then it is better to use the adjective *équivalent*, with the different tenses of *être*: as,—*Ceci est équivalent à cela*, this is equivalent to that. It requires the preposition *à*.

Revaloir, to return like for like, is always used with the pronoun *le* or *cela*: as,—*Je le lui ai revalu*, I returned him like for like; *je lui revaudrai cela*, I shall return him like for like.

10. Voir, to see [ACTIVE VERB];

Voyant, *seeing*; vu, vue, *seen*. Avoir vu, ayant vu.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je vois,	tu vois,	il ou elle voit ;	166
	Nous voyons,	vous voyez,	ils ou elles voient.	
<i>Imp.</i>	Je voyais,	tu voyais,	il ou elle voyait ;	
	Nous voyions,	vous voyiez,	ils ou elles voyaient.	
<i>Pret. Def.</i>	Je vis,	tu vis,	il ou elle vit ;	
	Nous vîmes,	vous vîtes,	ils ou elles virent.	
<i>Fut.</i>	Je verrai *,	tu verras,	il ou elle verra ;	
	Nous verrons,	vous verrez,	ils ou elles verront.	
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je verrais *,	tu verrais,	il ou elle verrait ;	
	Nous verrions,	vous verriez,	ils ou elles verraient.	
<i>Imperative.</i> [No 1st person.]		vois,	qu'il ou qu'elle voie ;	
	Voyons,	voyez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles voient.	
<i>Sub. Pres.</i>	Que je voie,	que tu voies,	qu'il ou qu'elle voie ;	
	Que nous voyions,	que vous voyiez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles voient.	
<i>Imp.</i>	Que je visse,	que tu visses,	qu'il ou qu'elle vît ;	
	Que nous vissions,	que vous vissiez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles vissent.	

Conjugate after the same manner the verbs—*revoir*, to see again; *entrevoir*, to have a glimpse of, and *prévoir*, to foresee; but the future of this last is:—*Je prévoirai, tu prévoiras, &c.* and the conditional: *Je prévoirais, tu prévoirais, &c.*

11. Vouloir, to be willing [ACTIVE AND DEFECTIVE VERB];

Voulant, *being willing*; voulu, ue, *wished for or to* &c. Avoir voulu, ayant voulu.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je veux,	tu veux,	il ou elle veut ;
	Nous voulons,	vous voulez,	ils ou elles veulent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je voulais,	tu voulais,	il ou elle voulait ;
	Nous voulions,	vous vouliez,	ils ou elles voulaient.

* The second *r* only is pronounced in all the persons of the future and conditional of this verb and of its derivatives; but the foregoing syllable becomes long: thus,—*je verrai, tu verras, &c.* are pronounced—*je vé-rai, tu vé-ras, &c.* and *je verrais, tu verrais, &c.* *je vé-rai, tu vé-rai, &c.*

180 IRREG. VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

<i>Pret. Def.</i>	Je voulus, Nous voulûmes,	tu voulus, vous voulûtes,	il <i>ou</i> elle voulut ; ils <i>ou</i> elles voulurent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je voudrai, Nous voudrons,	tu voudras, vous voudrez,	il <i>ou</i> elle voudra ; ils <i>ou</i> elles voudront.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je voudrais, Nous voudrions,	tu voudrais, vous voudriez,	il <i>ou</i> elle voudrait ; ils <i>ou</i> elles voudraient.
<i>Imperative.</i>	Veuillez. [<i>This person is the only one used.</i>]		
<i>Sub. Pres.</i>	Que je veuille, Que nous voulions,	que tu veuilles, que vous vouliez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle veuille ; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles veuillent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Que je voulusse, Que nous voulussions,	que tu voulusses, que vous voulussiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle voulût ; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles voulussent.

Irregular Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.

1. Absoudre, to absolve [ACTIVE AND DEFECTIVE VERB] ;

Absolvant, *absolving* ; absous, absoute, *absolved*. Avoir absous, ayant absous.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	J'absous, Nous absolvons,	tu absous, vous absolvez,	il <i>ou</i> elle absout ; ils <i>ou</i> elles absolvent.
16/ <i>Imp.</i>	J'absolvais, Nous absolvions,	tu absolvais, vous absolviez,	il <i>ou</i> elle absolvait ; ils <i>ou</i> elles absorvaient.
[<i>This verb has no preterit definite.</i>]			
<i>Fut.</i>	J'absoudrai, Nous absoudrons,	tu absoudras, vous absoudrez,	il <i>ou</i> elle absoudra ; ils <i>ou</i> elles absoudront.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	J'absoudrais, Nous absoudrions,	tu absoudrais, vous absoudriez,	il <i>ou</i> elle absoudrait ; ils <i>ou</i> elles absoudraient.
<i>Imperative.</i>	[<i>No 1st person.</i>] Absolvons,	absous, absolvez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle absolve ; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles absolvent.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i>	Que j'absolve, Que nous absolvions,	que tu absolves, que vous absolviez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle absolve ; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles absolvent.
[<i>There is no imperfect of the subjunctive.</i>]			

Conjugate after the same manner *dissoudre*, to dissolve.

2. Faire accroire, to make one believe. En faire accroire, to impose upon one.

Accroire is only used in the present of the infinitive with the verb *faire*, which serves as an auxiliary to it: as,—*elle lui fait accroire tout ce qu'elle veut*, she makes him believe every thing she likes ; *on ne peut pas lui en faire accroire*, he is not a man to be imposed upon.

3. Battre, to beat [ACTIVE VERB] ;

Battant, *beating* ; battu, battue, *beaten*. Avoir battu, ayant battu.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je bats Nous battons,	tu bats, vous battez,	il <i>ou</i> elle bat ; ils <i>ou</i> elles battent.
-------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------	---

Veuillez is used in the sense of *deign*,
be so good as.... *be so kind as*....;
 as *an abridged expression for* *ayez la*
bonté de vouloir, & faire, moi le plai-
sir de vouloir. *Be so good as to lend*
me your book *veuillez me prêter*
 votre livre. N. 160

	Battons,	battez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles battent.
Sub. Pres.	Que je batte,	que tu battes,	qu'il ou qu'elle batte;
	Que nous battions,	que vous battiez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles battent.
Imp.	Que je battisse,	que tu battisses,	qu'il ou qu'elle battît;
	Que nous battissions,	que vous battissiez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles battissent.

Conjugate after the same manner *abattre*, to pull down; *combattre*, to fight; *débattre*, to debate; *rabattre*, to pull down again, to abate; *rebattre*, to beat again; *s'ébattre*, to make or be merry; *se débattre*, to struggle, &c.

4. Boire, to drink [ACTIVE VERB];

Buvant, drinking; bu, bue, drunk. Avoir bu, ayant bu.

Ind. Pres.	Je bois,	tu bois,	il ou elle boit;
	Nous buvons,	vous buvez,	ils ou elles boivent.
Imp.	Je buvais,	tu buvais,	il ou elle buvait;
	Nous buvions,	vous buviez,	ils ou elles buvaient.
Pret. Def.	Je bus,	tu bus,	il ou elle but;
	Nous bûmes,	vous bûtes,	ils ou elles burent.
Fut.	Je boirai,	tu boiras,	il ou elle boira;
	Nous boirons,	vous boirez,	ils ou elles boiront.
Cond. Pres.	Je boirais,	tu boirais,	il ou elle boirait;
	Nous boirions,	vous boiriez,	ils ou elles boiraient.
Imperative. [No 1st person.]		bois,	qu'il ou qu'elle boive;
	Buvons,	buvez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles boivent.
Sub. Pres.	Que je boive,	que tu boives,	qu'il ou qu'elle boive;
	Que nous buvions,	que vous buviez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles boivent.
Imp.	Que je busse,	que tu busses,	qu'il ou qu'elle bût;
	Que nous bussions,	que vous bussiez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles bussent.

Conjugate after the same manner *reboire*, to drink again.

5. Clorre, to close [ACTIVE AND DEFECTIVE VERB].

This verb is only used in the three persons singular of the present of the indicative: *as*,—*je clos, tu clos, il ou elle clôt*; in the future, *je clorrai*; in the conditional, *je clorrais*; in the imperative, *clos*; in the three persons singular of the present of the subjunctive:—*que je close, que tu closes, qu'il ou qu'elle close*; in the present of the infinitive,

182 IRREG. VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

clorre ; in the past participle, *clos*, *close* ; and in its compound tenses, which are formed with *avoir*.

The present of the infinitive is frequently used with the different tenses of the verb *faire*.

Enclorre, to enclose, is conjugated after the same manner.

Note.—Some write *clorre* and *enclorre* with one *r* only in the present of the infinitive, and in the future and conditional : thus,—*clore*, *enclore* ; *je clorai*, *j'enclorai*, &c. and *je clorais*, *j'enclorais*, &c.

6. Conclure, to conclude [ACTIVE VERB] ;

Concluant, *concluding* ; conclü, conclue, *concluded*. Avoir conclü, ayant conclü.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i> Je conclus,	tu conclus,	il <i>ou</i> elle conclut ;
Nous concluons,	vous concluez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles concluent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je concluais,	tu concluais,	il <i>ou</i> elle concluait ;
Nous concluions,	vous concluiez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles concluaient.
<i>Pret. Def.</i> Je conclus,	tu conclus,	il <i>ou</i> elle conclut ;
Nous conclûmes,	vous conclûtes,	ils <i>ou</i> elles conclurent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je conclurai,	tu concluras,	il <i>ou</i> elle conclura ;
Nous conclurons,	vous conclurez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles concluront.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i> Je conclurais,	tu conclurais,	il <i>ou</i> elle conclurait ;
Nous conclurions,	vous concluriez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles concluraient.
<i>Imperative.</i> [No 1st person.]	conclus,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle conclue ;
Concluons,	concluez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles concluent.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i> Que je conclue,	que tu conclues,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle conclue ;
Que nous concluions,	que vous concluiez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles concluent.
<i>Imp.</i> Que je conclusse,	que tu conclusses,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle conclût ;
Que nous conclus-	que vous conclussiez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles conclussent.
sions,		

Conjugate after the same manner *exclure*, to exclude.

169 A diæresis (' ') is required, in these verbs, over the *i* of the terminations *ions*, *iez*, in the two first persons plural of the imperfect of the indicative and of the present of the subjunctive, to denote that the *i* is to be pronounced distinct from the *u* which precedes it : as,—*nous conclu-ions*, *vous conclu-iez* ; *nous exclu-ions*, *vous exclu-iez* ; *que nous conclu-ions*, *que vous conclu-iez* ; *que nous exclu-ions*, *que vous exclu-iez*.

7. Conduire, to conduct [ACTIVE VERB] ;

Conduisant, *conducting* ; conduït, conduite, *conducted*. Avoir conduït, ayant conduït.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i> Je conduis,	tu conduis,	il <i>ou</i> elle conduit ;
Nous conduisons,	vous conduisez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles conduisent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je conduisais,	tu conduisais,	il <i>ou</i> elle conduisait ;
Nous conduisions,	vous conduisiez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles conduisaient.
<i>Pret. Def.</i> Je conduisis,	tu conduisis,	il <i>ou</i> elle conduisit ;
Nous conduisîmes,	vous conduisîtes,	ils <i>ou</i> elles conduisirent.

IRREG. VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION. 183

<i>Fut.</i> Je conduirai, Nous conduirons,	tu conduiras, vous conduirez,	il <i>ou</i> elle conduira; ils <i>ou</i> elles conduiront.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i> Je conduirais, Nous conduirions,	tu conduirais, vous conduiriez,	il <i>ou</i> elle conduirait; ils <i>ou</i> elles conduiraient.
<i>Imperative.</i> [No 1st person.] Conduisons,	conduis, conduisez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle conduise; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles conduisent.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i> Que je conduise, Que nous condui- sions,	que tu conduises, que vous conduisiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle conduise; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles conduisent.
<i>Imp.</i> Que je conduisisse, Que nous conduisis- sions,	que tu conduisisses, que vous conduisissiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle conduisît; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles conduisissent.

Conjugate after the same manner all verbs ending in the present of the infinitive mood in *uire*: as,—*déduire*, to deduct; *instruire*, to instruct; *réduire*, to reduce; *introduire*, to introduce, &c.

Nuire, to hurt, makes *nui** in its past participle; in its other tenses it is conjugated like *conduire*.

Luire, to shine, and *reluire*, to glitter, make also *lui** and *relui** in their past participles; they have no preterit definite in the indicative, and no imperfect of the subjunctive; but they follow *conduire* in their other tenses.

8. Confire, to pickle, to preserve [ACTIVE VERB];

Confisant, pickling; confit, confite, pickled. Avoir confit, ayant confit.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i> Je confis, Nous confisons,	tu confis, vous confisez,	il <i>ou</i> elle confit; ils <i>ou</i> elles confisent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je confisais, Nous confisions,	tu confisais, vous confissiez,	il <i>ou</i> elle confisait; ils <i>ou</i> elles confisaient.
<i>Pret. Def.</i> Je confis, Nous confîmes,	tu confis, vous confîtes,	il <i>ou</i> elle confit; ils <i>ou</i> elles confirent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je confirai, Nous confirons,	tu confiras, vous confirez,	il <i>ou</i> elle confira; ils <i>ou</i> elles confiront.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i> Je confirais, Nous confirions,	tu confirais, vous confiriez,	il <i>ou</i> elle confirait; ils <i>ou</i> elles confiraient.
<i>Imperative.</i> [No 1st person.] Confisons,	confis, confisez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle confise; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles confisent.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i> Que j'é confise, Que nous confisions,	que tu confises, que vous confissiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle confise; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles confisent.
<i>Imp.</i> Que je confisse, Que nous confissions,	que tu confisses, que vous confissiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle confit; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles confissent.

Conjugate after the same manner *circoncire* †, to circumcise; and *suffire*, to suffice; with this difference that the past participle of *circoncire* is *circoncis*, *circoncise*, and that of *suffire*;—*suffi*, without feminine.

* The past participles, *nui*, *lui*, and *relui*, have no feminine.

† The French Academy, Restaut, Wailly, Féraud, and Demandre think that *circoncire* has no present participle and no imperfect either in the indicative or subjunctive; but others are of a contrary opinion.

184 IRREG. VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

9. Connaître, to know [ACTIVE VERB];

Connaissant, *knowing*; connu, connue, *known*. Avoir connu, ayant connu.

Ind. Pres.	Je connais, Nous connaissons,	tu connais, vous connaissez,	il ou elle connaît; ils ou elles connaissent.
Imp.	Je connaissais, Nous connaissions,	tu connaissais, vous connaissiez,	il ou elle connaissait; ils ou elles connaissaient.
Pret. Def.	Je connus, Nous connûmes,	tu connus, vous connûtes,	il ou elle connut; ils ou elles connurent.
Fut.	Je connaîtrai, Nous connaîtrons,	tu connaîtras, vous connaîtrez,	il ou elle connaîtra; ils ou elles connaîtront.
Cond. Pres.	Je connaîtrais, Nous connaîtrions,	tu connaîtrais, vous connaîtriez,	il ou elle connaîtrait; ils ou elles connaîtraient.
Imperative. [No 1st person.]	Connaissions, Connaissiez,	connais, connaissez,	qu'il ou qu'elle connaisse; qu'ils ou qu'elles connaissent.
Sub. Pres.	Que je connaisse, Que nous connais- sions,	que tu connaisses, que vous connaissiez,	qu'il ou qu'elle connaisse; qu'ils ou qu'elles connaissent.
Imp.	Que je connusse, Que nous connus- sions,	que tu connusses, que vous connussiez,	qu'il ou qu'elle connût; qu'ils ou qu'elles connussent.

Conjugate after the same manner *reconnaître*, to know again; *méconnaître*, not to know; *se méconnaître*, to forget one's self; *apparaître*, to appear; *comparaître*, to make one's appearance; *disparaître*, to disappear; *paraître*, to appear; *reparaître*, to appear again; and, in general, all those ending in *aître* or *ôître* in the present of the infinitive: except *croître*, to grow; *naître*, to be born; and *paître*, to feed or graze, which are exemplified at full length hereafter, on account of not being exactly similar either in the terminations of all their tenses and persons or in the accentuation.

10. Coudre, to sew [ACTIVE VERB];

Cousant, *sewing*; cousu, cousue, *sewed*. Avoir cousu, ayant cousu.

Ind. Pres.	Je couds, Nous cousons,	tu couds, vous cousez,	il ou elle coud; ils ou elles cousent.
Imp.	Je cousais, Nous cousions,	tu cousais, vous cousiez,	il ou elle cousait; ils ou elles cousaient.
Pret. Def.	Je cousis, Nous cousîmes,	tu cousis, vous cousîtes,	il ou elle cousit; ils ou elles cousirent.
Fut.	Je coudrai, Nous coudrons,	tu coudras, vous coudrez,	il ou elle coudra; ils ou elles coudront.
Cond. Pres.	Je coudrais, Nous coudrions,	tu coudrais, vous coudriez,	il ou elle coudrait; ils ou elles coudraient.
Imperative. [No 1st person.]	Cousons, Cousiez,	couds, cousez,	qu'il ou qu'elle couse; qu'ils ou qu'elles cousent.

<i>Sub. Pres.</i>	Que je couse,	que tu couses,	qu'il ou qu'elle couse ;
	Que nous cousions,	que vous cousiez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles cousent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Que je cousisse,	que tu cousisses,	qu'il ou qu'elle cousît ;
	Que nous cousissions,	que vous cousissiez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles cousissent.

Conjugate after the same manner *recoudre*, to sew again ; and *découdre*, to unsew.

11. Craindre, to fear [ACTIVE VERB] ;

Craignant, *fearing* ; craint, crainte, *feared*. Avoir craint, ayant craint.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je crains,	tu crains,	il ou elle craint ;
	Nous craignons,	vous craignez,	ils ou elles craignent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je craignais,	tu craignais,	il ou elle craignait ;
	Nous craignions,	vous craigniez,	ils ou elles craignaient.
<i>Pret. Def.</i>	Je craignis,	tu craignis,	il ou elle craignit ;
	Nous craignîmes,	vous craignîtes,	ils ou elles craignirent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Je craindrai,	tu craindras,	il ou elle craindra ;
	Nous craindrons,	vous craindrez,	ils ou elles craindront.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je craindrais,	tu craindrais,	il ou elle craindrait ;
	Nous craindrions,	vous craindriez,	ils ou elles craindraient.
<i>Imperative.</i>	[No 1st person.]	crains,	qu'il ou qu'elle craigne ;
	Craignons,	craignez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles craignent.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i>	Que je craigne,	que tu craignes,	qu'il ou qu'elle craigne ;
	Que nous craignions,	que vous craigniez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles craignent.
<i>Imp.</i>	Que je craignisse,	que tu craignisses,	qu'il ou qu'elle craignît ;
	Que nous craignis-	que vous craignissiez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles craignissent.
	sions,		

Conjugate after the same manner all verbs ending in *aindre*, *eindre*, and *oindre*, in the present of the infinitive : as,—*plaindre*, to pity ; *peindre*, to paint ; *joindre*, to join ; *atteindre*, to reach ; *astreindre*, to bind, to subject ; *ceindre*, to gird ; *poindre*, to peep, to dawn, to shoot forth, &c.

Poindre is only used in the present of the infinitive and in the future : as,—*lorsque les herbes commencent à poindre au printemps*, when the grass begins to peep in the spring ; *je partirai dès que le jour poindra*, I shall set out at break of day.

12. Croire, to believe [ACTIVE VERB] ;

Croyant, *believing* ; cru, crue, *believed*. Avoir cru, ayant cru.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je crois,	tu crois,	il ou elle croit ;
	Nous croyons,	vous croyez,	ils ou elles croient.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je croyais,	tu croyais,	il ou elle croyait ;
	Nous croyions,	vous croyiez,	ils ou elles croyaient.
<i>Pret. Def.</i>	Je crus,	tu crue,	il ou elle crut ;
	Nous crûmes.	vous crûtes,	ils ou elles crurent.

186 IRREG. VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

<i>Fut.</i> Je croirai, Nous croirons,	tu croiras, vous croirez,	il <i>ou</i> elle croira ; ils <i>ou</i> elles croiront.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i> Je croirais, Nous croirions,	tu croirais, vous croiriez,	il <i>ou</i> elle croirait ; ils <i>ou</i> elles croiraient.
<i>Imperative.</i> [No 1st person.] Croyons,	crois, croyez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle croie ; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles croient.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i> Que je croie, Que nous croyions,	que tu croies, que vous croyiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle croie ; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles croient.
<i>Imp.</i> Que je crusse, Que nous crussions,	que tu crusses, que vous crussiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle crût ; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles crussent.

13. Croître, to grow [NEUTER VERB] ;

Croissant, *growing* ; crû, crûe, *grown*. Avoir crû, ayant crû.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i> Je crois, Nous croissons,	tu crois, vous croissez,	il <i>ou</i> elle croît ; ils <i>ou</i> elles croissent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je croissais, Nous croissions,	tu croissais, vous croissiez,	il <i>ou</i> elle croissait ; ils <i>ou</i> elles croissaient.
<i>Pret. Def.</i> Je crûs, Nous crûmes,	tu crûs, vous crûtes,	il <i>ou</i> elle crût ; ils <i>ou</i> elles crurent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je croîtrai, Nous croîtrons,	tu croîtras, vous croîtrez,	il <i>ou</i> elle croîtra ; ils <i>ou</i> elles croîtront.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i> Je croîtrais, Nous croîtrions,	tu croîtrais, vous croîtriez,	il <i>ou</i> elle croîtrait ; ils <i>ou</i> elles croîtraient.
<i>Imperative.</i> [No 1st person.] Croissons,	crois, croissez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle croisse ; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles croissent.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i> Que je croisse, Que nous croissions,	que tu croisses, que vous croissiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle croisse ; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles croissent.
<i>Imp.</i> Que je crûsse, Que nous crûssions,	que tu crûsses, que vous crûssiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle crût ; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles crûssent.

Conjugate after the same manner *accroître* *, to increase ; and *décroître*, to decrease.

Croître takes *avoir* in its compound tenses, when it is used to express the action of growing : as,—*il a bien crû cette année*, he has grown very much this year ; but it takes *être*, when it denotes the state in which one is : as,—*il n'est point crû du tout*, he is not grown at all.

14. Dire, to say, to tell [ACTIVE VERB] ;

Disant, *saying* ; dit, dite, *said*. Avoir dit, ayant dit.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i> Je dis, Nous disons,	tu dis, vous dites,	il <i>ou</i> elle dit ; ils <i>ou</i> elles disent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je disais, Nous disions,	tu disais, vous disiez,	il <i>ou</i> elle disait ; ils <i>ou</i> elles disaient.

* *Accru*, past participle of *accroître*, is written without accent.

IRREG. VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION. 187

Pret. Def. Je dis, Nous dîmes,	tu dis, vous dîtes,	il <i>ou</i> elle dit; ils <i>ou</i> elles dirent.
Fut. Je dirai, Nous dirons,	tu diras, vous direz,	il <i>ou</i> elle dira; ils <i>ou</i> elles diront.
Cond. Pres. Je dirais, Nous dirions,	tu dirais, vous diriez,	il <i>ou</i> elle dirait; ils <i>ou</i> elles diraient.
Imperative. [No 1st person.] Disons,	dis, dites,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle dise; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles disent.
Sub. Pres. Que je dise, Que nous disions,	que tu dises, que vous disiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle dise; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles disent.
Imp. Que je disse, Que nous dissions,	que tu disses, que vous dissiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle dît; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles dissent.

Conjugate after the same manner *redire*, to say again.

The following verbs *contredire*, to contradict; *dédire*, to unsay, to disown; *interdire*, to interdict; *médire*, to slander; *maudire*, to curse; *prédire*, to foretell; *se dédire*, to recant, to go from one's word, are also conjugated after the same manner, except in the second person plural of the present of the indicative, in which they take these terminations:—*vous contredisez*; *vous dédisez*; *vous interdisez*; *vous médisez*; *vous maudissez*; *vous prédissez*; *vous vous dédisez*; and in the second person plural of the imperative, in which they are also terminated:—*contredisez*; *dédisez*; *interdisez*; *médisez*; *maudissez*; *prédissez*; *dédisez-vous*; and not—*contredites*, *dédites*, *médites*, &c.

Maudire takes two s's in the present participle *maudissant*, cursing; in the three persons plural of the present of the indicative:—*nous maudissons*, we curse; *vous maudissez*, you curse; *ils ou elles maudissent*, they curse; in all the imperfect—*je maudissais*, *tu maudissais*, *il ou elle maudissait*; *nous maudissions*, *vous maudissiez*, *ils ou elles maudissaient*: in the three persons plural of the present of the subjunctive—*que nous maudissions*, *que vous maudissiez*, *qu'ils ou qu'elles maudissent*: and in all the persons of the imperative, except in the second singular: as,—*maudis*, *qu'il ou qu'elle maudisse*; *maudissons*, *maudissez*, *qu'ils ou qu'elles maudissent*. In its other persons and tenses it is conjugated like *dire*.

15. Écrire, to write [ACTIVE VERB];

Écrivant, *writing*; écrit, écrite, *written*. Avoir écrit, ayant écrit.

Ind. Pres. J'écris, Nous écrivons,	tu écris, vous écrivez,	il <i>ou</i> elle écrit; ils <i>ou</i> elles écrivent.
Imp. J'écrivais, Nous écrivions,	tu écrivais, vous écriviez,	il <i>ou</i> elle écrivait; ils <i>ou</i> elles écrivaient.
Pret. Def. J'écrivis, Nous écrivîmes,	tu écrivis, vous écrivîtes,	il <i>ou</i> elle écrivit; ils <i>ou</i> elles écrivirent.
Fut. J'écrirai, Nous écrirons,	tu écriras, vous écrirez,	il <i>ou</i> elle écrira; ils <i>ou</i> elles écriront.

188 IRREG. VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

<i>Cond. Pres.</i> J'écrirais,	tu écrirais,	il <i>ou</i> elle écrirait ;
Nous écririons,	vous écririez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles écriraient.
<i>Imperative.</i> [No 1st person.]	écris,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle écrive ;
Écrivons,	écrivez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles écrivent.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i> Que j'écrive,	que tu écrives,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle écrive ;
Que nous écrivions,	que vous écriviez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles écrivent.
<i>Imp.</i> Que j'écrivisse,	que tu écrivisses,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle écrivît ;
Que nous écrivis-	que vous écrivis-	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles écrivissent.
sions,	siez,	

Conjugate after the same manner the verbs *circonscrire*, to circumscribe ; *décrire*, to describe ; *inscrire*, to inscribe ; *prescrire*, to prescribe ; *proscrire*, to proscribe ; *récrire*, to write again ; *souscrire*, to subscribe ; *transcrire*, to transcribe, &c.

16. Faire, to do, to make [ACTIVE VERB] ;

✕ *Faisant, doing ; fait, faite, done. Avoir fait, ayant fait.*

<i>Ind. Pres.</i> Je fais,	tu fais,	il <i>ou</i> elle fait ;
Nous faisons,	vous faites,	ils <i>ou</i> elles font.
<i>Imp.</i> Je faisais,	tu faisais,	il <i>ou</i> elle faisait ;
Nous faisions,	vous faisiez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles faisaient.
<i>Pret. Def.</i> Je fis,	tu fis,	il <i>ou</i> elle fit ;
Nous fîmes,	vous fîtes,	ils <i>ou</i> elles firent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je ferai,	tu feras,	il <i>ou</i> elle fera ;
Nous ferons,	vous ferez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles feront.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i> Je ferais,	tu ferais,	il <i>ou</i> elle ferait ;
Nous ferions,	vous feriez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles feraient.
<i>Imperative.</i> [No 1st person.]	fais,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle fasse ;
Faisons,	faites,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles fassent.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i> Que je fasse,	que tu fasses,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle fasse ;
Que nous fassions,	que vous fassiez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles fassent.
<i>Imp.</i> Que je fisse,	que tu fisses,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle fît ;
Que nous fissions,	que vous fissiez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles fissent.

Conjugate after the same manner *contrefaire*, to counterfeit, to mimic ; *défaire*, to undo ; *redéfaire*, to undo again ; *refaire*, to do again ; *satisfaire*, to satisfy ; *surfaire*, to ask too much.

Forfaire, to forfeit, to act contrary to one's duty, is a neuter and defective verb, only used in the present of the infinitive, and in its compound tenses, which are formed with *avoir*, and the past participle *forfait*. It is principally employed at the bar, in speaking of the partiality of a judge : as,—*si un juge vient à forfaire*, if a judge acts contrary to his duty. We also say, in a familiar style, when speaking of a woman who has suffered herself to be seduced :—*elle a forfait à son honneur* ; she has forfeited her honour.

pronounced fesaiuh - e mute S.S. 150.

17. Frire, to fry [ACTIVE AND DEFECTIVE VERB].

This verb is only used in the three persons singular of the present of the indicative—*je fris, tu fris, il ou elle frit*; in the future: *je frirai, tu friras, il ou elle frira*; *nous frirons, vous frirez, ils ou elles friront*; in the conditional: *je frirais, tu frirais, il ou elle frirait*; *nous fririons, vous fririez, ils ou elles friraient*; in the second person singular of the imperative: *fris*; in the present of the infinitive: *frire*; and in its compound tenses, which are formed with *avoir* and the past participle—*frit, frite*.

To supply the persons and tenses which are wanting in this verb, the different tenses of the verb *faire* must be used with the infinitive *frire*: as,—*nous faisons frire, vous faites frire, ils ou elles font frire*; *je faisais frire, tu faisais frire, il ou elle faisait frire, &c.*

18. Lire, to read [ACTIVE VERB];

Lisant, reading; lu, lue, read. Avoir lu, ayant lu.

Ind. Pres.	Je lis,	tu lis,	il ou elle lit;
	Nous lisons,	vous lisez,	ils ou elles lisent.
Imp.	Je lisais,	tu lisais,	il ou elle lisait;
	Nous lisions,	vous lisiez,	ils ou elles lisaient.
Pret. Def.	Je lus,	tu lus,	il ou elle lut;
	Nous lûmes,	vous lûtes,	ils ou elles lurent.
Fut.	Je lirai,	tu liras,	il ou elle lira;
	Nous lirons,	vous lirez,	ils ou elles liront.
Cond. Pres.	Je lirais,	tu lirais,	il ou elle lirait;
	Nous lirions,	vous liriez,	ils ou elles liraient.
Imperative. [No 1st person.]		lis,	qu'il ou qu'elle lise;
	Lisons,	lisez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles lisent.
Sub. Pres.	Que je lise,	que tu lises,	qu'il ou qu'elle lise;
	Que nous lisions,	que vous lisiez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles lisent.
Imp.	Que je lusse,	que tu lusses,	qu'il ou qu'elle lût;
	Que nous lussions,	que vous lussiez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles lussent.

Conjugate after the same manner *relire*, to read again, *élire*, to elect, and *réélire*, to elect again.

19. Mettre, to put [ACTIVE VERB];

Mettant, putting; mis, mise, put. Avoir mis, ayant mis.

Ind. Pres.	Je mets,	tu mets,	il ou elle met;
	Nous mettons,	vous mettez,	ils ou elles mettent.
Imp.	Je mettais,	tu mettais,	il ou elle mettait;
	Nous mettions,	vous mettiez,	ils ou elles mettaient.
Pret. Def.	Je mis,	tu mis,	il ou elle mit;
	Nous mîmes,	vous mîtes,	ils ou elles mirent.
Fut.	Je mettrai,	tu mettras,	il ou elle mettra;
	Nous mettrons,	vous mettrez,	ils ou elles mettront.

190 IRREG. VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Cond. Pres. Je mettrais,	tu mettrais,	il <i>ou</i> elle mettrait;
Nous mettrions,	vous mettriez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles mettraient.
Imperative. [No 1st person.]	mets,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle mette;
Mettons,	mettez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles mettent.
Sub. Pres. Que je mette,	que tu mettes,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle mette;
Que nous mettions,	que vous mettiez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles mettent.
Imp. Que je misse,	que tu misses,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle mît;
Que nous missions,	que vous missiez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles missent.

Conjugate after the same manner every verb compounded of *mettre*: such as,—*admettre*, to admit; *commettre*, to commit; *compromettre*, to compromise; *démettre*, to disjoin, to put out; *omettre*, to omit; *permettre*, to permit; *promettre*, to promise; *remettre*, to put or set again, to replace; *soumettre*, to submit; *transmettre*, to transmit; *se démettre*, to resign; *s'entremettre*, to interpose, &c.

20. Moudre, to grind [ACTIVE VERB];

Moulant, *grinding*; moulu, moulue, *ground*. Avoir moulu, ayant moulu.

Ind. Pres. Je mouds,	tu mouds,	il <i>ou</i> elle moud;
Nous moulons,	vous moulez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles moulent.
Imp. Je moulais,	tu moulais,	il <i>ou</i> elle moulait;
Nous moulions,	vous mouliez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles moulaient.
Pret. Def. Je moulus,	tu moulus,	il <i>ou</i> elle moulut;
Nous moulûmes,	vous moulûtes,	ils <i>ou</i> elles moulurent.
Fut. Je moudrai,	tu moudras,	il <i>ou</i> elle moudra;
Nous moudrons,	vous moudrez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles moudront.
Cond. Pres. Je moudrais,	tu moudrais,	il <i>ou</i> elle moudrait;
Nous moudrions,	vous moudriez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles moudraient.
Imperative. [No 1st person.]	mouds,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle moule;
Moulons,	moulez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles moulent.
Sub. Pres. Que je moule,	que tu moules,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle moule;
Que nous moulions,	que vous mouliez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles moulent.
Imp. Que je moulusse,	que tu moulusses,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle moulût;
Que nous moulus-	que vous moulus-	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles moulus-
sions,	siez,	sent.

Conjugate after the same manner *remoudre*, to grind again.

Émoudre, to grind (knives or razors), is also conjugated after the same manner, as likewise *réemoudre*, to grind again, in the same sense.

Emoudre is frequently used in the present of the infinitive with the different tenses of the verb *faire*: as,—*faire émoudre des couteaux, des ciseaux*, &c. to have knives or scissors ground.

21. Naître, to be born [NEUTER VERB];

Naissant, *being born*; né, née, *born*. Être né, étant né.

Ind. Pres. Je nais,	tu nais,	il <i>ou</i> elle naît;
Nous naissons,	vous naissez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles naissent.

<i>Imp.</i> Je naissais, Nous naissions,	tu naissais, vous naissiez,	il <i>ou</i> elle naissait; ils <i>ou</i> elles naissaient.
<i>Pret. Def.</i> Je naquis, Nous naquîmes,	tu naquis, vous naquîtes,	il <i>ou</i> elle naquit; ils <i>ou</i> elles naquirent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je naîtrai, Nous naîtrons,	tu naîtras, vous naîtrez,	il <i>ou</i> elle naîtra; ils <i>ou</i> elles naîtront.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i> Je naîtrais, Nous naîtrions,	tu naîtrais, vous naîtriez,	il <i>ou</i> elle naîtrait; ils <i>ou</i> elles naîtraient.
<i>Imperative.</i> [No 1st person.] Naissions,	naïs, naissez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle naisse; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles naissent.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i> Que je naisse, Que nous naissions,	que tu naisses, que vous naissiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle naisse; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles naissent.
<i>Imp.</i> Que je naquisse, Que nous naquis- sions,	que tu naquisses, que vous naquis- siez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle naquît; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles naquissent.

Renaître, to be born again, to revive, is conjugated after the same manner.

22. *Pâître*, to graze [ACTIVE AND NEUTER DEFECTIVE VERB];

Paissant, grazing; pu, pue, grazed. Avoir pu, ayant pu.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i> Je pais, Nous paissions,	tu pais, vous paissez,	il <i>ou</i> elle pait; ils <i>ou</i> elles paissent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je paissais, Nous paissions,	tu paissais, vous paissiez,	il <i>ou</i> elle paissait; ils <i>ou</i> elles paissaient.
[This verb has no preterit definite; the preterit definite of the verb <i>faire</i> is used instead with the infinitive <i>pâître</i> : thus,— <i>je fis pâître, tu fis pâître, il ou elle fit pâître, &c.</i>]		
<i>Fut.</i> Je paîtrai, Nous paîtrons,	tu paîtras, vous paîtrez,	il <i>ou</i> elle paîtra; ils <i>ou</i> elles paîtront.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i> Je paîtrais, Nous paîtrions,	tu paîtrais, vous paîtriez,	il <i>ou</i> elle paîtrait; ils <i>ou</i> elles paîtraient.
<i>Imperative.</i> [No 1st person.] Paissions,	pais, paissez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle paise; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles paissent.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i> Que je paise, Que nous paissions,	que tu paisses, que vous paissiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle paise; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles paissent.

[This verb has no imperfect of the subjunctive; the imperfect of the subjunctive of *faire* is used instead with the infinitive *pâître*: as,—*que je fisse pâître, que tu fisses pâître, &c.*]

Repâître, to feed, and *se repâître*, to feed one's self, are conjugated after the same manner; but they have a preterit definite in the indicative, and an imperfect of the subjunctive: as,—*je repus, tu repus, &c. je me repus, tu te repus, &c. que je repusse, que tu repusses, &c. que je me repusse, que tu te repusses, qu'il ou qu'elle se repût; que nous nous repussions, que vous vous repussiez, qu'ils ou qu'elles se repussent.*

Repâître, used in the sense of eating, when speaking of men or horses

192 IRREG. VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

on a journey, is a neuter verb: as,—*il a fait dix milles sans repaître*, he has travelled ten miles without baiting; but, when it is employed in a figurative sense, it is an active verb: as,—*elle repaît son esprit de vaines chimères*, she entertains her mind with vain chimeras. In this sense, it is also used in a reflective manner: as,—

Je ne me repais point de pareilles chimères.—RAC.

The past participle *pu* is very little used, except with *repu*, past participle of *repaître*: as,—*il a pu et repu*. A circumflex accent is placed over the *i* before the *t*, in the above verbs, in the present of the infinitive and in the third person singular of the present of the indicative, and in all the future and conditional.

23. Plaire, to please [NEUTER VERB];

Plaisant, *pleasing*; plu [indeclinable], *pleased*. Avoir plu, ayant plu.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i> Je plais,	tu plais,	il <i>ou</i> elle plaît;
Nous plaisons,	vous plaisez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles plaisent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je plaisais,	tu plaisais,	il <i>ou</i> elle plaisait;
Nous plaisions,	vous plaisiez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles plaisaient.
<i>Pret. Def.</i> Je plus,	tu plus,	il <i>ou</i> elle plut;
Nous plûmes,	vous plûtes,	ils <i>ou</i> elles plurent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je plairai,	tu plairas,	il <i>ou</i> elle plaira;
Nous plairons,	vous plairez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles plairont.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i> Je plairais,	tu plairais,	il <i>ou</i> elle plairait;
Nous plairions,	vous plairiez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles plairaient.
<i>Imperative.</i> [No 1st person.]	plais,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle plaise;
Plaisons,	plaisez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles plaisent.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i> Que je plaise,	que tu plaises,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle plaise;
Que nous plaisions;	que vous plaisiez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles plaisent.
<i>Imp.</i> Que je plusse,	que tu plusses,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle plût;
Que nous plussions,	que vous plussiez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles plussent.

Conjugate after the same manner all verbs compounded of *plaire*: such as,—*déplaire*, to displease; *complaire*, to humour, to please, &c.

Taire, to conceal; and *se taire*, to forbear talking, to be silent, to hold one's tongue, are also conjugated after the same manner: but *se taire*, being a reflective verb, takes *être* in its compound tenses.

24. Prendre, to take [ACTIVE VERB];

Prenant, *taking*; pris, prise, *taken*. Avoir pris, ayant pris.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i> Je prends,	tu prends,	il <i>ou</i> elle prend;
Nous prenons,	vous prenez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles prennent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je prenais,	tu prenais,	il <i>ou</i> elle prenait;
Nous prenions,	vous preniez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles prenaient.

<i>Pret. Def.</i> Je pris, Nous primes,	tu pris, vous prîtes,	il <i>ou</i> elle prit; ils <i>ou</i> elles prirent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je prendrai, Nous prendrons,	tu prendras, vous prendrez,	il <i>ou</i> elle prendra; ils <i>ou</i> elles prendront.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i> Je prendrais, Nous prendrions,	tu prendrais, vous prendriez,	il <i>ou</i> elle prendrait; ils <i>ou</i> elles prendraient.
<i>Imperative</i> [No 1st person.] Prenons,	prends, prenez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle prenne; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles prennent.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i> Que je prenne, Que nous prenions,	que tu prennes, que vous preniez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle prenne; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles prennent.
<i>Imp.</i> Que je prisse, Que nous prissions,	que tu prisses, que vous prissiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle prît; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles prissent.

Conjugate after the same manner all verbs ending in *endre*, in the present of the infinitive, in *enant*, in the present participle, and in *is*, in the past participle: as,—*apprendre*, to learn; *comprendre*, to comprehend; *désapprendre*, to unlearn, to forget; *entreprendre*, to undertake; *rapprendre*, to learn again; *reprendre*, to take again: *se méprendre*, to mistake; *surprendre*, to surprise; *se déprendre*, to disengage one's self, &c.

The *n*, in these verbs, is always doubled in the tenses in which it comes before *e*, *es*, or *ent*, mute: as,—*que j'apprenne*, *que tu apprennes*, *qu'il ou qu'elle apprenne*, *qu'ils ou qu'elles apprennent*, &c.

25. Résoudre, to resolve and dissolve [ACTIVE VERB];

Résolvant, *resolving*; résolu, résolue, *resolved*; et résous [without feminine], *dissolved*. Avoir résolu, ayant résolu.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i> Je résous, Nous résolvons,	tu résous, vous résolvez,	il <i>ou</i> elle résout; ils <i>ou</i> elles résolvent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je résolvais, Nous résolvions,	tu résolvais, vous résolviez,	il <i>ou</i> elle résolvait; ils <i>ou</i> elles résolvaient.
<i>Pret. Def.</i> Je résolus, Nous résolûmes,	tu résolus, vous résolûtes,	il <i>ou</i> elle résolut; ils <i>ou</i> elles résolurent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je résoudrai, Nous résoudrons,	tu résoudras, vous résoudrez,	il <i>ou</i> elle résoudra; ils <i>ou</i> elles résoudront.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i> Je résoudrais, Nous résoudrions,	tu résoudrais, vous résoudriez,	il <i>ou</i> elle résoudrait; ils <i>ou</i> elles résoudraient.
<i>Imperative.</i> [No 1st person.] Résolvons,	résous, résolvez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle résolve; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles résolvent.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i> Que je résolve, Que nous résolvions,	que tu résolves, que vous résolviez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle résolve; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles résolvent.
<i>Imp.</i> Que je résolusse, Que nous résolus- sions,	que tu résolusses, que vous résolus- siez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle résolût; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles résolus- sent.

This verb has two past participles: the first is—*résolu*, *résolue*, in the sense of to resolve, to determine, to decide: as,—*ce jeune homme a*

résolu de changer de conduite, this young man has determined to change his conduct; and *résous*, without feminine, meaning dissolved: as,—*le soleil a résous le brouillard en pluie*, the sun has dissolved the fog into rain.

Conjugate after the same manner *se résoudre*, to be resolved, to form a resolution, and *se résoudre*, to be dissolved, to melt.

180

26. Rire, to laugh [NEUTER VERB];

Riant, *laughing*; ri [*indeclinable*], *laughed*. Avoir ri, ayant ri.

Ind. Pres.	Je ris,	tu ris,	il <i>ou</i> elle rit;
	Nous rions,	vous riez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles rient.
Imp.	Je riais,	tu riais,	il <i>ou</i> elle riait;
	Nous riions,	vous riiez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles riaient.
Pret. Def.	Je ris,	tu ris,	il <i>ou</i> elle rit;
	Nous rîmes,	vous rîtes,	ils <i>ou</i> elles rirent.
Fut.	Je rirai,	tu riras,	il <i>ou</i> elle rira;
	Nous rirons,	vous rirez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles riront.
Cond. Pres.	Je rirais,	tu rirais,	il <i>ou</i> elle rirait;
	Nous ririons,	vous ririez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles riraient.
Imperative. [No 1st person.]		ris,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle rie;
	Rions,	riez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles rient.
Sub. Pres.	Que je rie,	que tu ries,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle rie;
	Que nous riions,	que vous riiez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles rient.
Imp.	Que je risse,	que tu risses,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle rît;
	Que nous rissions,	que vous rissiez,	qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles rissent.

Conjugate after the same manner *se rire de*, to laugh at, except in its compound tenses, which are formed with *être*, like other reflective verbs.

Sourire, to smile, is also conjugated after the same manner, taking *avoir* in its compound tenses.

27. Rompre, to break [ACTIVE VERB];

Rompant, *breaking*; rompu, rompue, *broken*. Avoir rompu, ayant rompu.

Ind. Pres.	Je romps,	tu romps,	il <i>ou</i> elle rompt;
	Nous rompons,	vous rompez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles rompent.
Imp.	Je rompais,	tu rompais,	il <i>ou</i> elle rompait;
	Nous rompions,	vous rompiez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles rompaient.
Pret. Def.	Je rompis,	tu rompis,	il <i>ou</i> elle rompit;
	Nous rompîmes,	vous rompîtes,	ils <i>ou</i> elles rompirent.
Fut.	Je romprai,	tu rompras,	il <i>ou</i> elle rompra;
	Nous romprons,	vous romprez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles rompront.
Cond. Pres.	Je romprais,	tu romprais,	il <i>ou</i> elle romprait;
	Nous romprions,	vous rompiez,	ils <i>ou</i> elles rompraient.

Imperative. [No 1st person.]	romps,	qu'il ou qu'elle rompe;
Rompons,	rompez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles rompent.
Sub. Pres. Que je rompe,	que tu rompes,	qu'il ou qu'elle rompe;
Que nous rompions,	que vous rompiez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles rompent.
Imp. Que je rompisse,	que tu rompisses,	qu'il ou qu'elle rompît;
Que nous rompis-	que vous rompissiez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles rompissent.
sions,		

Conjugate after the same manner *corrompre*, to corrupt, and *interrompre*, to interrupt.

28. Soudre, to spring [NEUTER AND DEFECTIVE VERB].

This verb is only employed in speaking of fountains, springs, and rivers which rise out of the earth. Its only tenses in use are the present of the infinitive, and the third persons singular and plural of the present of the indicative: as,—*ce marais sera difficile à dessécher, on y voit soudre des eaux de tous côtés*, this marsh will be drained with difficulty, from the springs rising in every part. *On dit que le Rhin, le Rhône, et le Pô, sourdent au pied de la même montagne*, it is said that the Rhine, the Rhone, and the Pô, take their rise at the foot of the same mountain.

29. Suivre, to follow [ACTIVE VERB];

Suivant, following; suivi, suivie, followed. Avoir suivi, ayant suivi.

Ind. Pres. Je suis,	tu suis,	il ou elle suit;
Nous suivons,	vous suivez,	ils ou elles suivent.
Imp. Je suivais,	tu suivais,	il ou elle suivait;
Nous suivions,	vous suiviez,	ils ou elles suivaient.
Pret. Def. Je suivis,	tu suivis,	il ou elle suivit;
Nous suivîmes,	vous suivîtes,	ils ou elles suivirent.
Fut. Je suivrai,	tu suivras,	il ou elle suivra;
Nous suivrons,	vous suivrez,	ils ou elles suivront.
Cond. Pres. Je suivrais,	tu suivrais,	il ou elle suivrait;
Nous suivrions,	vous suivriez,	ils ou elles suivraient.
Imperative. [No 1st person.]	suis,	qu'il ou qu'elle suive;
Suivons,	suivez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles suivent.
Sub. Pres. Que je suive,	que tu suives,	qu'il ou qu'elle suive;
Que nous suivions,	que vous suiviez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles suivent.
Imp. Que je suivisse,	que tu suivisses,	qu'il ou qu'elle suivît;
Que nous suivissions,	que vous suivissiez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles suivissent.

Conjugate after the same manner *poursuivre*, to pursue, to prosecute. *S'ensuivre*, to follow, to result, is also conjugated after the same manner; but it is only used in the third persons singular and plural of its different tenses, either simple or compound, and in the present of the infinitive: as,—*un grand bien s'ensuivit*, much good resulted from it. *Tous les maux qui s'ensuivirent*, all the evils which resulted from it.

This verb is also frequently used in an impersonal manner with the pronoun *il*, in the third person singular of its different tenses, in the

sense of resulting : as,—*il s'ensuit de là que...*, hence it follows that...; *de cette proposition, il s'ensuivit que...*, from that proposition, it followed that... Its compound tenses are formed with *être*.

30. Tistre, to weave [NEUTER AND DEFECTIVE VERB].

This verb is only used in its compound tenses, which are formed with its past participle *tissu*, woven, and the different tenses of either *avoir* or *être*, according as we wish to express an action, or the state of the thing mentioned.

Tisser is its substitute in the other tenses : thus we say,—*Tisser du lin, de la laine, du coton*, to weave flax, wool, cotton.

Tissu is used, both in a natural and figurative sense, either as a substantive or a participle : thus,—*un drap bien tissu*, a well woven cloth ; *un tissu d'or, d'argent, de soie*, a gold, silver, or silk lace ; *un long tissu de belles actions*, a long series of noble actions.

184 31. Traire, to milk [ACTIVE AND DEFECTIVE VERB] ;

Trayant, milking ; trait, traite, milked. Avoir trait, ayant trait.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je trais,	tu trais,	il ou elle trait ;
	Nous trayons,	vous trayez,	ils ou elles traient.
<i>Imp.</i>	Je trayais,	tu trayais,	il ou elle trayait ;
	Nous trayions,	vous trayiez,	ils ou elles trayaient.

[This verb has no preterit definite.]

<i>Fut.</i>	Je trairai,	tu trairas,	il ou elle traira ;
	Nous trairons,	vous trairez,	ils ou elles trairont.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	Je trairais,	tu trairais,	il ou elle trairait ;
	Nous trairions,	vous trairiez,	ils ou elles trairaient.
<i>Imperative.</i>	[No 1st person.]	trais,	qu'il ou qu'elle traie ;
	Trayons,	trayez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles traient.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i>	Que je traie,	que tu traies,	qu'il ou qu'elle traie ;
	Que nous trayions,	que vous trayiez,	qu'ils ou qu'elles traient.

[There is no imperfect of the subjunctive.]

Conjugate after the same manner the verbs derived from *traire* : such as—*attirer*, to attract, to entice ; *abstraire*, to abstract ; *extraire*, to extract ; *distraindre*, to distract, to divert ; *rentraire*, to fine-draw ; *retraire*, to redeem (an estate) ; *soustraire*, to subtract, to hide, to conceal, to get or take away ; *se soustraire à*, to avoid, to escape, to withdraw one's self from.

Attirer is not much used, except in the present of the infinitive : as, —*le sel est bon pour attirer les pigeons*, salt attracts pigeons ; and even then *attirer* is preferred.

Abstraire is very little used, *faire abstraction* being better.

32. Vaincre, to vanquish, to conquer [ACTIVE VERB] ;

Vainquant, conquering ; vaincu, vaincue, conquered. Avoir vaincu, ayant vaincu.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	Je vains,	tu vains,	il ou elle vainc ;
	Nous vainquons,	vous vainquez,	ils ou elles vainquent.

<i>Imp.</i> Je vainquais, Nous vainquions,	tu vainquais, vous vainquiez,	il <i>ou</i> elle vainquait; ils <i>ou</i> elles vainquaient.
<i>Pret. Def.</i> Je vainquis, Nous vainquîmes,	tu vainquis, vous vainquîtes,	il <i>ou</i> elle vainquit; ils <i>ou</i> elles vainquirent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je vaincrai, Nous vaincrons,	tu vaincras, vous vaincrez,	il <i>ou</i> elle vaincra; ils <i>ou</i> elles vaincront.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i> Je vaincrais, Nous vaincristions,	tu vaincrais, vous vaincriez,	il <i>ou</i> elle vaincrait; ils <i>ou</i> elles vaincraient.
<i>Imperative.</i> [No 1st person.] Vainquons,	vaincs, vainquez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle vainque; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles vainquent.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i> Que je vainque, Que nous vainquions,	que tu vainques, que vous vainquiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle vainque; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles vainquent.
<i>Imp.</i> Que je vainquisse, Que nous vainquissions,	que tu vainquisses, que vous vainquissiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle vainquît; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles vainquissent.

Conjugate after the same manner *convaincre*, to convince. 183

In verbs ending in *aincre*, the *c* is changed into *qu* in the tenses in which it comes before the vowels, *a*, *e*, *i*, and *o*, as may be seen in the above conjugation.

The three persons singular of the present of the indicative, and the second singular of the imperative, are very seldom used. Voltaire expunges them. Corneille has however used them in Sertorius, Act iv. Sc. 4:—

“ De l'amour aisément on ne *vainc* pas les charmes.”

33. Vivre, to live [NEUTER VERB];

Vivant, *living*; vécu [*indeclinable*], *lived*. Avoir vécu, ayant vécu.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i> Je vis, Nous vivons,	tu vis, vous vivez,	il <i>ou</i> elle vit; ils <i>ou</i> elles vivent.
<i>Imp.</i> Je vivais, Nous vivions,	tu vivais, vous viviez,	il <i>ou</i> elle vivait; ils <i>ou</i> elles vivaient.
<i>Pret. Def.</i> Je vécus, Nous vécûmes,	tu vécus, vous vécûtes,	il <i>ou</i> elle vécut; ils <i>ou</i> elles vécurent.
<i>Fut.</i> Je vivrai, Nous vivrons,	tu vivras, vous vivrez,	il <i>ou</i> elle vivra; ils <i>ou</i> elles vivront.
<i>Cond. Pres.</i> Je vivrais, Nous vivrions,	tu vivrais, vous vivriez,	il <i>ou</i> elle vivrait; ils <i>ou</i> elles vivraient.
<i>Imperative.</i> [No 1st person.] Vivons,	vis, vivez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle vive; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles vivent.
<i>Sub. Pres.</i> Que je vive, Que nous vivions,	que tu vives, que vous viviez.	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle vive; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles vivent.
<i>Imp.</i> Que je vécusse, Que nous vécussions,	que tu vécusses, que vous vécussiez,	qu'il <i>ou</i> qu'elle vécût; qu'ils <i>ou</i> qu'elles vécussent.

Conjugate after the same manner the verbs compounded of *vivre*: as,—*survivre*, to outlive.

Vivre governs the preposition *de*: as,—*il vit de pain*, he lives upon bread.

The third person singular of the present of the subjunctive—*vive*, and the third plural of the same tense *vivent*, are frequently used without any antecedent, by way of acclamation or shout of joy, before the names of persons to whom we wish a long and happy life: as,—*vive le roi!* long live the king! *vivent les gens d'esprit!* long live men of genius! They are likewise used before the name of any thing that we highly esteem and praise: as,—*vive la vie!* life for ever! *vivent la Champagne et la Bourgogne pour les bons vins!* Champagne and Burgundy for ever!

Of Unipersonal Verbs.

Unipersonal verbs are only used in the third persons singular of their simple and compound tenses, admitting in those persons precisely the same terminations as the verbs, either regular or irregular, of the conjugation to which they belong.

The compound tenses of these verbs are formed by the addition of their past participle to the simple tenses of *avoir* or *être*, according as either is required.

It is necessary to observe that some of the following verbs are not given as examples of unipersonal verbs, but, as they are only used in the third person singular of their different tenses, they are better classed among the unipersonals.

Unipersonal Verbs of the First Conjugation.

1. Neiger, to snow [UNIPERSONAL VERB];

Neigeant, *snowing*; neigé, *snowed*. Avoir neigé, ayant neigé.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	<i>It snows, does snow, or is snowing,</i>	<i>it does not snow or is not snowing,</i>	<i>does it snow?</i>	<i>does it not snow?</i>
	Il neige.	il ne neige pas.	neige-t-il?	ne neige-t-il pas?
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>It was snowing,</i>	<i>it was not snowing,</i>	<i>was it snowing?</i>	<i>was it not snowing?</i>
	Il neigeait.	il ne neigeait pas.	neigeait-il?	ne neigeait-il pas?
<i>Pret. Def.</i>	<i>It snowed,</i>	<i>it did not snow,</i>	<i>did it snow?</i>	<i>did it not snow?</i>
	Il neigea.	il ne neigea pas.	neigea-t-il?	ne neigea-t-il pas?
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>It will snow,</i>	<i>it will not snow,</i>	<i>will it snow?</i>	<i>will it not snow?</i>
	Il neigera.	il ne neigera pas.	neigera-t-il?	ne neigera-t-il pas?
<i>Cond. Pres.</i>	<i>It would snow,</i>	<i>it would not snow,</i>	<i>would it snow?</i>	<i>would it not snow?</i>
	Il neigerait.	il ne neigerait pas.	neigerait-il?	ne neigerait-il pas?

[No imperative.]

Sub. Pres. *That it may snow,* *that it may not snow,*
Qu'il neige. qu'il ne neige pas.

Imp. *That it might snow,* *that it might not snow,*
Qu'il neigeât. qu'il ne neigeât pas.

The compound tenses of this verb are formed by the addition of its past participle *neigé* to the third persons singular of the simple tenses of *avoir*: as,—*Il a neigé*, it has snowed; *il n'a pas neigé*, it has not snowed; *a-t-il neigé?* has it snowed? *n'a-t-il pas neigé?* has it not snowed? &c.

Conjugate after the same manner *bruiner*, to drizzle.; *grêler*, to hail; *geler*, to freeze; *dégeler*, to thaw; *tonner*, to thunder; *éclairer*, to lighten; *importer*, to concern; *résulter*, to result.

Arriver, to happen; *sembler*, to seem; or any other verb of the first conjugation, when used in an *unipersonal* manner, are also conjugated after the same model.

Arriver takes *être* in its compound tenses.

Second Conjugation.

1. Saillir, to project [NEUTER AND DEFECTIVE VERB];

Saillant, projecting; sailli, saillie, projected. Avoir sailli, ayant sailli.

Ind. Pres. It projects, does it does not project, does it project? does it not project?
project, or is
projecting,

Il saille. il ne saille pas. saille-t-il? ne saille-t-il pas?

Imp. It projected, it did not project, did it project? did it not project?
Il saillait. il ne saillait pas. saillait-il? ne saillait-il pas?

[This verb has no preterit definite.]

Fut. It will project, it will not project, will it project? will it not project?
Il saillera. il ne saillera pas. saillera-t-il? ne saillera-t-il pas?

Cond. Pres. It would project, it would not project, would it project? would it not project?
Il saillerait. il ne saillerait pas. saillerait-il? ne saillerait-il pas?

[No imperative.]

Sub. Pres. That it may project, that it may not project,
Qu'il saille. qu'il ne saille pas.

Imp. That it might project, that it might not project,
Qu'il saillît. qu'il ne saillît pas.

Observe.—As *saillir* is not an unipersonal verb, it may be preceded by the pronoun *elle* for its nominative or subject, when referring to a substantive feminine singular, either expressed or understood; it may also be used in the third persons plural of its different tenses, with the pronoun *ils* ou *elles*: as,—*il* ou *elle* saille, *ils* ou *elles* saillent; *il* ou *elle* saillait, *ils* ou *elles* saillaient; *il* ou *elle* saillera, *ils* ou *elles* sailleront; *il* ou *elle* saillerait, *ils* ou *elles* sailleraient; *qu'il* ou *qu'elle* saille, *qu'ils* ou *qu'elles* saillent.

Such is the conjugation of *saillir*, when used with reference to a balcony, a cornice, or any other ornament of architecture, projecting from the main part of a building: as,—*ce balcon saille trop*, this balcony projects too much; *cette corniche ne saille pas assez*, this cornice does not project enough, &c.

But when *saillir* is employed to describe the gushing or spouting out of liquid bodies, it is then conjugated like the verb *finir*: as,—*saillir*, *saillissant*, *sailli*; *avoir sailli*, *ayant sailli*; *je saillis*, *tu saillis*, &c. *je saillissais*, *tu saillissais*, &c. Ex.: *le sang saillissait de sa veine avec impétuosité. On fait saillir l'eau à une très-grande hauteur par la compression qu'on en fait dans les pompes.*

Unipersonal Verbs of the Third Conjugation.

1. Falloir, *to be necessary* [UNIPERSONAL VERB];[No pres. part.] *fallu* [indeclinable], *been necessary*. Avoir *fallu*, *ayant fallu*.

Ind. Pres. <i>It is necessary,</i> <i>Il faut.</i>	<i>it is not necessary,</i> <i>il ne faut pas.</i>	<i>is it necessary?</i> <i>faut-il?</i>	<i>is it not necessary?</i> <i>ne faut-il pas?</i>
Imp. <i>It was necessary,</i> <i>Il fallait.</i>	<i>it was not necessary,</i> <i>il ne fallait pas.</i>	<i>was it necessary?</i> <i>fallait-il?</i>	<i>was it not necessary?</i> <i>ne fallait-il pas?</i>
Pret. Def. <i>It was necessary,</i> <i>Il fallut.</i>	<i>it was not necessary,</i> <i>il ne fallut pas.</i>	<i>was it necessary?</i> <i>fallut-il?</i>	<i>was it not necessary?</i> <i>ne fallut-il pas?</i>
Fut. <i>It will be necessary,</i> <i>Il faudra.</i>	<i>it will not be necessary,</i> <i>il ne faudra pas.</i>	<i>will it be necessary?</i> <i>faudra-t-il?</i>	<i>will it not be necessary?</i> <i>ne faudra-t-il pas?</i>
Cond. Pres. <i>It would be necessary,</i> <i>Il faudrait.</i>	<i>it would not be necessary,</i> <i>il ne faudrait pas.</i>	<i>would it be necessary?</i> <i>faudrait-il?</i>	<i>would it not be necessary?</i> <i>ne faudrait-il pas?</i>

[No imperative.]

Sub. Pres. <i>That it may be necessary,</i> <i>Qu'il faille,</i>	<i>that it may not be necessary,</i> <i>qu'il ne faille pas.</i>
Imp. <i>That it might be necessary,</i> <i>Qu'il fallût.</i>	<i>that it might not be necessary,</i> <i>qu'il ne fallût pas.</i>

The compound tenses of this verb are formed by the addition of its past participle *fallu* to the third persons singular of the simple tenses of *avoir*: as,—*il a fallu*, it has been necessary; *il n'a pas fallu*, it has not been necessary; *a-t-il fallu?* has it been necessary? *n'a-t-il pas fallu?* has it not been necessary? *il avait fallu*, it had been necessary, &c.

2. Pleuvoir, *to rain* [UNIPERSONAL VERB];*Pleuvant*, *raining*; *plu* [indeclinable], *rained*. Avoir *plu*, *ayant plu*.

Ind. Pres. <i>It rains, does rain, or is raining,</i> <i>Il pleut.</i>	<i>it does not rain,</i> <i>il ne pleut pas.</i>	<i>does it rain?</i> <i>pleut-il?</i>	<i>does it not rain?</i> <i>ne pleut-il pas?</i>
Imp. <i>It was raining,</i> <i>Il pleuvait.</i>	<i>it was not raining,</i> <i>il ne pleuvait pas.</i>	<i>was it raining?</i> <i>pleuvait-il?</i>	<i>was it not raining?</i> <i>ne pleuvait-il pas?</i>
Pret. Def. <i>It rained,</i> <i>Il plut.</i>	<i>it did not rain,</i> <i>il ne plut pas.</i>	<i>did it rain?</i> <i>plut-il?</i>	<i>did it not rain?</i> <i>ne plut-il pas?</i>
Fut. <i>It will rain,</i> <i>Il pleuvra.</i>	<i>it will not rain,</i> <i>il ne pleuvra pas.</i>	<i>will it rain?</i> <i>pleuvra-t-il?</i>	<i>will it not rain?</i> <i>ne pleuvra-t-il pas?</i>

Cond. Pres. *It would rain, it would not rain, would it rain? would it not rain?*
 Il pleuvrait. il ne pleuvrait pas. pleuvrait-il? ne pleuvrait-il pas?

[No imperative.]

Sub. Pres. *That it may rain, that it may not rain,*
 Qu'il pleuve. qu'il ne pleuve pas.

Imp. *That it might rain, that it might not rain,*
 Qu'il plût. qu'il ne plût pas.

The compound tenses of *pleuvoir* are formed by the addition of its past participle *plu* to the third persons singular of the simple tenses of *avoir*: as,—*il a plu*, it has rained; *il n'a pas plu*, it has not rained; *a-t-il plu?* has it rained? *n'a-t-il pas plu?* has it not rained? *il avait plu*, it had rained, &c.

3. Échoir, to be or fall due, to expire [NEUTER AND DEFECTIVE VERB];

Échéant, being due; échu, échue, been due. Être échu, étant échu.

Ind. Pres. *It becomes due, it does not become due, does it become due? does it not become due?*
 Il échoit ou il n'échoit pas. échoit-il? n'échoit-il pas?
 échet.

Imp. *It was due, it was not due, was it due? was it not due?*
 Il échéait. il n'échéait pas. échéait-il? n'échéait-il pas?

Pret. Def. *It was or became due, it was not due, was it due? was it not due?*
 Il échut. il n'échut pas. échut-il? n'échut-il pas?

Fut. *It will be due, it will not be due, will it be due? will it not be due?*
 Il écherra. il n'écherra pas. écherra-t-il? n'écherra-t-il pas?

Cond. Pres. *It would be due, it would not be due, would it be due? would it not be due?*
 Il écherrait. il n'écherrait pas. écherrait-il? n'écherrait-il pas?

[No imperative.]

Sub. Pres. *That it may be due, That it may not be due,*
 Qu'il échée. qu'il n'échée pas.

Imp. *That it might be due, That it might not be due,*
 Qu'il échût. qu'il n'échût pas.

The compound tenses of this verb are formed by adding its past participle *échu* to the third persons singular or plural of the different tenses of *avoir*, to express the action of a bill or bills falling due: as,—*mon billet a échu le premier de ce mois*, my bill became due on the first of this month; but *échu* is added to the third persons singular or plural of the different tenses of *être*, to denote the state of a bill being due: as,—*cet effet est échu*, this bill is due; *il n'est pas encore échu*, it is not yet due; *est-il échu?* is it due? *n'est-il pas échu?* is it not due, &c.

The present of the infinitive *échoir* is frequently used with the different tenses of *devoir*: as,—*cet effet a dû échoir le vingt de Mars*, this bill must have been due on the twentieth of March.

202 UNIPERSONAL VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUG.

Echoir may also be used in the third persons plural of its different tenses : as,—*ils échoient, ils échurent, ils écherront, ils écherraient, qu'ils échéent, qu'ils échussent.*

4. Seoir, to fit [NEUTER AND DEFECTIVE VERB];

Seyant, fitting; sis, sise, situated.*

<i>Ind. Pres.</i> <i>It fits,</i> <i>Il sied.</i>	<i>it does not fit,</i> <i>il ne sied pas.</i>	<i>does it fit?</i> <i>sied-il?</i>	<i>does it not fit?</i> <i>ne sied-il pas?</i>
<i>Imp.</i> <i>It fitted,</i> <i>Il seyait.</i>	<i>it did not fit,</i> <i>il ne seyait pas.</i>	<i>did it fit?</i> <i>seyait-il?</i>	<i>did it not fit?</i> <i>ne seyait-il pas?</i>

[*This verb has no preterit definite.*]

<i>Fut.</i> <i>It will fit,</i> <i>Il siéra.</i>	<i>it will not fit,</i> <i>il ne siéra pas.</i>	<i>will it fit?</i> <i>siéra-t-il?</i>	<i>will it not fit?</i> <i>ne siéra-t-il pas?</i>
<i>Cond. Pres.</i> <i>It would fit,</i> <i>Il siérait.</i>	<i>it would not fit,</i> <i>il ne siérait pas.</i>	<i>would it fit?</i> <i>siérait-il?</i>	<i>would it not fit?</i> <i>ne siérait-il pas?</i>

[*No imperative.*]

<i>Sub. Pres.</i> <i>That it may fit,</i> <i>Qu'il siée.</i>	<i>that it may not fit,</i> <i>qu'il ne siée pas.</i>
---	--

[*No imperfect.*]

This verb may also be used in the third persons plural of its tenses : as,—*ils siéent, qu'ils siéent.* It has no compound tenses.

Fourth Conjugation.

1. Éclore, to hatch, to blow, to open [NEUTER AND DEFECTIVE VERB];

[*No present participle.*] *Éclos, éclosé, hatched. Être éclos, étant éclos.*

<i>Ind. Pres.</i> <i>Il éclôt,</i>	<i>il n'éclôt pas;</i>	<i>éclôt-il?</i>	<i>n'éclôt-il pas?</i>
------------------------------------	------------------------	------------------	------------------------

[*This verb has no imperfect nor preterit definite.*]

<i>Fut.</i> <i>Il éclora,</i>	<i>il n'éclora pas;</i>	<i>éclora-t-il?</i>	<i>n'éclora-t-il pas?</i>
<i>Cond. Pres.</i> <i>Il éclorait,</i>	<i>il n'éclorait pas;</i>	<i>éclorait-il?</i>	<i>n'éclorait-il pas?</i>

[*No imperative.*]

<i>Sub. Pres.</i> <i>Qu'il éclosé,</i>	<i>qu'il n'éclosé pas.</i>
--	----------------------------

[*No imperfect.*]

This verb, not being an unipersonal one, may be preceded by the pronoun *elle*, for its subject, when referring to an antecedent feminine singular; it may also be used in the third persons plural of its tenses :

* The past participle *sis, sise*, is only used now as an adjective, in the sense of *situé, située*: thus,—*une maison sise à*, a house situated at

as,—*il* ou *elle* *éclop*, *ils* ou *elles* *éclosent*; *il* ou *elle* *éclo*ra, *ils* ou *elles* *éclo*ront; *il* ou *elle* *éclo*rait, *ils* ou *elles* *éclo*raient; *qu'il* ou *qu'elle* *éclo*se, *qu'ils* ou *qu'elles* *éclo*sent.

Its compound tenses are formed by the addition of its past participle *éclos* to the third persons singular or plural of the simple tenses of *être*: as,—*il est éclos*, it is hatched; *ils ne sont pas éclos*, they are not hatched, &c.

Éclore is not only used in speaking of oviparous animals, such as *birds*, *insects*; it is also employed in speaking of flowers blowing, and of different things that begin to appear.

2. Braire, to bray [NEUTER AND DEFECTIVE VERB].

This verb, which expresses the cry of the ass, is seldom used but in the present of the infinitive *braire*: in the third persons singular and plural of the present of the indicative—*il* ou *elle* *brai*t, *ils* ou *elles* *brai*ent: in the third persons of the future—*il* ou *elle* *brai*ra, *ils* ou *elles* *brai*ront: and in the third persons of the conditional—*il* ou *elle* *brai*rait, *ils* ou *elles* *brai*raient.

3. Bruire, to roar [NEUTER AND DEFECTIVE VERB].

This verb is only used in the present of the infinitive, in the present participle, and in the third persons singular and plural of the imperfect of the indicative: as,—*bruire*, *bruyant*; *il* *bruy*ait, *ils* *bruy*aient. In the other tenses we use—*faire du bruit*; *rendre un son confus*: as,—*on entendait bruire les vagues*, you could hear the roaring of the waves; *les flots bruyaient horriblement*, the waves were roaring dreadfully.

LESSON XXII.

Of Negations and Interrogations.

1. OF NEGATIONS.

How to express in French *not*, *no*, *not that*, *no more*, *neither*, *nor*, *never*, *by no means*.

1. *Not*. When *not* is used with a verb in English, it is expressed in French by *ne pas* or *ne point*, placing *ne* or *n'* before the verb in a simple tense, with *pas** or *point** after it; and *ne* or *n'* before the

* DISTINCTION BETWEEN *PAS* AND *POINT*.

Pas and *point* are often indifferently used in negative sentences, with this difference, however, that *point* denies more absolutely than *pas*, meaning not at all: for instance,—*je ne vais point à la comédie*, I do not go to the play, signifies that I never go; whilst *je ne vais pas à la comédie*, may imply that I do not go now, or this evening, although I may sometimes go.

In interrogative sentences, *point* is generally used, when doubt is entertained about the thing mentioned, and *pas* when we are certain of it: as for instance,—*n'avez-vous point vu ma sœur?* have you not seen my sister? implies that I am totally ignorant whether you have or have not seen her; but *n'avez-vous pas vu ma sœur*, signifies that I am conscious you have seen her, and I wish to let you know it.

¹⁷⁰ auxiliary in a compound one, with also *pas* or *point* after it; that is, between the auxiliary and the participle; and if any pronoun is to precede the verb as its object, placing it between *ne* and the verb in a simple tense, and between *ne* and the auxiliary in a compound one: as,—I do not speak, *je ne parle pas*; he has not written, *il n'a pas écrit*; has it not rained? *n'a-t-il pas plu*? I have not it, *je ne l'ai pas*; she has not seen him, *elle ne l'a pas vu*, &c. always leaving out the words *does*, *do*, or *did*, which the English generally use in negative and interrogative sentences, in the present, imperfect, and preterit of the indicative.

If the verb should be in the present of the infinitive mood in French, both *ne pas* or *ne point* come more elegantly before it, placing the pronouns *le*, *la*, *les*, *lui*, ou *leur*, when used as its object, between *ne* and *pas* or *point*: as,—it is disagreeable not to speak French, *il est désagréable de ne pas parler Français*; it is prudent not to say it, *il est prudent de ne le pas dire*.

When these four verbs—*cesser*, to cease; *oser*, to dare; *pouvoir*, to be able; and *savoir*, to know; are employed with a negative in English, they are more commonly used in French with *ne* only before the verb, in a simple tense, and before the auxiliary in a compound one, without *pas* or *point* after it; although if we wish to express a complete negation, *pas* or *point* should be used after the verb or the auxiliary: as,—I cannot do it, *je ne le puis* ou *je ne le puis pas*. I dare not say it, *je n'ose le dire*, &c.

Not, used in a reply to a question before an adverb or any other word, is expressed in French by *pas* only: as,—how do you do, madam? not very well, sir; *comment vous portez-vous, madame? PAS très-bien, monsieur*.

2. *No*. When *no* is used in English in reply to a question, it is construed into French by *non*: as,—have you seen him? no, sir; *l'avez-vous vu? non, monsieur*. *Not*, employed in the second part of a sentence after *or*, whether the phrase be interrogative or negative, is likewise expressed by *non*: as,—will you do it or not? *voulez-vous le faire ou non?*—whether he come or not, I do not care, *qu'il vienne ou non, je ne m'en soucie pas*.

No, used in reply to a question, is likewise expressed by *point*, *non pas*, or *nenni*, if in a familiar style: as,—will you have any? no; *en voulez-vous? point*; will you give me this? no, miss; *voulez-vous me donner ceci? non pas, mademoiselle*; do you come with me, my dear? no, madam; *venez-vous avec moi, ma chère? nenni, madame*.

3. *Not that* is expressed in French by *non que*, *non pas que*, *ce n'est*

Pas and *point* require sometimes *de* or *d'* before the next word: as,—there is no answer, *il n'y a pas ou point de réponse*.

Pas de ou *point de* must be repeated in French before every word affected by *no* in English: as,—she has no friends, no money, no resources, *elle n'a point d'amis, point d'argent, point de ressources*.

When an impossibility is expressed, the
the verb pouvoir is used: but when
merely an objection or unwillingness
the conditional tense of savoir viz
saurais, thus je ne puis means it is
not possible for me. Je ne saurais
means, I do not wish, I do not feel
inclined. F.S. 30.

Avoir garde has re without pas, as il
n'a garde de le faire; he is far from
doing it. M.S. 148.

Stille past requires *ne* before the pre-
ceding verb. R. 227

It is employed without *pas* or *point*, if there
is in the sentence a pronoun or adverb, express-
ing negation, such as *neul*, *personne*, *ja-
mais*, *rien*, *ne plus*. R. 79.

pas que, according as it sounds best, with the following verb in the subjunctive mood: as,—I will do it, not that I am obliged to it, but for the sake of their children, *je le ferai, non que ou non pas que j'y sois obligé, mais pour l'amour de leurs enfans.*

4. *No more* and *not any more*. When *no more* comes after a verb, or when *not* is used after one of the words *does, do, did, shall, will, would*, and *should*, with *any more* after the following verb; or also, when *not* is employed after the auxiliary *have*, with *any more* after the next participle, as in these sentences—*I saw him no more; I have not seen him any more; no more* and *not any more*, &c. are expressed in French by *plus* after the verb in a simple tense, with *ne* before it, and by *plus* after the auxiliary in a compound one, with also *ne* before it, following the same rules for the place of the pronouns which may be used as the objects of the verb as with *not*: as,—I saw him no more, *je ne le vis plus*. I have not seen her any more, *je ne l'ai plus vue*, &c.

Should *no more* be followed by *than*, it is then expressed by *pas plus* after the verb, with *ne* before it, as above: as,—my sister is no more than twenty, *ma sœur n'a pas plus de vingt ans*.

5. *Neither* and *nor*, used before two nouns, or two verbs in the present of the infinitive mood; *neither* coming before the first, and *nor* before the second; or also *any* before a substantive which follows a verb used negatively, with *or* or *nor* before the next substantive: as,—*I have neither friends nor money; she can neither sing nor dance; do not put any sugar or milk in my tea*; are expressed in French by *ni* before the first noun or verb, with *ni* before the second, putting *ne* before the verb which precedes them, but without *pas* or *point* after it: as,—I have neither friends nor money, *je n'ai ni amis ni argent*; she can neither sing nor dance, *elle ne sait ni chanter ni danser*; do not put any sugar or milk in my tea, *ne mettez ni sucre ni lait dans mon thé*.

Neither and *nor*, being used before two verbs in the indicative mood, *neither* before the first and *nor* before the second, are expressed in French thus—*neither* by *ne*, before the first verb, and *nor* by *ni ne* before the second: as,—I neither love nor hate her, *je ne l'aime ni ne la hais*.

Neither, at the end of a sentence, is expressed in French by *non plus*: as,—he will not have it, nor I neither, *il ne le veut pas, ni moi non plus*.

6. *Never* and *by no means*, employed with a verb, are expressed in French by *ne* before the verb in a simple tense, with *jamais* or *nullement* after it, and *ne* before the auxiliary in a compound one, with also *jamais* or *nullement* after it: that is, between the auxiliary and the participle, without ever using *pas* or *point* in this case; but placing the pronouns which may be employed as objects of the verb between *ne* and the verb in a simple tense, and between *ne* and the auxiliary in a compound one: as,—she will never come, *elle ne viendra jamais*; she is by no means obliging, *elle n'est nullement obligeante*. I never saw him before, *je ne l'ai jamais vu auparavant*.

192

If the verb should be in the present of the infinitive, both *ne* and *jamaïs* elegantly precede it: as,—it is praiseworthy never to speak an untruth, *il est louable de ne jamais mentir*.

Never and *by no means*, used by themselves in answer to a question, are also expressed in French by *jamaïs* and *nullement*, without *ne*; but *never* preceded by *no* is construed by *non jamais*: as,—have you seen the king? no, never; *avez-vous vu le roi? non, jamais*.

Jamaïs may be placed at the head of a sentence in some particular cases, which can only be learnt by use; *ne* is then required before the verb: as,—I never saw so amiable a lady, *jamaïs, je n'ai vu ou je n'ai jamais vu de dame si aimable*.

Jamaïs, followed by a substantive taken in a partitive sense, requires *de* or *d'* before such substantive, in the sense of *some* or *any* in English: as,—I never drink any water, *je ne bois jamais d'eau*.

ESSAY XXII.

When the abbreviations, *sub. pr.*—*sub. imp.*—*sub. pret.*—and *sub. plu.* occur before a French verb, in the following essays, they denote that it is to be put either in the present, imperfect, preterit, or pluperfect of the subjunctive.

The Misses S** do not excel in music.—Your brothers have not made any progress in the (Italian language).—Do you not know her?—She confessed that she would not have spoken to me, (had she not been in want) of money.—It is very unpleasant not to speak French.—How disappointed I was at not (being able) to* go with them.—How does* your mother do?—

Not very well, madam; she had again a relapse yesterday.—Will you call at Lady D.'s to-day?—No, sir, I think she is gone into the country; besides, I have not the pleasure of (knowing) her.—Whether she writes to me or not, I shall not go.—Will you give me one of these apples, my dear?—No, sir; they are not mine.—The proverb “no virtue no happiness” is not so true as this one, “no money no paternoster.”—He is not very particular in his dress, although he always dresses very genteelly.—I cannot go and* fetch them.—Her parents are in a very miserable condition, they have no money, no means of (getting) any, and no friends on whom they can depend. Well! I will give them some relief;

Demaiselle exceller dans faire
de Italien connaître pret. def.
avouer si elle n'avait pas eu besoin
argent Il désagréable¹ Que² contrarié³ imp.
de pouvoir se porter

pret. def. encore rechute
passer² chez³ — D***⁴ aujourd'hui croire qu' à
de plus connaître Qu'
sub. pr. écrire Vouloir

à moi proverbe point
vrai celui-ci Suisse

recherché habits pl. quoiqu' sub. pr. se mettre
proprement ne pouvoir chercher

état moyens gagner
sur sub. pr. pouvoir compter Eh bien quelques secours

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

He is used without *pas*, point to express a negation, when the verb is accompanied by one of the following words: *aucun, nul, personne, jamais, rien, guère*, or plus with the sense of no longer, no more.

Pas is not used

1 before and after *on*

2 after *il-y-a, que ce*, when the following verb is in a compound tense

3 after *depuis que, il a grandi depuis que j'en ai vu*

4 after *que* why, as *que ne parliez vous?*

5 after *qu'il, que, dont on* when the following verb is in the subjunctive. *Il n'est pas de vice qui ne soit méprisable*. But never not a negative in the first member of the phrase, we could use *pas* or *point* in the second.

6 after *saurois* in the sense of *pourvoir*. He often do the same with this verb in its proper sense when followed by *qu'il, que, dont on, comment, pourquoi, si*.

When the verb is followed by *de* signifying a space of time or by any negation is used as *Je ne lui parlerai de ma vie*
A.L. 86

not that. I think they deserve it, but for the sake of their children.—
sub. pr. croire qu' mériter amour

(It was) a delicious fruit, but we have not any more (of it).—You will see
C'était délicieux 1 2 4 5 3en voir

him no more after this week.—My little boy is no more than six or seven years
semaine garçon a de

old*.—They are no forwarder than they were when they came to
plus avancé imp. quand pret. def. venir

town.—She can neither read nor write.—You have not put any sugar or milk
savoir lire écrire mettre

in my coffee.—I neither love nor hate her.—She neither pleases nor displeases
aimer haïr plaire déplaire

me.—They do not care for it, nor I neither.—Why do you say so,
1 2 3s' 3soucier 4en dire cela

since you know she cannot* speak English?—I dare not tell her
puisque qu' ne parler pas Anglais oser 3dire 3lui

(of it).—(Some people) do not cease complaining of Fortune,
1le Il y a des gens m. pl. qui cesser de se plaindre

although they are loaded with her favours.—Time past never returns,
sub. pr. comblé de faveur passé revenir

and a word once uttered cannot (be recalled).—Never speak ill of (others).
une fois prononcer être rappelé mal autrui

—I by no means approve of* his conduct.—Love your children; never blame
approuver conduite blâmer

them without cause, and never reprove them with passion.—It is noble never
raison réprimander colère 2

to deceive (any body).—Will you consent (to it)?—No, never.—Never did* I
1de tromper personne y

(see any thing) like it*.—Never man had more success with so little
n'ai vu rien de semblable de si peu de

merit.—I never drink any water.
boire

LESSON XXIII.

Cases in which *ne* is used in French before a verb, without *pas* or point after it, although there is no negative in English.

1. *Ne* is used in French before a verb after *que*, when *que* comes after the comparatives *plus*, *moins*, *mieux*, *meilleur*, or the words *autre* and *autrement*, if the verb preceding these expressions be employed affirmatively, or even sometimes interrogatively: as,—I love you more tenderly than I ever did any other lady, *je vous aime plus tendrement que je n'ai jamais aimé aucune autre dame*. She is better to-day than she was yesterday, *elle est mieux aujourd'hui qu'elle n'était hier*. Does he write better than he speaks? *écrit-il mieux qu'il ne parle?*

But if the verb preceding *plus*, *moins*, *mieux*, *meilleur*, or *autre* and *autrement*, be used negatively, *ne* is not then required before the verb

194 following *que*: as,—she is not more amiable than she was formerly, *elle n'est pas plus aimable qu'elle était autrefois*, and not—*qu'elle n'était*.

Should the verb preceding *que*, as well as that which follows it, be in the present of the infinitive; or if, not being in the present of the infinitive, a conjunction should intervene between *que* and the second verb, *ne* should not then be used before the second verb, whether the first be employed affirmatively, negatively, or interrogatively: as,—it is more noble to forgive than to revenge one's self, *il est plus noble de pardonner que de se venger*, and not *que de ne se venger*. You do not dance better than when you were at school, *vous ne dansez pas mieux que quand vous étiez à l'école*, and not—*que quand vous n'étiez*, &c.

2. *Ne* is also required in French after the conjunctions *à moins que*, unless; *de crainte que*, for fear; *de peur que*, lest; and *que* used in the same sense, before the next verb which depends on them, and which must be put in the subjunctive mood: as,—I shall not go unless you come and fetch me, *je n'irai pas à moins que vous ne veniez me chercher*. Go out quickly for fear he should see you, *sortez promptement de crainte qu'il ne vous voie*. I shall not go to see her unless she invite me, *je n'irai pas la voir qu'elle ne m'en prie*; for *à moins qu'elle ne m'en prie*.

Avant que, before, and *que* used in the same sense or for *until*, require *ne* before the next verb, if any thing uncertain be expressed by it, whereas *ne* is not required, if the thing expressed be positive. In either case the verb must be put in the subjunctive mood: as,—he will not come before you go and fetch him, *il ne viendra pas que vous n'alliez le chercher*. In this sentence, *ne* is used before *alliez*, because it is uncertain whether you will go or not. Wait till the rain is over, *attendez qu'il ne pleuve plus*. *Ne* is also used before *pleuve*, as it is likewise uncertain when the rain will cease; but we say—*elle vint ici deux jours avant qu'elle mourût*, she came here two days before she died, and not *avant qu'elle ne mourût*, because reference is made to a thing about which there can be no uncertainty. *empêcher, to hinder*

3. When the verbs *craindre*, to fear, to be afraid; *appréhender*, to apprehend; *avoir peur*, to be afraid; *trembler*, to tremble; are followed by *que*, they also require *ne* before the next verb, which must be put in the subjunctive mood, without *pas* or *point* after it, if the thing expressed by it be not wished for, but on the contrary objected to: as,—I fear or am afraid he will come, *je crains qu'il ne vienne*; because I wish him not to come.

195 But if the thing expressed by the verb coming after *que* be wished for, which is generally the case when that verb is accompanied by *not* in English, *ne* is then required before it with *pas* or *point* after it, and it is, as above, put in the subjunctive mood: as,—I am afraid my sister will not come to-night, *j'ai peur que ma sœur ne vienne pas ce soir*; because I am anxious for her coming.

With the adverb plus used absolutely
we only use, as je ne sçais
plus de voir. But when plus
is used comparatively ne and
pas are both used A. J. 86

or se in the sense of à moins que.

Georaci Levizac. p. 514
Gram. des Gram. p. 964

The same is to be observed after *de crainte que* and *de peur que*; that is, *pas* or *point* must be used after the verb depending on these conjunctions, when the thing expressed by it is wished for; whereas *ne* only is required before it, if the thing expressed by it be not wished for: as,—I shall take your letter myself, for fear it should not be delivered in time, *je me chargerai moi-même de votre lettre, de crainte qu'elle ne soit pas rendue en temps*. In this sentence, *pas* is used after the verb, because I wish the letter to be delivered: but in this—I shall speak to your father, for fear he should punish you, *je parlerai à votre père, de peur ou de crainte qu'il ne vous punisse*; *ne* only is used before the verb, because I wish no punishment should be inflicted on you.

Should, on the contrary, the verb following *que* express a thing, the event of which would be a matter of indifference, both *ne* and *pas* should then be omitted and the verb put in the subjunctive mood, as above: as,—I do not fear his coming, *je ne crains pas qu'il vienne*; because whether he come or not is a matter of indifference to me.

4. *Prendre garde*, used in the sense of taking care that a thing shall not happen, and followed by *que*, governs likewise *ne* before the succeeding verb, which must be put in the subjunctive mood: as,—take care the child does not fall, *prenez garde que l'enfant ne tombe*. *déjà*

5. *Nier*, *douter*, and *disconvenir*, followed by *que*, require *ne* before the next verb, when they are employed negatively, as also sometimes interrogatively; but, if they be used affirmatively, *ne* is not required before it. In any case, the following verb is put in the subjunctive mood: as,—I do not deny, doubt, disagree, that it will be fine weather, *je ne nie pas, je ne doute pas, je ne disconviens pas qu'il ne fasse beau temps*; but—I deny, doubt, disagree, that it is so, *je nie, je doute, je disconviens que cela soit*, and not *que cela ne soit*; because the sentence is affirmative.

Observe.—If the preceding verbs and conjunctions should be followed by *de*, and a verb in the present of the infinitive, instead of *que* with the subjunctive, *ne* should not then be used before that verb: as,—he fears, apprehends, trembles, to displease you, *il craint, il appréhende, il tremble, de vous déplaire*, and not *de ne vous déplaire*. Take care you do not fall, *prenez garde de tomber*, and not *de ne tomber*. They came to see us two days before they went away, *ils vinrent nous voir deux jours avant de partir*, and not *avant de ne partir*. She would not walk for fear of dirtying her shoes, *elle ne voulait pas marcher de crainte de salir ses souliers*, and not *de crainte de ne salir*.

ESSAY XXIII.

He flatters himself more than he (should), and he praises others less than
se flatter *devrait* *louer* *autre*
 they deserve.—My sister writes much better than she speaks.—Miss D*** is —
mériter *écrire*
 (quite another person) (to what) she was when she left us.
tout *autre* *qu'* *imp.* *quand* *pret. def.* *quitter*
 —They speak otherwise than they think.—Mrs. L*** is not better than she
autrement *penser*

was yesterday, and I believe her health will never improve, unless
imp. hier croire que santé se rétablir
 she goes into the country.—It (is) better to* delay a little, than
sub. pr. à campagne vaut différer
 to prosecute them now.—We are more numerous than when we were
de poursuivre à présent nombreux imp.
 in France.—Unless you punish him severely, he will not study.—
en sub. pr. punir sévèrement étudier
 Stop a moment, for fear my father should come and
Attendre de crainte que sub. pr. venir qu'il sub. pr.
 see you.—I will never forgive you, unless you ask his pardon.—
voir pardonner sub. pr. demander lui
 They will not set out before you are returned.—Wait till the rain
partir que sub. pr. être de retour Attendre sub. pr.
 is over.—He wrote to me two months before he went out to the
sub. imp. partir pour
 Indies.—She (was so afraid) I should tell you of* it, that she
avait si grand' peur que sub. imp. dire le
 made me promise never to* mention her name in your presence.—
pret. def. faire promettre de prononcer en présence
 Mr. S** (is very late) this evening; I am afraid, some misfortune has
tarde bien soir craindre qu'il quelque malheur soit
 happened (to him).—Miss T** is gone to* see her cousin; but the weather
arriver lui
 is so bad that we are apprehensive she will not return
mauvais craindre qu' sub. pr. revenir
 (to-night).—They (are not at all afraid) he will scold them.—They
ce soir ne craignent pas du tout qu' sub. pr. gronder
 tremble lest he should meet them.—I am not afraid to speak to him;
qu' sub. pr. rencontrer de
 but I tremble to (address) his wife.—I (am going out) for* a mo-
d' adresser la parole à vais sortir
 ment, take care the child does not fall.—I doubt whether he
sub. pr. tomber douter qu' sub. pret.
 has mentioned it (to her).—Take care you* do* not* fall.—He will not do
parler en lui de faire
 it for fear of displeasing you.
de déplaire

LESSON XXIV.

2. Of Interrogations.

Of the different modes of interrogation in which the nominative of the verb, if a pronoun, is placed after the verb.

RULE 1. When the nominative of a verb, employed interrogatively, is one of the pronouns *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles, ce, or on*; it is placed after the verb in a simple tense, and after the auxiliary in a compound one, with a hyphen (-) between the verb or the auxiliary and the pronoun. The words *does, do or did*, which are used in

When an interrogative and affirmative
sentence begins with combien, com-
ment, quand, où, d'où, par où, de
quoi, à qui, de quoi, à quoi, it
is sometimes indifferent to place
the nominative before or after the
verb; but the choice of these construc-
tions is a matter of taste, and de-
pends on the sound of the words. R. 234.

questions implying a wish to
know how long an action, or former-
habit, has been left off, require
me before the verb *le Comptien*
y a-t-il que vous n'avez écrit
à votre père. H. 62.

How long have you been learning?
Comptien y a-t-il que vous apprenez?
How long have you left off learning?
Comptien y a-t-il que vous n'apprenez
plus? H. 62.

The mode of interrogation by *est-ce que*
is also used with verbs that have but
one syllable in the first person (singu-
lar of the pres. ind. *Vouds-tu? mouds-tu,*
vouds-tu, might be mistaken for the
imperative *veugé, moudge, range*.
ledage however permits us to say
veugé? mouds-tu? dis-tu? vouds-tu,
vouds-tu? H. 82. See also Prov. Dict. 137.

Est-ce que is used not only to in-
terrogate, but at the same time to show
surprise. *Prov. Dict. 137.*
In interrogations the *e* of the pronoun
je is never cut off before a participle.
R. 87

interrogative sentences in English, are left out in French, except *did*, which, when being employed in the sense of *has* or *have*, is expressed by the corresponding person either singular or plural of the present of the indicative of the verb *avoir*, and the following verb is put in the past participle: as,—do you call? *appelez-vous?* shall I go with you? *irai-je avec vous?* how much did it cost you? *combien vous a-t-elle* coûté?* speaking of a watch.

But if the nominative of the verb be a substantive, or one of the pronouns *quelqu'un*, *le mien*, *le tien*, *le sien*, *le nôtre*, *le vôtre*, *le leur*, *la leur*, *les leurs*, *celui-ci*, *celui-là*, &c. instead of being one of the personal pronouns, as above, the sentence should then be construed by beginning with the substantive or pronoun, placing next the verb, and using immediately after it, in a simple tense, and after the auxiliary in a compound one, one of the personal pronouns *il*, *elle*, *ils* or *elles*, according to the gender and number of the substantive or pronoun going before: as,—is breakfast ready? *le déjeuner est-il prêt?* has any body told you so? *quelqu'un vous a-t-il dit cela?* was the battle lost? *la bataille fut-elle perdue?* as if it were in English—the breakfast is it ready? any body you has he told that? the battle was it lost?

Should the sentence begin by one of the pronouns—*qui*, who? *que*, what? *de qui*, of or from whom? *à qui*, to whom? *de quoi*, of what? *à quoi*, to what? or by one of the adverbs of interrogation—*où*, where? *d'où*, whence? *par où*, through what place? *comment*, how? *combien*, how much, how many? the pronouns *il*, *elle*, *ils* or *elles*, are then usually omitted, if the verb has no direct object depending on it, and the nominative of the verb is placed after the verb in a simple tense, and after the participle in a compound one; but if the verb

* *Observe*.—1. When a verb is used interrogatively, and ends with a vowel in the third person singular of any of its tenses, a *t*, with a hyphen on each side of it, is put between the verb and the pronouns *il*, *elle* and *on*, to avoid the harsh sound which would result from the meeting of the two vowels: as,—*parle-t-il?* does he speak? *danse-t-elle bien?* does she dance well? *viendra-t-on?* will they come? &c. and not *parle-il?* *danse-elle bien?* *viendra-on?*

2. An acute accent (') is required over the last *e*, in the first person singular of the present of the indicative, in all verbs which, being terminated with an *e* mute in that person, are used interrogatively; because the *e* has then an acute sound: as,—do I speak? *parlé-je?* do I suffer? *souffré-je?* and not—*parle-je?* *souffre-je?*

3. An acute accent is also required over the final *e* of the first person singular of the present and imperfect of the subjunctive, in a few verbs which, having their nominative placed after them to express a kind of wish or acclamation, are terminated with an *e* mute in the first person singular of these tenses: as,—may I! *puissé-je!* were I! *dussé-je!* &c.

4. When the first person singular of the present of the indicative of a verb has only one syllable, the expression *est-ce que* is sometimes used before the verb to express an interrogation, instead of placing the pronoun after it; this is done, in some instances, to avoid the harsh sound which would otherwise be produced from the pronoun being placed after the verb: as,—do I sleep? *est-ce que je dors?* and not *dors-je?* do I lose? *est-ce que je perds?* and not *perds-je?*

198

should have a direct object depending on it, one of the pronouns *il*, *elle*, *ils* or *elles*, must be employed and placed as in the preceding observation: as,—who is that young lady? *qui est cette demoiselle?* what were these ladies telling you? *que* vous disaient ces dames?* where is your son gone? *où est allé votre fils?* &c. In these sentences, the pronouns *il*, *elle*, and *elles*, are left out, because the verbs have no direct object depending on them; but in the following or any similar sentence one of the pronouns—*il*, *elle*, *ils* or *elles*, must be used: as,—how did the young lady find her way home last night? *comment mademoiselle trouva-t-elle son chemin hier au soir?* because the verb *trouver* has a direct object, which is *chemin*.

* *Note*.—In the example *que vous disaient ces dames?* *QUE* is the direct object of the verb *disaient*; and it will form an exception to the rule whenever so employed.

2. The interrogative expressions—*is this or that?—is not this or that?—are these or those?—are not these or those?* &c. are expressed in French thus: 1. *is this or that*, by—*est-ce là?* 2. *is not this or that*, by—*n'est-ce pas là?* 3. *are these or those*, by—*sont-ce là?* 4. *are not these or those*, by—*ne sont-ce pas là?* &c. according to the tense in which the verb *to be* is in English, and as it is in the singular or plural. The answer to these questions is made by the different tenses of the verb *être*, thus:—*ce l'est* ou *ce les sont*; *ce ne l'est pas* ou *ce ne les sont pas*, &c.: as,—*is this your carriage?* *est-ce là votre voiture?* yes, it is; *oui, ce l'est*. *Is not that your hat?* *n'est-ce pas là votre chapeau?* no, it is not: *non, ce ne l'est pas*. *Are these your children?* *sont-ce là vos enfans?* yes, they are; *oui, ce les sont*. *Was this your horse?* *était-ce là votre cheval?* yes, it was; *oui, ce l'était*.

The following kind of interrogation, in which the first part of the sentence is affirmative and the second interrogative with a negation, implying a wish that the thing mentioned may take place, or a certainty that it has taken place: as,—*you will come, will you not? you have written to him, have you not?* is expressed in French by translating the first part of the sentence literally, and using *n'est-ce pas?* for the second part, whatever may be the expression or tense of the verb in English: as,—*you will come, will you not?* *vous viendrez, n'est-ce pas?* *you have written to him, have you not?* *vous lui avez écrit, n'est-ce pas?* &c. as if it were in English—*you will come, is it not? you to him have written, is it not?*

But the next mode of interrogation in which we feel a kind of surprise at the thing mentioned taking or having taken place, the first part of the sentence being usually negative, and the second interrogative without negation: as,—*it does not rain, does it?—your father is not dead, is he?* is expressed in French by using—1. *est-ce que*, in the beginning of the sentence. 2. the nominative of the verb. 3. the verb; leaving out the negative used in the first part of the sentence in English, as likewise *does it? did it? or will it?* &c. which forms the second

When the verb is preceded by some of
these words, aussi, peut-être, encore, en
vain, à peine, du moins, au moins
and rarement the nom. pronoun may
follow the verb: Peut-être avez-vous
raison; aussi est-il votre ami R. 287
In interrogations the e of the pronoun je
is never cut off before a participle R. 287

De is used when you wish to add to what has been said, and of the same kind and meaning; de is used, when opposition is implied, and the latter part of the sentence has a contrary signification.

F.S. 125.

Adverbs of time, such as aujourd'hui, hier, demain, quelquefois, may be placed either before or after the verb. It is generally best to place them as near the beginning of the sentence, as possible. as Aujourd'hui je resterai à Paris. F.S. 82.

part of the sentence: as,—it does not rain, does it? *est-ce qu'il pleut?*
 your father is not dead, is he? *est-ce que votre père est mort?* as if it
 were in English—*is it that it rains? is it that your father is dead?*

When we feel surprised at any thing not taking place, *est-ce que* is
 also sometimes used to ask a question, whatever may be the mode of
 interrogation in English: as,—don't you go there sometimes? *est-ce*
que vous n'y allez pas quelquefois?

ESSAY XXIV.

Shall we go out to-day?—Will you come and* drink tea with us?—Does
sortir aujourd'hui Vouloir venir prendre chez
 any body call me?—Do I love her more tenderly than I (should)?—May I
on appeler aimer tendrement ne le devrais
 live to see those happy days!—(Were it even at the expense of) my life, I
vivre pour voir dussé-je y perdre la
 swear I will deliver her from the slavery to which she is reduced!—Do I
jurer que délivrer esclavage réduire
 sleep at church?—Do I sell impious books?—Did Mr. T** play
dormir église vendre impie pret. def. jouer
 last night? Yes; he performed the part of Henry the Fourth.—Did
hier au soir pret. def. remplir rôle
 any body tell you so?—Is the company arrived?—At what o'clock
quelqu'un pret. indef. dire cela compagnie arriver heure
 will dinner be ready?—Did not the servant tell you that he is not
dîner prêt servante pret. indef. dire
 awake?—Why has not Mr. T** accepted the two bills which I
eveillé Pourquoi accepter effet ai
 (brought) this morning?—Is Mr. P** (in the) counting-house?—Was the girl
apportés matin au bureau fille
 going to market, when I met her yesterday?—Is Mrs. C**
imp. aller marché pret. def. rencontrer hier
 (at home)? Yes, sir, she is (dressing).—Is not the (music-master) here? No;
chez elle à s'habiller maître de musique ici
 he (is just gone out).—What were* those ladies telling you?—How much
vient de sortir imp. dire Combien
 did* that coat cost you?—How many sisters has Mr. N**?—
habit pret. indef. coûter
 How is Mr. Z**?—Will not Miss S** come this evening?—Where
Comment se porter venir soir
 is Miss gone?—(Which way) did the lady go?—In what
Mademoiselle aller Par où pret. indef. Dans
 year was Lewis the Sixteenth crowned?—(How long) did he
année pret. def. Louis couronner Combien de temps
 reign?—How did* your sister find her way home*
pret. def. régner pret. def. trouver chemin
 last night?—Why did* she not wait for me?—Is this your hat?
hier au soir Pourquoi pret. def. attendre chapeau
 Yes, it is; give it me.—Is not that your carriage?—No, it is not.—Was
donner voiture imp.

200

that your house? Yes, it was.—Are these your horses? No, they are not.
maison imp. cheval
 —You speak French, don't you?—They live in the country, do they not?—
demeurer à campagne
 He was a* coal merchant, was he not?—They will come, will they
imp. de charbon marchand venir
 not?—It does not rain, does it?—She is not dead, is she?—Do you not go
pleuvoir mort
 sometimes to the opera? No, never.

LESSON XXV.

Of Adverbs.

Adverbs are words which we use with verbs, adjectives, and sometimes with other adverbs, to express some quality or circumstance respecting them: as,—he reads well, *il lit bien*. A truly good man, *un très-bon homme*. She writes very correctly, *elle écrit très-correctement*.

Adverbs may be divided into simple and compound.

A simple adverb consists of a single word: as,—*toujours*, always; *jamais*, never. Compound adverbs, on the contrary, are formed of two or more words: as,—*à la Française*, after the French way; *à l'Anglaise*, after the English manner.

Many adverbs are formed from adjectives by the simple addition of *ment* to the termination of those which end with a vowel: as,—*sage*, *sagement*; *poli*, *poliment*; whereas *ment* is added to the feminine termination of those which end with a consonant: as,—*grand*, (m.) *grande*, (f.) *grandement*, (adv.) If the adjective be terminated with *nt*, as, *prudent*, the final letters (*nt*) must be changed into *m*, before the adverbial termination *ment* be added to it: as,—*prudent*, *prudem*, *prudemment*.

Place of Adverbs in the Sentence.

Adverbs are usually placed after the verb in a simple tense, and between the auxiliary and the participle in a compound one, except *aujourd'hui*, to day; *hier*, yesterday; *demain*, to-morrow; and the adverbs composed of several words, as also the simple adverbs that either have or can have an object depending on them, which are put after the participle: as,—*elle rit toujours*, she always laughs. *Je lui ai souvent parlé*, I have often spoken to him. *Je l'ai vu hier*, I saw him yesterday. *Il sera élu aujourd'hui*, he will be elected to-day. *Nous y avons dîné à la Française*, we have dined there in the French style, &c.

The following adverbs of time *hier*, *aujourd'hui*, *demain*, *depuis*, *en- suite*, *toutôt* *tard*, *quatre*, follow the participle in English, as *je l'aurais apporté hier*. In simple ten- ses they may either precede or fol- low the verb, *aujourd'hui il pleut* or *il pleut aujourd'hui*. (See page 213.)

The adverbs *bien*, *mal*, *meux*, *mal*, *jamais*, *trop* are generally placed before the predicate of the inf. as, *il est dangereux de trop lire*. *Puis* in the sense of *now*, *no longer* shall always precede it, as *J'ai déterminé de se bien reposer*, *je suis décidé à me plus voir*.

R. 223

When the adverb *more* is joined to a noun, it is translated by *plus* de with that noun, but when it modifies a verb or relates to an antecedent, *davantage* is proper and follows the verb or participle.

R. 229

When we wish to express disappoin- tment or criticism, *bien* should be used otherwise *beaucoup*.

R. 229

Davantage is always used abso- lutely, either at the end of a sen- tence, or at the end of a clause.

S. S. 291.

Davantage is used after a verb, and re- fers to a preceding noun whether or before the verb. — *je n'en veux pas davantage* L. S. 10.

He now writes plus tôt in two words.
plus tôt signifies rather and im-
plies preference; plus tôt only re-
lates to time, its contrary is plus tard.

R. 225.

When the adverb has long referred
to a situation still continuing,
it must be rendered by combien
y a-t-il que as How long have you
been ill? combien y a-t-il que
vous êtes malade? You are still
ill, the situation continues; but
if the situation has ceased to ex-
ist, it must be expressed by com-
bien de temps, as combien de
temps avez-vous été malade?
You are no longer so. N. 234

Comme means to what degree
with what activity; comme
relates to the manner. R. 234

When the adverb has long means
what length of time, and related
to a future, it is translated by
combien de temps, but when it
means what time, jusqu'à
quand is used. N. 234

Adverbs may also be placed before the verb in French, and they are frequently used at the beginning of a sentence or of a part of it, but never between the verb and its nominative, as it is often the case in English: as,—*hier*, *je déjeunerai chez M. C* **, *et, aujourd'hui, je dînerai chez Mademoiselle T* **; I breakfasted yesterday at Mr. C's; and I shall dine to-day at Miss T.'s.

The adverbs *bien*, well; *mal*, badly; *mieux*, better; usually precede the verb in the present of the infinitive mood, but in the other moods and tenses they are placed after it in a simple tense, and between the auxiliary and the participle in a compound one: as,—to behave well, *se bien conduire*. She did right, *elle fit bien*. You have done wrong, *vous avez mal fait*.

Observe.—Often enough is construed into French by *assez souvent*, and not *souvent assez*, because *assez* must precede *souvent* in French. Too much, too many, by *beaucoup trop*, and not *trop beaucoup*. Very much by *beaucoup*, and never by *très-beaucoup*. So much, so many, by *tant*, and not by *si beaucoup*. As much, as many, by *autant*.

When *bien* comes in French before another adverb, it means *very, much, quite*: as,—*bien, très ou fort tard*, very late. *Bien ou beaucoup moins*, much less. *Bien assez*, quite enough. But when *bien* follows another adverb, it signifies *well*: *assez bien*, pretty well. *Pas si bien ou moins bien*, not so well. *Très ou fort bien*, very well. *Aussi bien*, as well. *Si bien*, so well.

Rather so is construed into French by *un peu*.

There are some adjectives which become adverbs when they are used with a verb to express some circumstance respecting it: as,—she sings right, *elle chante juste*; he sang wrong all the evening, *il chanta faux toute la soirée*; that smells badly, *cela sent mauvais*.

ESSAY XXV.

We seldom repent of talking† little, but frequently of talking too much.
On rarement se repentir parler peu souvent trop
 —Never do to others what you (would not like them to do unto you).—I have
faire à autrui ce que ne voudriez pas qu'on vous fît
 always advised my children to behave well, and never to wrong
conseiller à de se conduire de faire tort à
 (any body).—Courtiers often pass all their life in the hope of attaining
personne Courtisan passer espoir parvenir à des
 honours which they never obtain.—Your letter is very badly written; I
obtenir écrire
 am afraid you have written it hastily.—He does very wrong in
craindre que sub. pret. à la hâte faire mal de
 allowing his daughters to frequent the theatres so often.—If you do not
permettre à fille de fréquenter spectacle
 shun gambling, you will insensibly get a taste (for it).—Perform
éviter jeu insensiblement acquérir le goût en Remplir

† For the future, the verbs which the pupil will find in the present participle in English, must, when depending on the preposition *de* or *à*, be put in the present of the infinitive in French.

202

your duty well, and you will merit his esteem.—I do not think she
devoir mériter estime croire qu' sub.
 did right in sending her son to Paris to learn mathematics.—
pret. faire bien d' pour apprendre mathématiques f. pl.
 French is* much better taught in France than in England.—Interpret
¹On ⁵ ⁸ ⁴ ²enseigner ⁶en *Interpréter*
 favourably the actions of (others,) and do not think ill of your (neighbours).—
autrui penser prochain m. sing.
 If she had acted conformably to the rules of honour and justice, nobody would
agir conformément règle personne
 have spoken ill of her.—We breakfasted yesterday (in the French style);
pret. def. déjeuner à la Française
 and, to-day, we shall dine (after the English manner).—(What is done) with
dîner à l'Anglaise Ce qui se fait
 cheerfulness is generally well done.—He comes often enough.—They have
plaisir ordinairement venir
 (too great a) confidence in him; they will certainly repent it.—
beaucoup trop de confiance en certainement se repentir en
 (That is) quite enough, I thank you.—She is as well (at your house) as
En voilà bien remercier chez vous qu'
 here.—These flowers do not smell so badly as those.—How incorrectly she
ci sentir mauvais Qu' faux
 sang all the evening!—You take (a great deal) too much physic,
pret. def. chanter soirée beaucoup de médecine
 it will ruin your constitution.—If she wishes to get better, (she must)
cela détruire desirer de se rétablir il faut qu'elle
 drink much less wine.
sub. pr. boire de

LESSON XXVI.

Of Prepositions.

Prepositions are words which we use to connect other words with one another, and to show their relation to each other: as,—*il passa de France en Angleterre*, he went from France to England.

Manner of expressing in French the prepositions *from*, *to*, *about*, *over*, *on*, *in*, *upon*, *against*, *after*, *by*, *with*, *according to*, *for*, &c.

1. *From* and *to*. When these prepositions are used to denote the distance or the going from one place to another, they are rendered into French, thus—*from*, by *de*; and *to*, if before the name of a town, village, or place, by *à*; but *to* is construed by *en*, if it occurs before the name of a country or kingdom: as,—from London to Brighton, *de Londres à Brighton*. He went from England to France and from France into Italy, *il alla d'Angleterre en France et de France en Italie*.

If the substantive which is used after *from* should be repeated after *to*—*to* should then be expressed by *en*, as before the names of countries:

Avant denotes generally a proximity of time, and is used in opposition to après, after. Devant marks a situation, and its contrary is dernière behind. R. 217

Durant is enclosed both by durant and pendant, but the former denotes a continual duration. R. 219

Entre and parmi: the first is said of two objects only. Parmi is said of several and will be followed by a plural noun or a collective. R. 218

When auprès and près serve to denote proximity of place, the former signifies particularly next to. Auprès also gives an idea of assiduity and sentiment 220. R.

Au travers is always followed by the preposition de, and à travers is not.

Au travers de la foule

À travers la foule

Avant denotes priority of time

Il est arrivé avant moi.

Il also marks priority of place

Mettez ce chapitre avant l'autre.

Devant is a preposition of place, & has the meaning, in front of; opposite to, in front of.

Il a pêché devant le roi. Devant la porte

See next page

When the sentence begins with *depuis*
its corresponding preposition is
jusqu'à, but if the sentence starts with
the preposition *à* it is used. *depuis*
London jusqu'à Paris, or *de London*
à Paris. R. 220

Devenez, lorsque cho to make other
as *c'est mon ancien*, il marche devant moi
G. G. 296

see once hours: G. G. 37.

as,—she is always going from shop to shop, *elle va toujours de boutique en boutique*.

When *from* and *to* are used to express a duration of time, as in this sentence—*from morning to night*, *from* is expressed by *depuis*, and *to* by *jusqu'*, with *à*, or *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, or *aux*, according as the preposition or article is required: as,—from morning to night, *depuis le matin jusqu'au soir*.

From, coming after a verb denoting that we either come, return, were returning, or will return, from the house of somebody, is construed into French by *de chez*, before the name of the person or persons mentioned: as,—I come or return from Mr. B.'s, *je viens ou reviens de chez M. B***;—we were returning from Messrs. L.'s house, *nous revenions de chez MM. L***.

To or *at*, employed after a verb denoting equally that we either go, have been, or will go to the house of somebody, is expressed in French by *chez*, before the name of the person alluded to: as,—I am going to your house, *je vais chez vous*; he was going to Mrs. S.'s, *il allait chez Madame S***.

Chez can only be used before the names of persons and never before those of places. We cannot say,—*en revenant de chez Pall-Mall*, *j'ai été chez la maison de Somerset*, in returning from Pall-Mall, I have been to Somerset-House; but—*en revenant de Pall-Mall*, *j'ai été à la maison de Somerset*; because *Pall-Mall* and *Somerset-House* are two places which require the prepositions *de* and *à*.

To, employed in the sense of *so far as* or *to the*, is expressed in French by *jusqu'*, with *à*, or *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, or *aux*, according as the preposition or article is required: as,—I will prosecute him to the end, *je le poursuivrai jusqu'au bout*.

2. *About*.—When this preposition is used to denote the different parts of a day or year, the date of a month, or any time in general, it is expressed in French by *vers*, with the definite article *le*, *la*, or *les*, before the succeeding word. It is also sometimes construed by *sur*, before the different hours of a day, and in this sense the definite article *les* is used before the hour mentioned: as,—it was about the evening, *c'était vers le soir*; it will be about six o'clock, *ce sera vers ou sur les six heures*; he will come about July, *il viendra vers le mois de Juillet*; about the tenth, *vers le dix*; I went there about one o'clock, *j'y allai sur les une heure*, although *une* is singular.

About, denoting an approximate number or quantity of a thing, or preceding a noun which expresses the depth, height, dimension, weight, or measure of any thing, is expressed in French by *environ*, *à peu près*, or *près de*, according to the import of the sentence: as,—there were about two hundred people, *il y avait environ deux cents personnes*; this tree is about twenty-four feet high, *cet arbre a près de vingt-quatre pieds de hauteur*; there were about ten bushels of wheat, *il y avait environ ou à peu près dix boisseaux de froment*.

204

When *about* is used before a personal pronoun, after a tense of the verb *to have*, it is expressed in French by *sur* : as,—I have no money about me, *je n'ai point d'argent sur moi*.

3. In, *en* and *dans*.—These prepositions are used in so many different significations, that it is almost impossible to give rules for the cases in which *en* or *dans* is requisite.

En is, however, used to express the length of time spent in doing a thing, whereas *dans* denotes that after such a time is elapsed, such or such a thing will take place : as,—they now go in two hours from Paris to Versailles, *on va à présent en deux heures de Paris à Versailles*; in this sentence, *en* conveys the meaning that two hours are spent in going from Paris to Versailles; but in the next—I shall set out in two hours for Versailles, *je partirai dans deux heures pour Versailles*; *dans* implies that, when two hours are elapsed, I shall set out.

En cannot be followed by the definite article *le*, *la*, or *les*, except in a few cases in which it admits of *la* or *l'* : as,—*en l'absence d'un tel*, in the absence of such a one; *en l'état où je suis réduit*, in the state to which I am reduced; *en la présence de Dieu*, in the presence of God; *en l'honneur de Madame une telle*, in honour of Madame such a one; but *dans* may be accompanied by *le*, *la*, or *les* : as,—*dans l'hiver*, in winter; *dans le printemps*, in the spring; *dans l'été*, in the summer; *dans l'automne*, in the autumn, &c. and not *en l'hiver*; *en le printemps*, &c.

4. *On* and *upon*.—When these prepositions are used before the name of a person on whom we either have called or intend to call, they are expressed in French by *chez*, and the verb *to call* or *to wait* is construed into French by *passer* : as,—I shall call upon you, *je passerai chez vous*; she called on me yesterday, *elle passa hier chez moi*.

On or *upon*, being used after any tense of the verb *to play*, before the name of an instrument on which somebody plays, is expressed in French by *de*, or by the article *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, or *des*, according as the preposition or article is required : as,—he plays beautifully on the violin, *il joue admirablement du violon*.

On or *upon*, employed before a word that denotes opportunity, occasion, or any time in general; or, also, before the words *right*, *left*, *horseback*, and *foot*, is expressed in French by *à*, or *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, or *aux*, according as the preposition or article is required : as,—upon the first opportunity, *à la première occasion*; I met him on his arrival, *je le rencontrai à son arrivée*; you will turn on the right, *vous tournerez à droite*; it is on your left from here, *c'est à gauche d'ici*; I shall go there on horseback, *j'irai à cheval*; she will go on foot, *elle ira à pied*; on the news of his arrival, *à la nouvelle de son arrivée*.

5. *Over*.—When this preposition is employed to express that a thing is done or past, it is expressed in French by *passé*, *fini*, or *fait* : as,—now the danger is over, we... *maintenant que le danger est passé*, nous... my work will soon be over, *mon ouvrage sera bientôt fini*.

In after a superlative is rendered by
de; de la, and des. R. 242

In coming before a verb is generally
expressed by à R. 250

Days points out, positively. En denotes
a place in an indefinite manner.

R. 217
J'ai vécu en pays étranger
Elle était dans sa chambre

When in Eng. a noun is preceded by
the definite article, or a possessive
pronoun, or a denotation; in &
into are generally expressed by
dans.

Il demeure dans la maison près du parc.

But when the noun is used in an
indefinite sense, and without arti-
cle or pronoun in, into, are used.
by expressed by en

En paix et en guerre. S. 4. 296

Deus, over, above, dessus, under. de-
hors, out, dehors, within, are propo-
tion when opposed to one another. In that
case the last only is followed by the word
they govern. des mêmes de hors et dessus l'écrit.
R. 208

With is seldom expressed in such sen-
tences as *She came in with tears*
in her eyes. Elle entra les larmes
aux yeux. He was standing before me
with his mouth open, looking, &c.
Il était devant moi, la bouche
ouverte, regardant &c. N. 47.
By is expressed *by de* after a compa-
rative R. 244.

With preceded *by* a participles is rendered
in French *by de*; a tree loaded with
fruit *un arbre chargé de fruit* R. 212

Where is said of place and time. *En-*
vers is said of persons R. 218.

Where is said of opinion, and *l'avis*
of practice. R. 218.

For is expressed *by depuis* to denote
the time extension of a period of time;
by pendant to denote the duration,
and *by pour* to express the end R. 218
Pour never expresses duration of time.

See Page III. 152

Over, in the sense of *through*, is also construed into French by *par* : as,—he has travelled all over Italy, *il a voyagé par toute l'Italie*. It is likewise sometimes expressed by *de l'autre côté de* : as,—over the way, *de l'autre côté du chemin*.

6. *Against, after, and on*.—These prepositions are frequently expressed in French by *à* : as,—against to-morrow, *à demain* ; against our return, *à notre retour* ; I will sing after my own way, *je chanterai à ma manière* ; she dresses after the English way, *elle s'habille à l'Anglaise*.

7. *By and with* are sometimes expressed by *à* : as,—cloth with three threads, *de l'étoffe à trois fils* ; do you sell these grapes by the pound ? *vendez-vous ce raisin à la livre* ? this castle is built with lime and cement, *ce château est bâti à chaux et à ciment*.

8. *According to, as, for, and several others*, are also sometimes expressed by *à* : as,—this hat is not according to her taste, *ce chapeau n'est pas à son goût* ; I take you as or for a witness, *je vous prends à témoin* ; to fight with swords, *se battre à l'épée*.

The above prepositions have several other significations, which can only be learnt by practice. They are frequently used after a verb in English to form a part of its signification : as, to read over, *parcourir* ; to give over, *abandonner* ; I have my shoes on, *je suis chaussé* ; put your hat on, *couvrez-vous* ; go on, *avancez*.

Of the Place and Repetition of Prepositions.

GENERAL RULE.—Prepositions are placed in French before the words which they govern, and never after them, as is frequently the case in English : as,—whom do you complain of ? *de qui vous plaignez-vous* ? and not—*qui vous plaignez-vous de* ? What are you speaking about ? *de quoi parlez-vous* ? and not *quoi parlez-vous de* ? as if it were in English : *of whom complain you ? about what speak you ?*

The prepositions *à, de, and en*, are generally repeated in French before every noun, pronoun, or verb in the present of the infinitive mood, which they govern, whether they are or are not repeated in English : as,—the same prejudices are found in Europe, Asia, Africa, and even in America, *on trouve les mêmes préjugés en Europe, en Asie, en Afrique, et jusqu'en Amérique*. You will receive a letter either from him or from me, *vous recevrez une lettre de lui ou de moi*.

All other prepositions, and particularly those which have two or three syllables, are repeated in French, when the substantives which they govern either have different significations or stand in opposition to each other ; but never, or very seldom, when the substantives are nearly synonymous : as,—your book is in this room or in the other, *votre livre est dans cette chambre ou dans l'autre*. In this example, *dans* is repeated, because there is a marked opposition between the two rooms ; but in the next—*passer sa vie dans la mollesse et l'oisiveté*, to pass

one's life in effeminacy and idleness; *dans* is not repeated, because the substantives *mollesse* and *oisiveté* are nearly synonymous.

ESSAY XXVI.

They now go in two days from London to Paris, and in two hours
On à présent aller Londres
 from Paris to St. Cloud.—We went from Switzerland to Italy, and from
pret. def. Suisse
 Italy to Turkey.—You really pass all your time in going from shop to
Turquie réellement passer à boutique
 shop, from street to street, and from place to place.—(Is it) far from here to
rue Y a-t-il loin ici
 the (Regent's Park)?—He made me wait from eight o'clock (in the)
Parc du Régent pret. def. faire attendre du
 morning till four in the afternoon; and after all I could not speak to
matin de après-midi après tout pret. def. pouvoir
 him.—We returned yesterday from Mrs. L***'s, in four hours.—When
pret. def. revenir hier
 are you going to Lady D.'s?—(As I was going) this morning to the king's palace,
En allant
 I (met) Lord S***, who was coming back from the Tower with his
ai rencontré imp. revenir Tour
 lady and children.—We go out (every day), from seven-(in the) morning till
dame sortir tous les jours du
 nine, and we study from ten till one, and sometimes till two.—That
étudier quelquefois
 unfortunate accident happened to me about the evening.—I will call
malheureux pret. def. arriver soir passer
 about one o'clock to arrange that little business.—We expect our ships
pour arranger affaire attendre bâtiment
 from the West Indies, about the middle of August.—She will write to
Occidental Indes, f. pl. milieu Août écrire
 you about the twelfth.—At what o'clock did you call on me yesterday?
pret. def. 2 3 1
 —I was (at your house) about ten or eleven o'clock.—There were about
imp. chez vous les 3 imp. 4
 three hundred and sixty people this afternoon, in a room of about fifty
3 6 7 8 personne 1 2 après-midi salle environ
 feet long and thirty-five wide.—(There will be) about twenty bushels of
longueur sur largeur Il y aura boisseaux
 wheat.—I have no money about me.—In three or four days, I will see Mr. L***
froment voir
 about that affair.—In two hours, the prince will set off for Richmond.—
touchant partir
 —(How long) will he be going there?—About one hour and a half.—I
Combien de temps à 2 1 y 4
 went there, the other day, in one hour and* twenty minutes.—In
pret. def. 6 5 y 1 2 3
 autumn and winter, I sleep in town; but in the spring and summer, I reside
coucher à la dans résider

When an adj. used comparatively requires a preposition before the next substantive, the same preposition is repeated after *que*, if the second part of the comparison is dependent on the same adj.

R. 244

When *le* *la* *les* come after a prop. they are usually left out in French, then the preposition becomes an adverb.
Approchez du feu, j'en suis tout auprès.
Come near the fire. I am quite near it.

G.B. 236

The word governed by the preposition may be sometimes understood, especially in familiar language. *Il a pris son manteau et s'en est allé* *à l'aise*, he took his cloak and went away with it. R. 218.

The following prepositions require *de* before the noun or pronoun which they govern

<i>auprès</i>	} <i>near</i>	<i>au-dessus</i> under
<i>près</i>		<i>autour</i> around
<i>proche</i>		<i>le long</i> along)
<i>au-dessus</i> , above.		<i>vis-à-vis</i> opposite

In conversation and in the familiar style *de* is sometimes omitted after *près*, *proche* and *vis-à-vis*.

G.B. 297

in the country.—We never go out in the absence of our father.—We have drawn
 à *sortir* ————— *tirer*
 upon you at three months' sight; and we flatter ourselves that you will honour
de vue *se flatter* *faire honneur*
 our demand.—You will be delighted to hear her play on the harp.—Tell
 à *demande* *ravi* *de entendre* *jouer* *Dire*
 them that they will hear (from me), on the first opportunity.—Which is
recevoir de mes nouvelles *occasion*
 the way to go to the Opera?—Take the first street on the right, then the
pour *Opéra* *Prendre* *puis*
 second on the left, and you will see the (Opera-house) before you.—On the
voir *Opéra* *devant*
 news of her arrival, we set out on horseback for London.—We
arrivée *pret. def. partir* à *cheval* *pret. def.*
 met them going on foot to the fair.—Put on your boots or shoes.—
qui allaient *pied* *faire Met're* *vos*
 Go on.—She has travelled all over Africa and America.—Have patience, the
Avancer *voyager*
 operation will soon be over.—Although the physicians have given her
bientôt *Quoique* *médecin* *sub. pret.* *abandonner*
 over, I hope she will recover.—I (shall be very happy) to render you that
espérer *se rétablir* *me ferai un plaisir* *de*
 service, upon my return from the continent.—Every one acts after his own *
retour *Chacun* *agir*
 way, and according to * his (taste.)——My daughter likes to dress
manière *suivant* *goûts pl.* *aimer à s'habiller*
 (after the French fashion), and I like to dress (after the English style).—
à la Française *moi* *à l'Anglaise*
 Have you any stockings with three threads?—Don't you sell (these grapes) by
bas *ce raisin*
 the pound?—The walls of this ancient castle are built with lime and cement.
mur *château* *bâtir*
 —I take you as a witness that we shall fight with swords.—That is not quite
se battre *épée* *Cela* *tout-à-fait*
 after my taste.—Their house is situated in a delightful spot, which presents
 à *situer* *charmant lieu*
 at once a fine view of the sea, of the town, and of the country.——That
à la fois *vue*
 young lady is uncommonly clever: she teaches drawing, singing, and
demoiselle *extraordinairement habile* *enseigne à dessiner* *chanter*
 dancing.—You will see the same thing in (every country): in France, England,
danser *voir* *dans tous les pays* *en*
 Italy, and Spain.—I left my gloves, yesterday morning, on my bed
pret. def. *laisser* *gant* *sur lit*
 or on yours.—They pass all their time in softness and idleness in the country;
passer *mollesse* *oisiveté* *à*
 but in town they are engaged with their French, Italian, and music.——I
à la *occupé* *à* *Italien*
 went last year to Poland, Germany, Sweden, and Russia. I think
pret. def. *année* *Pologne* *Allemagne* *Suède* *Russie*

208

this summer I shall visit England, Scotland, and Ireland.—In our
⁵ ⁶ ²que ³ ⁴aller ⁷en ^{Écosse} ^{Irlande} ^{Dans}
 tour through Italy, we went to Florence, Venice, and Rome; and
 voyage en pret. def. Venise
 we returned to London by Geneva and Dover.—Are you not indebted
 pret. def. retourner Genève par Douvres redevable
 for your life to the cares of every kind, which she took of you during
 de la aux soin tout espèce pret. indef. rendre pendant
 your illness in America?—How could you, without fear and shame,
 maladie en Comment imp. pouvoir crainte pudeur
 (hold such language)?
 tenir de tels propos

LESSON XXVII.

Of Conjunctions and Interjections.

I. OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions are words which we use to connect sentences together and sometimes only words: as,—*vous et moi*, you and I.

The principal conjunctions in French are:—*et*, *mais*, *si*, *ou*, *afin que*, *car*, *aussi*, *ni*, *or*, *donc*, *que*, *parce que*, *quoique*, *soit que*, *pour que*, *pourvu que*, *aussitôt que*, *quand*, *puisque*, *lorsque*, *de peur que*, *de crainte que*, *à moins que*, *avant que*, *depuis que*, *jusqu'à ce que*, *cependant*, *c'est pourquoi*, *comme*.

The conjunction *ni*, (neither and nor,) must be repeated in French before every word which it modifies, whether its equivalent in English be repeated or not. No article is used in French before the word which follows *ni*: as,—he has neither gold nor silver, *il n'a ni or ni argent*. Religion is neither austere, terrible, nor cruel, *la religion n'est ni farouche, ni affreuse, ni cruelle*.

Que is employed in French between two verbs: 1. In the sense of *that*, either expressed or understood in English: as,—I know she will come, *je sais qu'elle viendra*.

2. *Que* is likewise used in the middle of a sentence for a great many other conjunctions, and particularly for the following:—*si*, if; *quoique*, though, although; *afin que*, in order that; *quand*, *lorsque*, when; *comme*, as; *puisque*, since; *à moins que*, unless; *avant que*, before; *cependant*, yet; *de peur que*, lest; *de crainte que*, for fear; *depuis que*, since; and *jusqu'à ce que*, till or until. The verb which follows *que* is put in the indicative or subjunctive in French, according as the conjunction represented by *que* requires it: as,—if I have not saluted you, it is because I did not know you, *si je ne vous ai pas salué, c'est que je ne vous connaissais pas*; for *c'est parce que je ne vous connaissais pas*. We shall not set out before it is light, *nous ne partirons pas, qu'il ne soit jour*; for *avant qu'il ne soit jour*. Wait till he is arrived, *attendez qu'il soit arrivé*; for *jusqu'à ce qu'il soit arrivé*.

101

Come, that I may speak to you, *approchez, que je vous parle* ; for *afin que je vous parle, &c.*

3. *Que* is also employed in the second part of a sentence, to avoid the repetition of the conjunction occurring in the first part, and the succeeding verb is put in the indicative or subjunctive, according as the conjunction used in the first part of the sentence requires it. In this case, the second part of the sentence generally begins by *and* in English, and the conjunction is understood : as,—if you love her, and you wish to persuade her of it, *si vous l'aimez, et que* vous vouliez le lui persuader* ; instead of—*et si vous voulez le lui persuader*. Since he was your friend, and you were so much indebted to him, *puisque'il était votre ami, et que vous lui étiez si redevable* ; for—*et puisque vous lui étiez si redevable, &c.*

4. *Que* is also used for *when, but, or than*, in the second part of a sentence, when the words *hardly, scarcely, sooner, or no sooner*, are employed in the first part : as,—he was scarcely arrived in France when he hastened to go to Paris ; or,—he had no sooner arrived in France, but, or than, he hastened to go to Paris ; *il était à peine arrivé en France, qu'il se hâta d'aller à Paris*.

5. *Que* stands likewise for *how or how much*, before an adjective or a verb, to express admiration, wonder, or surprise, but the adjective following *how or how much* is usually put after the verb in French : as,—how unfortunate I am ! *que je suis malheureux !* how he likes apples ! *qu'il aime les pommes !*

When *how much* or *how many* occurs before a substantive in the beginning of a sentence, to denote admiration, wonder, or surprise, it is also expressed by *que*, with *de* before the substantive : as,—how many friends he has ! *qu'il a d'amis !* But when *how much* or *how many* either depends on a preposition or is used to ask a question : as,—to how many misfortunes have I not been exposed ! how many brothers has he ? it is expressed in French by *combien de*, and not by *que* : as,—to how many misfortunes have I not been exposed ! *à combien de malheurs n'ai-je pas été exposé !* how many brothers has he ? *combien de frères a-t-il ?*

This sentence—*may I die if I said so !* or any other of the same kind, beginning by *may*, or some similar expression, and denoting either a wish, command, imprecation, or indignation, is expressed in French by *que*, in the beginning of the sentence, with the following verb in the subjunctive mood : as,—may I die if I said so ! *que je meure si je l'ai dit !*

Observe.—1. The present of the indicative must be used in French, instead of the future or present of the subjunctive in English, as also the imperfect of the indicative, in place of the preterit or conditional in English, after *si*, (if,) mean-

* The conjunction *que*, used in the second part of a sentence to avoid the repetition of *si* employed in the first, governs the following verb in the subjunctive mood.

210

ing *supposé que*: as,—we shall go into the country, if it be fine weather, *nous irons à la campagne*, s'il fait beau temps, and not *s'il fera* ou *s'il fasse*. I should go with you, if you would allow me, *j'irais avec vous*, si vous vouliez me le permettre, and not *si vous voudriez*. But the future and conditional tenses must be employed in French as in English, after *si*, signifying *whether*, if a future action be implied: as,—I do not know if they will come to-morrow, *je ne sais pas s'ils viendront demain*, and not *s'ils viennent*; whereas the present of the indicative is requisite in both languages, if a present action be mentioned: as,—do you know if they are coming now? *savez-vous s'ils viennent à présent?* and not *s'ils viendront*. In either case, *si* is always preceded by a verb implying doubt or uncertainty.

2. The future tense must be used in French, although the present of the indicative be usually employed in English, after the conjunctions: *lorsque*, *quand*, when; *aussitôt que*, as soon as, and any other of the same kind, implying futurity: as,—I shall go when I have finished my letter, *j'irai quand j'aurai fini ma lettre*, and not *quand j'ai fini*. Come as soon as you have done, *venez aussitôt que vous aurez fini*, and not *que vous avez fini*; &c.

2. OF INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections, as the term implies, are words thrown in between the parts of a sentence, to express the sudden emotions or passions of the speaker. They are only single exclamations, but which frequently supply the place of a whole sentence.

They may be divided as follows:—

- | | | | |
|--|---------------|--|---------------------|
| 1. For grief or affliction:— | | 7. For surprise:— | |
| English. | French. | Oh! | Oh! |
| Ah! | Ah! | Bless me! | Miséricorde! |
| Alas! | Hélas! | Dear me! O dear! | Bon dieu! |
| Ay! | Aie! | O heavens! | O ciel! |
| Oh! | Ahi! | Lack-a-day! | Ouais! |
| O! O dear! | Hé! | | |
| Pho! | Ouf! | 8. For encouraging:— | |
| 2. For joy and desire:— | | Come on! | Allons! ça! ho ça! |
| Ah! | Ah! | Cheer up! | Courage! |
| Well! | Bon! | Hold fast! | Tenez ferme! |
| Huzza! | Vive la joie! | 9. To warn, and make people get out of the way:— | |
| 3. For fear:— | | Clear the way! | Gare! |
| Ah! | Ah! | Hem! | Hem! |
| Oh! | Hé! | Oh! | Oh! |
| 4. For aversion, contempt, and disgust:— | | Look, look! | Voyez! |
| Away! | Allez! | Lo! | Tenez! |
| Fie! | Fi! | Hark! | Écoutez! |
| Fie upon! | Fi donc! | 10. To call:— | |
| 5. For derision:— | | Hold! | Holà! St! |
| Oh! | Oh! | Soho! | Hé! |
| Pshaw! | Hé! zest! | 11. For silence:— | |
| 6. For admiration:— | | Hush! | Chut! Paix! |
| Oh! | Oh! | Hist! | St! |
| Hah! | Ha! | 12. For salutation:— | |
| Oh! Hah! | Eh! | Hail! | Salut! |
| | | Welcome! | Soyez le bien venu! |

Observe.—Although *bon*, *vive la joie*, *allez*, *miséricorde*, *bon Dieu*,

103

allons, courage, tenez ferme, voyez, tenez, écoutez, salut, soyez le bien venu, O ciel, paix, tout beau, be not interjections of themselves, they become such when they are used to express sudden affections or emotions of the soul: so, also, the following words, and several others of the same kind, used in Molière:—*Morbleu!* zounds! *parbleu!* in good faith! *diantre!* the deuce! &c.

The interjection *O* has not been specifically mentioned among the above, being seldom used but in conjunction with a substantive, to express certain passions or emotions of the soul: as,—*O siècle!* *O temps!* *O mœurs!* *O volupté suprême!* *O mon fils!* &c.

ESSAY XXVII.

They ^{pret. def. épargner} spared neither children, women, nor old men:—She has ^{ni vieillard} neither honour nor decency.—Come here, that I ^{décence Venir} may speak to you.—The ^{sub. pr. Au} moment we die, our fate is determined for ever.—We shall not set out ^{que mourir sort déterminer toujours partir} before it ^{sub. pr. Attendre} is light.—Wait till (the rain is over).—A miser (might ^{il ne pleuve plus} have) all the gold in the world, yet he would not be satisfied.—As you have ^{raît or content} had (so many) misfortunes, and you cannot pay your debts, you (ought) to* ^{tant de malheur pouvoir payer dette devriez} compound with your creditors.—Since she has so many perfections, and you ^{composer créanciers Puisqu'} love her so tenderly, why don't you marry her?—Unless your ^{tendrement pourquoi épouser à moins que} father ^{sub. pr. la moitié ce qu' devoir sub. pr.} pays me half of what he owes me, and gives me security for the remainder, I shall go to law with* him.—Although ^{caution reste poursuivre Quoiqu'} they ^{sub. pr. posséder biens sub. pr. jouir de vie} possess great riches, and enjoy all the pleasures of life, they are not happy.—I know she trembles for fear her master ^{savoir trembler maître sub. pr. renvoyer} should send her away*.—The king ^{imp. être} had no sooner arrived, but he ^{pret. def. faire} ordered (the gardens to be illuminated).—The ladies ^{illuminer les jardins dame imp. être descendre} had scarcely alighted from their* (carriages), when it ^{voiture pret. def. commencer à pleuvoir malheureux} began to rain.—How unfortunate that man is! he never succeeds in any thing.—How much she resembles her mother! ^{réussir aucun ressembler à} and how many graces she displays already! but of how much slander ^{charmes déployer déjà mauvais propos} is she not the victim!—To how many dangers am I not ^{danger journellement} daily exposed!—May I die, if I (ever mentioned it to him)!—We shall go to-morrow into the ^{lui en ai jamais parlé à}

212

country, if it be fine weather.——I should take you with me, if you
faire mener

would ask her pardon.——They do not know if he will come.——
imp. vouloir demander lui savoir venir

Tell them, when you see them, that, as soon as I hear from
Dire 1 voir 2 recevoir des nouvelles

their brother, I shall let them know it.——Write to us as soon as you
1 faire 2 leur 3 savoir 4 le

get there.
être y

LESSON XXVIII.

Of the French Idioms.

1. Cases in which the different tenses of the verb to be are expressed in French by those of avoir.

GENERAL RULE.—1. When the different tenses of the verb *to be* are used before the adjectives *hungry, dry, thirsty, hot, warm, cold, ashamed, and afraid*,—they are expressed in French by the corresponding ones of the verb *avoir*, and the adjectives *hungry, dry, thirsty, hot, warm, cold, ashamed, and afraid*, are construed by the substantives *faim, soif, chaud, froid, honte, and peur*: as,—I am hungry, *j'ai faim*; he is thirsty, *il a soif*; are you cold? *avez-vous froid?* no, I am very warm, *non, j'ai bien chaud*; she was ashamed, *elle avait honte*; were you afraid? *aviez-vous peur?* as if it were in English—*I have hunger; he has thirst, &c.*

If we express that any particular part of the body is affected with cold or heat: as,—*my hands are cold*; the verb *avoir* is then used in the same person in French as the possessive pronouns *my, thy, his, her, its, our, your, and their*, preceding the part of the body mentioned, are in, when construed by the corresponding personal pronouns *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils or elles*, which must serve as nominatives to the verb *avoir*. The article *au, aux, or à la, à l'*, is then requisite before the part of the body alluded to: as,—*my hands are cold, j'ai froid aux mains, &c.* as if it were in English, *I have cold to the hands.*

2. When they come before the expressions *in the right* and *in the wrong*, they are likewise expressed by the tenses of *avoir*,—and *in the right* is construed by the substantive *raison*, and *in the wrong* by *tort*: as,—he is in the right, *il a raison*; she is in the wrong, *elle a tort*.

3. When a person's age is mentioned, the different tenses of the verb *to be* are also construed by those of *avoir*, and the substantive *year*, which is frequently understood in English, is always expressed by *an* or *ans* in French, whereas the adjective *old*, if used in English, is left out in French: as,—*my sister is twenty, or twenty years old, ma sœur a vingt ans, and not—ma sœur est, &c.*

If the age of a person or of an animal be asked, the different tenses of the verb *to be* are still construed by those of *avoir*; but *old* is expressed by *âge*, and *how* by *quel*: as,—how old is your sister? *quel âge a votre sœur?*

4. When we speak of the dimensions of any thing, the different tenses of the verb *to be* are likewise expressed by those of *avoir*; but *de* is put before the word which expresses either the length, height, depth, breadth, or any other dimension of the object alluded to: as,—this church is sixty feet high, *cette église a soixante pieds de hauteur*, and not *est soixante pieds*, &c.

If the dimensions of any thing should be mentioned, without the verb *to be*, *de* should likewise be put in French before the noun of number which precedes the expressions of measure,—feet, inches, lines, &c.: as,—a well forty feet deep, *un puits de quarante pieds de profondeur*, and not *un puits quarante pieds*, &c. We have a table twenty feet three inches long, *nous avons une table de vingt pieds* trois pouces de longueur*, and not *une table vingt pieds*, &c.

The English adjectives of dimension may also be rendered into French by their corresponding adjectives, but the substantives are more elegantly used; and, in any case, *deep* must be construed by *de profondeur*, and not by *de profond*: as,—a mine two hundred feet deep, *une mine de deux cents pieds de profondeur*, and not *une mine deux cents pieds de profond*.

Observe.—The expression *in vain for*, preceded by a tense of the verb *to be*, having the pronoun *it* taken indeterminately for its nominative or subject: as,—*it is in vain for you to repeat it*; is usually expressed in French by the corresponding tense of the verb *avoir*, with the adjective *beau*, thus—*avoir beau*, which implies the verb *to be* and the expression *in vain for*; the noun or pronoun which follows *in vain for* is used as the nominative of the verb *avoir beau*, and if the pronouns *me*, *thee*, *him*, *her*, *us*, *ye* or *you*, and *them*, should be used after *in vain for*, they are construed by *je*, *tu*, *il*, *elle*, *nous*, *vous*, *ils* or *elles*, to become the nominatives of *avoir beau*, which is put in the same number and person as the pronoun is in. The succeeding verb is put in the present of the infinitive mood, without any preposition before it, and the pronoun *it*, which precedes the verb *to be* in English, is not expressed in French: as,—*it is in vain for you to repeat it*, *vous avez beau le répéter*; as if it were in English—*you have fine it to repeat*.

Sometimes, also, *in vain for* is expressed by *inutile*, and the verb *to be* is construed by the corresponding tense of *être* in French; with the pronoun *il* taken indeterminately for its nominative, in the sense of *it* in English. In this case, the noun or pronoun following *in vain for* becomes the object of *être*, and the succeeding verb is put in the present of the infinitive, with *de* before it: as,—*it will be in vain for him to go there*, *il lui sera inutile d'y aller*.

* When a fraction of the principal measure is mentioned, *de* must not be repeated in French before the noun of number preceding it: thus we cannot say—*une table de vingt pieds de trois pouces de longueur*; but—*une table de vingt pieds trois pouces de longueur*.

ESSAY XXVIII.

I was hungry and thirsty.—I should be ashamed to speak to him.—
imp. de

She was warm, and caught cold.—They are afraid of me.—
imp. elle pret. def. s'enrhumer

Are your feet cold?—My feet are not very cold, because I have walked fast;
pied très marcher vite

but my hands are so cold that I cannot make my pen.—It is in vain for you
si ne pouvoir tailler plume

(to remonstrate with her,) she will never allow that she is in the wrong,
lui faire des remontrances convenir sub. pr.

although she is fully convinced that she is not in the right.—How
quoiqu' sub. pr. pleinement convaincu

old are your sisters?—The eldest is twenty-five, and the (youngest) will be
cadette

fifteen at Christmas next.—This room is a hundred feet ten inches long
à Noël prochain longueur

by fifty feet wide, and twenty high.—The steeple of that church is not six hun-
sur largeur hauteur clocher église

dred and thirty-four feet high, and eighty in diameter.—There was in
de diamètre imp.

Peru a mine fifteen or sixteen hundred feet deep.—I thought this
Pérou profondeur imp. croire que

mountain was three thousand feet high and one* thousand in circumference
imp. mille de circonférence

at its base.—It would be in vain to write to them in the country, as they
base inutile de écrire à puisqu'

set out to-morrow morning for Paris, where they intend remaining all
partir où avoir intention de passer

the summer.
été

LESSON XXIX.

2. Cases in which the different tenses of the verb to be are expressed in French by the corresponding ones of the unipersonal verb *y avoir*.

GENERAL RULE.—The different tenses of the verb *to be* are expressed in French by those of *y avoir*:—1. When they are accompanied by the adverb *there*: as,—there were many people, *il y avait bien du monde*. In this and any similar case, the verb must be used in the singular in French, whether it be in the singular or plural in English.

2. When they are employed in speaking of the distance from one place to another; in which case, should *how far* be used in English, it must be expressed by *combien* in French: as,—Windsor is twenty miles distant from London, *il y a vingt milles de Londres à Windsor*.

21

How far is it from Calais to Paris? *combien y a-t-il de Calais à Paris?* &c. The adjective *distant*, which is sometimes employed in such sentences in English, is not expressed in French.

3. When being used to express the time since a thing, action, or event took place; and if *how long* should be employed in English, it is expressed by *combien* in French: as,—how long has he been dead? *combien y a-t-il qu'il est mort?* she has been talking these two hours, *il y a deux heures qu'elle parle*, &c. The verb preceding *these* or *those*, in sentences of this kind, is, thus, put in the preterit indefinite of the indicative in French, if the thing mentioned has ceased to exist; but it is used in the present, if it be still existing. In either case, *que* is used before the verb, and *these* or *those* is not expressed in French.

4. After *how much* and *how many*, (*COMBIEN*,) used to ask the quantity or number of persons or things: as,—how much cheese is there? *combien de fromage y a-t-il?* how many people were there? *combien de personnes y avait-il?*—*DE* is required before the substantive following *combien*, in any such case.

The expressions—*some days since*, *a week ago*, *a fortnight ago*, *a month since*, and all similar ones, are likewise rendered into French by the different tenses of *y avoir*: as,—some days since, *il y a quelques jours*; a week ago, *il y a une semaine*; a fortnight ago, *il y a une quinzaine*; a month since, *il y a un mois*, &c. as if it were in English, —*there is some days*, *there is a week*, &c.

ESSAY XXIX.

Were there many people (in the) Park last Sunday? Yes, (a great
imp. au dernier beau-
 many).— Were there many ladies? I should think there were
coup imp. bien des croire qu' imp. en
 at least three or four thousand.—There are (deceitful people).—How
au moins des gens qui sont trompeurs
 far is it from London to Plymouth?—A very long distance; nearly three
Londres grand presque
 hundred miles.—It is not far from Paris to Rheims; but it is very far from
mille
 Rome to Moscow.—Calais is twenty-seven miles distant from Dover.—She
Moscou Douvres
 (has been) married these twenty years.—They (have been) gone these four
est marier sont partir
 days.—How many inhabitants are there in Paris?—(There may be) seven or
habitant à Il peut y en avoir
 eight hundred thousand.—Do you know how many members there are in the
savoir membre.
 (House of Commons)?—There are six hundred and fifty-eight.—Some years
Chambre des Communes s' année
 ago, I was at the (Epsom-races,) where I witnessed a very
¹ imp. ² courses d'Epsom pret. def. être témoin

216

melancholy accident, that happened to one of the spectators.—(A week
fâcheux *pret. def. arriver* *Il y a huit*
 or a fortnight ago,) a friend of mine received from the country a letter,
ou quinze jours *pret. def.*
 by which (he was informed) that though the rain had been very
dans. *on lui mandait* *bien que* *pluies f. pl. sub. plu.*
 heavy (it) had not yet done any injury to the corn.—It is not
abondant elles *encore faire de tort* *blés m. pl.*
 a month since I lent you fifty pounds.—Mr. P * *
que *pret. indef. prêter* *livre sterling* *que* ⁵ ⁶ *pret. indef.*
 died, about six weeks ago, (from the) cut of a* sabre, which he
¹*mourir* ¹*environ* ² ²*semaine* *des suites d'un coup* *pret. def.*
 received on his head, last winter, on the Dover road.
à la *dernier hiver* ²*de* ³*Douvres* ¹*route*

LESSON XXX.

3. Cases in which the verbs to be and to do are expressed in French
 by *faire* and *se porter*.

GENERAL RULE.—1. Whenever we speak of the various kinds of the weather, and we use the verb *to be* in the third person singular of its different tenses, with the pronoun *it* taken indeterminately for its nominative or subject, the corresponding person and tense of the verb *faire* must be employed in French, with the pronoun *il*, likewise employed indeterminately for its subject, in the sense of *it*: as,—it is fine weather, *il fait beau temps*; is it fine weather? *fait-il beau temps?* &c. as if it were in English—*it makes fine weather*; *makes it fine weather?* &c.

But if the verb *to be* should have one of the words *weather*, *day*, or *night*, or any other similar expression for its nominative, instead of being preceded by the indeterminate pronoun *it*, the different tenses of *être*, and not those of *faire*, should then be used in French: as,—the weather is very fine, *le temps est très-beau*, and not—*le temps fait très-beau*.

2. When the different tenses of the verb *to be* or *to do* are used in speaking of or inquiring about the health of somebody, they are rendered into French by those of the reflective verb *se porter*: as,—how is Miss A * *? *comment se porte Mad^{lle} A * **? she is not very well, *elle ne se porte pas très-bien*.

It is with, *it has been with*, *it will be with*, *it would be with*, or any other tense of the verb *to be*, thus used impersonally with the pronoun *it* and the preposition *with*, is rendered into French by the corresponding tense and person of the verb *être*, with the pronoun *il* likewise employed in an impersonal manner, but with the particle *en* before the verb in a simple tense, and before the auxiliary in a compound one; that is, between the pronoun *il* and the verb or the auxiliary, with *de*, or *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, or *des*, according as either is required, immediately after it

218

There are three different ways of trans-
lating the adj. of dimension into French:
un mur de vingt pieds de haut, or
un mur haut de vingt pieds, or un
mur de vingt pieds de hauteur. The
Eng. construes these adj. with the verb
to be, but the French generally pre-
fer avoir. If the verb être is used,
it must be followed by the preposi-
tion de. Le fossé est de quarante
pieds de long (or better) de longueur,
sur trois de large (or better) de lar-
geur; or, le fossé a quarante pieds
de longueur sur trois de largeur.
When there are two or three dimen-
sions the conjunction and is elegant-
ly understood. See sur. R. 279

11

in a simple tense, and after the participle in a compound one : as,—it is with, *il en est de* ; it has been with, *il en a été de* ; it will be with you as with others, *il en sera de vous comme des autres* ; it would be with, *il en serait de*, &c.

ESSAY XXX.

It is very cold this morning ; yet I do not think it is quite
froid cependant croire qu' sub. pr. tout-à-fait
 so cold as it was yesterday, and (the day before).—It was terribly
si qu' imp. avant-hier imp. excessivement
 cold last week.—If it be fine weather to-morrow, and the roads
dernier fait que chemin sub. pr.
 are not too dirty, we shall go into the country.—The weather has been very
trop crotté à
 inconstant all the summer ; we have not had a single week of continued fine
été seul semaine - continuel
 weather.—The weather is not so damp (in the) south of England, (as it is) in
si humide au midi qu'il l'est
 the north.—Is it fine weather to-day ? No ; it is very bad weather.—The
 weather is so changeable in this country, that sometimes it is the most
variable quelquefois
 (delightful weather) in the morning ; and, two hours after, it is close,
beau temps du monde un temps lourd
 dark, and rainy, which is very injurious to the health.—The days
sombre pluvieux préjudiciable
 begin to (shorten very much) ; it is dark at seven o'clock.—It is very unpleasant
à décroître rapidement nuit mauvais
 (walking), when the pavement is so slippery.—If it be (day-light), we shall
marcher pavé glissant jour
 certainly set out at four o'clock.—(How is the weather) this afternoon ? I do
partir Quel temps fait-il
 not know, I have not been out.—When we were in town, last week, it
sortir imp. à la
 was very bad weather, now we are in the country it is very fine ;
imp. maintenant que à
 I am almost sure that if we (were to return) to town, it would be bad weather
sûr retournerions 2 3
 again.—How do you do this evening ? Very well, I thank you.—How are your
1 encore soir
 father and mother ? They are pretty well.—Is Miss A* * better ? No ; she
passablement mieux
 is still very poorly.—Have you seen your cousins lately ? How are they
encore indisposée cousine depuis peu
 all ? Not very well, sir ; Miss G* * has a bad cold, and her sister is still very
gros rhume
 lame. I really think it will be with them as it has been with the Misses
boiteux réellement
 W* *.—Well ! (did I not tell you) it would be with you as it has been with
Eh bien ne vous ai-je pas dit
 your brother ?

LESSON XXXI.

4. Cases in which the different tenses of the verb *to be*, being preceded by the pronoun *it*, are expressed in French by *il est*, *il était*, *il sera*, &c. and by *c'est*, *c'était*, *ce sera*, &c.

GENERAL RULE.—Whenever the verb *to be*, being used in the third person singular of its different tenses, with the pronoun *it* taken indeterminately for its nominative or subject, and an adjective or a participle following: as,—*it is difficult to succeed in the world*;—*it is*, *it was*, *it will be*, or any other of its tenses thus employed, is expressed in French by the third person singular of the corresponding tense of *être*, with the pronoun *il*, likewise taken indeterminately for its nominative or subject, provided there be no reference implied to any thing mentioned before, but on the contrary a marked reference to what follows: as,—*it is difficult to succeed in the world*, *il est difficile de réussir dans le monde*, and not *c'est difficile*, &c.

But *it is*, *it was*, *it will be*, &c. having reference to something spoken of before, as when, alluding to what may have just been said or done, we say—*it is very unfortunate*, for—*that is very unfortunate*; *it was very consoling*, for—*that was very consoling*;—*it is*, *it was*, *it will be*, are then construed by the third persons singular of the corresponding tenses of *être*, preceded by *ce*, or *c'*, thus—*c'est*, *c'était*, *ce fut*, *ce sera*, &c.: as,—*it is very unfortunate*, *c'est bien malheureux*; *it was very consoling*, *c'était bien consolant*, &c. In any such case, the verb forms a complete sense with the adjective or participle following; whereas, in the preceding observation, there remains something to be expressed after the adjective or participle.

C'est, *c'était*, *ce fut*, *ce sera*, &c. are also used in French in the sense of—*it is*, *it was*, *it will be*, &c. in English: 1. before the indefinite article *un*, *une*, a or an. 2. before the cardinal numbers *un*, *une*, one; *deux*, two; *trois*, three, &c. 3. before the ordinal numbers, if these be preceded by the definite article *le*, *la*, or *les*, the: as,—*le premier*, the first; *le second*, the second, &c. 4. before a substantive, a pronoun, or a verb in the present of the infinitive. 5. before the prepositions *à* and *pour*, and a few others: as,—*it is a man*, *c'est un homme*. *It was the first time*, *c'était la première fois*. *Is it not Miss such a one?* *n'est-ce pas M^{lle} une telle?* *It is I*, *c'est moi*. *It will be he*, *ce sera lui*. *It would be encouraging vice*, *ce serait autoriser le vice*. *It was not his*, *ce n'était pas à lui*. *Is it for me?* *est-ce pour moi?* and not *il est un homme*; *il est la première fois*, &c.

When *it is*, *it was*, *it will be*, are used before the substantive *time*, or before a noun of number followed by the words *hour*, *o'clock*, *minute*, or any other similar expression of time, they are rendered into French by *il est*, *il était*, *il sera*, &c.: as,—*it is time to set out*, *il est temps de partir*. *It is three o'clock*, *il est trois heures*, &c.—but *it is*, *it was*, *it*

C'est is used with nouns before they have been specified, and consequently before their gender is known. Qui est-ce? C'est une tabatière que je viens d'acheter, voyez comme elle est belle. C'est is used also in reference to persons & things when we desire to describe them. Qui est cet homme là? C'est un ancien domestique de mon père. Je n'aime pas Jean, parceque c'est un incorrigible.

Est-ce or est-il vrai. Le Pige F.P. 366

It is, was &c. before an adjective or participial phrase, referring in sense to what comes after, directly before the word temps & before the hour of the day - we always translate by it - in all other cases by ce. When referring to a noun "it" takes the gender of that noun.

Ce is used when être is followed by an article, a pronoun, a preposition, a verb or an adverb as.

c'est la coutume	|	c'était son devoir
ce sera chez moi		ce serait l'offense
ce fut alors que je vis		c'a été la coutume

Ce is sometimes used before an adj. as c'est bon, but then it refers to something mentioned before. R. 124.

It is, was &c. before an adjective or participial phrase, referring in sense to what comes after - directly before the word temps - and before the hour of the day - we always translate it - in all other cases use ce.

It wants a quarter to any hour
is made by moving the quart
as six hours. moving the quart.
H.L. 99.

It is an interrogative sentence, when the verb
être and the demonstrative ce are immedi-
ately followed by a pronoun or a subst.
Personal, the verb être must be in the pres.
if in the present or future, should, if in the
imperfect or conditional.

Est-ce vos amis - Sont-ce vos amis, que ce.
Sont-ce vos amis - Sont-ce vos amis, que ce.
H. 292

will be, used to denote that such or such a thing either took or will take place at such a particular hour : as,—*it was at six o'clock ; it will be for seven ;—it is, it was, it will be*, &c. are then construed by *c'est, c'était, ce fut, ce sera*, because then the pronoun *it* means *this or that thing* : as,—*it was at six o'clock, c'était à six heures. It will be for seven, ce sera pour sept heures.*

Observe.—When *it is, it was, it will be, it would be*, &c. are used either in the affirmative, negative or interrogative form, before the pronoun *they* (*EUX* or *ELLES*), or before a substantive plural accompanied or not by an adjective, or also before a demonstrative pronoun in the plural, provided these words do not depend on a preposition,—they are expressed in French by the third persons plural of the different tenses of *être*, preceded by *ce* or *c'* : thus,—*it is they, ce sont eux*, and not *c'est* ; *it will not be the kingdoms of France and England, ce ne seront pas les royaumes de France et d'Angleterre*, and not *ce ne sera pas* ; *was it they ? étaient-ce eux ?* and not *était-ce ?* *would it not be they ? ne seraient-ce pas elles ?* and not *ne serait-ce pas ?* *is it the honours that have been bestowed upon him that . . . ? sont-ce les honneurs auxquels il a été élevé qui . . . ?* &c. But if *it is, it was, it will be*, &c. should precede a pronoun which, when construed into French, is either *eux* or *elles* depending on a preposition, or if they should come before a substantive or a demonstrative pronoun in the plural, likewise depending on a preposition, or also, if they should precede any other personal pronoun than *eux* or *elles*, they should then be expressed by *c'est, c'était, ce fut*, &c. and not by *ce sont, c'étaient, ce furent*, &c. : as,—*it is to them I speak, c'est à eux que je parle*, and not *ce sont* ; *it will be to these ladies I shall give it, ce sera à ces dames que je le donnerai*, and not *ce seront* ; *it was not to you I spoke, ce n'était pas à vous que je parlais*, and not *ce n'étaient pas*, &c.

If *it was* should be used interrogatively in the preterit definite of the indicative, before the pronoun *they*, (*eux* or *elles*,) not depending on a preposition, it should then be construed by the third person singular of the preterit definite of *être* in French : as,—*was it they who . . . ? fut-ce eux qui . . . ?* and not *furent-ce eux qui . . . ?*

Was it, thus used interrogatively in the preterit definite of the indicative before a substantive plural not depending on a preposition, is also construed by the third person singular of that tense, as the third plural would form too harsh a sound : as,—*was it the French who . . . ? fut-ce les Français qui . . . ?* and not *furent-ce ?* &c.

ESSAY XXXI.

It is very unfortunate he has not succeeded.—Would it not be
bien malheureux *sub. pret.* *réussir*
 advisable to write to her?—It is certainly a very good thought.—It is so
expédient de *certainement* *pensée*

220

uncertain when they will return.—Have you (heard) of the dreadful
incertain revenir entendu parler horrible
murder of Miss P***? Yes, it makes one* shudder with horror. It is
assassinat cela frissonner d' horreur
this young lady who brought me the news (of it,) and
jeune demoiselle pret. indef. ²apporter ¹ ⁴ nouvelle ²en
the amiable child fainted in pronouncing the name of the unfor-
enfant pret. indef. s'évanquoir prononcer infor-
tunate victim.—Was it not Mrs. N** who scolded you so much at the
tué victime pret. def. gronder tant
review the other day? No; it was her sister.—Is it the first time you
revue fois que sub.
have seen her?—It is the third or fourth time he has called to pay you.
pret. voir soit venu pour
—Is it you who.....? No; it is she.—If it were not so late, I should
imp. tard
be delighted to be of the party.—(Is this) for me or you?—It is for
charmé d' partie Ceci est-il pour n' ni
(neither) of us; it is for Mr. D.'s sister.—(If that man were not
*l'un ni pour l'autre ²de ³M. D** ¹ Si l'on ne réprimandait*
to be reprimanded) for his infamous behaviour, it would be (encouraging) vice.
pas cet homme sur infâme conduite autoriser
—I think it is jealousy that makes you hold such language.—What o'clock is
croire jalousie faire tenir ce langage heure
it? It is eleven o'clock. Is it really so late? Yes. In that case, I
réellement En cas il
(must) leave you directly.—(Come,) gentlemen, awake; it is time
faut que sub. pr. quitter sur-le-champ Allons s'éveiller
to set out; it is almost eight o'clock. Eight o'clock! it is impossible;
de partir presque
(it is only) three hours since we (went to bed).—I have seen Miss F** this
il n'y a que que sommes au lit voir
morning, and I inquired of* her at what o'clock the concert would begin.
matin ai demandé commencer
She informed me it would be at nine or ten o'clock (in the) evening.—
a dit que à du imp.
Was it not at (twelve o'clock) you came on Saturday? No; it
midi que pret. def. imp.
was about two in the afternoon.—It is not those who speak much who
sur les heures de
are the most esteemed.—It was the French and the Russians who
estimer imp. Russe pret. def.
began that shameful and disgraceful war.—It will not be they who will have
honteux déshonorant guerre elles
the honour of opening the ball.—Is it the honours (so unjustly bestowed upon
honneur ouvrir bal auxquels il a été si injustement
him), that render him so proud (as to) despise us?—Was it they
élevé fier et le font mépriser imp.
who....? No.—It was my neighbours who saved my life when my
imp. voisin pret. def. me

The demonstrative: pronouns *ce*; *cela* are used as nominatives to the verb *être*.

C'est moi; *cela est vrai*.

In the devotional style *cela* is preferable to *ce*, which is principally used in familiar language — *cela* is more determinate, more precise than *ce*. As nominative to another noun *cela* is also proper; *cela me plaît*.

When *ce* is immediately followed by *être* and a substant. or pronoun, the verb takes the number of that pronoun or substantive.

[*favori*
Je lis et ilis la Fontaine; *c'est moi auteur*,
Jacques Bossuet et Fénelon; *ce sont deux*
grands écrivains.

When *ce* and *être* come immediately before nouns or words the verb remains in the sing.

C'est vous qui découvrez votre bonheur.

The verb *être* remains also in the singular when it precedes the pronoun (*qui* or *de*) of another verb.

C'est aux vertus que nous devons nos premiers hommages.

What is the cause of that which is thus declined

1. *Ce que* — *me plaît*

2. *Ce dont* — *je me plains*

3. *Ce à quoi* — *vous pensez*

4. *Ce que* — *vous faites*

When *ce qui*, *ce dont* &c. begin a sentence of two parts, *ce* is usually repeated before the verb *être*, provided it be followed by another verb, pronoun or sub.!

• *Ce que l'effroy, c'est de n'avoir pu résister*

de is dropped. When the second verb is followed by an adjective or participle.

Le docteur vous me faisant cet usage
The demonstrative ce comes also
to recapitulate the different nominatives in a sentence.

Savoir me le dire, savoir une injure, bien avec de son lison, ce sont trois choses extrêmement difficiles

By a construction very frequent in French c'est or ce fut is followed by a qualifying expression or often placed at the head of a sentence, whilst the person or thing qualified is placed at the end with que before it, if it is a noun or a pronoun, and de or que de if it is an infinitive.
C'est un poids bien pesant, qu'un homme trop tôt fameux

C'est un vilain homme, qu'un homme de bien. N. 292.

C'est is followed by an infinitive with a preposition. Ce n'est pas répondre que de parler ainsi.

See Dict. 137.

house was on fire.—It is for them to command and for you to obey.—Was it
 imp. en à à commander à d'obéir
 not to them you lent that money?—It is to you I speak.—
 que pret. def. prêter que
 Should it be they who....? No; it is Messrs. Stewart and Co.
 Cnle

LESSON XXXII.

Avoir mal à, au, à la, or aux.

GENERAL RULE.—We make use in French of the different tenses of the verb *avoir mal*, when we speak of any illness or indisposition of the body or mind, whatever may be the verb used in English. The compound article *au, aux, or à la, à l'*, is used before the part affected with pain, and the possessive pronoun *my, thy, his, her, our, your, or their*, which may be used before it in English, is left out in French: as,—I have the head-ache, *j'ai mal à la tête*; she has the tooth-ache, *elle a mal aux dents*; I feel a pain in my side, *j'ai mal au côté*; I had a bad leg, *j'avais mal à la jambe*; he had a sore foot, *il avait mal au pied*; as if it were in English,—*I have ill to the head; she has ill to the teeth, &c.*

If the part of the body affected with pain should be preceded by a demonstrative or possessive pronoun, as—*I feel a very bad pain in this arm*; the preposition *à* should then be used before the pronoun in French, instead of *au, à la, à l', or aux*: as,—*I feel a very bad pain in this arm, j'ai grand mal à ce bras*; and not *au ce bras*.

The article *un or le*, according to the import of the sentence, might also be used, in some sentences of this kind, before the substantive *mal*, after a tense of the verb *avoir*, placing *de* before the part of the body affected with pain: as,—*j'ai un violent mal de côté*, I have a great pain in my side. *Elle a le mal de gorge*, she has a sore throat.

When the sentence is made by a tense of the verb *to be*: as,—*my lips are sore*; the verb *avoir mal* must then be put in the same person in French as the possessive pronoun preceding the part of the body mentioned is in, when construed by its corresponding personal pronoun *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils or elles*. One of the compound articles *au, aux, or à la, à l'*, is used before the part of the body alluded to, and the word *sore*, or any other denoting pain, is implied in *avoir mal*: as,—*my lips are sore, j'ai mal aux lèvres*: in this sentence, *j'ai* is in the first person singular, because the possessive pronoun *my*, which precedes *lips*, is of the first person singular. Sentences of this kind always begin by the verb; then comes the compound article, and the part of the body affected with pain is placed next; as if it were in English,—*to have sore at*.

But the next sentences—*my head always aches ; my eyes ache still a little ; his arm does not get better ;* and any similar one, in which we mention an habitual pain, especially if it be known to the person spoken to, are expressed in French by using before the verb one of the pronouns *me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur*, according to the person in which the possessive pronoun preceding the part of the body mentioned is in English, with the article *le, la, or les*, or sometimes one of the possessive pronouns *mon, ma, mes*, before the part of the body alluded to : as,—*my head always aches, la tête me fait toujours mal ; my eyes ache still a little, mes yeux me font encore un peu mal ; my arm does not get better, mon bras ne se guérit pas, &c.* but practice alone can teach these different forms of expression.

ESSAY XXXII.

I feel a pain in my eyes, neck, and side.—(What is the matter with) Miss
cou côté qu' a
 H***? She has a sore throat, and feels a great oppression on her chest.—
mal gorge ressentir dans la poitrine
 My eyes are so sore that I cannot open them.—When I was young, I
ne pouvoir ouvrir imp.
 had often the head-ache; now I am old, my legs are so bad that I
imp. que jambe mal
 cannot stand.—You (cannot fancy how painful my foot is).—
me tenir debout ne sauriez vous imaginer combien mon pied me fait mal
 Mrs. T** has had a violent (tooth-ache) all the night.—My arm pains
mal de dents la 2 faire 4 mal
 me (very much).—That poor child is sore (all over :) his head-ache is returned,
1 3 bien partout 2 de 3 tête 1 mal revenir
 and his eyes pain him more than ever.—She has a pain in her stomach.
2 faire 4 mal 1 lui 3 jamais estomac
 —My shoulder does not get better, and my head still aches.
épaule se guérir encore faire mal

LESSON XXXIII.

Must expressed in French by *il faut, il fallait, il faudra, &c.*

GENERAL RULE.—The verb *must* is generally expressed in French by the third person singular of the different tenses of the unipersonal verb *falloir*: thus,—*il faut, il fallait, il faudra, il faudrait, &c.* according to the tense in which *must* is in English ; the conjunction *que* is placed immediately after *il faut, il fallait, or il faudra, &c.* and the nominative of *must*, whether it be a noun or a pronoun, becomes the nominative of the succeeding verb, which is put in the subjunctive mood in French : as,—I must go out, *il faut que je sorte* ; she must do it, *il faut qu'elle le fasse* ; they must pay me, *il faut qu'ils me paient* ; as if it were in English, *it must that I go out ; it must that she do it, &c.*

22

If the nominative of *must* should be taken in an indefinite or even sometimes in a definite sense: as,—*we must be prudent; children must be instructed; you must not do that*; in this case, the sentence would be more elegantly expressed in French by placing the verb following *must* in the present of the infinitive, instead of using it in the subjunctive. *Que* should then be left out, and the nominative of *must*, if one of the pronouns *we, you, they, one or people*, should not be expressed: as,—*we must be prudent, il faut être prudent; you must not do that, il ne faut pas faire cela, &c.* but if the nominative of *must* should be a noun, it should be placed after the verb which follows *il faut, il fallait, &c.*: as,—*children must be instructed, il faut instruire les enfans.*

When *must* comes before *have*, or when *want* is used in the sense of *must have*: as,—*I must have some gloves; he wants a coat; must have and want* are then elegantly expressed in French by the different tenses of the unipersonal verb *falloir*, as above, but placing (when the nominative of *must* is one of the personal pronouns *I, thou, he, she, we, you, they*) one of the pronouns *me, te, lui, nous, vous, leur*, instead, between *il* and the tense of *falloir* which is used, with the thing wanted after it: as,—*I must have some gloves, il me faut des gants; he wants a coat, il lui faut un habit*;—but if the nominative of *must* or *want* should be a substantive, it should then be placed after the thing wanted at the end of the sentence, with *à* before it: as,—*your brother must have a hat, il faut un chapeau à votre frère.*

Il faut, il fallait, il faudra, &c. are also used at the end of a sentence in French, for the English expressions—*you ought, it ought to be, it should be*, or any similar one: as,—*you do not behave as you ought, vous ne vous conduisez pas comme il faut; that is not as it ought to be, or should be, cela n'est pas comme il faut.*

When the verbs *to be necessary, to be requisite*, or similar ones, are used impersonally, they are also usually expressed in French by the unipersonal verb *falloir*. The preposition *for*, which follows, is left out; and if a personal pronoun succeeds, it sometimes becomes the object of *falloir*, and is placed before it: that is—between *il* and the tense of *falloir* which is used, with the next verb in the present of the infinitive mood: as,—*it is necessary for you to go there, il vous faut y aller.* Sometimes also the pronoun serves as a nominative to the following verb, in which case *que* is used after *falloir*, and the next verb is put in the subjunctive mood: as,—*it will be necessary for you to take some lessons, il faudra que vous preniez quelques leçons.* If a substantive should follow the preposition *for*, instead of a personal pronoun, it would then always be the nominative of the succeeding verb, which must be put in the subjunctive mood, with *que* after the verb *falloir*: as,—*it will be necessary for your brother to go there, il faudra que votre frère y aille.*

The above verbs may also be expressed by *être nécessaire*, which re-

23

the funeral, and a pair of white for the Opera.—It will be necessary for
à enterrement blanc Opéra
 them to* take a house in town.—Do you think it will be ne-
sub. pr. prendre à la sub. pr. né-
 cessary for my nieces to* be there?—(I have been told) that his cousins
cessaire sub. pr. y On m'a dit cousine
 do not behave exactly as they ought.—His wife always speaks of you as
se conduire tout-à-fait
 she ought: she (never mentions your name but with) the greatest respect and
ne prononce jamais votre nom qu'avec
 esteem.—There was not much wanting of the whole sum.
la plus grande imp. s'en falloir que entier n'y fût
 —How much was it wanting of the whole sum?—(She is very far) from
Combien que Il s'en faut beaucoup qu'elle sub. pr.
 being so handsome as her sister.
aussi beau que

LESSON XXXIV.

Of the defective verbs—*may, will, would, can, shall, should, could, might, and ought.*

GENERAL RULE.—Whenever *may, will, would, can, shall, should, could, and might*, are not the distinguishing signs of the different tenses of other verbs, but are verbs distinct of themselves, they are rendered into French as follows:—1. *will* and *would*, denoting determination, are expressed by the different tenses of *vouloir*. 2.—*may, can, could, or might*, expressing possibility, are rendered by the tenses of *pouvoir*; and *should*, denoting necessity or duty, is construed by those of *devoir*. As *will* and *would* can always be changed into the different tenses of the verb *to be willing* or *desirous*; *may, can, could, and might*, into those of *to be able*; and *should* into those of *to be necessary*; these will be the distinctive signs of the tenses in which *vouloir, pouvoir, and devoir*, ought to be used in French, and they will be placed in the same person and tense in which the verb *to be* is in English: as,—he will not confess it; that is,—he is not willing to confess it, *il ne veut pas l'avouer*. I could not speak to him; implying—I was not able to speak to him, *je ne pus pas lui parler*. He should do that; in the sense of—he ought to do that, or, it would be necessary for him to do that, *il devrait faire cela*.

Will, would, could, should, do, and shall, used either in reply to a question, or to express assent to any thing mentioned before, may be expressed in French by the same verb as that by which the question is asked, or simply by—*je le veux ou je le veux bien*; or by—*oui, monsieur, madame, or mademoiselle*: as,—will you go to the country this summer? yes, I will; *irez-vous à la campagne cet été? oui, j'IRAI*.

226

Will you do that for me? yes, I will; *voulez-vous faire cela pour moi? oui, je le veux bien*; or simply—*oui, monsieur, madame, ou mademoiselle*.

When *would, could, should, might, and ought*, are followed by *have* before the past participle of another verb, as in these sentences—you *should have called me*; *if they would have pursued him, they might have caught him*; *you ought to have paid her a visit, since you knew she was returned*; they are expressed in French by the imperfect or conditional of the verb *avoir*, according to the sense, using one of the past participles *pu, dû, or voulu*, after it, if something past, as in the above sentences, be implied, and placing the succeeding verb, which is in the past participle in English, in the present of the infinitive in French: as,—you should have called me, *vous auriez dû m'appeler*. If they would have pursued him, they might have caught him, *s'ils avaient voulu le poursuivre, ils auraient pu l'attraper*. You ought to have paid her a visit, since you knew she was returned, *vous auriez dû lui faire visite, puisque vous saviez qu'elle était de retour*.

Would, could, should, and might, are also sometimes construed into French, in sentences of this kind, by the conditional of one of the verbs *pouvoir, vouloir, and devoir*, expressing *have* by *avoir* or *être*, according as either is required, and placing the following verb in the past participle in French as it is in English: as,—she could have written her exercise before you if. . . ., *elle pourrait avoir écrit son thème avant vous si. . . ., &c.*

Will have or *would have*, followed by a noun or a pronoun and a verb in the present of the infinitive, as—I *will have you pay him immediately*; *I would not have her write to him*; must be expressed in French by the corresponding tense of the verb *vouloir*, placing *que* after it, and using the noun or pronoun following, as the nominative to the next verb, which is put in the subjunctive mood: as,—I will have you pay him immediately, *je veux que vous le payiez tout de suite*. I would not have her write to him, *je ne voudrais pas qu'elle lui écrivît*.

Will have or *would have* used also as follows,—*which of these two books will you have? I would have them both*; is likewise rendered into French by the different tenses of *vouloir*: as,—which of these two books will you have? *lequel de ces deux livres voulez-vous?* I would have them both, *je les voudrais tous les deux*.

Can, used in English in the sense of *to know*, is generally rendered into French by *savoir*: as,—I can read and write, *je sais lire et écrire*.

Ought is always construed into French by either the present, imperfect, or conditional of *devoir*, according to the import of the sentence: as,—you ought to remember it, *vous devriez vous en souvenir*.

ESSAY XXXIV.

Will you lend me the book which I mentioned to you the other
prêter *dont* *parler*

day? Yes, I will, provided you return it to me (in the course of)
pourvu que sub. pr. rendre dans
 two or three days.—Will you show me your ring? No, I will not.—Do
montrer bague le
 you know Italian? Yes, I do.—I would most willingly oblige you, if
savoir très-volontiers
 I could.—Is that young man (thoroughly acquainted with book-
imp. le pouvoir sait-il bien tenir les livres
 keeping?)—I do not know, but he (should be).—Will you have the kindness
le devrait bonté
 to take that letter to the post for me? Yes, I (will,) if you can
de porter le veut bien
 lend me an umbrella.—(You must) tell him that he should take you to the
parapluie Il faut devoir mener
 play two or three times a year.—If the French would have pursued
spectacle par pluperf. vouloir
 the Russians, they might have taken all their ammunition.—I could have
Russe prendre munitions
 finished my drawing as soon as you, if I had been willing, but
finir dessin aussitôt que pluperf. l' vouloir
 it would not have been so well done as it is.—He ought to have paid
exécuter qu'il l' faire
 her a* visit, (being informed of her return).—If I were in your stead,
puisqu'il savait qu'elle était de retour imp. à place
 I would have him pay me immediately; although I would not
vouloir sub. imp. sur-le-champ quoique sub. imp. vouloir
 have* him suffer (by it).—Well! which of these two watches will
il sub. imp. souffrir en Hé bien montre
 you have?—They are really so pretty, that I would have them both.—She is
réellement joli
 so ignorant that she can neither read nor write.—That storm was so
tempête pret. def.
 violent, and lasted so long, that you (ought) to* remember it
pret. def. durer devriez vous souvenir en
 —I do not think he ought to* forgive his sister, before she
sub. pr. devoir pardonner à avant qu' sub. pr. ne
 asks his pardon.—Do you think she would come with us, if I (were
lui sub. imp.
 to ask her)? Yes; I am sure she would not refuse you.—Is it probable you
l'en priais refuser que
 (could have obtained) the consent of her father, if I had not spoken
eussiez pu obtenir pluperf.
 to him (in your favour)?
avantageusement de vous

PART THE THIRD.

OF SYNTAX.

THE third part of French grammar is Syntax, which treats of the regular construction of the different parts of speech, conformably to the genius and established rules of the French language.

LESSON XXXV.

*Of the Article.*1. *Cases in which the article is used in French.*

FIRST GENERAL RULE.—1. The definite article—*le, la, l', les; du, de la, de l', des*; or *au, à la, à l', aux*, according to the import of the sentence, is used in French before every substantive taken in a general or particular sense; that is, before every substantive designating either a whole species of things or beings, a kind of things, a determinate thing, or a private individual, and agrees with it in gender and number, whether any article be employed in English or not: as,—men and women are mortal, *les hommes et les femmes sont mortels*; wine is dear in this country, *le vin est cher dans ce pays*; gold is more precious than silver, *l'or est plus précieux que l'argent*.

2. The definite article is also used in French before words expressing the measure, quantity, weight or number of any thing, when we either mention its price or value, or ask how much it is worth or sold for: in this case, the indefinite article *a* or *an* is usually employed in English: as,—this cloth is worth twenty shillings a yard, *ce drap vaut vingt schellings la verge*; champagne is sold for a guinea a bottle, *le champagne se vend une guinée la bouteille*; and not—*ce drap vaut vingt schellings une verge*; *le champagne se vend une guinée une bouteille*.

But when we mention the time by which actions are measured, things and persons are hired or paid for, as likewise, what is given for attendance or admittance into public places, the preposition *par* is more generally used than the definite article *le, la, or les*, before the word which expresses the time, attendance, or person: as,—I give him twenty guineas a year, *je lui donne vingt guinées par an*; he gets six shillings a week, *il gagne six schellings par semaine*; so much a head, *tant par tête*; so much each, *tant par personne*; so much a lesson, *tant par leçon*; and not—*je lui donne vingt guinées l'an*; *il gagne six schellings la semaine*; *tant la tête*; *tant la personne*; *tant la leçon*; &c.

22 3. The definite article is likewise used in French before adjectives, infinitives of verbs, adverbs, prepositions, or conjunctions, used substantively, although there is generally no article employed before them in English: as,—I like white better than black, *j'aime mieux le blanc*

In general propositions the indef. article is often used in English - the French may have it also, but they prefer the definite - this, therefore, cannot be considered as an absolute rule.
R. 267

The words heaven, earth, paradise, hell which are often used without any article in Eng. require the definite article in French. . R. 266

When the price of a thing sold, hired &c. is not mentioned, the preposition by must be rendered by the definite article in the dative case.

S'acheter à l'heure, à la journée, à la pièce
Vendre à la livre, au boisseau, à l'aune.
R. 266

a. When two adjectives united by *et* qualify the same substantive, the article is not repeated, whether the adjectives precede or follow the noun as
L'élégant et fidèle traducteur de Néron -

b. When the two adjectives express the opposite qualities of one and the same substantive, the article is not repeated

Le simple et sublime Persan ,

c. But when the two adjectives qualify each a substantive, one expressed and the other understood, the article must be repeated, whether the qualities are opposite or not.

Le vicieux et le jeune soldat is said of two, while *le vicieux et brave soldat* is only said of one.

R. 274-75

que le noir. That which is necessary is to be preferred to what is merely useful, *le nécessaire est préférable à l'utile.* He wishes to know the why and the wherefore of every thing, *il veut savoir le pourquoi et le comment de tout.*

4. When two adjectives, being united by the conjunction *and*, qualify or specify the same substantive, the article must be used before each of them in French, when they express contrary qualities: as,—the first and second floor, *le premier et le second étage*; the good and bad company, *la bonne et la mauvaise compagnie.* But if the adjectives belong to that class of adjectives which must follow their respective substantives in French, the article is placed before the substantive and repeated before the second adjective: as,—the French and English languages, *la langue Française et l'Anglaise.*

If the adjectives should not express contrary qualities, being either synonymous, or denoting compatible qualities, the article should only be used before the first adjective, without being repeated before the second: as,—the virtuous and learned Mr. D* *, *le vertueux et savant Mr. D* *;* and not—*le vertueux et le savant Mr. D* *.*

Neither is the article repeated before the second of two substantives which are often mentioned together: as,—*le flux et reflux de la mer,* the ebbing and flowing of the sea; and not—*le flux et le reflux.* *Les tours et sinuosités de ce fleuve,* the windings of that river; and not—*les tours et les sinuosités, &c.*

Observe.—When the words *lady* and *young lady*, or *ladies* and *young ladies*, are preceded by an article, an adjective, or a pronoun in English, they are expressed in French by *dame* or *dames*, *demoiselle* or *demoiselles*, and not by *madame* or *mesdames*, *mademoiselle* or *mesdemoiselles*; and, in general, the words *dame*, *demoiselle*, or their plural, are used without the possessive pronouns *ma*, *me*, whenever they are preceded by a word specifying or qualifying them: as,—the lady and young lady whom I have seen home, *la dame et la demoiselle que j'ai reconduites*, and not—*la madame et la mademoiselle.* A fine lady, *une belle dame*, and not—*une belle madame.*

5. When addressing somebody we mention his title, quality, dignity, or profession, (if a liberal one,) the article must be used in French before such dignity or quality, &c., besides the word *monsieur*, *madame*, or *mademoiselle*, although no article be used in English: as,—Mr. colonel, shall we have the pleasure of your company to-day? *Monsieur le colonel, serez-vous des nôtres aujourd'hui?* Mr. general? *Monsieur le général?*

One of the qualifications *monsieur*, *madame*, or *mademoiselle*, or their plural *messieurs*, *mesdames*, or *mesdemoiselles*, is also used in French with the article *le*, *la*, or *les*, before a word of reproach, when we scold or blame somebody: as,—*Monsieur le fripon*, Mr. thief. *Monsieur le coquin*, Mr. rascal. *Mademoiselle la libertine*, Miss libertine. *Mesdemoiselles les paresseuses*, you lazy ladies.

SECOND GENERAL RULE.—The definite article is generally employed in French before the four quarters of the globe, as likewise before the

names of kingdoms, countries, provinces, rivers, ^{trinds} mountains, and hills, although (except before those of rivers and of some mountains) no article be used in English: as,—*l'Europe*, Europe; *l'Asie*, Asia; *l'Afrique*, Africa; *l'Amérique*, America; *la France*, France; *la Normandie*, Normandy; *la Bretagne*, Britany; *la Seine*, the Seine; *l'Angleterre*, England; *la Tamise*, the Thames, &c.

If the names of countries, kingdoms, or provinces, should be preceded by a verb expressing either coming from, going out, or passing from, and be considered merely as a point of departure, without any reference to their extent, they should then be preceded by the preposition *de* or *d'* only in French, without any article, whatever may be the preposition on which they depend in English: as,—I come from France and Italy, *je viens de France et d'Italie*. I shall soon set out from England, *je partirai bientôt d'Angleterre*.

They are likewise preceded by the preposition *de* or *d'* only, after a name of title or dignity, or after any thing of which they express the country: as,—the emperor of France, *l'empereur de France*; the king of England, *le roi d'Angleterre*; Italian silks, *soieries d'Italie*.

But if countries, kingdoms, or provinces, should be considered with reference to their whole extent, as it is generally the case after the words—limits, *limites*; boundaries, *bornes*; coasts, *côtes*; people, *peuples*; countries, *régions*; the compound article *du*, *dès*, or *de la*, *de l'*, should then be used before them: as,—the limits, the boundaries, the coasts of France and England, *les limites, les bornes, les côtes de la France et de l'Angleterre*. The people of Asia, Africa, and America, *les peuples de l'Asie, de l'Afrique, et de l'Amérique*,—and not *les limites de France et d'Angleterre*; *les peuples d'Asie, d'Afrique, et d'Amérique*; because *France, Angleterre, Asie, Afrique, and Amérique*, are considered in these sentences under the idea of their whole extent.

The names of countries, kingdoms, or provinces, are used without any article in French, when, being preceded by the preposition *en*, in the sense of *in*, *to*, or *into*, in English, they depend on a verb denoting either being, residing, or travelling in, or also going to a country, except after the verb *partir pour*, to set out for, which requires the article *le*, *la*, or *les*, before the country mentioned, as likewise after any other verb governing *pour*, or any other preposition than *en*: as,—he lives in Spain, *il demeure en Espagne*. I shall go to France, *j'irai en France*. I passed from Italy into Switzerland, *je passai d'Italie en Suisse*. I shall soon set out for Spain and Portugal, *je partirai bientôt pour l'Espagne et le Portugal*. We were travelling towards France, *nous voyagions vers la France*, &c.

But the names of distant countries, those of mountains, hills, and rivers; the names also of some provinces in France and Italy: as,—*le Perche, le Maine, le Milanais, la Pouille*, and particularly those which are composed of an adjective and a substantive: as,—*les Pays-Bas; la Nouvelle-Angleterre*; are always preceded by the compound

The prep. de when it is used to denote the place whence the subject speaks of comes is not joined with the article as, venin d'Arle, arrivon d'Alencon.

Le Page III 110.

^{partitive}
The article is used with nouns
expressive of ideal objects (ie such
as virtues and vices, defects and
qualities) taken in a partitive sense.
Il a du courage. Elle a de l'application
But when their nouns are accom-
panied by an adj. or described by
something coming after, they take
the indefinite article.

J'intends un grand bruit

Il a un courage, qui étonne.

M.L. 8.12.

article *au, aux*, or *à la, à l'*, instead of *en*, in the sense of *at, to, or into*, in English; and by *du, de la, de l', or des*, instead of *de*, for *of or from*: as,—to go to Japan, *aller au Japon*, and not *en Japon*. I have been to the Indies, *j'ai été aux Indes*, and not *en Indes*. He is gone to China, *il est allé à la Chine*, and not *en Chine*. The kings of China, Peru, and Japan, *les rois de la Chine, du Pérou, et du Japon*, and not *de Chine, de Pérou, et de Japon*.—He comes from Canada, *il vient du Canada*, and not *de Canada*. When we were returning from the Alps and Perche, *en revenant des Alpes et du Perche*, and not—*d'Alpes et de Perche*. We shall go to the Netherlands and Milanese, *nous irons aux Pays-Bas et au Milanais*, and not *à Pays-Bas et à Milanais*, &c. *Terre-Neuve*, Newfoundland, is however excepted, as it is only preceded by *à*, in the sense of *at or to*, and by *de* for *of or from*: as,—he went to Newfoundland, *il alla à Terre-Neuve*, and not *en* or *à la Terre-Neuve*. They are returned from Newfoundland, *ils sont revenus de Terre-Neuve*, and not *DE LA Terre-Neuve*.

When countries have the same name as their capital town, they are used without any article in French as in English, but they may be preceded by *de*, in the sense of *of or from*, and by *à*, for *at or to*: as,—the kingdom of Naples, *le royaume de Naples*. The dominions of Venice, *les états ou la république de Venise*. He has been to Naples, *il a été à Naples*.

ESSAY XXXV.

For the future, the verbs which are to be put in the imperfect or preterits definite and indefinite of the indicative in French, will not be found marked, as before, as the pupil must now endeavour to place them in the right tenses himself.

Ladies think that Latin and Greek are not so necessary as history, geography,
Dame croire — *Grec*

and mathematics.—Fortune is a capricious deity.—Glory, riches, nobleness,
mathématiques *capricieuse divinité* *richesses noblesse*

and power (are only) imaginary names.—Charity is the greatest of all
puissance ne sont que imaginaire nom

christian virtues.—Pride and vanity have often been the source of (a great many)
chrétien Orgueil bien

errors.—Gold is much harder than silver; but it is not so precious as diamond.
des dur précieux diamant

—Good champagne is sold in France for* eight or nine francs a bottle.—
se vendre bouteille

How much is silk worth an ell in this country?—This coffee costs me two
Combien valoir dans pays café coûter

shillings a pound.—We have some snuff at three sous an ounce.—I give him
schelling tabac sou once

ixty guineas a year, (including board and lodging).—(She is allowed) ten or
guinée la table et le logement On lui donne

eleven shillings a week for her (pocket money).—How much do you charge a
schelling menus plaisirs prendre

lesson? According to circumstances: sometimes half-a-guinea, and sometimes
suivant quelquefois

only five or six shillings.—(You can) dine at that hotel for four shillings
seulement On dîner hôtel à

a head.—I like green better than red, because it does not hurt the sight
aimer² vert¹ mieux blesser² l'vue

so much.—Eating and drinking are necessary to man.—Good and bad
tant Manger boire

company have each their followers.—The virtuous and learned Mr. C*⁺
chacun partisan

died, at thirty-three years of age, at his country seat near Windsor, and
mourir¹ 5 6 7 4 2p 3 château près de

left a most lovely (wife) and four little darlings of* children.—We
laisser la aimable des femmes 2⁺ 1charmant 2

took the first and second floor of that house.—Although you say that
prendre étage sub. pr.

French and Italian are the finest of European languages, and the easiest
Français Italien 1 2 4 5p 6Europe 3langue facile

to learn, yet I like the English and German best.*—
à cependant donner la préférence à Anglais à Allemand

The ebbing and flowing of the sea, the beautiful harmony of the heavens, and
beau ciel

the regular revolution of the stars and planets deserve our admiration.—Who
régulier étoile planète

(could have) thought that he would have extricated himself* so
aurait pu croire sub. plu. se débarrasser

easily from the windings of that river?—Colonel, shall we have the plea-
facilement

sure of your company to dinner to-day?—Mr. thief, if you ever (happen) to
1 3il 4 2jamais 3arrive de

(come here again), I swear I will break your neck.—You lazy ladies,
remettre les pieds ici jurer que 1 3casser 2vous le cou

what have you (been doing) all the morning? We have (been learning) our
fait matinée appris

French lessons.—The young ladies of that school (are so well-behaved)
3de 3Français 1 demoiselles pension se conduisent si bien

that every body admires them.—Europe, Asia, Africa and America, are the

four quarters of the world.—France, England, Germany, Spain and Italy,
partie Allemagne Espagne

are the finest kingdoms in Europe.—The Rhone, the Rhine, and the Danube,
royaume de l'

are very large rivers; and Mont-Blanc, the Alps, and the Pyrenees,
de grand fleuve Pyrénées f. pl.

very high mountains.—My brother writes to me from Prussia that the King of
haut montagne écrire 1qu' 9 10 11

Sweden and the Empress Maria are expected every day at Berlin.—
12Suède 13 14 16 Impératrice 16 Marie 2on 2attend 4tous 5les 6jours 7 8

When will your sister set out from France for Portugal? In ten or twelve days.
partir Dans

—I (saw), at Vienna, the Emperors of France and Russia, and the Kings of
à vu
 England and Prussia (dining) together in a beautiful pavilion.—Do you think
dîner ensemble superbe
 the people of Europe are more civilized than those of the other
peuples m. pl. sub. pr. civilisé
 quarters of the world? Undoubtedly.—Can you show me the limits of France?
partie Sans doute montrer
 No; but I think those of Switzerland and Italy are fixed here.—If you think the
Suisse fixé
 coasts of England are ornamented with such beautiful country-seats,
côte sub. pr. orné d' aussi beau maison de plaisance
 and exhibit (such delightful prospects) as these, you
qu'elles sub. pr. offrir à la vue d' aussi riantes perspectives que
 (are very much mistaken).—(How long) have you lived in England?
vous trompez bien Combien de temps demeurer
 Seven years.—And in Holland? Five years and a half.—Did you remain
rester
 long in Italy, when you made the tour of Europe? Only two months.—
long-temps faire
 And in France? Three years.—All my friends are now in America.—Next
à présent
 year, we intend going to Prussia and Sweden.—When do you
se proposer d'
 set out for Scotland and Ireland? In three or four months.—My nephew sails,
partir neveu partir
 next week, for the West Indies.—Have you been to Japan and China.—
Occidental Indes f. pl.
 The Governor of Canada is not very popular.—They are going this year to
populaire année
 the East Indies.—She is gone to (Newfoundland).—Mr. E* * arrived
Oriental Terre-Neuve arriver
 yesterday from the West Indies, and he intends setting out next month
se proposer de
 for the continent.—Will he go to Mont-Blanc? He talks (of it); but I do not
en
 think he will have time before the winter.—The kingdom of Naples
sub. pr. en
 and the Venetian dominions are not very powerful.
puissant

LESSON XXXVI.

2. Cases in which there is no Article used in French. 234

FIRST GENERAL RULE.—There is no article used in French before the word *Dieu*, taken in an indefinite sense, nor before the proper names of divinities, men, women, months, towns, villages, and places, when they are used in a general and *indeterminate* sense, although they, and

the word *Dieu*, may be preceded by a preposition : as,—God is good, *Dieu est bon*. Minerva is prudent and Venus beautiful, *Minerve est la prudence et Vénus la beauté*. London is considerable, *Londres est considérable*. I am going to Paris, *je vais à Paris*. He sets out for Amsterdam to-morrow, *il part demain pour Amsterdam*, &c.

When the cardinal or ordinal numbers are used in quotations after the words *livre*, book ; *chapitre*, chapter ; *page*, page, &c., there is no article used before them in French, although the definite article *the* may be most commonly used, in such a case, with the ordinal numbers in English : as,—book the eighth, *livre huit ou huitième*. Chapter the ninth, *chapitre neuf ou neuvième* ; and not *livre le huit ou le huitième* ; *chapitre le neuf ou le neuvième*.—We always say—*tome premier*, volume the first ; *section première*, section the first ; and not *tome un* ; *section une*. But if the ordinal numbers, instead of following the words *book*, *chapter*, *lesson*, *page*, &c. as above, should precede them as in these sentences : *the tenth lesson* ; *the fifteenth day* ; in this case, both the article and the ordinal number should be used in French as in English : Ex.—The tenth lesson, *la dixième leçon*. The fifteenth day, *le quinzième jour*.

The proper names *St. Jean*, *St. Michel*, *St. Pierre*, and *St. Thomas*, are used without any article, except when the days of their commemoration are mentioned, in which case the article feminine *la* is used before them, on account of the substantive *fête* being then understood : as,—*la St. Jean*, *la St. Michel*, *la St. Pierre*, *la St. Thomas* ; and, if we speak of any thing which is to take place on those days, *à* is required before the article : thus,—*à la St. Jean*, at Midsummer ; *à la St. Michel*, at Michaelmas, &c.

Note.—The article *le*, *du*, or *au*, according to the import of the sentence, is required before the word *dieu*, taken either as the divinity of any individual religion or of a particular thing ; and *les*, *des*, or *aux*, before the plural *dieux*, when we speak of the Pagan divinities : as,—*le Dieu des Chrétiens*, the God of the Christians. *Mars est le dieu de la guerre*, Mars is the God of war. *Les dieux et les demi-dieux*, the gods and demi-gods.

Proper names of men and women, used in the plural, likewise take the definite article *les* before them : as,—*les Alexandres*, *les Césars*, &c.

When the proper name of a man or woman, in the singular, is qualified by another word, the article *le* or *la* is used before that word, with this difference, that, should it precede the proper name, it denotes a quality common to many, whereas, if it should follow, it expresses a distinctive quality : as,—*le général Wellington*, the general Wellington ; in which case, *général* merely denotes the quality of general, which may belong to any body else ; but in this—*Wellington le général* ; *général* expresses a quality which distinguishes *Wellington* from any other person who may have the same name.

The article is likewise used before the names of women of light cha-

Some proper names of towns and particular places always keep the article as an inseparable part of the name as La Rochelle, Le Piche, la Haye, le Boire, la Macque. E.S. 194.

Proper names of persons, though applied to several, do not take the sign of the plural, when they only serve to name persons, as Jean ci par on by Delville.

The subst. here is a family name which would be entirely altered by the addition of s.

Yet we write in the plural Les Césars, les Jacques, les Cordés, les Bourbons &c., whether in imitation of the Latins, or because these words are rather titles, surnames, than proper names, and designate certain houses, certain families, and not individuals, T. 263

The article plural is emphatically used before names of men famous in history, or otherwise celebrated; but the names do not take the sign of the plural, as

Les plus grands orateurs tels que les Cicéron et les Démosthène.

Here the proper names preserve the sing. form though preceded by the plural article; it is because they designate the very individual, who bore those names.

Sometimes the indef. article is used in both languages, *un Ciceron, un Alexandre.* K. 264

Proper names take both the article and the sign of the plural, when they are employed as common substantives

Les Virgiles sont vus à Paris.
K. 264

Sometimes the article *la* was used before the names of celebrated actresses or singers, and even before the names of ladies of distinction - but without implying as we do now, either contempt or lightness of character. K. 264

The indefinite article used in sing. between a pronoun that expresses admiration and a substantive is never used in French, K. K. 267

racter, when we speak of them in a contemptuous manner : as,—*la Watson, the Watson.*

It is also used before the names of some Italian authors and painters : as,—*le Tasse, l'Arioste, le Titien. bel Liastore, Raphaël, &c.*
No rule can be given R. 264

It must be noticed that, when the prepositions *de* and *à* come before a French proper name, which is preceded by the article *le* or *la*, the contraction never takes place : we therefore say—*les tableaux de Le Brun*, the pictures of Le Brun, and not *du Brun*. *Le livre de Le Maire*, Le Maire's book, and not *du Maire* ; whereas the contraction is required before proper names which are not French, if, being preceded by the article, they come after the preposition *de* : as—*les ouvrages du Dante et du Tasse*, and not *de le Dante et de le Tasse*.

SECOND GENERAL RULE.—No article is used in French before common substantives taken in a general and *indeterminate* sense :—

1. When they are used by way of title or address, although the indefinite article *a* or *an* may be prefixed to them in English : as,—a proclamation, *proclamation* ; a new grammar, *nouvelle grammaire* ; a preface, *préface*, &c. *il demeure rue Richelieu*

2. To give more emphasis to the expression, when several substantives are enumerated, either as the subject or object of a verb, in which case, likewise, there is no article used in English : as,—citizens, strangers, enemies, people, kings, emperors, pity and revere him, *citoyens, étrangers, ennemis, peuples, rois, empereurs, le plaignent et le révèrent.*

3. After *ne que*, in the sense of *nothing but*, in English : as,—I beheld nothing but solitude and desolation, *Je n'ai vu qu'abandon et solitude*, *but it is used before the last noun R. 272*

“ *Je ne trouve partout que lâche flatterie,
 Qu'injustice, intérêt, trahison, fourberie.*”—MOLIÈRE.

4. In proverbs : as,—poverty is no crime, “ *pauvreté n'est pas vice.*” Content is beyond riches or the greatest wealth, “ *contentement passe richesse.*”

5. When persons or things are addressed : as,—friends, let us fly to glory, *amis, volons à la gloire.*

“ *Fleurs charmantes, par vous la nature est plus belle.*”—DELILLE.

But when common persons are addressed in the ordinary occurrences of life, the definite article is sometimes used and sometimes not, which can only be learned by practice : thus, for instance, we say without article—*écoutez, garçon !* hark ye, my lad ! whereas we express with the article—*écoutez, la fille !* hark ye, my girl !—if calling a man who sells umbrellas in the street, or a milk-woman, we may say :—*marchand de parapluies !* or, *l'homme aux parapluies !* and, *la femme au lait !*

6. After *quel, quelle, quels* or *quelles*, used to express surprise or admiration, although the indefinite article *a* or *an* be commonly used after *what*, in such a case, in English : as,—what a fine young lady ! *quelle belle demoiselle !* what a fine man ! *quel bel homme !* what a

rogue! *quel coquin!* and not *quelle une belle demoiselle!* *quel un bel homme!* *quel un coquin!*

Neither is *a* or *an* expressed in French, when it is used in English before a word which qualifies or determines what the preceding substantive is, as in this example:—the Duke of York, *a* prince of the blood, *le Duc d'York, prince du sang*; and not *un prince du sang*.

A or *an*, used in the second part of a sentence, before a substantive which begins an observation on the preceding part, is likewise left out in French: as,—Mr. S*** has canvassed two thousand votes, *a* sufficient number to exclude any other candidate, *M. S*** s'est assuré deux mille voix, nombre suffisant pour exclure tout autre candidat*, and not—*un nombre suffisant*, &c.

7. When they are immediately preceded either by the verb *avoir* or *faire* or by any other verb with which they express but one and the same idea. In this case, both the verb and the substantive generally are or could be expressed by one word in English: as,—*avoir envie*, to envy; *avoir pitié*, to pity; *faire peur*, to frighten, &c. The same takes place, when they are joined to a verb by a preposition: as,—*trembler de froid*, to shiver with cold; *agir en père, en roi*, &c., to act like a father, a king, &c.

8. When they are immediately preceded by *ni*, neither and nor: as,—*je n'ai ni or ni argent*, I have neither gold nor silver. *Il ne peut souffrir ni femme ni enfans*, he can bear neither wife nor children.

If several substantives should be enumerated, the first being preceded by *neither*, while *nor* is understood before some of the others, *ni* must be repeated before each of them in French.

9. After *soit* repeated, or *soit* in the first part of a sentence with *ou* in the second, in the sense of *either* and *or*: as,—*soit erreur, soit méchanceté de sa part*, or *soit erreur ou méchanceté de sa part*, either through error or wickedness on his part.

10. After *jamais*, never: as,—*jamais peut-être femme ne fut plus cruelle*, there was never perhaps a more cruel woman.

11. Sometimes after *tout*, *toute*, all: as,—*toute femme qu'elle est*, although she be a woman.

12. After *en*, in, into: as,—*être en ville*, to be in town, &c.

But the definite article is sometimes used after *en*, in some particular cases which have been before mentioned under the article of prepositions: as,—*en l'honneur de Madame T***, in the honour of Mrs. T**; *en l'absence de Mademoiselle C***, in the absence of Miss C**; *en la présence de Dieu*, in the presence of God; *avoir confiance en la miséricorde du roi*, to trust to the king's mercy.

13. Finally, when substantives are employed adjectively, no article is used before them in French, whether there be any used in English or not: as,—*le mensonge est bassesse*, lying is a base action. *La sévérité dans les lois est humanité pour les peuples*, severity in laws is humanity towards the people, &c.

When several substantives are enumerated, the article may be used, but the suppression is not less unphotocall in French than in Eng.: in that case the last substantive need not be preceded by the conj. et.

Jeux, conversation, spectacle, rien ne la distrait.
Jeux, amis, parents, tout a trahi sa foi.

In similar sentences, all the nominatives are summoned up in one by the word rien, tout, nul, &c. and the verb is sing.

R. 272

For the last see Rouillon 269

Get me read in Leamontel: Je ne voyais dans un cœur tout à moi ni de l'aigreur ni de l'amertume, but he might have said ni aigreur ni amertume. R. 272

With proper names, the qualifying substantive is often placed first. Suetonius a Roman. un Romain nommé Suetonius. Polybius the historian, l'historien Polybe.

The article is omitted before a substantive beginning an incidental sentence, which is an observation upon or has been said.

Le traité fut perdu, suppose qu'il n'était R. 273

The article likewise serves to give
grace and elegance to the Discourse
when it comes before a substantive.
Imparting a quality which the pre-
ceding noun possesses in a particu-
lar degree

Athènes, autrefois le séjour
des beaux-arts, n'est plus qu'un
monceau de ruines... R. 272.

Nouvelle may remain in the sing.
and be preceded by the indefinite
article, une bonne nouvelle, or
it may be taken in a particu-
lar sense plural de bonnes nouvelles R. 96.

ESSAY XXXVI.

God is the supreme being who governs every thing by his power and wisdom.—Oxford, Bath, and Brighton are three fine towns.—When do you set out for Paris? Next month.—Venus was one of the goddesses to whom the Pagans offered their incense and sacrifices.—Alexander the Great and Napoleon are considered as the two most powerful monarchs that ever reigned.—What a difference between the worship of the God of the Christians and that of the gods of the Pagans!—A beautiful statue was erected to the god of war in memory of that brilliant and ever memorable victory over the Thracians.—The heathens had a great number of gods and demi-gods.—Come and see me on Monday or Thursday.—September and October are two fine months in England.—The works of Dante are not better written than those of Tasso.—She will leave this house at Midsummer or at Michaelmas.—Book the first.—Chapter the second.—Section the twelfth.—Rule the seventh.—Volume the sixth.—Article the third.—A proclamation of his Majesty George the Fourth.—A new grammar of the French language.—General reflections on the progress of the Christian religion among the heathens.—A life of the much-lamented Mr. D* *.—The Duke of ——— lived formerly at* No. 21, Pall-Mall, St. James's; but I do not think he lives there now.—A history of France from 1800 to the abdication of Napoleon the Great.—I find every where nothing but gross flattery, injustice, interest, treason, and imposture.—Did you ever hear these proverbs: "Poverty is no crime;" "Content is the greatest blessing?"—Come, friends, let us fly to glory!—Delightful flowers! nature is embellished by you.—Waiter! give us a bottle of Madeira.—Hark ye, my girl! take care (you put) clean sheets on my bed.—Oysterwoman! I (want to*)

suprême être gouverner tout puissance
sagesse
partir prochain déesse
Païen offrir encens Alexandre-le-Grand
considérer puissant monarque sub. pret. régner
entre culte Chrétien
superbe — on élever
mémoire à jamais sur Thraces
quitter
païen très-regretté
demeurer autrefois
sub. pr. y à présent
depuis jusqu'à
bas trahison Avez
entendre
Allons
embelli Garçon Maître
avoir soin de mettre blanc des draps à
autres femme voudrais

speak to you.—What a terrible noise these children make !——I did not know the
bruit *savoir*

Duke of * * * was a prince of the blood.——He has been accused of
sub. imp. *accuser*

258 felony, a crime punishable by death.—Have pity (on the) poor.——Mind
félonie *punissable de* *des* *pauvre* *Prendre garde*

(you do not) frighten her.——You are shivering with cold, come and*
de *faire* *peur* *lui* *trembler* *de* *froid*

warm yourself.——George the Third always acted as a good king and father.——
vous chauffer

He knows neither history, geography, nor mathematics.——I had neither ink nor

paper.——(Either through) negligence or forgetfulness on his part, the bill was
Soit *oubli* *de* *billet*

not presented in time.——Never was any* man more cruel.——He particularly
présenter en

recommended me to go there in the absence of Mrs. N * *.——Always think you
recommander *d'* *y* *penser*

are in the presence of God.——Although you have been sentenced to
sub. pret. *condamner à*

death, hope in the king's mercy, (he may forgive you).
mort *miséricorde* *peut-être* *vous pardonnera-t-il*

LESSON XXXVII.

Continuation of the cases in which there is no article used in French.

THIRD GENERAL RULE.—No article is used in French before words denoting the country of persons : as,—*Français*, French ; *Anglais*, English, &c. ; nor before nouns expressing titles, dignities, trades, professions, or any other attribute, when they are not accompanied by an adjective or any other word modifying them, but are used by themselves, or are merely preceded by a tense of the verb *être*, (to be,) although the indefinite article *a* or *an* be generally employed, in such a case, in English : as,—his father is an officer, *son père est officier*. I am a surgeon, *je suis chirurgien*. You a surgeon ! *vous chirurgien !* My sister is a milliner, *ma sœur est marchande de modes* ; and not *son père est un officier ; je suis un chirurgien*, &c.

If these words should be modified by an adjective following them in French, or by some other expression which does not form an indivisible sense with them, they should then be preceded by the indefinite article *un*, *une*, (a or an,) whereas the article is omitted, if the following word or words form an indivisible sense with them : as,—his father is a distinguished officer, *son père est un officier distingué*, ou *d'un mérite distingué*, and not *est officier distingué* ; but we say—*il est officier aux gardes*, he is an officer in the guards, and not *il est un officier*, because *officier* and *aux gardes* cannot be divided without altering the sense.

A substantive used adjectively is not preceded by any article

Ton père est médecin. Le message est bachelier

If however the substantive used adjectively were attended by an adj. or preceded by the impersonal *c'est*, the indif. article should be used. *Ton père est un habile médecin; c'est un officier*

R. 270.

When the verb *être* is in the 3^d person, if we use the pron. *ce* for its subject, as we do when we want to define what we speak of, then we use *un, des* before the noun, as *c'est un Français*; but if we use the pron. *il*, as we do when we intend only to qualify the subject, we suppress *un* and *des* *Il est Français.* See Page Part III. - 114

The definite article, is suppressed af-
ter some verbs followed by the prepo-
sition pour, as se donner pour, recou-
rante pour and after the verbs crier
nommer, fuire, croire, devenir, naître
vivre, and a few others. R. 271

Un or *une*, or the definite article *le*, *la*, *les*, or *du*, *de la*, *des*, &c. according to the import of the sentence, is likewise used before these words, whether they be accompanied or not by an adjective, when they are preceded by a tense of the verb *être*, having *ce* or *c'*, for its antecedent: as,—*c'est un officier*, he is an officer; *ce sont des marchandes de modes*, they are milliners; *c'est un enfant*, it is a child, &c.

Un or *une* is also used before the above qualifying expressions, whenever the substantive or noun to which they refer depends on the preposition *de*, or when *en* comes before the verb preceding them, in the sense of *de lui* or *d'elle*, which is frequently the case with the different tenses of the verb *faire*: as,—*il a fait de son fils un médecin*, he has made his son a physician. *J'en ferai un prêtre*, I shall make a priest of him.

Un or *une* is likewise used in French before a substantive singular, referring to things, and specifying or qualifying another substantive, if *a* or *an* be employed before it in English; but if *a* or *an* should not be expressed in English, and the word should be plural, the compound article *des* should then be used before it in French: as,—his house is a palace, *c'est un palais que sa maison*. Their houses are palaces, *leurs maisons sont des palais*, &c.

FOURTH GENERAL RULE.—1. The preposition *de* or *d'*, only, is used in French before a substantive taken in a general and *indeterminate* sense, after the words *sorte*, sort; *genre*, kind; *espèce*, species; *mélange*, mixture; or any other of the same kind, leaving out the article *a* or *an*, which is sometimes used after *of* or *from*, in such a case, in English: as,—*une sorte de fruit*, a kind of fruit. *Il deshonne la profession d'auteur*, he disgraces the profession of an author.

2. The preposition *de* or *d'* is also used in French, without any article, before a substantive which expresses, in an indeterminate manner, the nature, matter, quality, profession, or country of the preceding substantive, which is usually placed the second in English and the first in French: as,—a gold snuff-box, *une tabatière d'or*; a marble table, *une table de marbre*; silk-stockings, *des bas de soie*; a French master, *un maître de Français*; Burgundy wine, *du vin de Bourgogne*, &c.

But if we wish to specify a particular kind of thing, instead of expressing in an indeterminate manner the nature, matter, or quality of the preceding noun, as gold and marble do in the above sentences, in which they denote any kind of gold and marble, the compound article *du*, *des*, or *de la*, *de l'*, should then be used in French: as,—a table of Carara marble, *une table du marbre qu'on tire de Carara*.

3. The preposition *de* or *d'* is likewise used in French, without any article, after the following adverbs of quantity, scarcity, or exclusion:—*assez**, enough; *autant*, as much, as many; *beaucoup*, much, many; *combien*, how much, how many; *jamais*, never; *moins*, less; *pas* or

* 1. *Assez*, enough, always precedes the substantive which it particularises in

240

point, no; *peu*, little, few; *plus*, more; *rien*, nothing; *tant*, so much, so many; *trop*, too much, too many; also after the words—*nombre*, number; *quantité*, quantity; *livre*, pound; *mesure*, measure; *aune*, ell; *verge*, yard; *boisseau*, bushel; and any other word of quantity, when the following substantive is taken in an *indeterminate* sense: as,—give me an ell of riband, *donnez-moi une aune de ruban*; meaning any kind of riband; but if the following substantive should refer to something pointed at or alluded to in a particular and determinate manner: as,—give me an ell of the same riband which you have given to my sister; the compound article *du*, *des*, or *de la*, *de l'*, should then be used before it: as,—give me an ell of the same riband which you have given to my sister, *donnez-moi une aune du même ruban que vous avez donné à ma sœur*; and not *de même ruban que*, &c.

4. No article (but the preposition *de* or *d'*) is used in French before substantives taken in an *indeterminate* sense, after an adjective, a participle, or a verb governing *de* in French, whatever may be the preposition on which these substantives depend in English: as,—thirsting after glory, *avide de gloire*, and not *de la gloire*; loaded with honours *comblé d'honneurs*, and not *des honneurs*.

If any particular thing should however be specified in a determinate manner, the compound article *du*, *des*, or *de la*, *de l'*, should be used before it: as,—he deserves the praises which are bestowed upon him, *il est digne des louanges qu'on lui donne*.

5. No article whatever is used in French before substantives taken in an *indeterminate* sense, after the prepositions—*à*, at or to; *avec*, with; *contre*, against; *entre*, between; *par*, by; *sans*, without; and several others: as,—he spoke with courage, *il parla avec courage*; he did it unaware, *il le fit par mégarde*, &c. But if any thing should be specified in a particular manner, *un* or *une*, or the definite article *le*, *la*, or *les*, according to the sense, should be used before it: as,—he fought with

French, although *enough* follows it in English: as,—there were not dancers enough, *il n'y avait pas assez de danseurs*.

2. *Bien*, much, many, and *la plupart*, the most part, require the compound article *du*, *des*, or *de la*, *de l'*, before the next substantive: as,—he has many friends, *il a bien des amis*. Most people believe it, *la plupart du monde le croit*; &c. and not *il a bien d'amis*; *la plupart de monde*, &c.

3. When a substantive is used immediately after a verb employed negatively, and is followed by an adjective or an incidental sentence modifying it, the compound article *du*, *des*, or *de la*, *de l'*, must be used before it, whereas *de* only is required, if it should not be modified by any other word: as,—I will not make you any frivolous reproaches, *je ne vous ferai point des reproches frivoles*. I have not such low ideas, *je n'ai point des sentimens si bas*. Never give any advice which it would be dangerous to follow, *ne donnez jamais des conseils qu'il soit dangereux de suivre*; &c. But we say with *de* only:—she has no wit, *elle n'a point d'esprit*; they have not lent her any money, *ils ne lui ont point prêté d'argent*; because *esprit* and *argent* are not modified by any adjective.

“N'affectez point ici des soins si généreux.”—VOLTAIRE.

When a subst. together with the preposi-
tion *avec*, forms an adverbial locution, no
article is used before that noun; with
honour, *avec honneur*, i.e. honourably;
that expression must follow the verb,
R. 225.

When the noun is governed by an act.
verb used negatively, the article is not used
Elle n'a pas d'argent. Vous n'avez pas d'amis.

Though the expression employed is nega-
tive, yet the sense is sometimes affirmative
and positive, then the article must be used as
*Je n'ai pas de l'argent pour le dépenser
follement*, which signifies, *j'ai de l'ar-
gent, mais ce n'est pas pour le dépenser follement*.

But the article should be used if the
noun be followed and modified by an adj.
or by an incidental sentence. *Il affecta
point ici des vains de goûteux: — ou don-
nez jamais des conseils qu'il doit des-
serrer de lui-même.*

When the verb is both neg. and inter-
rogative, the article is used if we wish to
suppose a positive sense, but omitted if neg.
N'avez-vous pas du pain? N'avez-vous pas de pain?

When the Subst. is repeated with a pre-
position no article is used

Promesses sur promesses; de siècle en siècle.
Pied contre pied; de nation à nation.

R. 269.

We can say parler Français, Anglais, &c.
omit the articles, but it is used with
any other verb, as apprendre le Français
Lull. Syn. 6.

242

this world to all sorts of infirmities and dangers.—He prescribed for* me a
infirmité *ordonner*
mixture of rhubarb, nitre, and other drugs.—The hieroglyphics of the
mixture *rhubarbe* *drogue* *hiéroglyphe*
Egyptians were figures of men, birds, animals, and reptiles.—(There are)
Égyptien *des* *Voilà*
two kinds of apples, to which shall I have the pleasure of helping you?—I
sorte *desquelles* *offrir*
have a gold snuff-box, which (cost me) twenty-five pounds.—She always
m'a coûté *livres sterling*
wears silk-stockings.—Tell the music-master, when he (comes), that I shall
porter *au* *viendra*
not be able to* see him to-day.—Waiter, give us a bottle of Rhenish wine.—
pouvoir *du Rhin*
Is the chamber-maid up stairs?—Few people (are satisfied with the mere neces-
chambre fille en haut *gens savent se contenter du pur néces-*
saries of life).—I doubt whether they have two (hundred pounds weight)
savoir *douter qu'* *sub. pr.* *quintaux*
of sugar in their warehouse.—Most young men boast too much.—Women
magasin *La plupart jeunes gens se vanter*
have frequently too much sensibility.—I do not entertain such mean opinions.
souvent *avoir des si bas sentiment*
—Listen, my dear, never give advice (for which you may afterwards be
Écouter *des conseils* *qui puissent vous attirer des*
upbraided).—The roads are lined with laurels, pomegranate trees, jessamines,
reproches *chemin bordé de laurier* *grenadier* *jasmin*
and other evergreen and ever blooming trees.—He is not worthy of
toujours vert *toujours fleuri* *digne*
the honours (which are bestowed upon him).—Mr. C** preached, yesterday,
qu'on lui rend *prêcher*
with force and eloquence.—The forty-second regiment fought with the greatest
combattre
courage and intrepidity.—She spends all her time in going from shop
la plus grande *passer* *à*
to shop, and street to street.
de

LESSON XXXVIII.

Of Substantives.


FIRST GENERAL RULE.—When two or more substantives follow each other in a sentence, and the second substantive, if only two, or the third or fourth, &c. if more than two be used, is dependent on the first as its object, the preposition *de*, or, if the article be also required, *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, or *des*, is used before the second, and repeated before those which succeed, according to its or their gender and number, in the sense of *of* or *from*, in English: as,—the corruption of the heart is often the cause

211

of the corruption of the mind, *la corruption du cœur est souvent la cause de la corruption de l'esprit*. Peru has rich mines of gold and silver, *le Pérou a de riches mines d'or et d'argent*.

If, instead of the preposition *de*, the first substantive should govern *à*, in the sense of *at* or *to* in English; in this case—*à*, or, if the article be also required, *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, or *aux*, should be used before the second substantive, and repeated before those which follow, according to its or their gender and number: as,—justice is obedience to written laws and constitutions, *la justice est l'obéissance aux lois écrites et aux constitutions*.

Of the Possessive Case.

SECOND GENERAL RULE.—Whenever a substantive is in the possessive case in English, the preposition *de*, or, if the article be also required, *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, or *des*, is used before it in French, placing first the substantive or noun of which the possession is expressed, and which is placed the second in English: as,—Esop's fables, *les fables d'Ésope*; Miss Rose's book, *le livre de Mademoiselle Rose*; &c. as if  were in English—the fables of Esop, the book of Miss Rose.

If the possessive case should be preceded by *of the*: as,—one of the king's palaces; *of the* is sometimes expressed by *des*, and sometimes left out: as,—one of the king's palaces, *un des palais du roi*; two of the king's guards, *deux gardes du roi*.

Should the possessive case depend on a tense of the verb *to be*, employed in the sense of *to belong to*: as,—this is my sister's; the preposition *à*, or, if the article be also required, *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, or *aux*, must then be used in French before the substantive which is in the possessive case in English: as,—this is my sister's, *ceci est à ma sœur*.

The preposition *à* must likewise be used in French before a substantive which, being used in reply to a question, is in the possessive case in English, although in such a case the verb *to be* may not be expressed before it: as,—whose hat is this? Mr. H.'s, *à qui est ce chapeau? à M. H.*.**

If the substantive of which the possessive case expresses the possession should be followed by the preposition *of* or *from*, and a substantive with which it forms an indivisible sense: as,—the emperor's presence of mind is incredible; I have read Anquetil's History of France; the substantive of which the possessive case expresses the possession should likewise be placed the first in French, with *de* or *d'* immediately before the substantive with which it forms an indivisible sense: then comes the substantive in the possessive case, preceded by *de*, or, if the article be also required, *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, or *des*; and sometimes, also, by *par*: as,—the emperor's presence of mind is incredible, *la présence d'esprit de l'empereur est incroyable*. I have read Anquetil's History of France, *j'ai lu l'Histoire de France de ou par Anquetil*.

244

But when the substantive following that of which the possessive case expresses the possession does not form an indivisible sense with it, it is then necessary to give the sentence another turn: as,—five years of uninterrupted sufferings, borne with the greatest fortitude, have proved this great man's contempt of his enemies, *cinq ans de souffrances continuelles, supportées avec un courage étonnant, ont montré le mépris que ce grand homme faisait de ses ennemis.*

The word *house*, which is frequently understood in English after a proper name, or any other word in the possessive case, must be expressed in French by *chez*: as,—he returned yesterday from Mr. Canning's in an hour, *il revint hier de chez M. Canning en une heure.*

THIRD GENERAL RULE.—When two words following each other in English are so joined as to make a kind of compound word, the first expressing the matter, species, quality, or property of the second: as,—*silk-stockings*; *ear-rings*; &c. the order of the words must be inverted in French, in the same manner as for the possessive case, placing that which is the first in English the second in French, with the preposition *de* or *d'* before it: as,—*silk-stockings*, *des bas de soie*; *ear-rings*, *des boucles d'oreilles*; a saddle-horse, *un cheval de main ou de selle*; a hat-box, *un étui de chapeau*; &c.; as if it were in English,—*stockings of silk*; *rings of ears*; &c.

If the first of the two words should denote the use of the second: as,—*gun-powder*; *fire-arms*; *the dining-room*; &c. the preposition *à* should then be used before it; whereas, if it should express any thing good to eat or drink, the compound article *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, or *aux*, according to its gender and number, should be employed before it: as,—*gunpowder*, *de la poudre à canon*; *fire arms*, *des armes à feu*; *the dining-room*, *la salle à manger*; *the milkman*, *l'homme au lait*; *the oyster-woman*, *la femme aux huîtres*; &c.

Observe.—When two substantives are united by the preposition *de* in French, the second must be put in the singular, if it merely denotes the nature, quality, or substance of the first, in an indefinite manner, without any idea of plurality: as,—*un marchand de vin*, a wine-merchant; *des marchands de vin*, wine-merchants; *des bas de soie*, silk-stockings; *des caprices de femme*, woman's whims; *des plants de vigne*, vine-plantations; *des langues de bœuf, de mouton, &c.* neat's, sheep's tongues; &c.

But if the second substantive should express an idea of plurality, that is, an idea of several persons or things assembled or put together, and which could be taken separately and numbered, it should then be put in the plural: as,—*une pension de dames*, a ladies' school; *un bouquet de roses*, a nosegay of roses; &c.

What has just been said, with reference to the preposition *de*, is applicable to the prepositions *à*, *en*, and *sans*, and any other uniting either two substantives together or an adjective or a verb with a substantive, always putting the substantive which

It is used when of, of the, or, or of
composed of, coming from can be un-
derstood. La porte de la maison,
fenêtre de chambre, bas de soie
fin de Madère.

It is used when for, for the pur-
pose of, by means of, with, may
be understood. Marché à papier,
Bateau à vapeur, Bas à trois
fils, stockings with three threads
G. G. 210

210

2

1

•

•

1

2

2

■

10

2

•

►

9

■

1

1

—

22

1

2

•

—

2

9

•

follows the preposition, either in the singular or plural, according as the sense requires it: thus we say—*aller à pied*, in the singular, because *pied* is merely used in this sentence to specify, in an indefinite manner, the mode of going, and to distinguish it from any other; but we say—*sauter à pieds joints*, in the plural, because *joints* specifies and recalls the idea of two feet.

The additional *s* and the apostrophe (') used to form the possessive case in English, are left out in French: as,—Miss Rose's book, *le livre de Mademoiselle Rose*, and not *de Mademoiselle Rose's*.

ESSAY XXXVIII.

(We must observe) the rules of civility, decency, and good manners.—
Il faut observer honnêteté bienséance mœurs

There is no country that has so many rich mines of gold and silver
sub. pr. autant de

as Peru.—The divine law prescribes obedience to kings and magistrates.—I do
Pérou prescrire

not think your sister's hat is here, unless Mrs. A** has
*sub. pr. à moins que M^{me} A** sub. pret.*

put it in the (bed-room).—Have you in your library Hume's History
mettre chambre à coucher bibliothèque

of England? No; but I have (ordered) it at my bookseller's, and he
1 2 4 fait demander 3 chez libraire

is to* send it me to-morrow.—Mrs. L.'s sweet temper and great
devoir envoyer aimable disposition sa

activity delight and enchant me.—I walked back yesterday from Mr.
me charmer enchanter revenir 2 à 3 pied 1 de chez

T.'s, in two hours, without (being) fatigued.—Where is my mother's pelisse?
être

This is my sister's.—Will you give me Mr. W.'s umbrella?—Miss A** has a
parapluie

handsome pair of ear-rings, which have been (sent) to her from America,
beau oreilles boucle on envoyée

with a beautiful Indian shawl.—I want a pasteboard hat-box.—I
superbe Indes schall avoir besoin d' de carton chapeau étui

question whether there is a better saddle-horse in all England.—You
douter qu' sub. pr. de main

ought to* keep fire-arms in your bed-room, for your safety during the
devriez garder sûreté pendant

night. (So I do;) but they are useless, because I have no gunpowder.
C'est ce que je fais inutile

—That house consists of two large offices and a dining-room (on the) ground-
en grand manger salle au rez de

floor, two drawing-rooms on the first, six bed-rooms on the second, four on
chaussée salon

the third; two (water-closets), and a large garden.—The milk-woman is at
cabinets d'aisances

the door; where have you put the milk-pot?—(Are there) as many silk-worms
Y a-t-il autant de soie ver

246

in Switzerland as in Italy?—Do you come from the herb-market? No; I
Suisse qu' herbes pl. marché
 come from the hay-market.—Go to the (fish-market), and try to get a
foin poissonnerie tâcher de trouver
 nice salmon; then call at the butcher's, and tell him to send us a breast
bon ensuite passer chez dire de poitrine
 of veal.—Tell the oyster-woman to call the rabbit-man, who is over the
à d' lapin de l'autre côté du
 way.—How many wine-merchants are there in this town? Three.—This
chemin
 couch and arm-chair are stuffed with (horse-hair).—Send me two sheep's
canapé fauteuil rembourrer de crin
 tongues and some quince jelly.—Do you know a good ladies' (boarding-
coing marmelade connaître pen-
 school,) (to which) I can send my little girl? No; I do not.—What a
sion où sub. pr. pouvoir
 beautiful nosegay of roses!—I can leap over that brook with my* feet
bouquet sauter ruisseau à
 close. Can you? No; I do not think I can.—Shall we
joint et vous le que sub. pr. le
 ride or (walk) there*? I should much prefer (going) in a* boat.
aller à cheval à pied beaucoup préférer d'y aller en

LESSON XXXIX.

Of Adjectives and Participles Adjectively used.

PARTICULAR OBSERVATIONS ON THE AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES ADJECTIVELY USED WITH THEIR RESPECTIVE SUBSTANTIVES, IN FRENCH.

FIRST GENERAL RULE.—Adjectives and participles adjectively used agree in French, in gender and number, with the substantives which they qualify: as,—a handsome woman, *une belle femme*; a good man, *un bon homme*.

Observe.—1. Whenever the adjective *feu*, (late,) is employed before the article *le*, *la*, or *les*, or before one of the possessive pronouns *mon*, *ma*, *mes*, it always remains indeclinable: as,—*feu la princesse*, the late princess; *feu ma nièce*; my late niece; *feu mes tantes*, my late aunts; &c., but if *feu* should be preceded in French, as *late* is in English, by the definite article, or by one of the possessive pronouns *mon*, *ma*, *mes*, it would then become declinable, and agree in gender and number with its respective substantive: as,—*la feuë princesse*, the late princess; *ma feuë nièce*, my late niece; *mes feuës tantes*, my late aunts; &c.

2. When *demi*, half, and *nu*, naked, come before their respective substantives: as,—*une demi-heure*, half an hour; *une demi-lieue*, half a league; *nu-tête*, bare-headed; *nu-pieds*, bare-footed; *nu-jambes*,

The adjectives *me*, *demi*, *excepti*, *supposé* are not declined before a substantive. *excepti* as *personnes*; *supposé* as *faits*.

But the same adjectives agree when they are placed after the substantives; *ces personnes exceptées*; *ces faits supposés*. R. 277

22

bare-legged; they remain indeclinable: but when *nu* follows its respective substantive, it agrees in gender and number with it; whereas *demi*, in such a case, agrees only in gender with it, and never in number: as,—*les pieds nus et les jambes nues*, without shoes and stockings; *la tête nue*, bare-headed; *une livre et demie*, a pound and a half; *deux lieues et demie*, two leagues and a half.

“Près du temple sacré, les grâces *demi-nues*.”—VOLTAIRE.

When *demi* comes before its respective substantive, it must be preceded by *un* or *une*, according to the gender of the substantive, although *a* or *an* follows *half* in English: as,—*un demi-cent*, half a hundred; *une demi-livre*, half a pound, &c. but *un* or *une* is not used, when *demi* comes after its respective substantive: as,—*deux cents et demi*, two hundred and a half; *deux livres et demie*, two pounds and a half, &c. and not, *deux cents et un demi*; *deux livres et une demie*, &c.

SECOND GENERAL RULE.—Whenever an adjective, or a participle adjectively used, refers to two or more substantives, as in the following examples:—*her father and brother are dead*; *this actor plays with exquisite taste and feeling*; *his courage and boldness seem astonishing to me*; *she has astonishing sweetness and evenness of disposition*; it is placed after them in French, whether it precedes or follows in English, and is put in the plural masculine, if the substantives are all masculine, or of different genders; but, if they be all feminine, it must be put in the plural feminine: as,—*her father and brother are dead*, *son père et son frère sont morts*. *This actor plays with exquisite taste and feeling*, *cet acteur joue avec une noblesse et un goût charmans*. *His courage and boldness seem astonishing to me*, *sa hardiesse et son courage me semblent étonnans*. *She has an astonishing sweetness and evenness of disposition*, *elle a une douceur et une égalité d'esprit merveilleuses*.

When the substantives are of different genders, as in the above examples, and the adjective referring to them has not the same termination in the masculine and feminine, the ear and taste require that the substantive which is masculine should be placed the last in French, that is, the nearest to the adjective: as,—*cet acteur joue avec une noblesse et un goût charmans*, and not *avec un goût et une noblesse charmans*. *Sa hardiesse et son courage me semblent étonnans*, and not *son courage et sa hardiesse me semblent étonnans*: because *charmant* and *étonnant* make *charmante* and *étonnante* in the feminine.

If the substantives should be synonymous, as in the following example:—*his whole life has been nothing but continual labour and occupation*; the adjective agrees then with the last substantive only, without expressing the conjunction which may be used in English: as,—*his whole life has been nothing but continual labour and occupation*, *toute sa vie n'a été qu'un travail, qu'une occupation continuelle*. The same takes place, when the substantives are not synonymous, if we dwell more upon the last than on the others, either because it explains the preceding

248

ones; or is more energetic, or because it is of such moment that the others are nearly forgotten: as,—

———“...le fer, le bandeau, la flamme est toute prête.”

RACINE, *Iphigénie*, Act iii. Sc. 5.

Observe.—If any one of the adjectives which usually precede their respective substantives in French, should be used to qualify two or more substantives in English: as,—*great events and revolutions followed the death of Cæsar*; it should be repeated before each substantive in French, and agree with it in gender and number: as,—*great events and revolutions followed the death of Cæsar, de grands événements et de grandes révolutions suivirent la mort de Cæsar.*

THIRD GENERAL RULE.—When two or more adjectives qualify the same substantive in English: as,—*a sober, regular, and laborious life strengthens health*; they are generally placed after it in French, whether they precede or follow it in English, and agree with it in gender and number, using the conjunction *et* before the last: as,—*a sober, regular, and laborious life strengthens health, une vie modérée, réglée, et laborieuse fortifie la santé.* We however say—*ma chère et tendre amie*, my sweet, lovely friend. *Un grand jeune homme*, a tall young man. *Ma pauvre petite enfant*, my sweet little child. *Une longue et charmante lettre*, a delightful long letter; and not, *mon amie chère et tendre*, &c.

But when the adjectives, being considered each separately with the substantive, serve to qualify a thing which is an only one of its kind: as,—*the French, Italian, and English languages*; if the substantive should be in the plural in English, it must be put in the singular in French, and be preceded by the definite article *le, la, or l'*, which is likewise repeated before each of the adjectives: as,—*the French, Italian, and English languages, la langue Française, l'Italienne, et l'Anglaise.*

“*La langue Anglaise, l'Espagnole,
Cèdent à la Française en douceur, en beauté;
Depuis Deucalion, de l'un à l'autre pôle,
Toutes lui cèdent en clarté.*”

Observe.—All adjectives adverbially taken, that is, which only express an action or circumstance of the verb to which they are joined, without referring to any substantive, are always written in the singular masculine: as,—*those ladies speak low, ces dames parlent bas.* These flowers smell good, *ces fleurs sentent bon*, &c.

ESSAY XXXIX.

The victory which Napoleon obtained in that country, was disadvantageous
victoire remporter pays désavantageux
 to the French and prejudicial to the English.—That lady is beloved by her
préjudiciable chérir de

When from politeness we use vous in-
stead of the singular tu the verb is
put in the plural, but the adjective
or participle remains in the singular
and takes the feminine termination if we
speak to a female as
Madame, vous êtes estimée. 9.4.33

husband; he caresses and* adores her.—It is not improbable that the late
mari caresser adorer

queen had several good qualities.—I was obliged to wait for half
reine n' sub. pret. plusieurs qualité d'attendre

an hour.—Give me half a pound of sugar.—(It is) scarcely half a league
Il y a à peine lieu

from (this place).—I cannot go there in an hour and a half.—The
ici y en

beggar (I relieved) this morning, was bareheaded and barefooted.
mendiant à qui j'ai donné l'aumône

—His legs were naked.—They walked yesterday five leagues and a half, in
Il les avoir faire

six hours and a half.—Mr. T*** plays with exquisite taste and feeling.—The
jouer charmant noblesse

French fight with astonishing courage and intrepidity.—I (never saw) a
se battre étonnant intrépidité n'ai jamais vu de

lady who united such an admirable sweetness and equanimity of temper.
sub. imp. réunir si merveilleux égalité esprit

—Modesty and disinterestedness deserve to be praised and admired, when they
désintéressement mériter d' louer

originate in good and laudable motives.—His brother and sisters are not happy.
venir de

—Their whole life has been (nothing but) continual labour and occupation.—
n' qu'

Great events and revolutions happened at his death.—Do not give me a long and
arriver

tedious book, or I shall not read it.—What have I to dread from a just,
ennuyeux lire à redouter

good, and merciful king?—Experience will always teach that a sober,
clément apprendre

regular, and laborious life fortifies health; whereas a dissipated and idle life
au lieu qu' dissipé oisif

destroys it.—Will you show me the letter of that tall young man to his sweet
détruire cher

and lovely friend? Yes, (here it is;) but mind you* do* not* lose
tendre amie la voici prendre garde de perdre

it.—Another time, I shall write you a delightful long letter: to-day, I
fois charmant et 1

(can only inform you) that Mrs. S.'s interesting little child is dead.—
n'ai que le temps de vous dire charmant enfant f.

Nobody is ignorant that the French, English, and Spanish languages
ignorer sub. pr.

are inferior to the Italian in sweetness; but (it is universally acknowledged)
le ceder douceur aussi tout le monde convient

that the French (is superior for) its* perspicuity and beauty.—I
l'emporte sur toutes les autres en clarté en

am delighted to hear you say these flowers smell so sweet.
charme de sentir bon

LESSON XL.

Of the Place of Adjectives.

FIRST GENERAL RULE.—The following adjectives, *ancien, aucun, beau, bon, cher, digne, divers, grand, gros, habile, jeune, joli, mauvais, méchant, moindre, meilleur, nouveau, petit, saint, seul, sot, vieux, vieil, vilain, triste*, or their feminine, usually precede their respective substantives in French, when used alone with them: as,—a young man, *un jeune homme*; an old woman, *une vieille femme*; a fine hat, *un beau chapeau*; &c.*

But if the above adjectives should be modified by one of the following

* Observations on some adjectives which have a different meaning, according as they precede or follow their respective substantives.

1. *Grand*, used with reference to men, and coming before the word *homme*: as,—*un grand homme*, signifies a man of great merit; but, when it is placed after the word *homme*, it has reference to size: as,—*un homme grand*, a tall man. When *grand* is used with reference to women, it always applies to size: as,—*une grande femme*, a tall woman. It likewise always applies to size, when used with reference to men, if any other adjective expressing some circumstance or quality of the body should follow: as,—*un grand homme sec*, a tall thin man.

2. *Gros*, referring to women, and placed after the word *femme*, signifies pregnant: as,—*une femme grosse*, a pregnant woman; but, placed before it, it means stout: as,—*une grosse femme*, a stout woman.

3. *Un bon homme, une bonne femme*, most frequently signify a silly man or woman; and *un homme bon, une femme bonne*, a good, charitable man or woman.

4. *Un brave homme, une brave femme*, a good man or woman; and *un homme brave, une femme brave*, an intrepid man or woman.

5. *Un cruel homme, une cruelle femme*, a man or woman who cannot be moved by entreaties; and *un homme cruel, une femme cruelle*, an inhuman man or woman.

6. *Une fausse clef*, a false key; and *une clef fausse*, a wrong key.

7. *Un galant homme*, a polite man; *un homme galant*, an admirer of the ladies.

8. *Un honnête homme*, an honest man; *un homme honnête*, a civil man; *une honnête femme*, a correct woman.

9. *Des honnêtes gens*, honest people; *des gens honnêtes*, civil and polite people.

10. *Un malhonnête homme*, a dishonest man; *un homme malhonnête*, an uncivil man. The same rule is applicable to *femme* and *gens*.

11. *Un nouvel habit*, a new coat or another coat; that is, a coat different from the one in use or just left off; and *un habit nouveau*, a coat of a new fashion; *un habit neuf*, a coat just come from the tailor and which has not been worn, or, at least, very little.

12. *Un pauvre homme, une pauvre femme*, a man or woman of little merit; and *un homme pauvre, une femme pauvre*, a poor man or woman.

13. *Un petit homme, une petite femme*, a man or woman of a small size; and *un homme petit*, a mean man.

14. *Un plaisant homme*, a ridiculous man; *un homme plaisant*, a facetious man.

15. *Un plaisant conte*, a story without probability or truth; *un conte plaisant*, an amusing story.

16. *Un simple homme*, an only or a single man; *un homme simple*, a simpleton.

17. *Une sage femme*, a midwife; *une femme sage*, a wise woman.

Adjectives of number precede their
Substantives or other adjectives R. 36.

Adjectives which express names of na-
tions, are placed after the substantive.
Such adjectives do not require a ca-
pitol letter in French. V. G. R. 216.

The following classes of adj. are placed
after the Subst.

Those which end in f. etc, able
esque, ique and able

Those which distinguish colors

Those which relate to the weather.

Those which are derived from the
participles of verbs.

Those which express shape or fig-
ure

Those which express some natural
or physical property or defect.

Whetstone 28.

adverbs—*très, fort, bien, extrêmement, plus, moins, assez*; or if they should be joined by a conjunction to another adjective qualifying also the same substantive, they then sometimes follow it: as,—it is a very dull town, *c'est une ville très-triste*. She is a very amiable woman, *c'est une femme extrêmement aimable*. The days are long and fine, *les jours sont longs et beaux*; &c. but we say—a good and happy year, *une bonne et heureuse année*.

When *seul* means *only*, it usually precedes its respective substantive: as,—it is the *only* hat I have, *c'est le seul chapeau que j'aie*; but when it signifies *alone*, it commonly follows it: as,—*les enfans sont seuls*, the children are alone.

Cher, (dear,) denoting affection, and not having any object depending on it, always precedes its respective substantive: as,—my dear friend, *mon cher ami*; but, if it should have an object depending on it, or if it should express the price of any thing, it should always follow its respective substantive: as,—that woman is dear to her children, *cette femme est chère à ses enfans*. This lace is dear, *cette dentelle est chère*.

Bon and *digne*, having an object depending on them, likewise follow their respective substantives: as,—a man good to every body, *un homme bon envers tout le monde*; that action is not worthy of him, *cette action n'est pas digne de lui*.

Triste, used in the sense of *dull, sad*, generally follows its respective substantive: as,—*visage triste, air triste*, a sorrowful countenance; *une ville triste*, a dull town; but, in the sense of *inferior, melancholy, miserable*, it precedes it: as,—*c'est un triste orateur*, he is a miserable speaker; *un triste accident*, a melancholy accident.

SECOND GENERAL RULE.—The following adjectives—*attentif*, attentive; *blanc*, white; *pluvieux*, rainy; *personnel*, personal; *instruit*, learned, or their feminine; and, in general, all those not mentioned in the preceding rule, usually follow their respective substantives in French, although, in some instances, some will equally well precede or follow them, according to taste, and the harmony of the sentence: as,—a white handkerchief, *un mouchoir blanc*; a learned man, *un homme instruit*; &c.

Observe.—Any adjective, having an object depending on it, is generally placed after the substantive to which it refers: as,—a misfortune common to all, *un malheur commun à tous*; but, should a substantive have an object depending on it, and be qualified by an adjective, the adjective should precede the substantive, in order that the substantive may immediately be followed by its object: as,—the incomparable author of *Vert-Vert*, *l'incomparable auteur de Vert-Vert*, and not *l'auteur incomparable de Vert-Vert*; or, if the adjective should be of that class of adjectives which do not precede their respective substantives, it should be placed after the object of the substantive, but not immediately after the substantive: as,—a coarse rush mat, *une natte de jonc grossière*, and not—*une natte grossière de jonc*.

THIRD GENERAL RULE.—Past participles of verbs, adjectively used, are generally placed in French after the substantives which they qualify: as,—a confused thought, *une pensée embrouillée*; a well-peopled town, *une ville bien peuplée*; &c.

Maudit, cursed; and *prétendu*, pretended; must be excepted, as they precede their respective substantives: ex.,—a cursed trade, *un maudit métier*; a pretended wit, *un prétendu savant*.

ESSAY XL.

An amiable woman gives to (every thing) she says an inexpressible grace.—I
répandre sur tout ce qu' inexprimable grâce
 like a young man who follows the good advice (which is given him).—
suivre conseils m. pl. qu'on lui donne
 He was a great man.—Look at that tall thin man.—He had on* a blue coat,
C' grand sec bleu
 well made, and of superfine cloth.—In a* fortnight or three weeks, the
faire superfine drap Dans quinze jours semaine
 days will be long and fine.—My little nephew comes very regularly, (every
neveu régulièrement tous les
 new) year's day, to* wish me an agreeable and happy new* year.—
premiers de l'an jours pl. souhaiter bon année
 Besides the different apartments, which I have mentioned to you, there is a
Outre appartement dont parler
 very large closet adjoining the kitchen, in which two servants might
grand cabinet contigu à cuisine domestique pourraient
 sleep very well.—On entering my sick friend's room, I found a very
coucher 1 2 En entrer dans malade la chambre trouver
 young doctor, (explaining) to a very clever man of my acquaintance, the cause
docteur qui expliquait habile
 of the patient's illness.—My dear child, is not your brother equally dear to
malade indisposition également
 your father (with yourself)?—(Is such) an action worthy of a man who boasts
que vous Est-ce là digne se vanter
 (of his civility and attention to) every body?—Yesterday, your sister looked
d'être civil et officieux envers avoir l'air
 very sorrowful; I am afraid she has experienced some grievous
triste craindre sub. pret. éprouver quelque fâcheux
 disappointment.—Very distressing intelligence (has been forwarded to us)
contre-temps Une 3 affligeant 1 nouvelle 1 nous 2 avons 3 reçu
 from India: it is the death of the governor's daughter, a* young lady
4 5 mort gouverneur demoiselle
 of the most fascinating manners, and of whom the most flattering
qui était remplie attrayant charmes m. pl. 3 5 6
 hopes were entertained.—Your son has made astonishing progress in his studies.
4 1 on 2 concevoir étonnant progrès
 —New York, in America, is a well-peopled town.—A prejudiced mind is the
en peuplé prévenu
 source of innumerable errors.—Every minister who prefers the public good to
innombrable Tout
 his private interest is beloved by his countrymen.—What is
particulier aimer de compatriote Qu'est-ce que c'est que
 geography? The description of the terrestrial globe.—I am extremely sorry
C'est terrestre fâché
 that the incomparable author of Vert-Vert is dead.—The only bed
sub. pr. seul
 (there is) in his house is a coarse rush mat.
qu'il y ait jonc natte.

Monosyllabic adjectives are usually placed before the substantive they qualify, unless they are united to another adj. with the conj. *et*, as *un four beau et agréable*, *un beau jour*.

Adjectives expressing physical, i. e. exterior or accidental qualities, are generally placed after their subst. *un table solide*; *un ruban vert*; *une surface unie*; *un instrument sonore*; *une odeur délicieuse*; *un fruit amer*.

When an adj. is modified by an adverb or when it governs a prep. it always follows the subst. as, *homme extrêmement fier*; *malheur commun à tous*.

When on the contrary, the subst. has a government, the adj. is placed before the subst. if custom allows it, as, *l'élegant traducteur des Éloges*.

For rules see R 280. 281. 282. p.p.

Adjectives expressing the end, the ten-
dency, habit, disposition, resemblance,
fitness or unsuitness require the prepos-
ition à before a Subst.

LESSON XLI.

Of the Government of Adjectives.

GENERAL RULE.—Whenever an adjective or a participle adjectively used governs a preposition in English, that preposition, whether it be *at, to, of, from, with, by, in, on, upon, about*, or any other, must be construed into French by the preposition which the French adjective or participle requires; and if it be *de* or *à*, and the article be at the same time required, *du, de la, de l', or des*, must be used instead of *de*, and *au, à la, à l', or aux*, for *à*, according to the gender and number of the substantive before which either is to be placed: as,—I am satisfied with him, *je suis content de lui*; because *content* governs *de*. She is sensible of reprimands, *elle est sensible aux réprimandes*; because *sensible* requires *à*.

To facilitate the application of the above rule, some of the adjectives most in use are quoted hereafter, with the prepositions which they govern.

1. *A list of adjectives and participles which govern the preposition à, or, if the article be also required, au, à la, à l', or aux, before the succeeding word which depends on them.*

Accessible, <i>accessible</i> .	Exact, <i>exact</i> .	Préjudiciable, <i>hurtful</i> .
Adonné, <i>addicted</i> .	Facile, <i>easy</i> .	Prêt, <i>ready</i> .
Adroit, <i>dexterous</i> .	Favorable, <i>favourable</i> .	Prompt, <i>quick</i> .
Agréable, <i>agreeable</i> .	Habile, <i>skilful</i> .	Propice, <i>propitious</i> .
Ajusté, <i>fitted</i> .	Impénétrable, <i>impenetrable</i> .	Propre, <i>proper</i> .
Alerte, <i>alert</i> .	Inabordable, <i>inaccessible</i> .	Rebelle, <i>rebellious</i> .
Antérieur, <i>anterior, foremost</i> .	Inaccessible, <i>inaccessible</i> .	Redoutable, <i>formidable</i> .
âpre, <i>rough</i> .	Inconcevable, <i>inconceivable</i> .	Réfractaire, <i>refractory</i> .
Ardent, <i>ardent</i> .	Inconnu, <i>unknown</i> .	Semblable, <i>alike</i> .
Attenant, <i>next, adjoining, contiguous</i> .	Indocile, <i>untractable</i> .	Sensible, <i>sensible</i> .
Attentif, <i>attentive</i> .	Infidèle, <i>unfaithful</i> .	Sourd, <i>deaf</i> .
Cher, <i>dear</i> .	Ingénieux, <i>ingenious</i> .	Sujet, <i>subject</i> .
Commun, <i>common</i> .	Insensible, <i>insensible</i> .	Supérieur, <i>superior</i> ; (this adjective governs <i>en</i> , in the sense of <i>in</i> .)
Conforme, <i>conformable</i> .	Lent, <i>slow</i> .	Supportable, <i>supportable, tolerable</i> .
Contraire, <i>contrary</i> .	Nuisible, <i>hurtful</i> .	Terrible, <i>terrible</i> .
Convenable, <i>fit</i> .	Occupé, <i>busy</i> .	Utile, <i>useful</i> .
Désagréable, <i>disagreeable</i> .	Odieux, <i>odious</i> .	Zélé, <i>zealous</i> .
Docile, <i>docile, tractable</i> .	Pareil, <i>like</i> .	
Enclin, <i>inclined</i> .	Porté, <i>inclined, prompted</i> .	
	Précieux, <i>precious</i> .	
	Préférable, <i>preferable</i> .	

and, in general, all those which denote aptness, fitness, inclination, ease, readiness, or any habit, whatever preposition they may govern in English.

2. *A list of adjectives and participles which govern the preposition de, or, if the article be also required, du, de la, de l', or des, before the next word which depends on them.*

Absent, <i>absent</i> .	Adoré, <i>adored</i> .	Affranchi, <i>set free</i> .
Accusé, <i>accused</i> .	Affamé, <i>greedy of</i> .	Aïse, <i>glad</i> .

Altéré, <i>thirsting after</i> .	Dépendant, <i>dependent, de-</i>	Insatiable, <i>insatiable</i> .
Amoureux, <i>in love with</i> .	pending.	Ivre, <i>drunk, drunken</i> .
Approchant, <i>something like</i> .	Désireux, <i>desirous</i> .	Jaloux, <i>jealous</i> .
Arrière, <i>in arrears, behind</i>	Différent, <i>different, differ-</i>	Joyeux, <i>joyful</i> .
hand.	ing.	Las, <i>fatigued, tired</i> .
Aucun, <i>none</i> .	Digne, <i>worthy</i> .	Libre, <i>free</i> .
Aveuglé, <i>blinded</i> .	Doué, <i>endowed</i> .	Mécontent, <i>dissatisfied</i> .
Avide, <i>greedy, eager</i> .	Enchanté, <i>enchanted</i> .	Orgueilleux, <i>proud</i> .
Capable, <i>capable</i> .	Enivré, <i>drunk, infatuated</i> .	Plein, <i>full</i> .
Chargé, <i>charged, loaded</i>	Ennuyé, <i>tired, wearied</i> .	Ravi, <i>delighted, pleased</i> .
with.	Envieux, <i>envious</i> .	Rayonnant, <i>radiant</i> .
Charmé, <i>charmed</i> .	Exempt, <i>exempt, free</i> .	Redevable, <i>indebted</i> .
Chéri, <i>cherished</i> .	Fatigué, <i>fatigued</i> .	Rempli, <i>filled</i> .
Comblé, <i>loaded with</i> .	Fier, <i>proud</i> .	Satisfait, <i>satisfied, contented</i> .
Complice, <i>accomplice</i> .	Fou, <i>mad, very fond</i> .	Soigneux, <i>careful</i> .
Content, <i>contented</i> .	Honteux, <i>shameful</i> .	Sûr, <i>sure</i> .
Contrit, <i>repentant</i> .	Incapable, <i>incapable</i> .	Taxé, <i>taxed</i> .
Coupable, <i>guilty</i> .	Indépendant, <i>independent</i> .	Tributaire, <i>tributary</i> .
Couronné, <i>crowned</i> .	Indigne, <i>unworthy</i> .	Vide, <i>void, empty</i> .
Dénué, <i>void</i> .		

and, in general, all those which signify plenty, scarcity, or want*.

Separation, absence, satisfaction, desire, and i.

* General observations on several adjectives and participles which, according to the sense in which they are used, require different prepositions before the words which they govern.

1. *Adroit*, skilful in, generally requires *à* before its object, although *in* be used in English: as,—*elle est adroite à ses exercices*, she is skilful in her exercises. *De* must however be used, and not *à*, when *adroit* refers to any part of the body: as,—*cet homme est adroit de la main gauche*, that man is clever with his left hand.

2. *Affable*, civil to, requires *à* or *envers*: as,—*il est affable à ou envers tout le monde*, he is civil to every body.

3. *Animé*, animated, requires *de*, in the sense of *with* or *by*; *pour*, in the sense of *for*; and *à*, in the sense of *to*: as,—he is animated with a noble zeal for his country, *il est animé d'un beau zèle pour sa patrie*. They were incited to fight by the sound of instruments, *ils étaient animés au combat par le son des instrumens*.

4. *Assidu*, assiduous, requires *auprès de* before the names of persons: as,—*il était fort assidu auprès de Mlle S***, he was very attentive to Miss S**; but it requires *à* before verbs in the present of the infinitive, and before the names of things: as,—*il est assidu à faire sa cour*, he is an assiduous courtier. *Ils ne sont pas assidus à l'étude*, they are not assiduous at study.

5. *Aveugle*, blind, requires sometimes *sur*, and sometimes *dans*: as,—*elle est aveugle sur ses défauts*, she is blind to her own defects. *Les amans sont aveugles dans leurs desirs*, lovers are blind in their desires.

6. *Célèbre*, celebrated, requires sometimes *par*, and sometimes *en*: as,—*il est célèbre par ses vertus*, *par ses crimes*, he is celebrated for his virtues, notorious for his crimes.

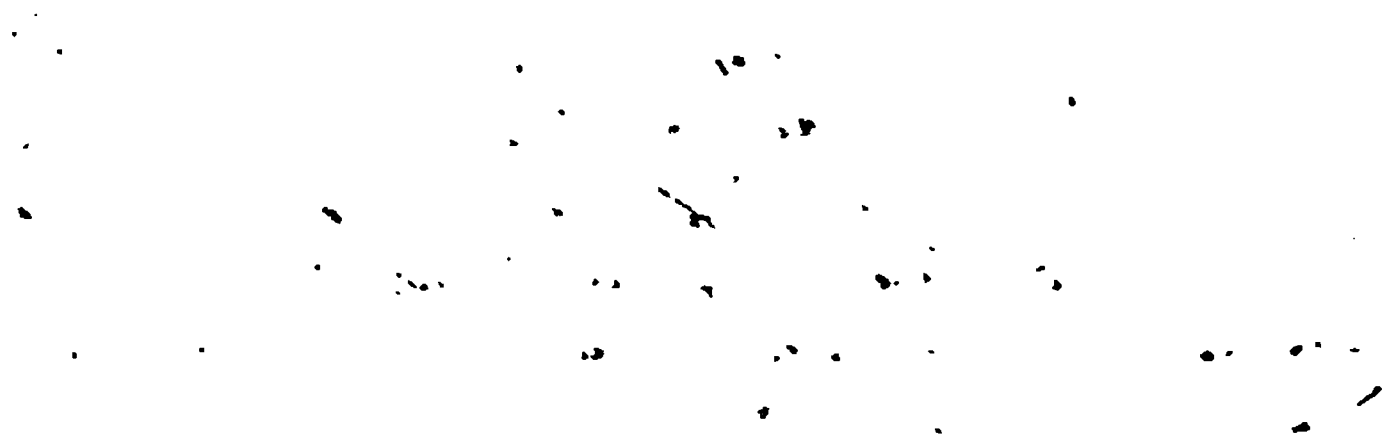
“ Cette mer où tu cours est célèbre en naufrages.”—BOILEAU.

7. *Civil*, polite to, requires *envers*, and sometimes *à l'égard de*: as,—*il est civil envers tout le monde*, he is polite to every body. *Il n'est pas civil à l'égard de ses domestiques*, he is not civil to his servants.

8. *Comparable*, comparab'le, to be compared with, requires *à* and also *avec*:—as,—*les biens de ce monde ne sont pas comparables à ceux de l'éternité*, the treasures of this world are not to be compared with those of eternity. *L'esprit n'est pas comparable avec la matière*, the mind is not to be compared with matter.

When the adjectives doux, agréable, pénible, horrible, beau, facile, etc are followed by an inf as their regimen that infinitive has a pass. & signific. -
tion, as la bouillante jeunesse est facile à séduire. R. 213

govern all those which are followed in English by the prep. of. from, with or by. R. 212.



The following adjectives, *beau, bon, doux, agréable, désagréable, facile, aisé, utile, inutile, naturel, horrible, dangereux, difficile, dur,*

9. *Comptable*, accountable, governs two objects, and requires *à* or *envers* before that which refers to persons or personified objects, in the sense of *to* in English, and *de* before that which refers to things, in the sense of *for*: as,—*nous sommes comptables à Dieu ou envers Dieu de nos actions, et à la patrie de nos biens*, we are accountable to God for our actions, and to our country for our wealth.

10. *Confus*, confused, ashamed, refers to persons, and requires sometimes *de* before the next substantive: as,—*je suis tout confus de l'honneur que vous me faites*, I am quite confused at the honour you do me.

11. *Consolant*, consoling, requires *pour* before substantives and pronouns, and *de* before verbs in the present of the infinitive: as,—*il sera bien consolant pour moi de revoir mes enfans*, it will be very consoling for me to see my children again.

12. *Constant*, constant, governs sometimes *dans*, and sometimes *en*: as,—*il est ferme et constant dans l'adversité*, he is firm and constant in adversity. *Elle est constante en amour ou dans ses amours*, she is constant in love.

13. *Connu*, known, requires *de*—in the sense of *by*, and *à*—in the sense of *to*: as,—he is known by every body, *il est connu de tout le monde*. This person is not known to me or to him, *cette personne ne m'est ou ne lui est pas connue*; in this case, *me* and *lui* stand for *à moi* and *à lui*.

14. *Cruel*, cruel to, requires sometimes *à*, and sometimes *envers*, before nouns referring to persons; but it generally governs *à* before those which refer to things: as, *elle est cruelle envers ses enfans*, she is cruel to her children. *Ce roi est cruel à son pays*, this king is cruel to his country.

15. *Curieux*, curious in, requires sometimes *de*, and sometimes *en*, before a substantive, but always *de* before a verb in the present of the infinitive: as,—*vous faites une recherche trop curieuse de ma conduite*, you look too narrowly into my conduct. *Cette femme est curieuse en habits*, that woman has a good taste for dress. *Tous les hommes sont curieux de savoir l'avenir*, every man is curious to read futurity.

16. *Dissolu*, dissolute, loose, requires sometimes *dans*: as,—*cet homme est dissolu dans ses mœurs*, that man is loose in his manners.

17. *Endurci*, hardened, is used with *dans*, *à*, and *contre*: as,—*être endurci dans le crime, aux coups de la fortune, aux louanges, aux affronts, contre l'adversité*, to be hardened in crime, inured to the reverses of fortune, to praises, insults and adversity.

18. *Étranger*, stranger, foreigner, requires sometimes *à*, sometimes *en*, and sometimes *dans*: as,—*il est étranger en médecine*, he does not understand any thing of physic. *Il est étranger dans ce pays*, he is a foreigner in this country. *Ses habitudes sont étrangères à toute intrigue*, his habits are strangers to intrigue.

19. *Expert*, versed in, requires *en*: as,—*cet homme est expert en chirurgie*, that man is versed in surgery.

✓ 20. *Fertile*, fruitful, requires *en*: as,—*ce pays est fertile en blé et en vin*, this country is fruitful in corn and wine.

21. *Fidèle*, faithful, requires *à* before nouns referring to persons, and *en* before those which refer to things: as,—*je suis fidèle à mon roi*, I am faithful to my king. *Elle est fidèle en ses promesses*, she is faithful to her promises.

22. *Habile*, clever, requires sometimes *dans*, and sometimes *en*, before substantives; but always *à* before verbs in the present of the infinitive: as,—*il est habile dans les affaires*, he is clever in business. *Vous êtes habile en toutes choses*, you are clever at every thing. *Elle est habile à tout faire*, she is clever in doing every thing.

23. *Heureux*, happy, requires sometimes *de*, and sometimes *en*, before substantives; but generally *de* before verbs in the present of the infinitive: as,—*chacun*

fâcheux, and several others, followed by a verb in the present of the infinitive mood, require the preposition *de* before it, when they are pre-

d'eux servait sa patrie, heureux du bien qu'il faisait, each of them served his country, happy in the good which he did. *Le plus heureux en amour n'est pas toujours le plus tranquille*, the most fortunate in love is not always the most tranquil. *Je suis heureux d'avoir obtenu son amitié*, I am happy in having obtained her friendship. It however requires also *à*, before verbs in the present of the infinitive, when it means *successful*: as,—*il a un esprit prompt à concevoir les choses, et heureux à les exprimer*, he is quick in conceiving things, and happy in expressing them.

24. *Ignorant*, ignorant, requires sometimes *en*, sometimes *sur*, and sometimes *de*: as,—*elle est fort ignorante en géographie*, she does not understand a word of geography. *Il est ignorant sur ces matières*, he is ignorant on those subjects. *Il est tout-à-fait ignorant des choses du monde*, he is quite ignorant of worldly affairs.

25. *Impatient*, impatient, and *incertain*, uncertain, require *de*: as,—*je suis impatient de savoir si elle viendra*, I am impatient to know whether she will come. *Il est incertain de ce qui arrivera*, he is uncertain of what will happen.

26. *Inconsolable*, inconsolable, governs *de*, and sometimes *sur*: as,—*elle est inconsolable de la perte de son amant*, she is inconsolable for the loss of her lover. *Il est inconsolable sur cette mort*, he is inconsolable for that death.

27. *Indulgent*, indulgent, kind, requires *envers*: as,—*elle est bien indulgente envers ses enfans*, she is very kind to her children.

28. *Inférieur*, inferior, requires *à* before nouns referring to persons, and *en* before those which refer to things: as,—*il est inférieur à son frère en science, en talens et en vertu*, he is inferior to his brother in science, talents and virtue.

29. *Inquiet*, uneasy, requires sometimes *de*, and sometimes *sur*, before substantives; but always *de* before verbs in the present of the infinitive: as,—*je suis fort inquiet sur son sort*, I am very uneasy about his fate. *Je suis inquiet de ne pas recevoir de ses nouvelles*, I am uneasy at not receiving any news from her.

30. *Ingénieux*, ingenious, requires *pour* before substantives, and *à* before verbs in the present of the infinitive: as,—*il a l'esprit ingénieux pour les plaisirs des autres*, he has an ingenious mind for the pleasures of others. *Le vice est ingénieux à se déguiser*, vice is ingenious in disguising itself.

31. *Ingrat*, ungrateful, requires *envers* before nouns referring to persons, and *à* before those which refer to things: as,—*il est ingrat envers son bienfaiteur, ingrat envers Dieu même*, he is ungrateful to his benefactor, ungrateful to God himself.

“*Ingrat à tes bontés, ingrat à ton amour.*”—VOLTAIRE.

“*Malheur au citoyen ingrat à sa patrie.*”—DELILLE.

32. *Insolent*, insolent, requires sometimes *dans*, sometimes *en*, and sometimes *avec*: as,—*les ames basses sont insolentes dans la bonne fortune*, low minds are insolent in prosperity. *Ce valet est insolent en paroles, en injures*, this footman is saucy in his expressions; *combien de jeunes gens sont insolens avec les femmes!* how many young men are insolent to women!

33. *Lent*, slow, requires *dans* before substantives, and *à* before verbs in the present of the infinitive: as,—*il faut être lent dans le choix de ses amis*, one must not be hasty in choosing a friend. *Soyez lent à punir*, be slow to punish.

34. *Miséricordieux*, compassionate, requires *envers*: as,—*il est miséricordieux envers les pauvres, envers les malheureux*, he is compassionate to the poor and the unfortunate.

35. *Nécessaire*, necessary, requires sometimes *à*, and sometimes *pour*: as,—*la respiration est nécessaire à la vie*, breathing is necessary to life; *la foi est absolument nécessaire pour le salut*, faith is absolutely necessary to salvation.

36. *Officieux*, kind, requires *envers*: as,—*il est officieux envers tout le monde*, he is kind to every body.

ceded by a tense of the verb *être*, having the pronoun *il* taken indeterminate for its subject: as,—*il est, il était, il sera, il serait, &c.* but they require *à* before the next infinitive, when the tense of the verb *être*, by which they may be preceded, has the demonstrative pronoun *ce* or *cela*, or a substantive for its nominative: as,—*il est doux d'observer les lois de l'amitié; il est beau de mourir maître de l'univers; il est inutile de la contredire; il est dangereux d'y aller; il est difficile de comprendre cela; il est dur, fâcheux de se voir préférer un sot;* but we say—*c'est beau à voir; la bouillante jeunesse est facile à séduire; c'est difficile à comprendre; il n'y a point de douleur plus dure, plus fâcheuse, à supporter que l'absence de ce qu'on aime, &c.*

When the above adjectives, or any other of the same kind, come before a substantive, they generally govern *à* before it, or if the article be also required, *au, à la, à l', or aux.* In this case, the verb *être*, by which they are preceded, is not taken impersonally, but refers to some person or thing which has been mentioned before: as,—*c'est doux au toucher,* that is soft to the touch. *Il est inutile au monde,* he is of no use in the world.

Observe.—A substantive may be governed by two or more adjectives in French, provided they require the same preposition: thus—*cette femme est utile et chère à sa famille,* is correct; because we say—*utile à, cher à;* so, also, *une femme belle et vertueuse est aimée et recherchée de tout le monde,* is correct; because we say—*aimé de* and *recherché de;* but we could not say—*cette femme est utile et chérie de sa famille,*

37. *Paresseux*, slothful, requires sometimes *de*, and sometimes *à* before verbs in the present of the infinitive: as,—*il n'est pas paresseux d'écrire,* he is not slothful to write. *Il est paresseux à servir,* he is slothful to serve.

38. *Prodigue*, profuse, lavish, requires *envers* or *à l'égard de* before nouns referring to persons, and *de* before those which refer to things: as,—*il est prodigue de son bien envers les pauvres,* he lavishes his property upon the indigent.

39. *Reconnaissant*, grateful, requires *envers* before nouns referring to persons, and *de* before those which refer to things: as,—*il est bien reconnaissant envers ses parens de la bonne éducation qu'ils lui ont donnée,* he is very grateful to his parents for the good education which they have given him.

40. *Responsable*, answerable, requires *à* or *envers* before the word *Dieu*, and before nouns referring to persons; but it governs *de* before those which refer to things: as,—*vous serez responsables à Dieu ou envers Dieu de vos mauvaises actions,* you will be answerable to God for your bad actions. *De* is, however, sometimes used before nouns referring to persons: as,—*un maître est responsable de ses valets,* a master is answerable for his servants.

41. *Riche*, rich, requires sometimes *de*, and sometimes *en*: as,—*il est riche de cent mille francs,* he is worth a hundred thousand francs. *Il est riche en terre,* he is rich in landed property.

42. *Sévère*, severe, requires *envers* or *à l'égard de*, and sometimes *pour*: as,—*ce père n'est pas assez sévère envers ou à l'égard de ses enfans,* that father is not sufficiently severe to his children. *Il est sévère et impitoyable pour les assassins,* he is severe and pitiless towards ruffians.

43. *Stérile*, barren, requires *en*: as,—*tous les temps ont été stériles en orateurs,* most times have been barren in orators.

258

because *utile* requires the preposition *à*, and *chérie* *de*; another turn must therefore be given to the sentence, using *en* before the second adjective: as,—*cette femme est utile à sa famille, et en est chérie.*

ESSAY XLI.

That is very soft to the touch.—Nothing is more nauseous to the taste.—It is difficult to explain in a satisfactory manner so abstruse a science.—(What can be) more dangerous for innocence than tender converse?—Let a child (be) attentive to his studies, sensible of reprimands, and docile to his masters.—If I were not sensible of your past kindness, I should not have interested myself for your son.—A person whose mind is disturbed is not fit to discharge his duty.—Somebody told me that you have fallen in love with Miss B**; I (give you joy for it).—That young person is endowed with the greatest abilities, and is extremely desirous of improving herself in (every thing) she undertakes.—She is skilful in doing (every thing,) and courteous to every body.—The soldiers, already animated with a noble zeal for their country, were again excited (to fight) by the sound of warlike instruments.—(You must) be civil to your servants, if you will (be respected by them.)—As mind is not (to be compared) with matter, (neither so) (are) the riches of this world comparable with those of eternity.—How consoling it will be for me to see my children again *!—Your brother is known by every body for not (being) constant in love.—That king is cruel to his country and children.—He began by (neglecting) study, became insensibly loose in his manners, hardened in crime, (careless of) the reverses of fortune, and even indifferent to adversity. England is not so fruitful in corn, wine and fruit, as France and Italy.—They are so faithful to their king, that nothing will ever induce them to forfeit their honour.—That lady is not faithful to her promises.—I am fatigued with running.—The

most fortunate (lover) is not always the most tranquil.—Why are you so impatient to see her?—Miss H * * has been a long time inconsolable for the loss of her lover, although he was very inferior to her in science, talents, virtues and wealth.—She is very uneasy about that affair.—We are uneasy at not receiving any news from her.—Vice is most ingenious in disguising itself, and often (assumes the most deceitful appearance).—He has been ungrateful to his benefactor, to your kindness and* love; but woe to him, if he be ungrateful to his country.—Be quick to reward, slow to punish, and compassionate to the poor.—Faith is as necessary to salvation, as breath to life.—A well-educated son is grateful to his parents for the good education which they have given him.—We are all accountable to God for our bad actions.—That gentleman is worth two hundred thousand francs.—He is not sufficiently severe to his children.—All his estates are barren in corn.—Never was a* woman more useful and dear to her family, and (at the same time) more respected and beloved by every body.

LESSON XLII.

Of the adjectives of dimension—*high, wide, broad, deep, long, &c.*

GENERAL RULE.—The adjectives *high, wide, broad, deep, long, &c.* are rendered into French by an adjective or a substantive: thus,—*high* is expressed by *de haut* or *de hauteur*; *long*, by *de long* or *de longueur*; *wide* and *broad*, by *de large* or *de largeur*; but *deep* must always be construed by *de profondeur*, and never by *de profond*; and, in general, the substantives are more elegantly used than the adjectives. *De* is put before the noun of number which precedes the words—*feet, inches, &c.* if no tense of the verb *avoir* be employed before it; but should a tense of the verb *avoir* come before the noun of number, *de* should not then be used before it, although it should always precede the words *hauteur, longueur, largeur, profondeur, &c.*: as,—a wall twenty feet high, *un mur de vingt pieds de haut* ou *de hauteur*, and not *un mur vingt pieds*

260

haut. This well is a hundred feet deep, *ce puits a cent pieds de profondeur*, and not—*a de cent pieds profond ou de profond*.

When two or more dimensions of the same object are mentioned: as,—an apartment three hundred feet long and fifty wide; that pond is one hundred feet deep by three hundred in circumference; the conjunction *and* or *by* which is used to connect the sentence in such a case in English, may be expressed in French by *sur* or *et*, with this difference, that, should *sur* be used, *de* must not be put before the following number preceding the word of dimension; whereas, if *et* be employed, *de* is required before it: as,—an apartment three hundred feet long and fifty wide, *un appartement de trois cents pieds de longueur sur cinquante de largeur*, and not *sur de cinquante*. That pond is one hundred feet deep by three hundred in circumference, *cet étang a cent pieds de profondeur sur trois cents de circonférence*, and not *sur de trois cents*, &c.; but we say with *de*—*un appartement de trois cents pieds de longueur et de cinquante de largeur*, because *et* is employed in the sentence. *Par* can never be used in sentences of this kind in French, as *by* is in English.

Whenever the preposition *in* precedes a word of dimension as in the following sentence—that pond is one hundred feet deep by three hundred in circumference, it is usually expressed in French by *de*, and not by *en* or *dans*: as,—that pond is one hundred feet deep by three hundred in circumference, *cet étang a cent pieds de profondeur sur trois cents de circonférence*, and not—*en ou dans circonférence*. Thirty feet in height, *trente pieds de hauteur*, and not *en hauteur*, &c.

ESSAY XLII.

The beautiful column in the Place-Vendôme, in Paris, is two hundred feet
à
high.—There is in that house a room two hundred and fifty feet long, sixty
salle
wide, and twenty-six high.—This well will be three hundred feet deep by
puits
eighteen in diameter; it will be covered with a magnificent marble stone
diamètre couvrir d' superbe de marbre pierre
eighteen or nineteen inches thick.—Your bed-room is no more than forty-
pouce épaisseur à coucher chambre de
three feet long and twenty-one wide.—The new canal is one hundred feet broad
and fifteen or sixteen deep.—I do not think the steeple of that church
croire clocher sub. pr.
is more than five hundred and eighty feet high.—The two windows of that
de fenêtre
chapel are each seventy-seven feet eleven inches deep, and twenty-four wide.
chapelle chacun hauteur
—I have seen, in America, an iron bridge seventy-three feet wide: it
en de fer pont

consists of twenty piers, seventeen large arches, and two small ones*; *the*
être composé *pile* *grand*
 four middle piers are each thirty-four feet broad; all the others decrease in
du milieu *chacun* *diminuer en*
 breadth by one foot and a * half on each side.——The king's palace is one hun-
largeur d' *de* *palais*
 dred and ten feet high, four hundred long, and two hundred broad.——This street
 is about one mile long, and ninety feet wide.——We have in our garden, in
environ *7* *8* *1 dans* *2* *3* *4*
 the country, a pond which is six hundred and twelve feet in length, eighty in
 breadth, and thirty-eight in depth.

LESSON XLIII.

Comparatives.

The degrees of comparison in adjectives having already been explained in the beginning of this Grammar, the object of this short article is to point out the manner of construing into French several English modes of expression, which present some difficulty.

FIRST GENERAL RULE.—When a comparison is expressed in English by *as* repeated, or by *so* and *as*, or also by *as much*, *so much*, or *as many* and *so many*, &c., these words are construed into French, as it is explained in the beginning of this Grammar, page 49, No. 3.

The preposition *by*, which is sometimes used in English after a comparative, to denote how much a thing exceeds or is less than another, is expressed in French by *de*: as,—she is taller or less than you by a whole head, *elle est plus grande ou plus petite que vous de toute la tête*.

When the conjunction *than*, which follows a comparative, comes before a verb in the indicative mood: as,—*your sister is taller than I thought*; *women do not speak better than they write*;—*ne* must be used in French before the verb following *que*, if the first part of the sentence be affirmative, whereas *ne* is not required, if the first part be negative: as,—*your sister is taller than I thought*, *votre sœur est plus grande que je ne croyais*, and not *que je croyais*; because the first part of the sentence is affirmative: but we say,—*women do not speak better than they write*, *les femmes ne parlent pas mieux qu'elles écrivent*, and not *qu'elles n'écrivent*, because the first part of the sentence is negative.

If a conjunction should intervene between *than* and the following verb: as,—*I am better than when I was in the country*; in this case, *ne* should not be used before the verb following *que*, whether the first part of the sentence be affirmative or negative: as,—*I am better than*

262

when I was in the country, *je me porte mieux que quand j'étais à la campagne*, and not *que quand je n'étais*, because the conjunction *quand* comes between *que* and the following verb *étais*.

Whenever also *than* or *as*, which is used after a comparative, comes between two verbs in the present of the infinitive mood: as,—*it is more noble to forgive than to revenge; that is not so easy to do as to say: ne* is not used before the verb following *que*, whether the first part of the sentence be affirmative or negative; but *de* or *à*, or any other preposition which the adjective, substantive, or participle, in the comparative, may require before the verb preceding *que*, must be repeated before that which follows it: as,—*it is more noble to forgive than to revenge, il est plus noble de pardonner que de se venger*, and not *que de ne se venger*. That is not so easy to do as to say, *cela n'est pas aussi facile à faire qu'à dire*, and not *qu'à ne dire*, &c.

SECOND GENERAL RULE.—When *the more* or *the less* is repeated in a sentence before two different verbs: as,—*the more I see her, the more I love her; the less I speak, the less I feel tired: the more* is expressed in French by *plus*, and *the less* by *moins*, without the article: as,—*the more I see her, the more I love her, plus je la vois, plus je l'aime*, and not *le plus je la vois, le plus je l'aime*. *The less I speak, the less I feel tired, moins je parle, moins je suis fatigué*, and not *le moins je parle, le moins je suis fatigué*.

263 But if *the more* or *the less* should be repeated before two substantives, two adjectives, participles, or adverbs, instead of two verbs: as,—*the more money he gets, the more expenses he incurs; the more difficult a thing is, the more honourable, &c.*; or if two adjectives should be repeated with the syllable *er* at their termination, instead of being preceded by *more*: as,—*the longer the day, the shorter the night, &c.*; the sentence should then be construed into French by using: 1. *plus ou moins*; 2. the nominative of the verb; 3. the verb; 4. the substantive, adjective, participle, or adverb, and the rest as in English: as,—*the more money he gets, the more expenses he incurs, plus il gagne d'argent, plus il fait de dépenses*. *The more difficult a thing is, the more honourable, plus une chose est difficile, plus elle est honorable*. *The longer the day, the shorter the night, plus le jour est long, plus la nuit est courte, &c.*

The verb *être* cannot be suppressed in French, as the verb *to be* is sometimes in English, in sentences like the following:—*the longer the day, the shorter the night*. Whenever, therefore, any case of this kind occurs, the sentence must be construed into French with a tense of the verb *être*: as,—*the longer the day, the shorter the night, plus le jour est long, plus la nuit est courte*; as if it were in English—*more the day is long, more the night is short*.

So much the more, so much the less,
are expressed by d'autant plus,
d'autant moins.

I feel the insult so much the
more as I deserved it the less

Je ressens d'autant plus
l'Insulte que je la méritais moins.

M.S. 29

The more or the less for it is ex-
pressed, in French by en before
the verb and plus or moins after.

He is only the more estimable
for it.

Il n'en est que plus estimable.

He is not the less estimable

Il n'en est pas moins estimable.

M.S. 29.

ESSAY XLIII.

If it be as easy to do good as to do evil, why don't you behave better?—
bien mal se conduire Les
 Great talents are of every condition, and if they do not shine so commonly in
tout briller communément
 low people as in (others,) it is (for want) of care and cultivation.—Although
bas autres classes faute
 I have not so many friends as his brother, I have succeeded much
sub. pr. réussir
 better than he.—They say that Miss G** is taller than her sisters by the
On grand
 whole head.—There are persons who write better than they speak, and
personne
 others who speak better than they write.—I am infinitely better than
se porter infiniment mieux
 when I was on the continent.—Religion teaches that it is greater to overcome
sur enseigner de vaincre
 one's passions than to conquer whole nations.—(As for me,) I think it is
ses conquérir entier Quant à moi croire
 easier to command than to obey.—The more I speak to those ladies, the more
facile de obéir
 I hate them.—The less you (study,) the less you will improve.—He will never
haïr étudierez profiter
 be a* rich man,* because the more money he gets, the more expenses he
gagner
 incurs.—The more elevated in dignity one is, the less pride one ought to* have.
faire élevé en 1 2 3 4
 —Is it not evident that the shorter the day is, (so much) longer is the night?
plus

LESSON XLIV.

Observations on the pronouns *lui, elle, and eux.* 264

GENERAL RULE.—Whenever the pronouns *him, her, and them*, being joined to a substantive by the conjunction *and* or *nor*, are governed by a verb, they are expressed in French thus:—*him*, by *lui*; *her*, by *elle*; *them*, by *eux* or *elles*; with one of the pronouns *le, la, l', or les*, according to the import of the sentence, before the verb in a simple tense, and before the auxiliary in a compound one; but, if *him, her, or them*, should be joined to the pronoun *me* or *you*, instead of being joined to a substantive, *nous* should then be used before the verb or the auxiliary, if *me* be employed in English, and *vous*, if it should be *you*; at all events, *lui* or *leur* is required before the verb, if *lui, elle, eux* or *elles*, depend on the preposition *à*: as,—I have congratulated him and his friends, *je l'ai félicité lui et ses amis.* I neither like her nor her brother,

je ne l'aime ni elle ni son frère. I esteem them and their friends, *je les estime eux et leurs amis.* They neither made him nor me welcome, *on ne nous accueillit ni lui ni moi.* You and she have been seen together, *on vous a vus ensemble vous et elle.* I have spoken to her and her brother, *je lui ai parlé à elle et à son frère.* I gave them and their friends something, *je leur ai donné quelque chose à eux et à leurs amis, &c.*

When the pronouns *it* and *them*, referring to inanimate things, depend on the verb *to owe* or *to be indebted*, they are expressed in French:—*it*, by *lui*, and *them*, by *leur*; and not by *y*, as in other cases: as,—*I am indebted to it for the recovery of my health*, (alluding to a country,) *je lui suis redevable du rétablissement de ma santé*, and not—*j'y suis redevable, &c.*

If *it* or *them* should depend on a preposition which could not be construed into French by *à*, *it* or *them* should be left out, and the preposition would become an adverb: as,—the people were for peace, but the parliament was against it, *le peuple était pour la paix, mais le parlement était contre.* If the preposition could not become an adverb, another turn should be given to the sentence.

The adverb *there*, referring to some place which has been mentioned before, is, when the verb governs *à* in French, usually expressed by *y*, and put before the verb in a simple tense, and before the auxiliary in a compound one: as,—*I have been there, j'y ai été, &c.*

ESSAY XLIV.

I blamed him and his mother very much for having taken such a* liberty.—
cette

He will neither see her nor her brother, (on account of) their (unpolite
vouloir voir à cause de malhon-
behaviour) (to him.)—I hate, and always shall hate them, and all their friends.—
néteté à son égard

265 On You and Miss S*** have been seen together.—I should have written to

you and his sister, when I was in France, had I not been obliged to return
si je n'avais pas de revenir
to England so suddenly.—She was (so cross) that she would neither
de si mauvaise humeur vouloir

speak to him nor to me.—We shall send some to you and to them.—The climate
en

of that country is so mild that I am indebted to it (for the) recovery of
doux redevable du rétablissement

my health.—Miss A***, come near the fire. You are very polite, madame; I
s'approcher du honnête

am quite close to it.—The falling of the water of that river makes so much
tout auprès chute

noise that it deafens those who live near it.—Do you know where the
rendre sourd demeurer auprès savoir

Le often stands for a substantive, or an adjective, or a verb or even a part of a sentence; it is expressed in Eng. by do, or is frequently left out.

Est-ce-elle la fille de Mr. B? Oui je le suis.

Madame, est-elle malade? Oui je le suis.

When le (so) stands for a substantive it is declinable; that is, it agrees with it in gender & number. When it refers to an adj., a verb or a whole sentence it is invariable.

M. S. 31.

With a comparative le must be expressed in French, though left out in English.

Est-elle plus savante qu'il l'était?
M. S. 31.

Treasury is in London? Yes, I do. Well, you will easily find your way;
^{trésorerie} ^à ^{chemin}
 near it is the Admiralty, just by is the Horse-guards, and over against it is
^{auprès} ^{tout auprès} ^{garde à cheval} ^{vis-à-vis}
 the Whitehall chapel, where you want to* go.—They unanimously declared against
^{vouloir} ^{unanimement se déclarer}
 it.—Switzerland is a delightful country; have you ever been there? No; but I
^{Suisse} ^{charmant} ^y
 intend to go this summer if my affairs allow me.
^{d'y} ^{le}

LESSON XLV.

Of the supplementary pronouns *le, la, l', les*.

GENERAL RULE.—Whenever any tense of the verb *to be*, being used in answer to a question, refers either to a substantive, or an adjective substantively taken, in the question: as,—*is she not the sister of Mrs. L***?* no, she is not; one of the supplementary pronouns *le, la, l', les*, according to the gender and number of the substantive in the question, must be used in French before the corresponding tense of the verb *être*, in the answer: as,—*is she not the sister of Mrs. L***?* no, she is not; *n'est-elle pas la sœur de M^{me} L***?* non, elle ne l'est pas. Is this your hat? yes, it is; *est-ce là votre chapeau?* oui, ce l'est. Are these your books? no, they are not, *sont-ce là vos livres?* non, ce ne les sont pas, &c.

But if the verb *to be*, used in answer to a question, should refer to an adjective, a participle, or a substantive adjectively taken, in the question, instead of referring to a substantive: as,—*is your sister married?* yes, she is; *are these young ladies relations to Mr. D***?* no, they are not; in this case, the pronoun *le* (indeclinable) should be used for both genders and numbers before the verb *être*, in the answer in French: as, 266
 —*is your sister married?* yes, she is; *mademoiselle votre sœur est-elle mariée?* oui, elle l'est. Are these young ladies relations to Mr. D***? no, they are not, *mesdemoiselles sont-elles parentes de M. D***?* non, elles ne le sont pas; and not *elles ne les sont pas*.

In any sentence like the following:—*this lady is jealous, and I am not; he is rich, and she is not*; in which the adjective or participle used in the first part of the sentence is understood in the second, the pronoun *le* (indeclinable) should also be employed in its stead in French, for both genders and numbers, and be placed before the verb in the second part of the sentence: as,—*this young lady is jealous, and I am not, cette demoiselle est jalouse, et moi je ne le suis pas*. He is rich, and she is not, *il est riche, et elle ne l'est pas*.

Whenever, also, the word *so* is or can be expressed with a verb in English, either in an answer to a question or in the second part of a sentence: as,—*are you ill? no, I am not; they have been rich, but they are not so at present*; *LE* (indeclinable) is used in the same sense in French, with reference to adjectives, participles, verbs, or substantives adjectively taken, and is placed before the verb: as,—*are you ill? no, I am not; êtes-vous malade? non, je ne le suis pas*. They have been rich, but they are not so now, *ils ont été riches, mais ils ne le sont pas à présent, &c.*

In a reply made to a question, either with the verb *to have* or with one of the auxiliaries *do, did, shall, will, would, could, should, can, may, and might, &c.*: as,—*do you believe it? yes, I do; have you seen them? yes, I have; do you think they will come? yes, I do*; one of the pronouns *le, la, l', les, or lui, leur*, according to the import of the sentence, and the gender and number of the substantive, or pronoun, mentioned in the question, is used in French before the verb in the answer, which verb is generally the same as that by which the question is asked: as,—*do you believe it? yes, I do; le croyez-vous? oui, je le crois*. Have you seen them? *yes, I have; les avez-vous vus? oui, je les ai vus*. Do you think they are coming? *yes, I do; croyez-vous qu'ils viennent? oui, je le crois, &c.*

There are a few questions, implying either being at home or going to any place, in which the answer, although sometimes made by the same verb as that by which the question is asked, cannot admit of *le, la, l', les, lui* or *leur*: as,—*will you be at home? yes, I will; serez-vous chez vous? oui, j'y serai*, and not *je le serai*. Will you go? *yes, I will; irez-vous? oui, j'irai*, and not *je l'irai*. If, however, the sense of this last question were, *are you willing to go? voulez-vous y aller?* the answer ought then to be—*oui, je le veux bien*, and not *oui, j'irai*; but practice alone can teach these differences.

Any question may also be answered by—*oui* or *non, monsieur* or *messieurs, madame* or *mesdames, mademoiselle* or *mesdemoiselles*, according as we speak to one or several persons; or simply by—*oui* or *non*, if speaking to our inferiors, friends, or equals.

ESSAY XLV.

Is ~~this~~ your hat? Yes, it is.—Is Mademoiselle Mr. S.'s cousin? No, sir, she is
cousine
 not.—Are these your daughters? Yes, they are.—Are not these your
 horses? No, they are not.—Is not this Mr. K.'s house? Yes, it is.—I
 thought this was Mrs. L.'s carriage? No, madam, it is not.—Are your
croire voiture
 sisters married? The eldest is, and the youngest will be (in a very short time).
marié cadette bientôt

——(Have you got a cold?) Yes, I have.——Was there ever a woman
Êtes-vous enrhumé *être* *jamais*
more unfortunate, and treated with more contempt than I am?——(You
malheureux *traiter* *mépris* *On*
have been told) that Mrs. W. is dead, but she is not.——Is Miss R. rich?
vous a dit
No, she is not.——Miss T*** has been ill a* very long time; and I
malade
am afraid she will be so all her life.——Why are you so jealous of
craindre *sub. pr.* *jaloux*
her? If I were (you), I should not be so (in the least).——Is your
à votre place *du tout*
mother still unwell? Yes, sir, she is.——Ladies, are you relations to
encore indisposé *parente de*
Colonel D**? Yes, sir, we are.——This family was highly es-
Monsieur *fort*
teemed, two or three years ago; but it is not (so much so) at present.——Do
autant
you think Mr. and Mrs. B** will send their son to France? Yes, I
sub. pr.
do.——Have you seen the Misses F** since their return from the continent?
Demoiselle *retour*
Yes, I have.——Will you have the goodness to take this grammar to them?
bonté de porter
Yes, with pleasure.——Do not forget to mention my uncle's marriage to
oublier *parler du*
them. No, I will not.——Will your sisters go into the country this year? Yes,
oublier *à* *année*
I think they will.——Will you be at home to-morrow? No, I do not think
aller
I shall.
sub. pr.

LESSON XLVI.

Of the pronouns—*myself, thyself, himself, herself, itself, one's self, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.* 268

GENERAL RULE.—Whenever the pronouns *myself, thyself, himself, herself, itself, one's self, ourselves, yourselves* and *themselves*, are governed by a verb which is a reflective one in French,—*myself* is expressed by *me*;—*thyself*, by *te*;—*himself, herself, and one's self*, by *se*;—*ourselves*, by *nous*;—*yourselves*, by *vous*; and *themselves*, by *se*; which are put before the verb in a simple tense, and before the auxiliary in a compound one: as,—I flatter myself, *je me flatte*. This lady praises herself too much, *cette dame se loue trop*. He has killed himself, *il s'est tué*, &c.

But when *himself*, *herself*, *one's self*, *ourselves* and *themselves*, are governed by a verb which is not a reflective one in French, and of which the nominative is taken in an indeterminate sense, as when it is one of the following indefinite pronouns:—each, every one, *chacun*; one, people, they, *on*; none, *aucun*; some one, somebody, *quelqu'un*; whoever, *quiconque*; nobody, *personne*; he or she who, *celui qui*, *celle qui*; or one of the expressions:—happy who, *heureux qui*; every man who, *tout homme qui*; or any similar one, provided it be in the singular and used in an indeterminate sense in French; or, also, when *himself*, *herself*, *one's self*, *ourselves* or *themselves*, are governed by an impersonal verb, or by any other verb in the present of the infinitive mood, they are then expressed by *soi*, which is always singular: as,—every body looks upon himself with a favourable eye, *chacun a pour soi un œil de complaisance*. We are satisfied with ourselves when we have done a good action, *on est content de soi quand on a fait une bonne action*. It is always in our power to act honourably, *il dépend toujours de soi d'agir honorablement*. To live for nobody but one's self, *ne vivre que pour soi*, &c.

Itself and *themselves*, used with reference to things after a preposition, are always expressed in French by *soi*, whether the nominative of the verb to which they refer be taken in an indefinite or particular sense, provided it be singular: as,—virtue is amiable in itself, *la vertu est aimable en soi*. Vice is odious of itself, *de soi le vice est odieux*. Cats appear to feel only for themselves, *le chat paraît ne sentir que pour soi*.

In other circumstances, *myself* is generally expressed by *moi-même*; *thyself*, by *toi-même*; *himself*, by *lui-même*; *herself*, by *elle-même*; *one's self*, by *soi-même*; *ourselves*, by *nous-mêmes*; *yourselves*, by *vous-mêmes*; and *themselves*, by *eux-mêmes* or *elles-mêmes*: as,—I have seen it myself, *je l'ai vu moi-même*, &c. Sometimes, also, the word *même* is left out, and *moi*, *toi*, *lui*, *elle*, *nous*, *vous*, *eux*, *elles*, are used by themselves: as,—your brother and myself have been there, *nous y avons été votre frère et moi*.

269 *Même* is generally added to the pronouns *moi*, *toi*, *lui*, *elle*, *nous*, *vous*, *eux*, *elles*, to give more energy to the expression:

ESSAY XLVI.

However	courageous a man	may be,	he ought not to*	expose himself
Quelque			devoir	s'exposer
to danger	unnecessarily.—I	sub. pr.	flatter myself	you will follow the advice I give
au	sans nécessité	se flatter		suivre conseil
you, and	never	bring upon*	yourself*	the reproach of having
que	s'attirer			reproche de vous être écarté
(from it).—(It is often the case)	that, in	praising ourselves,	we reflect upon	
en	Il arrive souvent	se louer	on médire d'	

The personal *loi* is of both genders, and is generally preceded by a preposition, or by the conjunction *que*. When applied to persons, it is employed in only a vague and indeterminate sense; as *il faut prendre garde à loi* §. 4. 239.

*Y is suppressed before the future
and conditional of the verb aller.*
R. 176

others.—That unfortunate woman killed herself.—If you praise yourself so
autrui se tuer se louer
much, nobody will believe you.—Every body acts for himself.—One ought
tant personne Chacun agir devoir
never to * speak of one's self but with modesty.—Whoever loves (nobody but)
qu' Quiconque n' que
himself does not deserve to be loved.—(Does not every body look upon) himself
mériter d' Chacun n'a-t-il pas pour
with * a favourable eye?—Nobody is dissatisfied with himself after having
de complaisance mécontent avoir
done a good action. (That man is happy) who is accountable to * nobody * but
Heureux l'homme n' comptable qu'
himself for his actions and pleasures.—It is always in our power to act
à de de ses plaisir
honourably.—To excuse in one's self the faults which one cannot bear
souffrir
in others, is a mark of littleness of mind.—That young lady has a * good
dans les marque petitesse
opinion of herself.—These ladies speak too favourably of themselves.—
avantageusement
Self-love directs (every thing) to itself.—Whatever is good in itself is not
Amour propre tout Tout ce qui
always approved.—(It may be) that this medicine is harmless of
Il se peut faire sub. pr. innocent en
itself, however I will not take it.—Did you see that yourself? Yes, I did,
cependant Avez voir
with my own eyes. Well! I should like to * witness it myself, before I
de propre Eh bien vouloir voir de
believe it.—She did it herself.
faire

LESSON XLVII.

General order in which the pronouns come before the verb or the auxiliary in French.

GENERAL RULE.—Whenever the pronouns *me, te, se, nous, vous, lui, leur*, are governed by a verb with *le, la, les, en* or *y*, the following is the order which is observed in placing them before the verb or the auxiliary:—*me, te, se, nous, vous*, always precede *le, la, les, en* and *y*; —*lui, leur*, precede *en* and *y*; but *le, la, les*, precede *lui* and *leur*; and *y* precedes *en*, as it is pointed out in the following examples, in which all the possible combinations of the pronouns are illustrated in affirmative, negative, and interrogative sentences.

From this rule, it may be inferred that *en* and *y* always come after the other pronouns and immediately before the verb in a simple tense, and before the auxiliary in a compound one, except in the imperative, when they follow the verb, if it be used affirmatively, as hereafter explained.

284 ORDER OF THE PRONOUNS BEFORE THE VERB.

1. Examples of the pronouns *me, te, nous, vous*, with *le, la, les* :—*me, te, nous, vous*, always coming first.

He promised it, or them, to me ;	<i>Il me le, me la, me les promet.</i>
He did not promise it, or them, to thee ;	<i>Il ne te le, ne te la, ne te les promet pas.</i>
Did he promise it, or them, to us ?	<i>Nous le, nous la, nous les promet-il ?</i>
Did he not promise it, or them, to you ?	<i>Ne vous le, ne vous la, ne vous les promet-il pas ?</i>

2. Examples of *me, te, nous, vous*, with *en* :—*me, te, nous, vous*, always coming first.

He will send me some ;	<i>Il m'en enverra.</i>
He will not send thee any ;	<i>Il ne t'en enverra pas.</i>
Will he send us some ?	<i>Nous en enverra-t-il ?</i>
Will he not send you any ?	<i>Ne vous en enverra-t-il pas ?</i>

3. Examples of *me, te, se, nous, vous*, with *y* :—*me, te, se, nous, vous*, always coming first.

I shall go, or repair, thither ;	<i>Je m'y rendrai.</i>
Thou shalt not go, or repair, thither ;	<i>Tu ne t'y rendras pas.</i>
Will he go, or repair, thither ?	<i>S'y rendra-t-il ?</i>
Shall we go, or repair, thither ?	<i>Nous y rendrons-nous ?</i>
Will you not go, or repair, thither ?	<i>Ne vous y rendrez-vous pas ?</i>

4. Examples of *me, te, nous, vous*, with *y* and *en* :—*me, te, nous, vous*, always coming the first ; *y*, the second ; and *en*, the third.

He will send me some thither ;	<i>Il m'y en enverra.</i>
He will not send thee any thither ;	<i>Il ne t'y en enverra pas.</i>
Will he send us some thither ?	<i>Nous y en enverra-t-il ?</i>
Will he not send you any thither ?	<i>Ne vous y en enverra-t-il pas ?</i>

5. Examples of *me, te, nous, vous*, with *le, la, les*, and *y* :—*me, te, nous, vous*, always coming the first ; *le, la, les*, the second ; and *y*, the third.

He will bring it to me there ;	<i>Il me l'y apportera.</i>
He will not take it there for thee ;	<i>Il ne te l'y portera pas.</i>
Will he take it there for us ?	<i>Nous l'y portera-t-il ?</i>
Will he not take it there for you ?	<i>Ne vous l'y portera-t-il pas ?</i>

- 271 6. Examples of *le, la, les*, with *lui, leur* :—*le, la, les*, always coming first.

I give it, or them, to him or to her ;	<i>Je le lui, la lui, les lui donne.</i>
I do not give it, or them, to him or to her ?	<i>Je ne le lui, ne la lui, ne les lui donne pas.</i>
Do you give it, or them, to him or to her ?	<i>Le lui, la lui, les lui donnez-vous ?</i>
Do you not give it, or them, to him or to her ?	<i>Ne le lui, ne la lui, ne les lui donnez-vous pas ?</i>
He gives it, or them, to them ;	<i>Il le leur, la leur, les leur donne.</i>
He does not give it, or them, to them ;	<i>Il ne le leur, ne la leur, ne les leur donne pas.</i>

Does he give it, <i>or</i> them, to them?	<i>Le leur, la leur, les leur donne-t-il?</i>
Does he not give it, <i>or</i> them, to them?	<i>Ne le leur, ne la leur, ne les leur donne-t-il pas?</i>

7. Examples of *le, la, les*, with *y* :—*le, la, les*, always coming first.

I have put it, <i>or</i> them, there ;	<i>Je l'y, ou je les y, ai mis.</i>
I have not put it, <i>or</i> them there ;	<i>Je ne l'y, ou je ne les y, ai pas mis.</i>
Have you put it, <i>or</i> them, there ?	<i>L'y, ou les y, avez-vous mis?</i>
Have you not put it, <i>or</i> them, there ?	<i>Ne l'y, ou ne les y, avez-vous pas mis?</i>

8. Examples of *lui, leur*, with *en* :—*lui, leur*, always coming first.

I give it him, <i>or</i> them, as a present ;	<i>Je lui, ou leur, en fais présent.</i>
I do not give it him, <i>or</i> them, as a present ;	<i>Je ne lui, ou ne leur, en fais pas présent.</i>
Do you give it him, <i>or</i> them, as a present ?	<i>Lui, ou leur, en faites-vous présent ?</i>
Do you not give it him, <i>or</i> them, as a present ?	<i>Ne lui, ou ne leur, en faites-vous pas présent ?</i>

Observe.—When the above pronouns are used with a verb in a compound tense, they follow precisely the same order before the auxiliary as they do before the verb in a simple tense, the participle being placed the last: as,—he has sent it *or* them to us, *il nous l'a envoyé* ou *il nous les a envoyés* ; she has promised me some, *elle m'en a promis*, &c.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. When *moi, nous, lui, leur*, occur with *le, la, les*, and a verb in the imperative affirmatively used, they are placed after it, in the second person singular, and in the first and second persons plural ; and *le, la, les*, precede *moi, nous, lui* and *leur*, as in the following examples :—

Lend it, <i>or</i> them, to me ;	<i>Prête-le-moi, la-moi, ou les-moi.</i>
Lend it, <i>or</i> them, to us ;	<i>Prêtez-le-nous, la-nous, ou les-nous.</i>
Let us lend it, <i>or</i> them, to him ;	<i>Prêtons-le-lui, la-lui, ou les-lui.</i>
Lend it, <i>or</i> them, to them ;	<i>Prêtez-le-leur, la-leur, ou les-leur.</i>

Should a verb be in the third person singular or plural of the imperative, either affirmatively or negatively used, (or if it should be in the second person singular or in the first and second persons plural negatively used,) the pronouns should then precede as in the other tenses, and *me* be used instead of *moi*. *Me, te, se, nous, vous*, come then before *le, la, les*, and *le, la, les*, before *lui* and *leur* : as—

Let him bring it, *or* them, to me ;
Qu'il me l', ou me les, apporte.

Let them not take it, *or* them, to him *or* to her ;
Qu'ils ne le lui, ne la lui, ne les lui, portent pas.

Don't give it, *or* them, to me ;
Ne me le, ne me la, ne me les donne pas.

Do not hope for it, *or* them ;
Ne te le, ne te la, ne te les promets pas.

Let him not hope for it, or them ;
Qu'il ne se le, ne se la, ne se les promette pas.

Let us not hope for it, or them ;
Ne nous le, ne nous la, ne nous les promettons pas.

Do not hope for it, or them ;
Ne vous le, ne vous la, ne vous les promettez pas.

Let us not give it, or them, to him or to her ;
Ne le lui, ne la lui, ne les lui donnons pas.

Do not send it, or them, to them ;
Ne le leur, ne la leur, ne les leur envoyez pas.

2. When *me, te, se, nous, vous, lui, leur*, occur with *en* and *y*, and a verb in the imperative affirmatively used, they are placed after it, in the second person singular, and in the first and second persons plural ; but in the third person singular or plural, whether the verb be in the affirmative or negative form, (and even in the second person singular and in the first and second persons plural, if the verb should be used negatively,) they precede as in the other tenses : in any case *me, te, se, nous, vous, lui* and *leur*, come before *en* : as,—

Send me some ;	<i>Envoie-m'en.</i>
Send me some there ;	<i>Envoyez-m'y-en.</i>
Let us send him some ;	<i>Envoyons-lui-en.</i>
Buy them some ;	<i>Achetez-leur-en.</i>
Let him give me some ;	<i>Qu'il m'en donne.</i>
Let him not send her any ;	<i>Qu'il ne lui en envoie pas.</i>
Don't speak of it to me ;	<i>Ne m'en parle pas.</i>
Do not send me any there ;	<i>Ne m'y en envoyez pas.</i>
Let us not give him any ;	<i>Ne lui en donnons pas.</i>
Do not tell them any thing of it ;	<i>Ne leur en dites rien.</i>

3. *Moi, te, se, nous, vous, le, la, les*, being employed with *y*, and a verb in the imperative affirmatively used, are placed after the verb, in the second person singular, and in the first and second persons plural ; but in the third persons singular and plural, whether the verb be used affirmatively or negatively, (and even in the second person singular and in the first and second persons plural, if the verb should be used negatively,) they precede as in the other tenses, using then *me* instead of *moi*. In any case, the following is the order which they retain in the sentence :—*y* comes before *moi* ; but *me, te, se, nous, vous, le, la, les*, always precede *y*, as,—

Take me there ;	<i>Menez-y-moi.</i>
Take him there ;	<i>Mène-l'y.</i>
Let us take them there ;	<i>Menons-les-y.</i>
Let him take her or them there ;	<i>Qu'il l'y ou les y mène.</i>
Let us not take him there ;	<i>Ne l'y menons pas.</i>
Do not take them there ;	<i>Ne les y menez pas.</i>

Observe.—Whenever two or more verbs following each other in the

Songer and rêver, when they take a
pleasure to think of as *je songe* or *je*
rêve à vous du matin au soir. But
when they signify to dream they govern
de as *je n'ai rêvé de vous toute la*
nuît. Laforte 138

When *venir* is used metaphorically, the
pronoun is placed before the verb, as
Il me vient une idée. Laforte 139.
After follows the same rule, as, *cette*
robe ne vous va pas bien.

When the pronouns *me* and *thee* come
between an infinitive and an infinitive
there we use *me* and *to*, if the
preceding is a transitive verb; if not
me and *to* must be used.
R. 167

The personal pronouns come after
the verb in French (to express the
dative) in case of reflexives
e.g. *s'adresser à moi*; and also
R. 168

With the verbs *aller*, *courir*, *accou-
rir*, *marcher*, *poursuivre*, *s'engager*, *ve-
nir*, *vivre* to *venir*, *être* is the
sense of to belong, *avoir* to have
used with the words *affaire*, *é-
galité*, *soutien*, *secours*. See p. 286

When a verb has two or more
individual requirees, and likewise
with all reflexive verbs G. 4. 233

It is also the case in elliptical sentences
when no verb is expressed... To whom
did you speak? *À qui avez-vous
parlé?* à lui.

R. 169.
Have attention, as il faut attention
à moi. See Syntax 39.

Prendre garde à eux. See Page Ready G. 204.

imperative are used affirmatively, and joined by the conjunction *et* or *ou*, the pronouns which they may govern, are placed after the first verb and before the second, when only two are used; but if more than two verbs should be employed, the pronouns are put after those which come first, and before the last. In either case, the pronoun *me* is expressed by *moi*, after the first verb or verbs, and by *me* before the second or last: as,—take it and eat it, *prenez-la et la mangez*. Sell it me or give it me, *vendez-la-moi ou me la donnez*.

If the verbs should be in the imperative negatively used, there would be no difficulty, as the pronouns must then always precede the verb, and *me* be expressed by *me*: as,—do not scold and beat me so much, *ne me grondez pas et ne me battez pas tant*.

ESSAY XLVII.

(Are these) peaches or nectarines? They are peaches.—Will you give me
Sont-ce là pêche paille Ce Vouloir
some? Yes; with pleasure.—It is not certain that Mr. H** has
sub. pret.
refused his daughter to Colonel R**; but even should he have refused her
refuser
to him, it does not follow he would give her to you.—Make
s'ensuivre qu' sub. imp. vouloir Se
yourself easy, I shall be there in time.—Are you quite sure that Mrs. S**
tranquilliser y à bien
will be there too? There is not the least doubt of* it*.—If your
sub. pr. y aussi moindre doute
sisters will lend me their guitar this evening, I shall return it to them to-morrow.
prêter guitare rendre demain
—Where is your cousins' French grammar? Here it is. When will you send
cousine la voici ren-
it back* to them? Next week.—That house is so respectable that, if I
voyer prochain
had money to (dispose of,) I should place it there.—Miss D** thinks
de l' à ma disposition placer y trouver
these bracelets beautiful, you should make her a* present (of them). No,
superbe devriez en
certainly, I (will not); why (should I)?—When you
ne lui en ferai pas présent et lui en ferais-je présent
see the Misses T**, tell them I have bought two fine pictures.—Show them
voir dire acheter tableau Montrer
to me.—Do not show them to him.—If my sister should express a wish to
témoigner le désir de
read that book, do not lend it to her, for fear she should spoil it;
de crainte qu' sub. pr. gâter
but sell it to her, and she will take good care (of it).—As soon as you (have)
vendre avoir soin en aurez
some* of the same plums, which you sold me the other day, send me some.—
prune en

Your neighbours are in want of coffee; buy some for * them.——If they do not
avoir besoin en leur

know where I live, do not tell it them.——Are the Misses G * * going to
savoir demeurer dire

Epsom-races? (Not that I know of.) Do not accompany them there. Let
course Pas que je sache accompagner y

your brother take them there, if he likes.——Take me there with you.——Tell her
mener vouloir y

of * it.——Do * not speak to me any more (about it).——Who has given you these
ne m' plus en

oranges? Your brother has sent them to us. Who had given them to him?

He did not tell us.——What a fine apple! Give it me. Do not give it them.
l' a

Take it and eat it.——Love your enemies, and do them good when you can.——You

have a beautiful gold watch, which is useless to you; sell it me or give it me.——
beau inutile

Do not (forgive) them, but punish them directly.
pardonner punir sur-le-champ.

LESSON XLVIII.

Repetition of the Personal Pronouns.

1. *Cases in which the personal pronouns je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles, are repeated in French.*

GENERAL RULE.—Whenever the personal pronouns *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils, elles*, are used as nominatives to two or more verbs following each other in a sentence, they are usually repeated before each of them, if the parts of the sentence be joined by any other conjunction than *ni*, whether *I, thou, he, she, it, we, ye or you and they*, be repeated in English or not: as,—he will and will not, *il veut et il ne veut pas*, and not—*il veut et ne veut pas*. But if the different parts of the sentence should be joined by *ni*, the pronouns should not be repeated before the verb following *ni*: as,—I neither love nor hate her, *je ne l'aime ni ne la hais*, and not,—*je ne l'aime ni je ne la hais*.

There are however circumstances in which the pronouns are and sometimes are not repeated, according as the energy, elegance, harmony, or clearness of the expression requires it; and, in general, taste is the best guide for the repetition or non-repetition of the pronouns: as,—I love and shall always love her, *je l'aime et je l'aimerai toujours*, and not—*je l'aime et l'aimerai toujours*. But *je* is not repeated in the following line of *Voltaire*:—

“*J'ai des adorateurs et n'ai pas un ami.*”—VOLTAIRE,

The repetition of personal pronouns
used as nominatives is indispensable
1° when the propositions are united
by any conjunction, except *et, ou, ni*
mais &c

C'est Sarah, quoiqu'il soit ben jume.
2° When we pass from a negative
to an affirmative sentence. R. 287

אמר

Whereas *il* is repeated in the next of *Rousseau* :—

“ *Il s’écoute, il se plaît, il s’adonise, il s’aime.* ”—J. B. ROUSSEAU.

Observe.—When a verb has two or more pronouns of different persons for its nominative : as,—*you and I shall go ; you and he are the only persons I see ;* it is put in the plural, and the pronouns are resumed with *nous*, if the first person be used with the second or the third, and with *vous* if the second should be used with the third. *Nous* and *vous* are placed immediately before the verb which agrees with them in number and person, whether the other pronouns precede or follow it : as,—*you and I shall go, vous et moi nous irons, or nous irons vous et moi, and not—vous et moi irons.* You and he are the only persons I see, *vous et lui vous êtes les seules personnes que je vois ;* and not—*vous et lui êtes, &c.*

But the pronouns *nous* and *vous* are usually left out, when the different nominatives of the verb are joined by the conjunction *ni* : as,—*neither he nor I have succeeded, ni lui ni moi n’avons réussi ;* and not—*ni lui ni moi nous n’avons réussi.* They are also sometimes left out, when the different nominatives come either after the conjunction *que* or after a relative pronoun : as,—*the gentleman with whom you and your daughter were, le monsieur avec qui ou lequel vous et votre fille étiez,* and not—*vous et votre fille vous étiez.*

2. Cases in which the pronouns *me, te, se, nous, vous, le, la, les, lui, leur, and en,* are repeated in French.

GENERAL RULE.—The pronouns *me, te, se, nous, vous, le, la, les, lui, leur, and en,* are generally repeated in French before every verb they are governed by, although their corresponding ones in English may not be repeated, when two or more verbs follow each other in a sentence governing the same pronoun : as,—*he loves, caresses, and adores me, il m’aime, il me caresse, il m’adore.* I believe and shall always believe them, *je les crois et je les croirai toujours.* He does and undoes it, *il le fait et le défait.*

ESSAY XLVIII.

Every body says that I am (in love) with Miss G** ; however it is
Tout le monde dit amoureux de cependant cela
 not so,* for I neither love nor hate her.—How do you like these ladies?
car aimer haïr trouver dame
 They neither please nor displease me.—We neither praise nor blame them.—
plaire déplaire louer blâmer
 (It is inconceivable how whimsical that woman is) : from one moment to another
Cette femme est d’une bizarrerie inconcevable à l’autre
 she will and will not.—You say so, but you do not believe it.—I assure you that I
cela croire
 believe and shall always believe it.—She has admirers and has not a friend.—

He (arrived) this morning, and will set out again this evening.—I love, honour,
est arrivé *repartir* *honorer*
 and shall always respect her.—He took the strongest cities, conquered the
respecter *prendre* *fort* *conquérir*
 most considerable provinces, and overturned the most powerful empires.—I
renverser *puissant*
 maintain and shall always maintain that she was in the wrong.—Avoid drunk-
soutenir *Éviter* *ivro-*
 enness: it impairs the understanding, tarnishes reputation, and consumes the
gnerie *abrutir* *entendement* *ternir* *consommer*
 body.—They wrote to me, two months ago, that they had seen my mother, but
écrire
 they had not spoken to her.—You and I shall go there.*—You and Miss S**
qu'
 are the only persons I know here.—It must be you or your
sub. pr. connaître ici *sub. pr. ce*
 brother who have taken my watch.—I know that you and your cousin were
savoir
 laughing at me.—Neither he nor I were present.—The gentleman with whom
se moquer de *monsieur*
 you and your daughter were is one of my acquaintances.—I wonder that
une f. *connaissances f. pl.* *s'étonner*
 you and he associate with that person.—She will never finish that embroidery,
fréquenter *broderie*
 because she does and undoes it twenty times a day.—I will see, pray, entreat,
parce qu' *faire* *défaire* *par* *vouloir* *presser*
 importune, and* move them.
importuner *fléchir*

LESSON XLIX.

PARTICULAR OBSERVATIONS ON THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

1. *My, thy, his, her, our, your, their.*

GENERAL RULE.—Whenever the conjunctive possessive pronouns *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their*, are used before the words *head, arms, legs, life, voice*, and *mind*, or before any other part or attribute of the body, which is the object of a verb denoting some fracture, cut, bruise, or any impression whatever of harm, inflicted on such part or attribute of the body by its nominative, as in the following sentences:—*our carriage ran over his body; I shall break his neck; you hurt my fingers; he turned her mind*, &c., they are expressed in French by the personal pronouns, thus—*my*, by *me*;—*thy*, by *te*;—*his* or *her*, by *lui*;—*our*, by *nous*;—*your*, by *vous*;—*their*, by *leur*; which are placed immediately before the verb in a simple tense, and before the auxiliary in a compound one, with the article *le, la, or les*, or, if the verb govern *à*,—*au, à la, à l', or aux*, before the part of the body alluded to: as,—*our carriage ran over his body, notre voiture lui passa*

The possessive is also used in speaking of an habitual complaint known to the person spoken to.

Ma migraine m'a repris
My headach has returned.

Reflected verbs remove all ambiguity.

Je me suis blessé à la main.
Custom authorizes a few familiar
expressions like Je me suis tenu
toute la journée sur mes jambes.
Il se tient ferme sur les pieds.

G. S. 242.

It is sometimes optional to use the article or the possessive pronoun; il s'écrit au devant de la tête, or la tête; au dessus de l'eau. But when the noun is governed by a preposition, the possessive pronoun must absolutely be used. Il montra sur son visage une joie sensible de voir R. 289.

A moi &c. differ from le mien &c. in this respect. The former are never used but when you might instead of être, put appartenir à, to belong to; whereas le mien &c. are used more particularly to distinguish one person's property from another's. Voyez ces manoirs, elles sont à moi.

sur le corps. I shall break his neck, *je lui casserai le cou.* He turned her mind, *il lui tourna l'esprit.* You hurt my fingers, *vous me faites mal aux doigts, &c.* as if it were in English—our carriage to him ran over the body; I to him shall break the neck; you to me hurt the fingers; he to her turned the mind, &c.

If the verb should denote an impression of harm which an agent either has inflicted or will inflict upon any part of his own body: as,—Miss A* * has, or will, cut her finger; I have broken my arm, &c.; in this case, the verb should be reflective in French, as the definite article *le, la, or les,* would not sufficiently indicate whose is the part of the body alluded to: as,—Miss A* * has, or will, cut her finger, *Mademoiselle A* * s'est coupé, ou se coupera, le doigt.* I have broken my arm, *je me suis cassé le bras;* and not—*Mademoiselle A* * a coupé, ou coupera, le doigt; j'ai cassé le bras;* because it could not be ascertained whose finger or arm it is.

In the following sentences and any similar one—he had his head cut off; she has lost her mind; he lifted up his eyes and hands to heaven; the possessive pronouns *my, thy, his, her, &c.* are expressed in French by *le, la, or les,* before the part of the body mentioned, if the article sufficiently explains whose is the part of the body alluded to: as—he had his head cut off, *il eût la tête tranchée.* She has lost her mind, *elle a perdu l'esprit.* He lifted up his eyes and hands to heaven, *il leva les yeux et les mains au ciel;* as if it were in English—he had the head cut off; she has lost the mind, &c.

But, if the article should not sufficiently explain whose is the part of the body alluded to, the possessive pronouns should then be used in French as in English: as,—I see my leg swelling, *je vois que ma jambe s'enfle;* and not—*je vois que la jambe s'enfle;* because it could not be ascertained whose is the leg spoken of.

When *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their,* are used before a part of the body denoting some circumstance or situation of the substantive antecedent, as when we say—I saw several ladies, with their eyes cast down; they are left out in French, as likewise the preposition *with,* which is used before the possessive pronoun in English; and the article *le, la, or les,* is used in their stead in French: as,—I saw several ladies, with their eyes cast down, *je vis plusieurs dames, les yeux baissés;* and not—*avec leurs yeux baissés.*

2. Mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs.

GENERAL RULE.—Whenever the relative possessive pronouns *mine, thine, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs,* depend on the preposition *of,* and relate to a substantive preceded by one of the demonstrative pronouns *this, that, these, those,* as—where have you put that book of mine? what have you done with those stockings of hers? &c. they are expressed, in French, by one of the conjunctive possessive pronouns *mon, ma, mes; ton, ta, tes; son, sa, ses; notre, nos; votre, vos; leur,*

278

eurs; and placed before the substantive to which they refer, agreeing with it in gender and number; and the demonstrative pronouns *this*, *that*, *these*, *those*, as also the preposition *of*, are left out: as,—where have you put that book of mine? *où avez-vous mis mon livre?* what have you done with those stockings of hers? *qu'avez-vous fait de ses bas?* &c.—Sometimes, also, the demonstrative pronouns *this*, *that*, *these*, *those*, are expressed in French, and the possessive pronouns *mine*, *thine*, *his*, *hers*, &c. are left out, giving another turn to the sentence: as,—what have you done with that book of mine? *qu'avez-vous fait de ce livre que j'avais?* &c.

Mine, *thine*, *his*, *hers*, *ours*, *yours*, *theirs*, coming before a verb in the present of the infinitive mood, to express either the duty, business, fate, &c. of the person or persons alluded to: as,—*it is mine to command*; *it is hers to be faithful and obedient*, &c. are expressed in French by one of the personal pronouns, *à moi*, *à toi*, *à lui*, *à elle*, *à nous*, *à vous*, *à eux* or *à elles*, and retain the same place in the sentence which *mine*, *thine*, &c. occupy in English: as,—*it is mine to command*, *c'est à moi à commander*. *It is hers to be faithful and obedient*, *c'est à elle d'être fidèle et obéissante*, &c.

But when *mine*, *thine*, *his*, *her*, *hers*, *ours*, *yours*, *theirs*, are used as in the next sentences:—*she had an estate of her own*; *he performed a concerto of his own*; *that is no concern of yours*, &c. they are expressed in French as follows:—*she had an estate of her own*, *elle avait une terre à elle*. *He performed a fine concerto of his own*, *il exécuta un beau concerto de sa composition*. *That is no concern of yours*, *cela ne vous regarde pas*, &c.; but practice alone can teach these different modes of expression.

ESSAY XLIX.

The boot-maker who lives at the corner of the street (has met with) a
¹*au* ²*bottier* ³ ¹⁰*demeurer* ¹¹ ¹²*coin* ¹³ ¹⁴ ¹⁵ ¹⁶*il est arrivé* ⁴
 shocking accident; our carriage unfortunately ran over his body,
⁵*terrible* ⁶ ⁷*voiture* ⁸*malheureusement* ⁹*passer*
 broke his left thigh, and bruised his right shoulder very much.—Do not
¹⁰*casser* ¹¹*gauche* ¹²*cuisse* ¹³ ¹⁴*a froisser* ¹⁵ ¹⁶ ¹⁷*beaucoup*
 make so much noise, you split my head.—I trod upon his foot.—A cannon-
¹⁸*faire* ¹⁹*tant* ²⁰*de* ²¹*fendre* ²²*marcher*
 ball shot off (both) their (left arms) (at the) same time.—Do not
²³*boulet* ²⁴*emporter* ²⁵*à tous les deux* ²⁶*bras gauche* ²⁷*en*
 press my hand so much, you hurt my fingers terribly.—Tell them that
²⁸*presser* ²⁹*fort* ³⁰*faire* ³¹*mal* ³² ³³*furieusement*
 if they ever come here again, I shall break their (necks.)—Mind, or you*
³⁴ ³⁵ ³⁶*casser* ³⁷*cou* ³⁸*Prendre garde de*
 (will hurt) her eyes.—Mr. A*** is afraid they will be obliged to
³⁹*faire mal* ⁴⁰*craindre* ⁴¹*on* ⁴²*sub. pr.* ⁴³*de*
 cut off his thumb.—I caught cold and completely lost my voice.—My
⁴⁴*couper* ⁴⁵*pouce* ⁴⁶*s'enrhumer* ⁴⁷*entièrement* ⁴⁸*perdre*

Voici bien des chapeaux, lequel est
le votre? Je prends ce chapeau, car
c'est le mien. Le grand c'est
le mien 2^e, il est à moi 2^e.

Le. 2. 49.

When c'est implies duty, right, &c it
governs a dat. of a person and a be-
fore the infin. or the indic. with que.
The prep à is used when action is
implied, as c'est à vous à parler,
but c'est à vous d'écouter, as
écouter is passive in signifi-
cation Larv. Dict 129.

In speaking to a person of his re-
lations we usually put, monsieur,
madame, mademoiselle before the
possessive adj.

J'ai rencontré monsieur votre père.
I met your father.

father (has had a fall,) on the ice, this morning, and injured his back and
est tombé ³ ⁴ ⁵ *glace* ¹ ² *il s'est blessé* ⁴ ⁵ *dos* ⁶

head (very much.)—In the battle of Waterloo, our General received a shot
⁷ ² *dangereusement* *à* *coup de feu*

in his right leg, another in his left shoulder: (by a great deal) of care and atten-
à *épaule* *à force* *soin*

tion, his leg was saved, but it was necessary to * make an incision in his
on *saucer* *falloir*

shoulder.—Would it not be better for a man of probity to * lose his life
valoir mieux *perdre*

than to sacrifice his honour by a criminal action?—I think she has lost her
de sacrifier

mind.—When this virtuous officer had lost his leg, at the battle of Wagram, he

lifted up his eyes and hands (to) heaven, and thanked God for having preserved
lever *au* *de* *conserver*

his life.—Did not the Prince of * * have his head cut off for (having) assassi-
trancher *avoir* *assassi-*

nated his brother? No: it was for having attempted to (murder the) King.—
ner *attenter* *la vie du*

His niece (tells a falsehood) as often as she opens her mouth.—The inha-
mentir *toutes les fois qu'*

bitants of that country are so superstitious, that I recollect having seen, one
se rappeler *d'avoir vu*

Sunday, in a magnificent temple, several thousand people, with * their eyes
temple *personne*

cast down, for more than half an hour, all intimately persuaded that
baisser *pendant* *intimement*

God was present, and addressed them in the person of their priest.—I see
qu'il parler leur

that my foot begins to swell: I despair (of its) ever being cured.—
s'enfler *désespérer* *qu'il* *sub. pr.* *se guérir*

If you touch that knife, you will certainly cut your fingers.—Go first
toucher *se couper* *doigt* *d'abord*

and * wash your hands, (and then) come and * warm your feet.—I broke
vous laver *puis* *se chauffer* *se casser*

my arm in trying to save a child who threw itself (out of) the window of a
chercher à *se jeter* *par* *fenêtre*

house on fire.—Give me those stockings of mine which you have
qui était en *bas*

mended.—Where have you put that pocket-book of mine which I brought
raccommodés *Où* *mettre* *tablettes* *apportées*

from France? You put it in your pocket, when you went out this after-
mises les *poche* *sortir*

noon.—Is not that little girl aware that it is mine to command and hers to obey?
savoir *à* *d'obéir*

—That poor man, in performing a beautiful concerto of his own, was (struck by
exécuter *beau* *frappé*

a fit) of apoplexy, and died suddenly.—I have often heard Miss A * * mention
apoplexie *subitement* *dire*

that she has a large estate of her own on the continent; I should like very much
 280 to know where it is.—You ought not to* trouble yourself about that, because it
 is no concern of yours.

^{beau} ^{bien}
^{savoir} ^{c'} ^{devoir} ^{se mêler} ^{de} ^{parce que}

LESSON L.

Cases in which *its* is expressed in French by *son*, *sa*, *ses*, and *en*.

GENERAL RULE.—Whenever *its* is used with reference to inanimate things not personified, it is expressed in French by *son*, *sa*, *ses* :—

1. When it comes before a substantive which is governed by the preceding verb: as,—Paris has its pleasures, *Paris a ses plaisirs*. I have seen London, its theatres, and buildings, *j'ai vu Londres, ses théâtres, et ses édifices*.

2. When it is employed before the latter of two substantives which are joined together by a conjunction, if the latter belongs to the former: as,—London and its neighbourhood, *Londres et ses environs*.

3. When it precedes a substantive which depends on a preposition and refers to something which has either been mentioned before or is spoken of after, as when speaking of England, we say:—it is by its situation, joined to the wisdom of its government, that it unites such vast advantages within itself, *c'est par sa position, jointe à la sagesse de son gouvernement, qu'elle réunit dans son sein de si grands avantages*.

4. When it comes before a substantive which, being qualified by an adjective or specified by some other word, serves as nominative to the following verb; or when, without being modified by an adjective, the substantive is the nominative of a verb which either is or can be followed by the preposition *de*: as,—its regular buildings please at the first sight, *ses bâtimens réguliers plaisent au premier coup d'œil*. Its trade produces immense resources, *son commerce produit d'immenses ressources*.

Its, being used before a substantive which serves as nominative to a verb in any other circumstance, is generally expressed in French by *en* before the verb in a simple tense, and before the auxiliary in a compound one, with *le*, *la*, or *les*, before the substantive, as in the following sentences, in which reference is made either to a parliament, an army, a nation, a town, or a tree: as,—its magistrates are upright, *les magistrats en sont intègres*. Its soldiers are well disciplined, *les soldats en sont bien disciplinés*. Its situation is agreeable, *la situation en est agréable*. Its squares are beautiful and its streets very large, *les places en sont superbes et les rues spacieuses*. Its fruit is delicious, *le fruit en est délicieux*; and so on, using 1. the article; 2. the thing spoken of; 3. *en*; 4. the verb; 5. the adjective or participle.

In a sentence containing one verb, its
and their are expressed by *son, sa, ses,*
leur, leurs
J'aime Paris, les bâtiments &c

But in a sentence of two members
containing two verbs its & their
(when attached to the second
verb) are expressed by the article
le, la, les before the substitution, and
en before the second verb
J'aime Paris, j'en admire les bâtiments.
Ms. 50.

The image is a high-contrast, black-and-white scan of a textured surface, likely the cover or endpaper of an old book. It is characterized by a dense distribution of small, dark, irregular spots, specks, and marks of varying sizes against a lighter, grainy background. These marks are scattered across the entire frame, with some appearing as distinct, dark blotches and others as fine, dust-like particles. The overall effect is one of significant wear, age, or perhaps a specific type of paper or material that has been heavily marked or stained over time. There are no discernible patterns, text, or other graphical elements present.

Its, referring to a substantive which is the object of a verb, but which relates to another substantive, governed by another verb in the first part of the sentence, is likewise expressed in French by *en* before the verb²⁸¹ or the auxiliary; and by *y*, if reference be made to a place; with *le, la,* or *les*, before the substantive, in either case: as,—all those who read Milton's *Paradise Lost* are not always capable of feeling its beauties, *tous ceux qui lisent le Paradis Perdu de Milton ne sont pas toujours capables d'en sentir les beautés.* I should like Vauxhall, if indecency did not debase its pleasures, *j'aimerais Vauxhall, si l'indécence n'y avilissait les plaisirs.*

But practice, in general, will be the best guide for knowing when *its*, referring to inanimate things not personified, is to be expressed in French by *son, sa, ses*, before the substantive, or by *en* before the verb, with *le, la,* or *les*, before the substantive; the latter construction always being proper, whenever the sense will admit of it; whereas *son, sa, ses*, must be used when it will not.

ESSAY L.

Every country has its customs, laws, and prejudices.—I should regret
pays usage préjugé regretter
 very much to leave France without (having) seen Paris, its theatres, buildings,
beaucoup de quitter sans avoir édifice
 and amusements.—Richmond and its neighbourhood present to the eye the finest

prospect I ever beheld.—(It is) on account of its climate, soil,
perspective que sub. pret. voir C'est à cause. climat sol
 and productions, that France is so much admired by foreigners.—We were in
tant des étranger

England, when the Thames (broke out of its banks), and overflowed all this
Tamise se déborda inonder

part of the country: the water was so high and rapid that, in its course, it
partie haut si que cours

swept away several houses and trees.—Has not war its theory and
entraîner plusieurs guerre théorie

principles like other sciences?—As soon as Solomon had abandoned himself
comme les Salomon s'abandonner

to the love of women, his understanding declined, his heart weakened, and his
amour esprit baisser s'affaiblir

piety degenerated into idolatry.—This town would be a delightful spot, if its
dégénérer en charmant lieu

streets were not so narrow and its houses so high: its regular buildings please
étroit bâtiment

me much, and its peaceful inhabitants are very amiable.—London is the largest
paisible grand

city in Europe: its situation is agreeable and very convenient for trade;
ville de l' commode commerce

its houses are brick-built and extremely clean; its squares and streets are large
brique propre place grand

282

and beautiful, and its parks immense.—This peach-tree is not very fine; but
^{beau} ^{parc} ^{pêcher}
 its fruit is delicious.—I will not take that physic; I know its strength and
^{délicieux} ^{médecine} ^{force}
 effects too well.—As all those who read Milton's Paradise Lost are
^{effet} ^{trop} ^{bien} ^{De même que}
 not capable of feeling its beauties, so the greatest part of foreigners who
^{ainsi} ^{étranger}
 attend Racine's tragedies in Paris cannot relish their sublimity.
^{aller aux} ^à ^{ne sauraient en apprécier} ^{la}
 —I am very fond of Vauxhall, and I should often take my children there, if
¹ ⁴ ^{mener} ⁵ ⁶ ^{2y}
 indecency and vulgarity did not debase its amusements and pleasures.
^{vulgarité} ^{avilir}

LESSON LI.

Particular Observations on the Demonstrative Pronouns.

FIRST GENERAL RULE.—Whenever *this, that, these, those*, and also *such*, are used before a tense of the verb *to be*, followed either by a substantive, an adjective, a participle, a pronoun, or a verb in the present of the infinitive, to which they refer, or which they serve to demonstrate: as,—*this is a very good thought; I have now two things in contemplation, these are to get married and retire into the country; these or such are my sentiments, &c.* they are expressed in French by *ce* or *c'*, (indeclinable,) before the tense of the verb *être* which corresponds to that of the verb *to be* employed in English, which tense is put in the third person singular, if it be followed by a substantive, an adjective, a participle, or a pronoun in the singular, or also by a verb in the present of the infinitive mood; but it is put in the third person plural, if it be followed by a substantive, an adjective, or a pronoun, in the plural: as,—*this is a very good thought, c'est une très-bonne pensée. I have now two things in contemplation, these are to get married and retire into the country, j'ai maintenant deux choses en vue, c'est de me marier et de me retirer à la campagne. These or such are my sentiments, ce sont mes sentimens, &c.*

Là must be added to the different tenses of the verb *être*, in sentences of this kind, if we wish to express the thing spoken of with great energy: as,—*that is a very imprudent step, c'est là une démarche bien imprudente. Is that behaving as one ought? est-ce là se conduire comme il faut? These or such are my sentiments, ce sont là mes sentimens, &c.* which sentences are much more energetic than if we said simply:—*c'est une démarche bien imprudente; est-ce se conduire comme il faut? ce sont mes sentimens.*

Sometimes, also, the demonstrative pronouns and the verb *to be* are expressed by the adverbs *voici, voilà* (here or there is, here or there

are) : as,—this or that is a very imprudent step, *voici ou voilà une démarche bien imprudente*. That is a very good thought, *voilà une bien bonne pensée*. Such or those are my sentiments, *voilà mes sentimens*.

When *this, that, these, those*, come before the present participle of the verb *to be* : as,—*this being your opinion* ; the sentence must be construed by another tense of the verb *être* in French, placing one of the conjunctions *puisque, comme*, or any other which the sense may require, before *ce* or *c'* : as,—*this or that being your opinion, puisque ou comme c'est votre opinion*, and not—*c'étant votre opinion*.

SECOND GENERAL RULE.—When *this* or *that* is employed in the sense of *such* before a substantive, to point out a person or a thing in an indeterminate manner, it is sometimes expressed in French by *tel* ou *telle* : as,—that friend who professes the most sincere love is often the most likely to forsake us in the time of trouble, *tel ami qui profère les témoignages les plus sincères d'amitié est souvent le premier à nous abandonner dans le besoin*.

THIRD GENERAL RULE.—Whenever the demonstrative pronoun *those*, and also the pronouns *he, she, they, him, her, and them*, are the antecedents of *who, whom, that* or *which*, they are expressed, in French, as follows :—

1. *He who* or *that* is construed into French by *celui qui* ;—*she who* or *that*, by *celle qui* ;—*they* or *those who* or *that*, by *ceux qui* m. and *celles qui* f. for the nominative of the following verb : as,—he who fears nothing is very happy, *celui qui ne craint rien est très-heureux*.

2. *He* or *him whom* or *that* is expressed by *celui que* ;—*she* or *her whom* or *that*, by *celle que* ;—*they* or *those whom*, and *them* or *those whom* or *which*, by *ceux que* m. and *celles que* f. for the direct object of the following verb : as,—I have seen her whom you love, *j'ai vu celle que vous aimez*. I shall take those which you have shown me, *je prendrai ceux que vous m'avez montrés*.

3. *He* or *him of* or *about whom* is expressed by *celui dont*, ou *duquel* ;—*she* or *her of* or *about whom*, by *celle dont* ou *de laquelle* ;—*those* or *them of* or *about whom* or *which*, by *ceux dont* ou *desquels* m. and by *celles dont* ou *desquelles* f. for the indirect object of the succeeding verb, when such verb requires *de* after it in French, whatever, in general, may be the preposition on which the relative depends in English : as,—those of whom you complain are innocent, *CEUX DONT vous vous plaignez sont innocens* ; because we say *se plaindre de*.

4. *He* or *him to* or *with whom* is expressed by *celui à qui* ou *auquel* ;—*she* or *her to* or *with whom*, by *celle à qui* ou *à laquelle* ;—*they* or *those to* or *with whom* or *to which*, by *ceux à qui* ou *auxquels* m. and by *celles à qui* ou *auxquelles* f. for the indirect object of the following verb, when such verb requires *à* after it in French, whatever may also be the preposition on which the relative depends in English : as,—those to whom you were speaking are charming young ladies, *CELLES À QUI vous parlez sont de charmantes demoiselles* ; because we say, *parler à*.

Observe.—The pronouns *he, she, they, him, her, them* and *those*, are sometimes separated from the relatives *who, whom, that or which*, in English: as,—*they are not always happy who seem to be so*; but, in French, *celui, celle, ceux, celles*, must always be joined to *qui, que, or dont, &c.*; and, for this purpose, the second part of the sentence following the relative in English must, with the relative, be used the first in French, and be placed immediately after the demonstrative pronouns *celui, celle, ceux, celles, &c.*: as,—*they are not always happy who seem to be so, CEUX QUI paraissent être heureux ne le sont pas toujours*, as if it were in English—*those who seem to be happy are not always so.*

The same order may however be retained in the French sentence as in the English, by adding the adverb *là* to the demonstrative pronouns *celui, celle, ceux, celles*: as,—*ceux-là ne sont pas toujours heureux qui paraissent l'être*, they are not always happy who seem to be so.

Such as, at the beginning of a sentence of which it is the nominative: as,—*such as seem to be happy are not always so*, is expressed in French like *he who, she who, they who, &c.* by *celui qui, celle qui, ceux qui* or *celles qui*, according to the gender and number of the substantive which such expression is intended to represent; and, also, by *tel ou telle*, in the beginning of the sentence, with *qui* before the verb occurring in the second part: as,—*such as seem to be happy are not always so, ceux qui paraissent être heureux ne le sont pas toujours*; ou—*tel paraît être heureux qui ne l'est pas toujours.*

FOURTH GENERAL RULE.—*That* and *those*, followed by *which*, with reference to some thing that has been mentioned before, as when having spoken of watches or rings, we say,—*I shall take that which is upon the table; give me those which you do not like*; so, also, **WHICH**, used in reply to a question, with reference to something mentioned in the question: as,—*which of these two hats will you have? which you please*; are expressed in French by one of the demonstrative pronouns *celui, celle, ceux, celles*, with *qui, que, or dont*, according as *which* is the subject or object, either direct or indirect, of the following verb in English: as,—*I shall take that which is upon the table, je prendrai celle qui est sur la table* (speaking of a watch). Give me those which you do not like, *donnez-moi celles que vous ne voulez pas* (alluding to rings). Which of these two hats will you have? which you please; *lequel de ces deux chapeaux voulez-vous? celui qu'il vous plaira.*

The two following familiar sentences must be excepted, and all similar ones, wherein *which*, though referring to something mentioned before in the question, is not construed into French by *celui que* or *lequel*, but by *ce qu'il* or *comme il*, with the next verb in the third person singular of the future: as,—do you choose meat or fish? which you please; *voulez-vous de la viande ou du poisson? ce qu'il vous plaira ou ce qu'il vous fera plaisir*; and not—*celui qu'il vous plaira ou lequel il vous plaira.* Shall I help you to some of this or that? to

usage. What I say is true, *ce que je dis est vrai*. *C'* is not employed, because *est* is followed by an adjective.

If the verb following *c'est*, *c'était*, *ce fut*, &c. should be in the present of the infinitive, *de* must be used before it; whereas *que* is required, if it should be in any other mood: as,—what I fear is to displease you, *ce que je crains, c'est de vous déplaire*. What I know is they will win, *ce que je sais, c'est qu'ils gagneront*.

Ce qui and *ce que*, always being of the singular number, cannot be used before a substantive plural; whenever, therefore, *which*, or any other expression, which is to be construed into French by *ce qui* or *ce que*, comes before a substantive plural in English, another turn must be given to the sentence in French, instead of using *ce qui* or *ce que*: thus,—*she plays on the piano and draws uncommonly well, which are two very fine accomplishments in a lady*, must be rendered into French by:—*elle joue du piano et dessine parfaitement: talens qui sont considérés comme très-beaux dans une demoiselle*, and not—*ce qui ou qui sont considérés*, &c.

ESSAY LI.

A small cottage and a few pieces of furniture, these are all his fortune.
chaumière quelque meubles c'est là

—I have now two things in contemplation, these are to get married and
vue de se marier

retire into the country.—That is very well thought of*.—That will be
de se retirer à fort penser

very badly managed.—I have been told you intend to send a challenge
administrer avoir intention d' cartel

to Mr. D***; if such are your sentiments, it is not...—Is that (behaving) as a
se conduire

man of honour?—This being your opinion, I am very sorry I have done it.—
de

That is a very imprudent step.—It frequently happens that those who
démarche souvent arriver

profess the (most sincere love) are the most likely to forsake us
nous faire plus grandes protestations d'amitié premier à

(in the time of) trouble and need.—Alas! that is unfortunately
quand nous sommes dans la peine besoin Hélas n' malheureusement

but too often the case.—When your sister is in company, she frequently
que en souvent

turns the conversation to subjects of literature, (in order) to mention
faire tomber sur des afin de citer

the most striking passages of this or that author.—He who wants nothing
frappant avoir besoin

287 is very happy.—These stockings are very fine, but I shall take in preference
bas-ci de préférence

those which you showed me first.—As all the children are not here, I
avez montrés d'abord

cannot punish those of whom you complain.—Put yourself in the place of him
se plaindre *à*
to whom you will do an injury.—Those to whom I was speaking, when you
vouloir
called me, are charming ladies.—He is much to be pitied who gives himself up
bien plaindre s'abandonner
to his passions and the pleasures of this world.—They are mistaken who think
se tromper
that happiness consists in riches: for such as seem to be happy are not always
so.—I am sure they do not know the human heart who trust to the vain
se fier
promises of men.—All these rings are very pretty; however I give the pre-
promesse *bugue* *joli*
ference to that which your cousin has (on her) finger.—Madam, which of these
cousine *au*
gowns shall I have the pleasure of sending you? Which you please.—Is not
de
her happiness infinitely superior to that which one usually enjoys in this
au-dessus de *on ordinairement* *jour*
world?—Do you choose meat or fish? Which you please.—Shall I have the
vouloir
pleasure of helping you to some of this or that? To which you please.—He
offrir
drinks rum from morning to night, which is very injurious to his health.—
soir *mauvais pour*
What you say is very true.—What costs little is too dear when it is bad or
of no use.—Ladies, I know what you are laughing at, but I do not
qu'il n'est *usage* *se moquer de*
care.—If your sister knew what she exposes herself to in going there,
²*se soucier* ¹*en* *s'exposer* *y*
she would certainly stay at home.—(You may not like) my pro-
rester chez elle *Peut-être n'aimerez-vous point* *pro-*
ceeding; but this is my way of acting: I always say what I think.—
cédé *manière* *penser*
She goes out in* the evening, which displeases me very much.—What she
sortir *déplaie*
fears is a relapse.—What attaches me to life is you.—What I know is they
rechute
have won.—Miss A** plays on the harp and piano, speaks French and
gagner *de*
Italian, draws uncommonly well, which are considered very fine
dessiner parfaitement ² ³ ⁴ ⁵*comme* ⁶ ⁷
accomplishments in a lady.
¹*talent*

LESSON LII.

Particular observations on the relative pronouns who, whom, whose, that, what, and which.

GENERAL RULE.—1. Whenever *who*, being used interrogatively before a tense of the verb *to be*, refers to a substantive following, as—*who is that lady?* it is expressed in French by *qui*, for both genders and numbers, or by *quel*, *quelle*, *quels* or *quelles*, according to the gender and number of the substantive following: as,—*who is that lady? qui est ou quelle est cette dame?*

If an adjective should follow the verb *to be*, instead of a substantive, as—*who is courageous enough to follow me?* *who* should then be expressed by *quel est celui qui* ou *quelle est celle qui*, or simply by *qui* or *qui est-ce qui*; but not by *quel*, *quelle*, *quels* or *quelles*, without *celui qui* or *celle qui*, as when before a substantive: as,—*who is courageous enough to follow me? quel est celui qui est assez hardi pour me suivre?* or—*qui* ou *qui est-ce qui est assez hardi pour me suivre?*

2. *Qui* is also frequently used absolutely in French; that is, without any antecedent expressed, though the sentence be not interrogative. *Qui* is then of the masculine gender, and conveys to the mind only a vague and indeterminate idea, in the sense of *he who*: as,—

Qui se lasse d'un roi, peut se lasser d'un père.—NICOM. 11.

*Qui veut parler sur tout souvent parle au hasard;
On se croit orateur, on n'est que babillard.*

3. *Whom*, used without any antecedent expressed, in a sentence like this,—*ask her whom she means*; is construed into French by *de qui*, when the verb on which it depends governs *de* in French: as,—*ask her whom she means, demandez-lui de qui elle veut parler.*

4. *Whose*, employed when a comparison is meant between two or more persons or things, as—*you have had two dancing-masters: whose lessons have been most beneficial to you?* is expressed in French by *quel est celui dont?* ou *quelle est celle dont?* as,—*you have had two dancing-masters: whose lessons have been most beneficial to you? vous avez eu deux maîtres de danse: quel est celui dont les leçons vous ont fait le plus de bien?*

5. *What*, used by way of admiration or astonishment before an adjective preceded by *a* or *an*, as—*what an amiable family is Mr. D.'s! what a fine woman she would have been! what a fine lecture he gave us!* is sometimes expressed in French by *quel*, *quelle*, *quels* or *quelles*, before the adjective, leaving out *a* or *an*, and sometimes a different turn is given to the sentence: as—*what an amiable family is Mr. D.'s! quelle aimable famille que la famille de M. D***!* What a fine

22

81

woman she would have been ! *quelle belle femme elle aurait été !* What a fine sermon he gave us ! *le beau sermon qu'il nous fit !*

6. *What*, coming between two verbs in the sense of *what thing*, in sentences of doubt, incertitude, or interrogation, as—*I do not know what to say or to do* ; is expressed in French by *que*, with the next verb in the present of the infinitive mood : as,—*I do not know what to say or to do, je ne sais que dire ni que faire.*

7. But *what*, used interrogatively in the sense of *what thing*, before a tense of the verb *to be* followed by an adjective preceded by *more* or *less*, as—*what is more laudable?* or also *what*, not followed by any verb, but used immediately before *more* or *less* and an adjective, as—*what more laudable?* is expressed in French by *quoi de* before the adjective, which is put in the masculine singular ; and the tense of the verb *to be* which may be used, is not expressed : as,—*what is more laudable or what more laudable? quoi de plus louable?*

8. If *what*, signifying *of what moment* or *of what consequence*, should be used before a tense of the verb *to be*, as—*what are men before God?* it should then be expressed by *que?* or *qu'est-ce que?* as,—*what are men before God? que sont les hommes devant Dieu? ou qu'est-ce que sont les hommes devant Dieu?*

Note.—The French frequently use *de quoi* in an indefinite manner, when they wish to denote the means or substance required to do any thing. This expression must be rendered into English according to the import of the sentence : as,—*donnez-moi de quoi écrire*, give me something to write with. *Nous avons de quoi nous amuser*, we have something to amuse ourselves with ; but this can only be learnt by practice.

9. *Which*, coming before a tense of the verb *to be*, or before a tense of any other verb which is to be rendered into French by the corresponding tense of *être*, and this being followed by an adjective or any other qualifying expression referring to the substantive going before, is sometimes expressed in French by *quel, quelle, quels* or *quelles?* and sometimes by *quel est celui qui?* or *quelle est celle qui?* as,—*you have read these two books : which is the most interesting? vous avez lu ces deux livres : quel est le plus intéressant? ou quel est celui qui est le plus intéressant?*

10. *Which*, taken in the sense of *which* or *what thing*, and coming after a preposition of which it is the object, in a sentence which is not interrogative, as—*the tables were cleared away, after which dancing began* ; is generally expressed in French by *quoi*, unless the preposition preceding *which* should not admit of *quoi*, in which case the preposition and the relative *which* should be supplied by an adverb, such as,—*ensuite, alors, là-dessus, aussitôt, autrement*, or any other, according to the import of the sentence : as,—*the tables were cleared away, after which dancing began, on ôta les tables, après quoi la danse commença* ; in which sentence, if *quoi* were not proper, *ensuite* should be used : as,—*on ôta les tables, ensuite la danse commença.*

190

11. When the pronoun *that*, being taken in the sense of *which*, refers to one of the words *something* or *any thing*, (*quelque chose*,) *nothing*, (*rien*), which it has for its antecedent, as—*I do not know any thing that he is fit for*; it is also expressed by *quoi*, placing the preposition of which *that* is the object in English, before *quoi* in French, although it frequently follows the succeeding verb in English: as,—*I do not know any thing that he is fit for*, *je ne sache rien à quoi il soit propre*.

12. *Which*, referring to an expression of place, time, condition, end or design, and being the object of one of the prepositions *at*, *to*, *in* or *into*, or of any other which is to be rendered into French by *à* or *dans*, as—the place in which he lives; the end at which he aims, &c. is generally construed into French with the preposition which governs it, by *où*, instead of *auquel* or *dans lequel*, &c. as,—the place in which he lives, *l'endroit où il demeure*, instead of—*dans lequel il demeure*. The end at which he aims, *le but où il vise*, for—*auquel il vise*, &c.

If *which* should be the object of one of the prepositions *from*, *out of*, *through*, *by*, or of any other which is to be construed into French by *de* or *par*, it is likewise expressed by *où*, when it refers to a word denoting a book, a subject, or a place; but, in this case, the preposition *de* or *par* is expressed: as,—*I know the book from which you have extracted that passage*, *je connais le livre d'où vous avez tiré ce passage*. The town through which we shall pass, *la ville par où nous passerons*.

Où is also used interrogatively instead of *à quoi*, when it means *condition*: as,—*où or à quoi me réduisez-vous?* what condition do you reduce me to?—and *d'où* instead of *de quoi*, in the sense of *from which cause* or *reason*? as,—*d'où tirez-vous cette conséquence?* from which cause do you draw that consequence?

Par où is likewise employed interrogatively for the English expressions *with what?*—*how?*—*by what means?* as:—*with what shall we begin?* *par où commencerons-nous?* How shall you extricate yourself from such a difficulty? *par où sortirez-vous d'un pareil embarras?*

Où and *d'où* are also adverbs of place, and are used interrogatively in the sense of *where?* *whither?* and *whence?* as,—*whither are you going?* *où allez-vous?* *Whence do you come?* *d'où venez-vous?*

Observe.—The conjunction *that*, which is understood before the verb coming in the second part of the following or of any similar sentence, beginning by a tense of the verb *to be*, with the pronoun *it* taken indeterminately for its subject, and a substantive or a personal pronoun preceded by a preposition for its object, as—*it is to you I speak*; is always elegantly expressed in French by *que*, placing the preposition which the following verb may require in French, immediately before the substantive or pronoun which follows the impersonal *it is*, *it was*, &c.

29/ in English, and expressing *it is*, *it was*, by the corresponding tense of the verb *être*, before which *ce* or *c'* is used in the sense of *it* in English: as,—*it is to you I speak*, *c'est à vous que je parle*; as if it were in English—*it is to you that I speak*.

84

ESSAY LII.

Who was that lady to whom Mr. C** introduced you the other day?—Who
présenter
 will be courageous enough to attack that furious animal?—He who
pour attaquer *furieux*
 (covets all, loses all.)—Did you ask her whom she (meant)?—No; I
trop embrasse mal étreint *demandeur* *voulait parler*
 (did not).—You have had two or three different masters: whose lessons
ne le lui demandai pas.
 have been most beneficial to you?—What an amiable family is Mr. L.'s! But
 what a* disgusting one is Mr. C.'s!—What a fine girl she would have
que *celle* *de*
 been, if she had not had that misfortune!—What a beautiful picture!—
 What do you say he has lost?—I (am at a loss) what to tell him.—She did
ne sais
 not know what to answer.—What more laudable in a young man than
louable
 spending his time in the study of sciences and arts?—What are men before
d'employer *à*
 God?—Tell them that if they will stay at home they will have something
vouloir rester
 to* play with*.—You are acquainted with these two families: which is the
s'amuser *connaître*
 richest?—The ladies were admitted at ten o'clock, after which the ball began.
admettre
 —Do you know any thing that he is fit for?—The end at
sub. pr. *voilà* *but*
 which he aims is* to* revive liberty in a country from which it seems to*
faire *revivre* *paraître*
 (have been) banished.—How comes it* that nobody is satisfied with his
être *D'où* *content de*
 condition?—The country through which we passed in going to Douleau, a* vil-
sort
 lage from which they extract a great quantity of coals, is the most fruitful in
l'on tirer *charbon*
 which I have ever travelled.—Well! what will you begin with?—
sub. pret. *jamais voyager* *Hé bien*
 Where are you going this afternoon?—Whence does your sister come?—Was
 it to this office you applied last year?—No, it was not.—It is not to you I
ce *bureau* *s'adresser* *ce*
 speak.—It is on them I depend for that favour.
d' *attendre*

LESSON LIII.

Of Indefinite Pronouns.

1. *Quiconque, qui que, qui que ce soit qui*, whoever, whosoever, any one who or that, any body who or that; *qui que ce soit que*, whomsoever.

Whoever, whosoever, and *any body who or that*, are expressed in French by *quiconque*, which being masculine singular, requires any adjective or participle referring to it to be in the masculine singular, unless *quiconque* should have a direct relation to women, in which case any adjective or participle referring to it ought to be feminine. *Quiconque* always governs the verb of which it is the nominative in the third person singular, and if any verb should occur in the second part of the sentence, of which it would also be the nominative, *il* must not be used before it: as,—whoever said so has not spoken the truth, *quiconque a dit cela n'a pas dit la vérité*; and not—*il n'a pas dit*, &c.

Whoever, whosoever, any body who or that, may also be expressed in French by *qui que ce soit qui*, putting the next verb in the subjunctive mood, and following for the rest of the sentence the same rules as for *quiconque*: as,—whoever said so has not spoken the truth, *qui que ce soit qui ait dit cela n'a pas dit la vérité*.

Whoever, used with any of the personal pronouns *he, she, we, you, they*, as nominative to any tense of the verb *to be*, as—*whoever he or you may be; whoever he, she, or they may be*; is expressed in French by *qui que*, for the first and second persons singular and plural; *quel que* or *quelle que*, for the third singular; and *quels que* or *quelles que*, for the third plural, before the personal pronouns, *je, tu, il, elle, nous, vous, ils* or *elles*, putting the following verb in the subjunctive mood: as, whoever you may be, *qui que vous soyez*; whoever he, she, or they may be, *quel qu'il ou quelle qu'elle soit*; or *quels qu'ils ou quelles qu'elles soient*.

Whomsoever, coming after a preposition, as—*of whomsoever you may have heard it, I do not believe it*, is expressed in French by *qui que ce soit que*, after the preposition, with the next verb in the subjunctive mood: as,—of whomsoever you may have heard it, I do not believe it, *de qui que ce soit que vous l'ayez entendu, je ne le crois pas*.

2. *Quelqu'un, quelqu'une*, somebody, some one, any body, any one.

Whenever the pronouns *somebody, some one, any body, any one*, are taken in an indefinite sense, they are expressed in French by *quelqu'un*, which being masculine singular, requires any pronoun, adjective, or participle, referring to it, in the masculine singular, and the verb of which it may be the nominative in the third person singular: as,—somebody told

Chacun requies pour sa les when it
comes after an acc. or after a next week.
Ils ont apporté leurs offrandes chacun
selon ses moyens

Ils ont opiné chacun à son tour

We say setting out livres chacun à
leur place; and rangez ces livres, cha-
cun à sa place, because the work pretty
regains the dat. à sa place, whilst the
work range is sufficient. Before cha-
cun the sense is complete; Rangez ces livres.

But chacun takes leur, leus
when it precedes its accusative.

Ils ont apporté, chacun leur offrande

Ils ont donné chacun leur avis.

me so, *quelqu'un me l'a dit*. Has any body been here for me to-day? *est-il venu quelqu'un me demander aujourd'hui? ou est-on venu me demander aujourd'hui?*

Some of or any of, coming before a substantive plural, and some or any, referring to a substantive plural, mentioned before, are expressed in French by *quelques-uns*, for the masculine, and by *quelques-unes* for the feminine, according to the gender of the substantive which they may represent. *Quelques-uns* and *quelques-unes* are applicable to both persons and things. *En* is put before the verb which precedes them, if they refer to a substantive going before, but *en* is omitted if they precede their respective substantive: as,—I have read some of your books, *j'ai lu quelques-uns de vos livres*. Do you know any of these ladies? yes, I know some of them, *connaissez-vous quelques-unes de ces dames?* oui, *j'en connais quelques-unes*.

Some of or any of, occurring before a substantive singular preceded by a possessive or a demonstrative pronoun, as—give me some of your bread; is expressed in French by *un peu de*, or simply by *de*: as,—give me some of your bread, *donnez-moi un peu de votre pain*; or simply, *donnez-moi de votre pain*. But some of or any of, coming before one of the pronouns *it* or *them*, is construed by *un peu*, without *de*, using *en* with the verb: as,—give me some of it or them, *donnez-m'en un peu*; or simply, *donnez-m'en*.

3. *Chacun*, every one; *tout le monde*, every body; *chacun, chacune*, each, every one.

When *every one* and *every body* are used with reference to persons in an indeterminate manner, *every one* is usually expressed in French by *chacun*, to denote an idea of individuality, and *every body* by *tout le monde*, to express an idea of generality: as,—every one must pay for himself, *il faut que chacun paie pour soi*; every body says so, *tout le monde le dit*, &c., in such a case, *chacun* and *tout le monde*, being masculine singular, require any adjective or participle referring to them to be in the masculine singular, and the verbs of which they may be the nominatives, in the third persons singular, as above.

But *each* and *every one*, followed by the preposition *of* and a substantive plural, or also by a personal pronoun in the plural which refers to persons or animated beings; as, likewise, *each* used immediately before or after the verb of which it is the nominative, with the preposition *of* and the personal pronoun to which it refers, understood, are expressed in French by *chacun* for the masculine, and *chacune* for the feminine, which have no plural: as,—each of these books costs me six shillings, *chacun de ces livres me coûte six schellings*. Have you seen the ladies? each had on a different dress, (*that is*,—each of them had on a different dress,) *avez-vous vu les dames? chacune avait une parure différente*. Every one of you will dance in her turn, *chacune de vous dansera à son tour*.

294

If *each* and *every one* should be followed by *of* and the pronoun *them* used with reference to inanimate things, both *them* and the preposition should be left out in French, as *them* cannot be expressed by *eux* or *elles*, with reference to inanimate objects; but *each* and *every one* must be construed, as above, by *chacun* for the masculine, and *chacune* for the feminine: as,—have you seen the pictures in the drawing-room? each of them has cost me a hundred guineas, *avez-vous vu les tableaux qui sont dans le salon? ils m'ont coûté chacun cent guinées*, and not *ils m'ont coûté chacun d'eux*, &c. because *tableaux* are inanimate.

4. *Chaque*; *tous les*, *toutes les*; *tout*, *toute*; *every*.

Every, coming immediately before a substantive, without the intervention of the preposition *of*, is expressed in French by *chaque*, if it be taken in a distributive sense, and by *tous les* or *toutes les*, if implying an idea of plurality or being used to express a repetition of something that is often done: as,—every age has its duties to fulfil, *chaque âge a ses devoirs à remplir*. Every lady who was there, *toutes les dames qui y étaient*. I see her every day, *je la vois tous les jours*. We go there every week, *nous y allons toutes les semaines*.

Every, taken in a general and collective sense before a substantive, is likewise expressed in French by *tout* or *toute* singular: as,—every man is mortal, *tout homme est mortel*. Every woman who does that is ruined, *toute femme qui fait cela est perdue*.

Chaque is used with reference to both persons and things, of either the masculine or feminine gender. It always precedes its respective substantive, unless this should be preceded by another adjective, in which case *chaque* would come the first.

5. *Personne*, nobody, no one, any body, any one.

Whenever *nobody*, *no one*, are taken in an indeterminate sense, and *any body*, *any one*, occur after a negative expression, as in the following sentences:—*nobody came*; *have you not seen any body?* *no, I have seen nobody*; they are expressed in French by *personne*, which, being masculine singular, requires any adjective or participle referring to it in the masculine singular, with *ne* before the verb of which it is either the nominative or object; and if the nominative, the verb is put in the third person singular: as,—*nobody came*, *personne n'est venu*. *Have you not seen any body?* *n'avez-vous vu personne?* *no, I have seen nobody*, *non, je n'ai vu personne*.

Any body and *any one*, used in an interrogative sentence which is not negative, or coming after a verb affirmatively used, but expressing astonishment or doubt, are also expressed in French by *personne*, which being masculine singular, requires, as above, any adjective or participle referring to it in the masculine singular, and the verb of which it may be the nominative in the third person singular, but without *ne* before

it: as,—have you ever seen any body more amiable than Miss H***? *avez-vous jamais vu personne de plus aimable que M^{lle} H***?* I doubt whether any body ever knew the origin of the winds, *je doute que personne ait jamais connu l'origine des vents.*

But *personne*, taken in the sense of the substantive *person* or *people*, is always feminine, and used in the singular and plural. In this case, any adjective or participle referring to it, agrees with it in gender and number, and *ne* is not required before the verb of which it is either the nominative or object; and if the nominative, the verb agrees with it in number: as,—there were two or three hundred people or persons, *il y avait deux ou trois cents personnes.* Some learned people say so, *des personnes instruites le disent.*

6. *Nul, nulle; aucun, aucune*, no; *pas un, pas une*, not one.

No, coming immediately before a substantive, is generally expressed in French by *nul, nulle*, or *aucun, aucune*. *None*, either referring to a substantive expressed before, or followed by the preposition *of* and a substantive plural, or also by a personal pronoun in the plural, is construed by *aucun, aucune*; and *not one*, referring to a substantive going before, by *pas un, pas une*. *Nul, nulle*, and *aucun, aucune*, are of the singular number, and require *ne* before the verb of which they are either the nominative or object, and govern any adjective or participle referring to them in the singular, as also the verb of which they may be the nominative in the third person singular: as,—no man is perfect, *nul homme n'est parfait.* None of them has ever been there, *aucun d'eux n'y a jamais été.* All my friends were invited, but none would go, *tous mes amis furent invités, mais pas un ne voulut y aller.*

Not any, used with a verb, is expressed in French by *point* after the verb, with *ne* and *en* before it, thus—*n'en*: as,—have you any money? no, I have not any, *avez-vous de l'argent? non, je n'en ai point.* But, if *of them* should be expressed or understood after *not any*, *aucun* should then be used instead of *point* after the verb, with *n'en* likewise before it: as,—I do not know any of them, *je n'en connais aucun.*

7. *Rien*, nothing, not any thing; *ne que*, but, only, nothing but, nothing else but, nobody but, nobody else than; *ne qui*, any body but.

1. *Rien*, nothing, not any thing.

Nothing, taken in an indefinite sense, as also *any thing*, coming after *never*, *not*, or any other negative expression, are expressed in French by *rien*, which is masculine singular, and governs *ne* before the verb of which it is either the nominative or object. Any adjective or participle referring to *rien* is put in the masculine singular, preceded by *de*, if immediately following *nothing* or *any thing* in English, but without *de* if a verb intervene: as,—she says nothing, *elle ne dit rien.* I have never seen any thing so beautiful, *je n'ai jamais vu rien de si beau.* Nothing is more rare than a true friend, *rien n'est plus rare*

296

qu'un véritable ami, &c. always observing to put the verb in the third person singular when *rien* is its nominative.

If *any thing* should be used without a negative expression, in a sentence of doubt, incertitude, or interrogation, it should likewise be expressed by *rien*, but without *ne* before the verb, following, in every other respect, the preceding rule: as,—I question whether any thing will be more congenial to her feelings, *je doute que rien lui soit plus agréable*. Is there any thing more agreeable than the society of an amiable woman? *y a-t-il rien de plus agréable que la société d'une femme aimable?*

But *rien*, taken in the sense of a mere nothing, a trifle, a thing of very little importance, is a substantive which can be used in the plural and take the mark of it, although always remaining masculine. In this case, *de* is never used before the adjective or participle following: as,—she does nothing but mere trifles, *elle ne fait que des riens*. She bid an adieu to the splendid trifles of the court, *elle dit adieu aux riens brillans de la cour*.

Observe.—When *personne*, *aucun*, *nul*, *pas un*, *quelqu'un*, *quoi*, *quelque chose*, *quoi que ce soit*, are immediately followed by an adjective, a participle, or an adverb of quantity, they require *de* before it; whereas *de* is not required if a verb intervene: as,—there is nobody come, *il n'y a personne de venu*. Something pretty, *quelque chose de joli*. Something more, *quelque chose de plus*. Nobody is more amiable, *personne n'est plus aimable*.

2. *Ne que*, but, only, nothing but, nothing else but, nobody but, nobody else than; *ne qui*, nobody but, any body but.

The words *but* and *only*, used in the sense of *no more*, and also *nobody but*, *nothing but*, *nothing else but*, *nobody else than*, coming after a verb before its object, as likewise *any body but* or *any body else but*, if the verb should be in the negative form, are expressed in French by *ne* before the verb or the auxiliary, with *que* after it in a simple tense, and after the participle in a compound one, but never by *mais*, *seulement*, *rien*, *autre*, &c.: as,—I have but few friends, *je n'ai que peu d'amis*. She will have only sixty guineas, *elle n'aura que soixante guinées*. I have nothing but that, *je n'ai que cela*. He had nothing else but two or three oranges, *il n'eut que deux ou trois oranges*. I saw nobody but Mr. and Mrs. L***, or, I have not seen any body but Mr. and Mrs. L***, *je ne vis ou je n'ai vu que M. et M^{me} L****.

But, coming either after *any body* in an interrogative sentence, or after *nobody* in a negative one, is usually expressed in French by *qui*, if *any body* or *nobody* should be the nominative of the following verb. *Any body* and *nobody* are then construed by *personne*, with *ne* before the verb, which is put in the subjunctive mood: as,—is there any body but knows it? *y a-t-il personne qui ne le sache?* There is nobody but fears death, *il n'y a personne qui ne craigne la mort*.

The word *but*, in any other circumstance, whether at the beginning or in the second part of a sentence, is expressed in French by *mais*; and *only*, when employed in its natural sense, and not in that of *no more*, by *seulement*: as,—I wish very much to go, but I have no money, *je désire beaucoup d'y aller, mais je n'ai pas d'argent*. You might succeed; if you had only twenty francs, *vous pourriez réussir, si vous aviez seulement vingt francs*.

8. *Le même, la même, les mêmes*, the same.

The same is expressed in French by *le même, la même*, or *les mêmes*, according to the gender and number of the substantive to which it refers: as,—the same man, *le même homme*; the same thing, *la même chose*; the same persons, *les mêmes personnes*.

The following expressions—*it is all the same, it is all one*, are expressed in French by:—*c'est la même chose; c'est égal; c'est tout un*.

The French frequently use the word *même*, without any article, after a substantive or a pronoun, making it agree in gender and number with that substantive or pronoun, to give more energy to the expression, in the sense of *all, very, himself, herself, itself, themselves*, &c.: as,—he or she is all goodness, *c'est la bonté même*. That very thing which I told you, *cela même que je vous ai dit*. The rocks themselves were affected by the melodious sounds of Orpheus, *les rochers mêmes étaient sensibles aux accords d'Orphée*. It is yourself, *c'est vous-même*.

Même, indeclinable, is used in the sense of *also, even*: as,—women and even children were killed, *les femmes et même les enfans furent tués*.

9. *Plusieurs*, many, several.

The words *many* and *several* are expressed in French by *plusieurs*, which, being plural of both genders, is only applicable to persons, when used absolutely as follows:—many say so, *plusieurs le disent*; but, when *plusieurs* is employed adjectively, it equally well applies to both persons and things, and precedes the substantive to which it refers, if this should be expressed: as,—several persons, *plusieurs personnes*; many things, *plusieurs choses*; many of your friends, *plusieurs de vos amis*.

10. *Tel, telle, tels, telles*, such; *tel que, telle que, tels que, telles que*, such as.

Such is expressed in French by *tel, telle, tels* or *telles*, according to the gender and number of the substantive to which it refers, leaving out a which follows *such* in English: as,—such a man, *tel homme*; such a thing, *telle chose*; and not—*tel un homme, telle une chose*.

Such as, used to express a comparison between persons or things, is expressed by—*tel que, telle que, tels que* or *telles que*, according to the gender and number of the first of the persons or things compared: as,—she is a woman such as you, *c'est une femme telle que vous*.

298

But *such as*, taken in an indefinite sense at the beginning of the first part of a sentence which consists of two parts, as—*such as laugh to-day will cry to-morrow*; is expressed by *tel* or *telle*, *tels* or *telles*, before the first part of the sentence, with *qui* before the second: as,—*such as laugh to-day will cry to-morrow, tel rit aujourd'hui qui pleurera demain.*

11. *Quelque*, *quelques*, adj. some or any; *quelque* and *quelques*, with *que* before the following verb; and also—*quel que*, *quelle que*, *quels que*, and *quelles que*, in two words, **WHATEVER**. *Quelque* and *tout*, indeclinable, with *que* before the next verb, **HOWEVER**, **HOWSOEVER**, **THOUGH EVER SO MUCH OR SO LITTLE**, **LET EVER SO**. *Quelque chose que*, *quoi que ce soit que*, *quoi que ce soit*, *quoi que*, **whatever**, **whatsoever**, &c.

1. *Quelque*, *quelques*, adj. some or any.

Some or *any*, coming before a substantive which refers to things, and of which it does not express a portion, is sometimes construed into French by *quelque* or *quelques*, and sometimes by *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, or *des*, according to the gender and number of the substantive: as,—I had something to tell you, *j'avais quelque chose à vous dire*. Have you any thing to tell me? *avez-vous quelque chose à me dire?* If you have any thing to tell her, *si vous avez quelque chose à lui dire*. Do you know any news? *savez-vous des nouvelles?*

But *some* or *any*, employed before a substantive and denoting an indeterminate number or portion of it, is always expressed in French by *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, or *des*, according to the gender and number of the substantive: as,—give me some bread, *donnez-moi du pain*. Have you any ink? *avez-vous de l'encre?* &c.

2. *Quelque* and *quelques*, with *que* before the succeeding verb; and also—*quel que*, *quelle que*, *quels que*, and *quelles que*, in two words, **WHATEVER**.

Whatever or *whatsoever*, being used before a substantive which is followed by any other verb than *to be*, or simply *what* or *which* before a substantive, with *soever* after it, or *though* or *let* before a verb, with *ever so much* or *so many*, *so little* or *so few*, before the following substantive, is expressed in French by *quelque* or *quelques* before the substantive, with *que* after it, putting the succeeding verb in the subjunctive mood: as,—whatever reasons he may have, or what reasons soever he may have; let him have ever so many reasons, or though he have ever so many reasons, *quelques raisons qu'il ait*; &c. using, 1. *quelque* or *quelques*; 2. the substantive; 3. *que*; 4. the verb in the subjunctive mood; 5. the rest as in English.

But if the substantive before which *whatever* or *whatsoever*, or any of the above expressions is used, should be the nominative of a tense of the verb *to be*, as—*whatever his opinions may be*; *whatsoever road it*

Quelques amis has the same meaning as *des amis*, except that custom has rendered the sense of *des* more indeterminate and more vague than *quelques*. R. 195

may be; *whatever* or *whatsoever*, or any of the above expressions, should then be construed into French by—*quel que, quelle que, quels que* or *quelles que*, in two words, before the corresponding tense of the verb *être*, in French; *quel* taking the gender and number of the substantive to which it refers, and *que* remaining indeclinable: as,—*whatever his opinions may be, quelles que soient ses opinions*. *Whatsoever road it may be, quel que soit le chemin, &c.* using, 1. *quel, quelle, quels* or *quelles*; 2. *que*; 3. the verb in the subjunctive mood; 4. the substantive; as if it were in English—*whatever may be his opinions; whatsoever may be the road*.

3. *Quelque* and *tout* (indeclinable), with *que* before the following verb, HOWEVER, HOWSOEVER, THOUGH EVER SO MUCH OR SO LITTLE, LET EVER SO.

However, being used before an adjective or a participle, or *how* before with *soever* after, or *as* before and *as* after, or simply *as* after it; or, also, *though* or *let* before a verb, whether *to be* or any other, with *ever so* after it, before an adjective or a participle, is expressed in French by *quelque*, indeclinable, before the adjective or participle, with *que* after it, putting the succeeding verb in the subjunctive mood; or, also, by—*tout*, before the adjective or participle, with *que* after it, and the following verb in the indicative mood: as,—*however powerful you may be; or, as powerful as you are; or, powerful as you are; or, though or let you be ever so powerful, quelque puissant que vous soyez, or tout puissant que vous êtes*; using, 1. *quelque* or *tout*; 2. the adjective or participle; 3. *que*; 4. the verb in the subjunctive mood, if *quelque* be used; but in the indicative, if it be *tout*; 5. the substantive, if any, and the rest as in English.

Though, used before a tense of the verb *to be*, followed by a substantive, as—*though she be a woman*; is expressed in French by *tout, toute, tous* or *toutes*, according to the gender and number of the substantive following, with *que* before the verb, which must be put in the indicative mood: as,—*though she be a woman, toute femme qu'elle est*; using, 1. *tout, toute, tous* or *toutes*; 2. the substantive; 3. *que*; 4. the verb in the indicative mood; as if it were in English—*all woman that she is*.

4. *Quelque chose que, quoi que ce soit que, quoi que ce soit, quoi que, whatever, whatsoever, nothing whatever*.

When *whatever* or *whatsoever*, or also—*nothing whatever*, or *any thing whatever* or *whatsoever* in a negative sentence, are used in an indeterminate sense, as in the following sentences:—*whatever you may say; she does not apply herself to any thing whatever; whatever or whatsoever* is expressed in French by *quelque chose que, quoi que ce soit que* or *quoi que*, with the following verb in the subjunctive mood:

. 100

as,—whatever you may say, *quelque chose que, quoi que ce soit que* or *quoi que vous disiez* ; and *nothing whatever*, or *any thing whatever* or *whatsoever* in a negative sentence, by *quoi que ce soit, quelque chose que ce soit* or *rien du tout*, with *ne* before the verb, which must be put in the indicative mood : as,—she does not apply herself to any thing whatever, *elle ne s'applique à quoi que ce soit* or *à rien du tout*.

Quoi que, pronoun, must be written in two words, to be distinguished from *quoique*, conjunction.

Any or *no*, coming before a substantive with *whatever* or *whatsoever* either expressed or understood after it, in an affirmative or negative sentence, as—*find any pretext whatever* ; *there is no reason whatsoever* ; *whatever* or *whatsoever* is expressed in French by *quelconque*, singular, for both genders, and is placed after the substantive to which it refers : as,—*find any pretext whatever, trouvez un prétexte quelconque*. There is no reason whatsoever, *il n'y a raison quelconque*.

Quelconque is also sometimes used in the plural : as,—*deux points quelconques*, two points whatsoever.

12. *Tout, toute, tous, toutes*, all, the whole of ; *tout le, toute la, tous les, toutes les*, all the, the whole ; *le tout*, the whole ; *tout*, every thing, all things ; *tout ce qui, tout ce que*, all that, every thing that ; *tout* (indeclinable), wholly, entirely, quite ; *nous tous, vous tous, eux tous*, all of us, all of you, all of them.

1. *Tout, toute, tous, toutes* ; all, the whole of.

Whenever *all* or *the whole of*, comes before a possessive or a demonstrative pronoun followed by a substantive, as—*all my friends* ; *with all that kindness* ; *the whole of their property* ; it is expressed in French by *tout, toute, tous* or *toutes*, according to the gender and number of the following substantive, and is placed before the possessive or demonstrative pronoun in French as in English, without ever being accompanied by any article in French : as,—*all my friends, tous mes amis* ; *with all that kindness, avec toute cette bonté* ; *the whole of their property, tout leur bien*.

2. *Tout le, toute la, tous les, toutes les* ; all the, the whole.

All the or *the whole*, coming before a substantive which is not preceded by a possessive or a demonstrative pronoun, is expressed in French by *tout le, toute la, tous les* or *toutes les*, according to the gender and number of the substantive : as,—*I have danced with all the ladies, j'ai dansé avec toutes les dames*. The whole fleet and army, *toute la flotte et toute l'armée*.

3. *Le tout* ; the whole.

The whole, not referring to any substantive, but taken in an indefinite

Tout modifying an adj. is a real
adverb, and should therefore be inde-
clinable; yet it takes the gender and
number before an adj. fem. beginning
with a consonant or h aspirated.
Elle est toute stupéfaite, tout honteuse.
Elles sont toutes honteuses, toutes
surprises.
Ils sont tout étonnés. R. 201.

sense, is expressed in French by *le tout*, which being masculine singular, requires any adjective or participle referring to it, in the masculine singular, and the verb of which it may be the nominative in the third person singular; but if *le tout* should be the object of a verb, it must be placed after the verb in a simple tense, and after the participle in a compound one: as,—the whole amounts to so much, *le tout se monte à tant*. Will you have the whole? *voulez-vous le tout?* The whole would not be too much, *le tout ne serait pas trop*.

4. *Tout*, every thing, all, all things.

Whenever the words *every thing*, *all*, *all things*, are taken in an indefinite sense, they are expressed in French by *tout*, which being masculine singular, requires the verb of which it may be the nominative in the third person singular; but if *tout* should be the direct object of a verb, it must be placed after the verb in a simple tense, and between the auxiliary and the participle in a compound one: as,—every thing goes badly, *tout va mal*. Piety refers all things to God, *la piété rapporte tout à Dieu*. She has lost every thing, *elle a tout perdu*.

5. *Tout ce qui*, *tout ce que*; all that, every thing that.

The words *all that*, *every thing that* or *which*, and also *whatever* in the sense of *all that*, are expressed in French by *tout ce qui*, for the nominative of the following verb, and by *tout ce que* for its direct object. *Tout ce qui* and *tout ce que*, being masculine singular, require any adjective or participle referring to them in the masculine singular; and the verb of which *tout ce qui* may be the nominative in the third person singular: as,—all that or whatever is fashionable is much sought after, *tout ce qui est à la mode est très-recherché*. All that or whatever she says is false, *tout ce qu'elle dit est faux*.

6. *Tout* (indeclinable), wholly, entirely, quite.

Whenever the adverbs *wholly*, *entirely*, *quite*, are used before an adjective or a participle, they are expressed in French by *tout* (indeclinable), whether the adjective or participle before which *tout* comes be masculine or feminine, singular or plural; except, however, when being feminine, it begins with a consonant or *h* aspirated, in which case *tout* agrees with it in gender and number: as,—he is entirely devoted to their service, *il est tout dévoué à leur service*. She was quite astonished, *elle était tout étonnée*. Was she not quite sad? *n'était-elle pas toute triste?* &c.

Should *wholly*, *entirely*, *quite*, come before the possessive pronoun *yours*, as—*I am wholly yours*; they should likewise be expressed in French by *tout* (indeclinable), which is placed before the personal pronoun *à vous*, in the sense of *yours* in English: as,—I am wholly yours, *je suis tout à vous*, and not—*je suis tout le vôtre*.

302

7. *Nous tous, vous tous, eux tous, &c.* ; all of us, all of you, all of them.

Whenever the expressions *all of us, all of you, all of them*, depend on a preposition, as in these sentences:—*he complains of all of us ; I shall have recourse to all of you ; all of us* is expressed in French by *nous tous*, for the masculine plural, and *nous toutes*, for the feminine plural ; *all of you*, by *vous tous* for the m. pl. and *vous toutes* for the f. pl. ; *all of them*, by *eux tous* for the m. pl. and *elles toutes* for the f. pl. ; provided a preposition, corresponding to that of which *all of us, all of you, all of them*, are the objects in English; be used before *nous tous, vous tous, eux tous* or *elles toutes*, in French ; for should *all of us, all of you, all of them*, come after a verb requiring no preposition before *nous tous, vous tous, eux tous* or *elles toutes*, in French, or should *all of us, all of you* or *all of them*, be the nominative of a verb, *tous* or *toutes* should then be used without the pronouns *nous, vous, eux* or *elles* : as,—*he complains of all of us, il se plaint de nous tous* or *de nous toutes*. I shall have recourse to all of you, *j'aurai recours à vous tous* or *à vous toutes, &c.* ; but we should say without *eux* or *elles*—they were all of them gone, *ils étaient tous partis* or *elles étaient toutes parties* ; and not—*ils étaient eux tous partis* or *elles étaient elles toutes parties*.

Observe.—*Tout, toute, tous* or *toutes*, is used in French before every substantive or adjective which it modifies, and agrees with it in gender and number (except in the cases where *tout* is indeclinable), although *all, the whole* or *the whole of* may not be repeated in English : as,—I am, with all the respect and esteem possible, your very humble servant, *je suis, avec tout le respect et toute la considération possible, votre très-humble serviteur*.

13. *Un autre, une autre, another ; les autres, autrui, others.*

Another is expressed in French by *un autre*, for the masculine singular, and *une autre* for the feminine singular. *Others* is construed by *les autres*, which is a plural of both genders. These pronouns are equally applicable to both persons and things : as,—another man, *un autre homme* ; another thing, *une autre chose* ; the others, *les autres*.

If *others* should be used in an indefinite sense after a preposition, and refer to persons, but without comparison with any other word in the sentence, as—to speak ill of others ; it should be rendered into French by *autrui*, which is indeclinable and never admits of any article : as,—to speak ill of others, *mal parler d'autrui* ; but if a comparison should be established in the sentence, *others* and *another* should then be expressed by *les autres, des autres, or aux autres*, according to the sense : as,—we must not take a man's goods to give to another, *il ne faut pas prendre le bien des uns pour le donner AUX AUTRES*, and not—à *autrui* ; because *another* used in the second part of the sentence stands in opposition to *a man's* employed in the first part.

1. The first part of the document is a list of names and addresses, which are arranged in a table-like format. The names are listed in the first column, and the addresses are listed in the second column. The names are: John Doe, Jane Smith, and Bob Johnson. The addresses are: 123 Main St, 456 Elm St, and 789 Oak St.

Anteprae applies to persons only, is
of both genders and numbers, and
is used exclusively in the genitive
and dative cases. R. 191.

Autrui can only be used after a preposition in French: as,—*ne prenez pas le bien d'autrui*, do not take others' goods. *Les autres* is employed for the nominative or direct object of a verb: as,—*les autres n'ont pas été punis ou punies*, the others have not been punished. *J'aime mieux les autres*, I like the others best; and not *autrui*.

14. *L'un l'autre, l'une l'autre, les uns les autres, les unes les autres*; ³⁰³
one another, each other.

The pronouns *one another* and *each other* are expressed in French by *l'un l'autre, l'une l'autre*, when speaking only of two, and by *les uns les autres, les unes les autres*, when speaking of several, according to the gender of the substantive or substantives to which they refer; and if they depend on a preposition, it is placed between *l'un* and *l'autre, l'une* and *l'autre, les uns* and *les autres*, and *les unes* and *les autres*, and never before them, as it is in English before *one another* and *each other*: as,—they praise one another too much, *ils se louent trop l'un l'autre*; they are always speaking ill of one another, *ils parlent toujours mal l'un de l'autre*, and not—*de l'un l'autre*.

15. *L'un et l'autre, l'une et l'autre, les uns et les autres, les unes et les autres*, both, one and another; *l'un ou l'autre, l'une ou l'autre*, either; *ni l'un ni l'autre, ni l'une ni l'autre*, neither.

1. *L'un et l'autre, l'une et l'autre, les uns et les autres, les unes et les autres*, both, one and another.

Whenever *both* and *one and another* are used with reference to two persons or things, they are expressed in French by *l'un et l'autre, l'une et l'autre*, which require any adjective or participle referring to them in the plural, and the verb of which they may be the nominative in the third person plural: as,—both are good, *l'un et l'autre sont bons*. Both disobeyed the king, *ils désobéirent au roi l'un et l'autre*.

If *both* and *one and another* should refer to more than two persons or things, they should be expressed by *les uns et les autres, les unes et les autres*, requiring, as above, the verb of which they may be the nominative in the third person plural, and the adjectives or participles which may refer to them in the plural: as,—I hate to be in company with those who are too full of flattery, as well as with those whose sincerity borders upon rudeness, both are equally disagreeable, *je ne hais pas moins la compagnie de ceux qui font trop de complimens, que celle des personnes dont la franchise approche de la grossièreté; les uns et les autres sont également désagréables*.

When *both*, referring to two persons or things, comes after the pronouns *we, you*, and *they*, for the nominative of a verb, and after *us, you*, and *them*, for its object, as—*they both died miserably; I admire you both; he spoke to them both, &c.*; it is expressed in French by *l'un et l'autre, l'une et l'autre*, singular, which must be placed after the verb

in a simple tense, and after the participle in a compound one, construing the pronouns *we, you, they*, by *nous, vous, ils* or *elles*, for the nominative of the verb, and *us, you, them*, by *nous, vous, les, leur*, for its object: as,—they both died miserably, *ils moururent misérablement l'un et l'autre*. I admire you both, *je vous admire l'un et l'autre*. He spoke to them both, *il leur parla à l'un et à l'autre*.

Tous les deux and *tous deux* might also be used instead of *l'un et l'autre*, in the above sentences: as,—*ils moururent misérablement tous les deux; je vous admire tous deux: il leur parla à tous deux ou à tous les deux*.

When *l'un et l'autre* depends on a preposition, the preposition must be repeated before *l'un* and before *l'autre*: as,—we wrote to them both, *nous leur écrivîmes à l'un et à l'autre*.

Both, coming immediately before a substantive, as in this sentence:—*I have been both roads*, is usually expressed in French by *les deux*: as,—I have been both roads, *j'ai été par les deux chemins*.

When *both* is used before the first of two substantives which are joined by the conjunction *and*, as—he has travelled both by sea and land; it is then a conjunction which is sometimes expressed by *et*, and sometimes left out in French: as,—he has travelled both by sea and land, *il a voyagé par terre et par mer*.

Both, used before two adjectives which are set in a kind of opposition, is generally expressed in French by *tant*: as,—the authors both ancient and modern, *les auteurs tant anciens que modernes*.

16. *L'un ou l'autre, l'une ou l'autre*, either, one or the other.

When *either* is used in English with reference to two persons or things, it is expressed in French by *l'un ou l'autre, l'une ou l'autre*, singular, which requires any adjective or participle referring to it in the singular, and the verb of which it may be the nominative in the third person singular: as,—either of you will do it, *l'un ou l'autre le fera*.

17. *Ni l'un ni l'autre, ni l'une ni l'autre*, neither.

When *neither* is used with reference to two persons or things, it is expressed in French by *ni l'un ni l'autre*, for the masculine, and by *ni l'une ni l'autre*, for the feminine, which expressions require any adjective or participle referring to them to be in the masculine or feminine singular, according as either is used, and the verb of which either may be the nominative in the third person singular, unless both *ni l'un ni l'autre* should concur together to the same action, in which case any adjective or participle referring to them must be put in the plural, and the verb of which they may be the nominative in the third person plural: as,—neither of them has done his duty, *ni l'un ni l'autre n'a fait son devoir*, and not—*n'ont fait*. Neither of them is my mother, *ni l'une ni l'autre n'est ma mère*, and not *ne sont*; because they cannot be both my mother. But we should say: *ni l'un ni l'autre n'ont*

When both comes immediately before a noun not used adjectively, it is rendered by *les deux*; both armies, *les deux armées*.

Both is not expressed in French when it precedes two nouns or pronouns united by the conjunction *and*: both France and England, *la France et l'Angleterre*. R. 198.

Both may likewise be rendered by *tous deux* or *tous les deux*, particularly when it is not joined to any noun or pronoun and refers to two persons; *tous deux* generally follows the verb, which must be preceded by *ils*, &c. *Tous les deux* and *tous deux* do not present the same idea; *tous les deux* means the one and the other, *tous deux* the one with the other together. Racine et Voltaire ont fait *tous les deux* des tragédies admirables; Paul et Virginie marchaient *tous deux* en se donnant la main. When both refers to substantives of things, it will always be safer to make use of *l'un et l'autre*. R. 198.

26.

A black and white photograph of a large, dark, irregularly shaped object, possibly a rock or a piece of debris, resting on a light-colored, textured surface. The object has a rough, pitted texture and is surrounded by small, dark, irregular fragments. The background is a light, mottled gray.

[illegible]

fait leur devoir (neither of them have done their duty), to express that both have failed in doing that which they were to accomplish together.

Ne is required before the verb of which *ni l'un ni l'autre* or *ni l'une ni l'autre* is the nominative or object, as in the above sentences.

ESSAY LIII.

Whoever attacks the sacred person of a king is guilty of high treason.—Of
attaquer coupable haut trahison
 whomsoever you may have heard it, I do not believe it.—To whom-
sub. pret. entendre
 soever you may apply, they will tell you the same thing.—Has any body
sub. pr. s'adresser on
 been here for me to-day? No, sir.—I expect somebody to supper this evening.
demander
 —Will you give me some of your new honey?—His sisters will have each
donner miel
 ten thousand pounds.—Every one must pay for himself.—We must give
soi Il faut à
 every body his own.*—It is a saying which is in every body's mouth.—There
chacun le sien dicton
 is in every plant a peculiar quality.—I give her a* lesson every Monday and
particulier
 Thursday; and I dine with her every Sunday.—Every man who preaches (such a)
chez cette
 doctrine is in error.—Every body seeks happiness, but nobody can find it in
dans chercher
 this world.—Have you not told any body of* it?—Did you ever see any body
à
 more amiable than Miss H***? No; and I doubt whether Nature ever
que sub. pret.
 formed any thing more perfect.—There were several thousand persons by the
sur
 side of the river.—Of the great number of friends who surround us in pros-
bord entourer
 perity, there is* often not one (remaining) in adversity.—Nothing is more
il ne nous en 1 2 3 4 1reste
 common than the word—"friendship;" but nothing is more rare than a true
véritable
 friend.—That young lady says nothing.—I do not think any thing will
sub. pr.
 be more agreeable to her than a little walk after dinner.—There is nothing
promenade
 more pleasing than the company of an amiable woman.—Tired (with the)
agréable société Dégouté du
 world and its pleasures, she bade adieu to the splendid trifles of the Court.—I
de dire
 know nothing new.—I have something very pretty to give you.—Having but few
 years to live, we ought to* try to enjoy them.—Friendship is only bought
année à tâcher d' en Amitié ne s'acheter

by friendship.—I saw nobody else but two children.—There was nothing in
que
 the house but two or three chairs.——He only took a basin* of* broth and a
bouillon

306 mutton-chop.—There is nobody but *côtelette* fears death.—It is very difficult to
qui sub. pr. *de*
 find two persons of the same temper and of the same opinion.—Do not be afraid
caractère *craindre*

of asking her pardon, she is all goodness.—The animals themselves are affected
de *lui* *sensible*

(by the) harmonious sounds of instruments.——Women and even children were
aux *des*

put to death.—I have heard that many of your pupils do not like your new
mettre à *aimer*

house.—Many say so, and several deny it.—She was a woman such as you.—
le

Such as laugh to-day will cry to-morrow.——I had something to tell you, but I

have quite forgotten what it was.—If your sister has any thing to send to
totalemt oublier ce que c' *à*

France, tell her I shall set out after to-morrow for Paris.——Whatever talents

you may possess, whatever advantages you (may have received) from
sub. pr. *avoir* *teniez*

Nature and education, with* what perfections soever you may be en-
de *sub. pr.* *possé-*

dowed, expect (the) suffrages but of a very small number of men.—
der ne vous attendez aux que

Whatever the obstacles may be, he must try to surmount them.—I
sub. pr. *tâcher de*

shall never forget what she has said to me, whatever her motives may
ce qu' *sub. pr. pouvoir*

have been.—We shall overtake him, whichever road he may have
atteindre quel que soit le sub. pret.

taken.—However skilful and learned we may be, let us not make
habile quelque sub. pr.

a vain show of our knowledge.—Let him be ever so powerful, he will
étalage science sub. pr. puissant

never conquer them.—Though she be a woman, she is stronger than you.—
vaincre

Whatever you undertake, you will never succeed in*, if you do not
sub. pr. entreprendre réussir

take your measures better.—She is so lazy that she does not apply herself to any
mesure s'appliquer

thing whatever.—Find any pretext whatever to excuse you.—All these oranges
pour

are rotten.—The whole of his property would not suffice to pay half his
pourrir bien pour la de

debts.—All the grandeur, wealth, and power of the earth, cannot satisfy
richesses f. pl. pouvoir

an ambitious mind.—The whole army fought for six hours and a half.
combattre pendant

—How much do you ask for the whole? I will not sell the whole.—Every
vouloir

thing displeases her.—They have taken every thing away* with them.—All is
lui emporter

not gold that glitters.—Every thing which is lofty, vast and profound,
ce qui briller élevé

expands the imagination and dilates the heart.—Whatever tends to enlighten
étendre dilater tendre éclairer

the understanding and to impress the heart with right feelings, is desi-
entendement imprimer dans de bon sentiment

table.—Do you believe all that she says? No; I do not believe the half (of it).
croire en

—Your sister was quite cast down at that news: however, afflicted as she
abattre cependant tout qu'

was, she received me kindly.—I am wholly yours.—Children, amiable as
avec bonté tout

they are, (have nevertheless) many faults, which it is necessary to correct.
ne laissent pas d'avoir bien des défaut essentiel de

—Your mother is quite altered since her illness.—I shall have recourse to all
changer

of you.—He complains of all of us.—It was another person.—I am very

happy that others enjoy themselves.—Do not speak ill of others.—
aise sub. pr. s'amuser

Behave well towards others, if you wish that others should be-
Se comporter vouloir sub. pr.

have well to you.—We should be guilty of great injustice towards one
envers coupable

another, if we were prejudiced by the features of those whom we do not
se laisser prévenir trait

know.—(We ought to assist) each other.—Your cousin and mine have great
Il faut se secourir

abilities, but they both make a very bad use (of them).—I know that one or the other
talent en

of you must have broken that dish, although neither of you will confess
sub. pr. vouloir avouer

it.—(The people) often suffer (by the) wars which kings make with one another.
Les peuples des se faire aux

—They both relate the same story, although neither believes it.—I should
rapporter fait sub. pr.

love them both, if they were more attentive to their studies.—These two
bien

ladies are very rich, and you much please them both.—As you have been both
leur à

roads, tell me which is the shortest.—I have travelled both by sea and land
court

for twenty years.—Travellers both ancient and modern agree on that
pendant s'accorder sur

point.

LESSON LIV.

Of Verbs.

OF THE SUBJECT OR NOMINATIVE OF THE VERB.

The principal function of verbs being, as before explained, to signify affirmation, the word which denotes the person or thing of which any thing is affirmed or denied, is called the subject or nominative of the verb, and is generally expressed by a noun or a pronoun.

In order to know the subject or nominative of a verb, it is necessary to ask the questions—*qui est-ce qui?* (who is it who?) with reference to persons or animated beings; and *qu'est-ce qui?* (what is it that?) with reference to things. The answer to these questions will always denote the nominative of the verb: for instance—*cet homme va tomber*, that man is going to fall: if it be asked—*qui est-ce qui va tomber?* who is it who is going to fall? the answer is—*cet homme*, that man; *cet homme* is then the subject of *va tomber*. *Mentir est honteux*, lying is shameful: *qu'est-ce qui est honteux?* what is it that is shameful? the answer is—*mentir*, lying; *mentir* is therefore the subject of *est*.

Of the verb's agreement with its nominative or subject.

FIRST GENERAL RULE.—The verb agrees in French in number and person with its nominative: as,—*la haine veille et l'amitié s'endort*, hatred is ever awake and friendship is always sleeping. *Les femmes sont aimables*, women are amiable.

Observe.—When the relative pronoun *qui* is used before a verb and refers to a noun or pronoun expressed before, the verb must be put in the same number and person in French, as the noun or pronoun to which *qui* relates is in; but, should not *qui* refer to any thing expressed before, either because it is taken absolutely or in an interrogative manner, the verb should then be put in the third person singular: as,—*est-ce moi qui l'ai dit?* is it I who said so? *est-ce vous qui l'avez vu?* is it you who have seen him? *ceux qui aiment la vertu*, those who like virtue. *Qui ne vit que pour soi est indigne de vivre*, he who lives only for himself does not deserve to live. *Qui a fait cela?* who has done that? &c.

SECOND GENERAL RULE.—1. When a verb has for its nominative two or more nouns or pronouns of the third person singular, united by the conjunction *et*, it is put in the third person plural: as,—*le vice et la vertu ont des effets contraires*, vice and virtue have contrary effects. *Lui et elle viendront*, he and she will come.

A verb is likewise usually put in the third person plural in French, when it has for its nominative two or more substantives not joined by the conjunction *et*: as,—*le Rhône, la Loire, la Seine, sont les rivières les plus remarquables de la France*, the Rhone, the Loire, and the Seine, are the finest rivers in France.

.

.

.

.

.

.

.

.

.

.

“ Le marchand, l'ouvrier, le prêtre, le soldat,
Sont tous également les membres de l'état.”—VOLTAIRE.

Should the substantives which serve as nominatives to the verb be synonymous or nearly so, the verb should agree with the last only, because in this case there exists a unity in the thoughts, which must also be found in the words: as,—*son aménité, sa douceur est connue de tout le monde*, his amenity, his sweet temper, is known by every body.

Le noir venin, le fiel de leurs écrits,
N'excite en moi que le plus froid mépris.

The verb must likewise agree with the last substantive only, although the substantives be not synonymous, if we dwell more on the last than on the others, either because it explains the preceding ones, or because it is so energetic or of such moment that the others are nearly forgotten: as,—*tout rang, tout sexe, tout âge doit aspirer au bonheur*, there is no rank, sex or age, but ought to aspire to happiness.

“ Le Pérou, le Potosi, *Alzire* est sa conquête.
Un seul mot, un soupir, un regard vous trahit.”—VOLTAIRE, *Alzire*.

If one of the substantives, which serve as nominatives to the verb, should be plural, the verb should then always be put in the plural: as,—*son repentir, ses pleurs le fléchirent*, her repentance, her tears moved him.

Synonymous substantives should not be united by the conjunction *et*; as there is only one and the same idea between them, any sign of addition would be useless. We must not therefore say—*la douceur et la bonté du grand Henri*; but—*la douceur, la bonté du grand Henri*; the sweet temper and goodness of the great Henry.

2. When a verb has two or more nominatives of different persons united by the conjunction *et*, it is put in the plural and agrees with the person which has the priority; that is, it agrees with the first person in preference to the other two, and with the second rather than with the third. Whenever, therefore, the first person is used with the second or the third, the verb must be put in the first person plural, and be immediately preceded by the resuming pronoun *nous*, which, in such a case, is invariably employed in French, although not expressed in English; but, if the second person should be used with the third, the verb should be put in the second person plural, and be preceded by *vous*, as may be seen in the following examples:—*vous et moi nous sommes contents de notre sort*, you and I are satisfied with our fate.—*Nous irons à la campagne lui et moi*, he and I shall go into the country. *Vous et lui vous savez la chose*, you and he know the affair.

The following is the order which the pronouns must always observe in such cases in French:—

1. If the first person be used with the second or the third, the second or third comes first: as,—*vous et moi* or *lui et moi nous irons*, you and I or he and I shall go.

2. If the second person should be used with the third, the second comes first: as, *vous et elle vous avez fait cela*, you and she have done that.

3. But if the three persons should be used together, the second should come the first, then the third, and the first should be placed the last: as,—*vous, lui, et moi nous y étions*, you, he, and I were there.

310

3. When a verb has two or more nominatives of different persons united by the conjunction *ou*, use requires that the person which has the priority, that is, the first in preference to the other two, and the second in preference to the third, should be immediately placed before the verb, which agrees with it in person and is put in the plural: in this case, the resuming pronouns *nous* and *vous* are not used before the verb, if it be preceded by *qui*, whereas they are required if it be not: as,—*c'est toi ou moi qui avons fait cela*, it is you or I who have done that. *C'est lui ou moi qui l'avons dit*, it is he or I who have said it. *Lui, elle, ou moi nous irons*, he, she, or I shall go.

“ Le roi, l'âne, *ou moi nous mourrons.*”—LA FONTAINE.

When a verb has either the pronoun *l'un ou l'autre*, or two substantives, or also two pronouns of the third person singular, united by the conjunction *ou*, for its nominative, it agrees with the last only, and is put in the third person singular: as,—*l'un ou l'autre nous écrira*, either will write to us. *Pierre ou Paul le fera*, Peter or Paul will do it.

4. The verb is likewise put in the third person singular, though having for its nominative several nouns in the singular and plural, when a collective expression, such as—*chacun*, each; *personne*, nobody; *nul*, none; *rien*, nothing; *tout*, all; comes immediately before it, and resumes all the nominatives into one; or, also, when the conjunction adversative *mais* is placed before the last substantive, and this is in the singular: as,—*remords, crainte, périls, rien ne m'a retenue*, neither remorse, fear, or danger restrained me. *Non seulement toutes ses richesses et tous ses honneurs, mais toute sa vertu s'évanouit*, not only all her riches and honours, but her virtue disappeared.

5. When *ainsi que*, *de même que*, *aussi bien que*, *comme*, *non plus que*, are used as in a parenthesis in a sentence, to establish a resemblance or denote a comparison between two parts of it, the incidental sentence introduced by these expressions has not any influence on the verb, which agrees with the first substantive, without any consideration for the number or gender of the other substantives brought in by any of the above conjunctions: as,—*la vertu de même que le savoir a son prix*; virtue as well as learning has its price.

“ Le nourrisson du Pinde, *ainsi que* le guerrier,
À tout l'or du Pérou préfère un beau laurier.”

Piron, *la Métrom.* Act III. sc. 7.

“ ——— Le juste, *aussi bien que* le sage,
Du crime et du malheur, *sait* tirer avantage.”

VOLTAIRE, *Zaïre*, II. 1.

6. When *l'un et l'autre* is used as nominative to a verb, it is better to put the verb in the third person plural, although many celebrated authors have sometimes employed it in the singular, and sometimes in

the plural : as,—*l'un et l'autre sont bons*, both are good ; and not *l'un et l'autre est bon*.

If, besides *l'un et l'autre*, the verb should also have the pronoun *ils* or *elles* for its nominative, *l'un et l'autre* being placed after the verb, the verb should then always be used in the plural : as,—*ils voudront l'un et l'autre y aller, mais ils n'iront ni l'un ni l'autre*, both will be desirous of going, but neither will go.

7. When *ni l'un ni l'autre*, neither the one nor the other, or two nouns joined together by *ni* repeated, are used as nominatives to a verb, the verb must be put in the third person plural, if both *ni l'un ni l'autre*, or the two nouns, concur together to the action mentioned or receive it ; but the verb is put in the third person singular, if only one of the subjects does the action or receives it ; in either case, *ne* or *n'* must be employed before the verb : as,—*ni l'un ni l'autre n'ont fait leur devoir*, neither have done their duty. *Ni la douceur ni la force ne peuvent rien*, neither mildness nor force can effect any thing. *Ce ne sera ni M. le duc ni M. le comte qui sera nommé président*, neither the duke nor the count will be chosen president. *Ni l'un ni l'autre n'est mon père*, neither the one nor the other is my father.

Observe.—When a verb has for its nominative two or more pronouns of different persons joined together by the conjunction *ni*, it is likewise put in the plural, and agrees with that which has the priority ; but in this case the resuming pronouns *nous* and *vous* are not used : as,—*ni vous ni moi ne sommes coupables*, neither you nor I are guilty. *Ni vous ni lui n'avez fait cela*, neither you nor he have done that ; and not—*ni vous ni moi nous ne sommes coupables ; ni vous ni lui vous n'avez fait cela*.

8. When *un* or *une* is followed by *de* or *des* and a substantive plural, with the relative pronoun *qui*, for the nominative of the succeeding verb, the verb must be put in the plural, if it refers to the substantive following *un* or *une*, and not to *un* or *une*. Any adjective or participle, which may also refer to the substantive, is likewise put in the plural : as,—*votre ami est un des hommes qui périrent dans la sédition*, your friend is one of the men who perished in the sedition. In this example, *périrent* is in the plural, because it refers to *the men who perished*, and not to *un*.

But if the verb should refer to *un* or *une*, and not to the substantive following, it should then be put in the singular, as well as any adjective or participle which may also refer to *un* or *une* : as, *c'est un de mes meilleurs amis qui m'a fait ce présent*, it is one of my best friends who made me that present. In this example, *a fait* is in the singular, because it refers to *un*, and not to *amis* ; a friend who has made me a present being the subject spoken of.

Should, on the contrary, the verb have neither *un* or *une*, nor the substantive following, for its nominative or subject, but some other substantive or pronoun (*un* or *une* with *des* and the substantive fol-

3/2

lowing being used with *que* for its direct object), in this case any adjective or participle coming after the verb should always be put in the plural, and agree with the substantive following *un* or *une*: as,—*c'est un des plus grands services que vous m'avez jamais rendus*, it is one of the greatest services that you ever did me.

9. When a substantive collective partitive, such as—*une infinité*, an infinity; *un nombre*, a number; *une foule*, a crowd; *une multitude*, a multitude; *une nuée*, a cloud, a swarm; *une sorte*, a sort; *la plupart*, the greater part; or an adverb of quantity, as—*beaucoup*, much, many; *peu*, little, few; *assez*, enough; *moins*, less; *plus*, more; *trop*, too much, too many; *tant*, so much, so many; *combien*, how much, how many, or also *que* used for *combien*; is followed by the preposition *de* and a substantive, as the nominative to a verb, the verb, as well as any adjective or participle which may follow, agrees with the substantive following either the collective or adverb of quantity, because it expresses the principal idea: as,—*une infinité de jeunes gens s'y sont noyés*, a great number of young men have been drowned there. *Une multitude d'habitans abandonnèrent leur pays*, a multitude of inhabitants abandoned their country. *La plupart du monde le croit*, the majority of people believe it. *Peu de gens négligent leurs intérêts*, few people neglect their interests. *Une vingtaine de soldats se sont révoltés*, about twenty soldiers have mutinied.

If however a noun collective partitive should be preceded by the definite article *le* or *la*, it would require the verb of which it would be the nominative, as likewise any adjective or participle referring to it, in the singular number: as,—*le nombre des habitans se monte à vingt mille*, the number of inhabitants amounts to twenty thousand.

La plupart, not being followed by any noun, but being used by itself before a verb as its nominative, requires that verb to be in the third person plural: as,—*la plupart furent d'avis que*., the majority were of opinion that.

A substantive collective general, that is, a noun representing the whole of the persons or things mentioned, as—*armée*, army; *forêt*, forest; *peuple*, people; *nation*, nation; whether it be followed by the preposition *de* and a substantive plural, or whether it be used by itself, always governs the verb of which it is the subject, as also any adjective or participle, which may refer to it in the singular number, because expressing a whole, independent of the terms which may follow, our mind must be fixed on it, as being the principal idea: as,—*l'armée des confédérés est très-nombreuse*, the army of the confederates is very numerous. *La forêt des Ardennes est au couchant du Luxembourg*, the forest of Ardennes is to the west of the Luxemburg. *Le peuple désire la paix*, the people wish for peace, &c.

Place of the subject or nominative of the verb.

The place of the subject or nominative of the verb, in interrogative sentences, having been explained under the article of interrogations, it

Infinitives, not having in themselves
the property of number cannot, when
used as nominatives communicate
the plural form to another verb: in
that case, the verb governed remains
in the sing preceded by the pronoun
ce. as *leanger, boire, et dormir,*
est leur unique occupation

R. 296

There are only seven verbs which, in this case, require the nominative after them, though the sentence is not interrogative. They are dire; répondre. réplicuer, répliquer, contester, poursuivre and s'écrier.

When the verb is preceded by some of these words, aussi, peut-être, encore, en vain, à peine, du moins ou moins, rarement, the nominative pronoun follows the verb.

Peut-être avez-vous raison; aussi est-il votre ami.

only remains here to observe that the subject or nominative of the verb, whether a noun or a pronoun, is placed before the verb in a simple tense, and before the auxiliary in a compound one, when the sentence is affirmative or negative: as,—*les armées Françaises ont été victorieuses*, the French armies have been victorious. *Nous n'irons pas vous voir*, we shall not go and see you.

When the words of somebody are quoted, the subject of the verb, if a personal pronoun, is however placed after the verb in a simple tense, and after the auxiliary in a compound one; whereas it is placed after the participle, if it should be a noun, although the sentence be not interrogative: as,—*je le veux bien, disait-il*, I consent to it, said he. *Tous les hommes sont fous, a dit Boileau, et ne diffèrent que du plus ou du moins*, all men are fools, said Boileau, and the only difference is in the degree.

The subject of the verb is also placed after the verb, in a sentence beginning either with one of the words—*ainsi, tel, peut-être*, or with an impersonal verb: as,—*ainsi s'est terminée la guerre*, thus the war ended. *Tel était alors l'état de ses affaires*, such was then the state of his affairs. *Peut-être vous pardonnera-t-il*, he may forgive you. *Il est arrivé d'heureux changemens*, happy changes have taken place.

The subject of the verb is likewise placed after the verb, when the subjunctive is either used to express a wish or when it is employed for *quand même* and a verb in the conditional: as,—*puissent tous les peuples aimer, chérir la paix!* may all people love and cherish peace! *Dussé-je y périr, j'irai*, were I to perish there, I will go.

Whenever the subject of the verb is followed by several words depending on it, it is likewise placed after the verb, for the sake of perspicuity: as,—*nous écoutons avec docilité les conseils que nous donnent ceux qui savent flatter nos passions*, we attentively listen to the advices of those who know how to flatter our passions.

Sometimes, however, this transposition of the subject of the verb is only the effect of taste to avoid an inharmonious cadence: it is also frequently used by orators when desirous of arousing the attention of their auditors by a bold and an unexpected turn: as,—*ignorez-vous que l'éternité approche!!* are you ignorant that eternity is near!!

“*Crois-tu que, toujours ferme aux bords du précipice,
Elle pourra marcher sans que le pied lui glisse!*”—BOILEAU, *Sat. X.*

ESSAY LIV.

Is it you who have (been) here this morning? No; it is my brother Victor, who is
être venu
returned from America.—It is not I who knocked you down.—Who has done
jeter par terre
that?—Who is coming away with me?—Champagne and Burgundy are very
s'en venir

agreeable to the taste; but I prefer Madeira.——The workman, the merchant,
gout

.3/4 the priest, the soldier, are all equally the members of the state.——A single

word, a sigh, a look betrays her.——The amiability, the *trahir* sweet temper *bonté pleine de douceur* of

that young lady delights and enchants me.——You and I have succeeded very
demoiselle ravir

well.——He and I will be partners.——You and she know the affair.——You, he
associé

and I, will dine together.——Is it he or I who will go?——He, she or I, will

come.——Monsieur or Mademoiselle will do it with pleasure.——I hope that either

of you will write to us.——Wealth, dignities, honours, every thing disappears
tout

at the hour* of* death.——Sports, pleasures, conversations, entertainments,
Divertissement spectacle

nothing was able to* divert. her from her profound melancholy.——
pouvoir distraire

Not only all her jewels and gold, but all her linen was stolen.——Does
pierreries voler

not (Apollo's son,) as well as the warrior, prefer a fine laurel to all the gold
le nourrisson du Pindo ainsi que guerrier

in Peru?——Both of* them* are desirous of going; but neither will go.——
du désirer y

Neither of* them* has learnt his lesson.——Neither love nor hatred can move
toucher

him.——Neither Mr. A** nor Mr. D** will be elected Lord Mayor for the city
de

of London.——Must I repeat to you again that neither of* them* is my mother?

——I swear that neither he nor I have ever been there.——Was not your brother
y

one of the unfortunate victims who were sacrificed to the vengeance of the

tyrant?——It was one of my greatest enemies who saved my life in that imminent
me imminent

danger.——If you could grant him that favour, it would be one of the greatest
accorder

services that you *sub. pret.* ever rendered him and his family.——A gang of thieves
bande

attacked me, two or three years ago, and robbed me of* (every thing) I had.——
tout ce que

A great many young men have enlisted themselves voluntarily, although
nombre de jeunes gens s'enrôler volontairement

the greatest part of them have (every inducement) to remain at
plupart entre sub. pr. les plus puissans motifs de rester chez

home.——Few people neglect their interests.——About twenty soldiers have
eux gens Une vingtaine se

mutinied.——What a crowd of men, women, and children followed you, when
révolter *foule*
you brought the news of the peace.——The number of victories which he has
gained is inconceivable.——When will the grand fleet set sail?——A plurality of
La *des*
wives is forbidden in this country.——The French armies have been a long
femmes *défendre dans*
time victorious.——They took leave of us yesterday.——I shall never consent
victorieux *prendre congé* *consentir*
(to it), said he, unless I accompany them.——Happy changes have taken
y *sub. pr.*
place, which have revived trade in our unfortunate city.——Thus ended a war
rétablir
which had been the cause of so many misfortunes.——Such was the state of his
affairs when he was imprisoned.——May all these children follow the
emprisonner *Puissent* *suivre*
principles of our holy religion!——Were I to perish there, I will go.——
saint *Dussé-je* *y*
We listen with pleasure to the advice of those who know how* to flatter our
passions.

LESSON LV.

Of the Object or Regimen of Verbs.

A verb may have for its object a substantive, a pronoun, or a verb.
1. A substantive: as,—*instruisez la jeunesse*, instruct youth. 2. A
pronoun: as,—*je me flatte*, I flatter myself. 3. A verb: as,—*il a fait*
bâtir cette maison, he has had this house built.

There are two sorts of objects of verbs:—the direct and the indirect
one.

1. The direct object is that on which the action of the verb immediately falls, without the help of any preposition expressed or understood; it answers to the questions *qui?* (whom?) with reference to persons; and *quoi?* (what?) with reference to things: as,—*je chéris ma sœur*, I cherish my sister; *je chéris qui? ma sœur*.—*Il aime l'étude*, he likes study; *il aime quoi? l'étude*.—*Ma sœur* and *l'étude* are therefore the direct objects of the two verbs *cherir* and *aimer*, because they are affected by them without the help of any preposition.

The indirect object is that which is affected by the verb with the help of a preposition expressed or understood; it answers to the questions —*à qui*, *de qui*, *pour qui*, *par qui*, &c. with reference to persons, and *à quoi*, *de quoi*, *pour quoi*, &c. with reference to things: as,—*il a parlé à son frère*, he has spoken to his brother; *il a parlé à qui?*

à son frère,—*à son frère* is consequently the indirect object of the verb *parler*; because it is affected by it with the help of the preposition *à*.

316 There are some active verbs which govern two objects, a direct and an indirect one; whereas others have only a direct one. *Donner*, for instance, in the following sentence, has two objects, and governs *à* before its indirect one: *il donnera vingt mille francs à sa fille en mariage*, he will give twenty thousand francs to his daughter in marriage. But *adorer*, to adore, only admits of a direct object: as,—*il adore son Éloïse*, he adores his Eloisa.

Passive verbs have only an indirect object, which is preceded by the preposition *de* or *par*: as,—*un enfant sage est aimé de tout le monde*, a prudent youth is loved by every body. *L'opération fut faite par M. L***, the operation was performed by Mr. L**.

Some few neuter verbs have not any object; such are—*languir*, to languish, and *dormir*, to sleep; but a great many others have an indirect one, which is preceded by the preposition *de* or *à*: as,—*nuire à quelqu'un*, to injure some one. *Médire de tout le monde*, to slander every body, &c.

Some reflective verbs have only a direct object, as—*s'enrhumer*, (to catch cold,) which governs no preposition, and has only the pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, *vous*, for its object: as,—*je me suis enrhumé*, I have caught cold; but others have two objects, a direct and an indirect one, as—*se repentir* (to repent), which, besides the pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, *vous*, which it has for its direct object, governs the preposition *de* before the succeeding noun: as,—*je me repens de ma faute*, I repent my fault.

The pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, *vous*, which are used before reflective verbs, are sometimes their direct and sometimes their indirect objects. In the following sentence, for instance, *je me lève de bonne heure*, I rise early, *me* is the direct object of the verb *lève*, because the sentence is equivalent to this:—*je lève moi de bonne heure*; but in this—*je me reproche mon imprudence*, *me* is the indirect object of the verb *reproche*, because the sentence answers to—*je reproche à moi mon imprudence*.

Unipersonal verbs may be followed by two indirect objects, to express different references. The preposition which must be used before each of them depends on the reference which it is intended to express: as,—*il importe à votre frère de veiller à l'éducation de son fils*, your brother must take care of the education of his son.

When de or par is to be used after passive verbs.

GENERAL RULE.—Whenever a passive verb expresses a sentiment, a passion, and in general an affection of the soul, it governs the preposition *de*, in French, whatever preposition may be used in English: as,—*l'honnête homme est estimé, même de ceux qui n'ont pas de probité*, an honest man is esteemed, even by those who have no probity.

When, on the contrary, a passive verb expresses an action to which the body or mind solely contributes, the preposition *par* must be used after it in French, whatever may be the preposition in English: as,—*la poudre à canon fut inventée par le cordelier Berthold Schwartz, vers la fin du XIII^e siècle, et les bombes par Gallen, évêque de Munster, vers le milieu du XVI^e siècle*, gunpowder was invented by Berthold Schwartz, a friar, towards the end of the 13th century, and bombs by Gallen, a bishop of Munster, about the middle of the 16th century. *Les Gaules furent conquises par César*, the Gauls were conquered by Cæsar.

Observe.—The preposition *par* should not be used before the word *Dieu*, in order to avoid the equivocation of the vulgar oath *pardieu*: we should therefore say—*vous serez puni de Dieu, si . . .* (and not *par Dieu*,) you will be punished by God, if . . . It will however be better to say—*le ciel, la terre, l'homme, la femme, ont été créés par Dieu*, than *de Dieu*, heaven, earth, man and woman, have been created by God.

Passive verbs are frequently used without any object: as,—*le temple de Jérusalem fut détruit, malgré les défenses de Titus*, the temple of Jerusalem was destroyed, notwithstanding Titus's prohibition.

Place of the object or regimen of verbs, when it is a noun or a verb.

This article will have no interference with the place of the pronouns, when a verb governs at the same time a noun and a pronoun: the pronoun will always keep the precedence, and retain the place which has been assigned for it.

GENERAL RULE.—Whenever a verb has only one object, and this is a noun or a verb, it is placed after the verb in a simple tense, and after the participle in a compound one: as,—I love Isabella, *j'aime Isabelle*. I have received a letter, *j'ai reçu une lettre*. He had that coat made in London, *il a fait faire cet habit à Londres*.

When a verb has two objects, a direct and an indirect one, and these are nouns or parts of a sentence, the shortest is generally placed the first after the verb, unless they be both of an equal length, in which case the direct should precede the indirect one: as,—take to Miss T** the letter which I have given you, *portez à mademoiselle T** la lettre que je vous ai donnée*. A wise man prefers science to riches, *l'homme sage préfère la science aux richesses*.

If there should be any equivocation to be feared, the indirect object should precede the direct one, although it may be as long and sometimes longer than the direct.

If the sentence should be interrogative, and the verb should have only a direct object, which being a noun preceded by an interrogative pronoun, as—*what book do you read? what lesson have you learnt?* both the noun and the interrogative pronoun should be placed before the verb in a simple tense, and before the auxiliary in a compound one: as,

—what book do you read? *quel livre lisez-vous?* What lesson have you learnt? *quelle leçon avez-vous apprise?*

But if the verb should have two objects, a direct and an indirect one, and the indirect should be a noun accompanied by an interrogative pronoun, whereas the direct one should be a personal pronoun, they should likewise go both before the verb, and the indirect one should come first: as,—what study do you apply yourself to? *à quelle étude vous appliquez-vous?*

Should both the objects be nouns, that which is accompanied by the interrogative pronoun should then be placed before the verb, and the other after it: as,—what book have you given to your sister? *quel livre avez-vous donné à votre sœur?*

When neither of the objects is accompanied by an interrogative pronoun, the one being a conjunctive personal pronoun, and the other a noun, as—*have they given her the letter?* the pronoun is placed before the verb, and the noun after it: as,—have they given her the letter? *lui a-t-on donné la lettre?*

In French, as in English, a noun may be governed by two verbs at once, the same as by two adjectives or two prepositions, provided these require the same object: as,—*on doit aimer, chérir ses parens*, one ought to love and cherish his parents.

Le bonheur le plus grand, le plus digne d'envie,
Est celui d'être utile et cher à sa patrie.

But the following sentence is incorrect in French—*si le roi de France avait su connaître et se servir de ses avantages*, if the king of France had known and used his advantages; because the verb *connaître* requires a direct object and *se servir* an indirect one. A different turn must therefore be given to the sentence, placing the substantive *avantages* after the first verb, and using the pronoun *en* before the second as its object: as,—*si le roi de France avait su connaître ses avantages et s'en servir*.

It is necessary to observe that a verb cannot have two direct objects. Whenever therefore a verb has two objects, one must be a direct one and the other an indirect one, because an action can only have an immediate object. Neither can a verb have two indirect objects to express the same reference, although it can have two indirect ones to express different references: as,—*dites-lui de venir*, tell him to come.

ESSAY LV.

What are you looking for? I am looking for my umbrella, which I have lost.
chercher

—He loves and cherishes his Eloisa, although she is * always scolding
sub. pr. gronder
him.—Let us forgive our enemies, if we wish that God should forgive
pardonner à sub. pr.

us.—We do not easily withstand the allurements of pleasure.—Fill that
résister aux attraites remplir

decanter with wine and that bottle with water.—Why do you interest yourself
carafe de s'intéresser

for a man who would injure you if he could?—Frequent good company and
à nuire pouvoir

avoid libertines.—By what steam-packet (did) you come? I came by
paquebot à vapeur êtes suis venu

the Star or the Venus.—We flatter ourselves that you (will meet with a very
Étoile serez accueilli de la ma-

kind reception.)—(Nothing but religion) can make us bear great misfor-
nière la plus honnête La religion seule supporter infor-

tunes with patience and resignation.—Although he is very fond of* his
tune aimer beaucoup

daughter, he will only give her fifteen thousand pounds in marriage.—A
qui est

modest and (well-informed) young lady is esteemed by every body.
dont l'esprit est bien cultivé

—(She has been languishing,) these ten months, in the most deplorable
qu'elle languit il y a

situation.—I never sleep in the day time.*—Let us slander nobody, and
état pendant médire de

above all let us wrong nobody.—They inquired after you
surtout faire tort à s'informer de l'état de votre santé

and all your family.—Do not rejoice (at the) misfortunes of others.—
de celui de des malheur

If you continue laughing at me, I shall make you repent it.—She will
à vous moquer de en

reproach herself with* her imprudence, when it (is too late.)—Does it not
se reprocher n'en sera plus temps

concern parents to take care of the education of their children?
importer à un père et à une mère de veiller à

—The French were dreaded by their neighbours, under Napoleon.—His plan
redouter

is approved by every body.—These rockets were invented by Sir William
fusée volante

Congreve.—Was not England subdued by William the Conqueror, in the
conquis Guillaume

year 1066?—You will be punished by God, if you commit crime and.
que sub. pr.

despise virtue.—Heaven, earth, animals, reptiles, and fishes, were created by
mépriser ont été

God.—The temple of Jerusalem was destroyed, notwithstanding Titus's
malgré

prohibition, and (not a stone was left.)—I accept with much pleasure your
défenses il n'en resta pierre sur pierre

kind invitation, and I shall be with you, to-morrow evening, at six o'clock.—
aimable chez

I hope you have not ordered any thing on purpose for me. No; we receive
se flatter ordonner exprès

you (as a) friend without ceremony.—Do not refuse me that favour.—Have you
en

not found again the spoons which you (missed) the other day? No; and I
retrouver cuiller qui manquaient

320 suspect the servant of having taken them?—Why did James blush when
soupçonner de Jacques rougir

you told him that you had been robbed? I do not know.—As soon as I have
voler

finished my letter, I will show you the pretty things I have.—They have
montrer

overwhelmed me with reproaches, although I do not deserve (them).—
accabler de. sub. pr. le

You ought to exclude that woman from your society.—Have you informed her
exclure faire part lui

of your design? Yes.—Do not give any thing to her brother.—They have
rien On

deprived my father of* all his property.—He punished the Catholic religion
ôter à bien

(for the attempts) of its ministers, and in less than two years he rendered
des attentats en

Sweden Lutheran.—We expect a letter from France every day.—She has sent
Luthérien

me a thousand pounds to invest in the Three per Cent.—Explain that
pour placer les pour Expliquer

difficulty to me, and I shall be satisfied.—Save us the trouble of going
content Épargner peine retourner

there again*.—Let him find me a situation.—Let us remit this affair to Provi-
y place

dence.—Do not reproach me so often with* (such a) trifle.—Do not give them
cette bagatelle

their allowance to-morrow.—What paper do you want? Post paper, if
ration désirer Du papier à lettres

you please.—What excuse has he brought?—What were you speaking to me
apporter

about?—Whom shall I trust, if you deceive me?—What promise have your
de se fier

sisters made to Mrs. L* * *?—To whom did he apply first?—Has Mr.
s'adresser d'abord

D* * taught you French?—Take this letter back* to Miss K* *, and tell her
enseigner Reporter

that I attribute her present state* of* misery to her extravagance.—Was it to
actuel

me, my dear, you wished to speak?—A wise man* sacrifices his pleasures
que Le

to his duty; but a fool neglects his duty for his pleasures.—Hypocrites endea-
le s'étu-

your to adorn (with the) appearance of virtue the most shameful and disgraceful
dier à parer des dehors pl. honteux décrié

vices.—When he had got from his wife all her jewels and money, he aban-
tirer pierreries



ESSAY LVI. (No. 1.)

Those who pretend to be learned are often very ignorant.—(Should you be *Quelque riche* ever so rich), if you do not know how * to * put bounds to your desires, you *que vous soyez* *borne* *désir* will never be satisfied.—I should have been to see her last week, if I had not been so unwell.—They ought to go out every day.—We must let others *indisposé* *devraient* *Il* think and act as they please.—I leave you to think whether she was afraid of *23* answering.—You may suppose that they did not omit profiting by such a *laisser* *d'* *si* *1* favourable opportunity.—She is so cruel and revengeful, that I dare not speak to *4* *2* *vindictif* her.—If ever I hear you calling him *names* again, I shall certainly *dire* *des injures une autre fois* dismiss you.—(It is necessary) to practise virtue.—Go and * ask leave to go *renvoyer* *Il faut* *pratiquer* *de* out.—They did not deign to answer me.—It is better to get little than to *gagner* *de ne ²faire* nothing.—Do you pretend always to insult me (in that manner?)—Eating *1* *de la sorte* and drinking too much are injurious to the health.—Talking too much *nuisible* (is exhausting).—Would it not be better to die than to linger as I do?—I have *épuise* *languir* just been paying a * visit to Lord D * *.—When will you come and * see me, that *faire* I *sub. pr.* may * show you my fine harp?—If it happen to rain, what will you *venir* do?—They were on the point of coming to blows.—Does he still aim at that employment? No ; he has bought a commission in the army.

2. A list of verbs which, being followed by another verb in the present of the infinitive mood in French, govern the preposition *à* before it, whether any preposition be used in English or not: as,—*I learn dancing, j'apprends à danser.*

to Accustom one's self,	<i>s'accoutumer.</i>	to Be repugnant,	<i>répugner.</i>
to Addict one's self,	<i>s'adonner.</i>	to Be resigned,	<i>être résigné.</i>
to Amuse one's self,	<i>s'amuser.</i>	to Condemn,	<i>condamner.</i>
to Apply one's self,	<i>s'appliquer.</i>	to Confine one's self,	<i>se borner.</i>
to Authorise,	<i>autoriser.</i>	to Consent,	<i>consentir.</i>
to Be,	<i>être.</i>	to Cost,	<i>coûter.</i>
to Be accustomed,	<i>être accoutumé.</i>	to Delight in,	<i>se plaire.</i>
to Be disposed,	<i>être disposé.</i>	to Devote one's self,	<i>se dévouer.</i>
to Be difficult,	<i>être difficile.</i>	to Determine on,	<i>se déterminer.</i>
to Be exposed,	<i>être exposé.</i>	to Displease,	<i>déplaire.</i>
to Be obstinate,	<i>s'obstiner.</i>	to Dispose one's self,	<i>se disposer.</i>
to Be obstinate in,	<i>s'opiniâtrer.</i>	to Employ,	<i>employer.</i>

338 PREPOSITIONS WHICH THE VERBS GOVERN.

to Employ one's self,	<i>s'employer.</i>	to Make up one's mind,	<i>se décider.</i>
to Encourage,	<i>encourager.</i>	to Persist in,	<i>persister.</i>
to Engage,	<i>engager.</i>	to Please,	<i>plaire.</i>
to Engage one's self,	<i>s'engager.</i>	to Prepare one's self,	<i>se préparer.</i>
to Excel,	<i>exceller.</i>	to Prompt,	<i>porter.</i>
to Excite,	<i>exciter.</i>	to Provoke,	<i>provoquer.</i>
to Exercise one's self,	<i>s'exercer.</i>	to Renounce,	<i>renoncer.</i>
to Exhort,	<i>exhorter.</i>	to Resign one's self,	<i>se résigner.</i>
to Expect,	<i>s'attendre.</i>	to Resolve,	<i>se résoudre.</i>
to Expose one's self,	<i>s'exposer.</i>	to Seek,	<i>chercher.</i>
to Get one's self ready,	<i>s'apprêter.</i>	to Serve,	<i>servir.</i>
to Give,	<i>donner.</i>	to Set one's self,	<i>se mettre.</i>
to Give one's self up,	<i>s'abandonner.</i>	to Show,	<i>montrer.</i>
to Have,	<i>avoir.</i>	to Spend,	<i>dépenser, and pas-</i>
to Help,	<i>aider.</i>		<i>ser, when speak-</i>
to Hesitate,	<i>hésiter.</i>		<i>ing of time.</i>
to Incite,	<i>inciter, pousser.</i>	to Stay, to remain,	<i>rester.</i>
to Induce,	<i>induire.</i>	to Stoop to,	<i>s'abaisser.</i>
324 to Invite,	<i>inviter.</i>	to Stop,	<i>s'arrêter.</i>
to Invite one's self,	<i>s'inviter.</i>	to Submit,	<i>se soumettre.</i>
to Keep,	<i>garder, à, pour.</i>	to Teach,	<i>enseigner.</i>
to Learn,	<i>apprendre.</i>	to Teach one's self,	<i>s'apprendre.</i>
to Like,	<i>aimer.</i>	to Train up,	<i>former.</i>
to Lose,	<i>perdre.</i>	to Use one's self,	<i>s'habituer.</i>
to Make one's study,	<i>s'étudier.</i>	to Venture,	<i>se hasarder.</i>

Observe.—1. If any of the above verbs should be followed by a noun for its indirect object, instead of a verb, it would likewise govern the preposition *à*, or, if the article should also be required, *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, or *aux*, before it: as,—I shall never consent to that marriage, *je ne consentirai jamais à ce mariage*. He has exposed himself to danger, *il s'est exposé au danger*.

But if a personal pronoun should be used as the indirect object of any of the above verbs, instead of a noun or a verb, in this case, the preposition *à* should or should not be expressed, according as the pronoun is to follow or precede the verb: as,—that will displease him, *cela lui déplaira*.

2. *Renoncer*, to renounce, being an active and neuter verb, requires no preposition before its object, when it is used actively, in the sense of *renier*, *désavouer*, to disown: as,—*je le renonce pour mon fils*, I disown him for my son; but when being employed in a neuter sense, it signifies *abandonner*, it governs *à*, or, if the article should also be required, *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, or *aux*, before its object: as,—*elle a renoncé au monde et à ses plaisirs*, she has given up the world and its pleasures.

Besides the verbs in the above list, there are a great many substantives and adjectives which, being followed by a verb in the present of the infinitive, govern also the preposition *à* before it: as,—I have no time to lose, *je n'ai point de temps à perdre*; are you ready to go out? *êtes-vous prêt à sortir?* but, as there are likewise a great many which govern *de*, as—I am very glad to see you, *je suis bien-aise de vous voir*; and as, moreover, the same will sometimes require *de* and sometimes *à*, I shall abstain from quoting any, as practice alone can teach when *de* or *à* is required under such circumstances.

2612.

ESSAY LVI. (No. 2.)

Is this house to be let or to be sold?—Your son spends all his time in play-
louer vendre à
 ing.—Are mathematics easy to learn?—She likes to relieve the poor, and
mathématiques facile à soulager
 comfort the afflicted.—These nuts are not good to eat.—They gave her to
consoler à On à
 understand that he wanted to* marry her, and they exhorted her to encourage
entendre vouloir épouser on encourager
 his visits.—She delights in speaking ill of every body.—Help me to carry that
se plaire dire du mal porter
 burden.—Every body is liable to mistake.—As soon as she saw me, she
sujet à se tromper
 began to cry.—Does he teach reading and writing?—They have been con-
se mettre pleurer
 demned to pay all the expenses.—I invited him once to dine with me, but he
frais
 did not come.—She is accustomed to sup early, and to go to bed every
se coucher
 evening at ten o'clock.—I suspect him of (being fond) of drinking and gaming.
d' aimer jouer
 —That book is very easy to understand, but difficult to translate into French.
traduire en
 —Do you learn riding? No; but I intend to begin very soon.—If you
monter à cheval de bientôt
 continue to visit her, you will soon please her.—I would not stoop to ask
s'abaisser
 his pardon.—We did not expect to set out before to-morrow.—She amuses
lui s'attendre
 herself with playing on the harp from morning to night.—He will never con-
de
 sent to her marriage before she is of age.—Are you ready to go out?—
sub. pr. majeur
 I have no time to lose.—We shall always be very happy to see you.

3. A list of verbs which govern the preposition *de* before the next infinitive in French, whether any preposition be used in English or not: as,—I am very happy to see you, *je suis bien-aise de vous voir.*

to Abstain,	<i>s'abstenir.</i>	to Be accused,	<i>être accusé.</i>
to Accuse,	<i>accuser.</i>	to Be afflicted,	<i>être affligé.</i>
to Accuse one's self,	<i>s'accuser.</i>	to Be afraid,	<i>avoir peur.</i>
to Advise,	<i>conseiller.</i>	to Be ashamed,	<i>avoir honte.</i>
to Affect,	<i>affecter.</i>	to Be astonished,	<i>être étonné.</i>
to Agree,	<i>convenir.</i>	to Be delighted,	<i>être charmé.</i>
to Apprehend,	<i>appréhender.</i>	to Be eager,	<i>s'empresser.</i>
to Ask as a favour,	<i>demander en</i>	to Be enchanted,	<i>être enchanté.</i>
	<i>grâce.</i>	to Be filled with indig-	<i>être indigné.</i>
to Avoid,	<i>éviter.</i>	nation,	

326

to Be frightened,	<i>être effrayé.</i>	to Get weary or tired,	<i>s'ennuyer.</i>
to Belong,	<i>appartenir.</i>	to Glory, to pride in,	<i>se glorifier.</i>
to Be offended at,	<i>s'offenser.</i>	to Grieve,	<i>s'affliger, se désoler.</i>
to Be overjoyed,	<i>être ravi.</i>	to Grow impatient,	<i>s'impatiser.</i>
to Be surprised,	<i>être surpris.</i>	to Grow tired,	<i>se lasser.</i>
to Bet, to lay,	<i>parier, gager.</i>	to Have the honour,	<i>avoir l'honneur.</i>
to Be tempted,	<i>être tenté.</i>	to Hinder,	<i>empêcher.</i>
to Bethink one's self,	<i>s'aviser.</i>	to Hope,	<i>espérer, se promettre.</i>
to Be used,	<i>avoir coutume.</i>	to Intend,	<i>avoir intention.</i>
to Blame,	<i>blâmer.</i>	to Intermeddle with,	<i>s'ingérer.</i>
to Blush,	<i>rougir.</i>	to Keep from, to keep one's self from,	<i>se garder.</i>
to Boast,	<i>se vanter.</i>	to Laugh at,	<i>se moquer, se rire.</i>
to Burn,	<i>brûler.</i>	to Make haste,	<i>se dépêcher, se hâter.</i>
to Cease,	<i>cesser.</i>	to Meddle with,	<i>se mêler.</i>
to Charge, to load, to desire,	<i>charger.</i>	to Meditate,	<i>méditer.</i>
to Chide,	<i>reprendre.</i>	to Mind, to care for,	<i>se soucier.</i>
to Command,	<i>commander.</i>	to Neglect,	<i>négliger.</i>
to Complain,	<i>se plaindre.</i>	to Obtain,	<i>obtenir.</i>
to Conjure,	<i>conjur.</i>	to Omit,	<i>omettre.</i>
to Convince,	<i>convaincre.</i>	to Order,	<i>ordonner.</i>
to Defend one's self,	<i>se défendre.</i>	to Pardon, to forgive,	<i>pardonner.</i>
to Defy,	<i>défier.</i>	to Permit, to allow,	<i>permettre.</i>
to Deprive,	<i>priver.</i>	to Persuade,	<i>persuader.</i>
to Deserve,	<i>mériter.</i>	to Pity,	<i>plaindre.</i>
to Desire,	<i>désirer, charger.</i>	to Press, to urge,	<i>presser.</i>
to Despair, to give up hope,	<i>désespérer.</i>	to Prescribe,	<i>prescrire.</i>
to Desist,	<i>se désister.</i>	to Pretend to,	<i>se piquer.</i>
to Deter,	<i>détourner.</i>	to Profess,	<i>professer.</i>
to Differ,	<i>différer.</i>	to Project,	<i>projeter.</i>
to Disaccustom one's self,	<i>se désaccoutumer.</i>	to Promise,	<i>promettre.</i>
to Disagree, to disown,	<i>disconvenir.</i>	to Propose,	<i>proposer, se proposer.</i>
to Discontinue,	<i>discontinuer.</i>	to Pray, to ask, to beg,	<i>prier.</i>
to Discourage,	<i>décourager.</i>	to Recollect,	<i>se rappeler.</i>
to Disdain,	<i>dédaigner.</i>	to Recommend,	<i>recommander.</i>
to Disgust,	<i>dégouter.</i>	to Refuse,	<i>refuser.</i>
to Dispense with,	<i>dispenser, se dispenser.</i>	to Regret,	<i>regretter.</i>
to Dissuade,	<i>dissuader.</i>	to Rejoice,	<i>se réjouir.</i>
to Disuse one's self,	<i>se déshabituer.</i>	to Remember,	<i>se souvenir.</i>
to Dread,	<i>redouter.</i>	to Repent,	<i>se repentir.</i>
to Endeavour,	<i>tâcher, s'efforcer.</i>	to Reprimand, to reprove,	<i>réprimander.</i>
to Enjoin,	<i>enjoindre.</i>	to Reproach,	<i>reprocher.</i>
to Entreat, to beseech,	<i>supplier.</i>	to Say, to tell,	<i>dire.</i>
to Excuse,	<i>excuser.</i>	to Scold,	<i>gronder.</i>
to Excuse one's self,	<i>s'excuser.</i>	to Shudder,	<i>frémir.</i>
to Exempt,	<i>exempter.</i>	to Speak, to talk,	<i>parler.</i>
to Fear,	<i>craindre.</i>	to Suggest,	<i>suggérer.</i>
to Feign,	<i>feindre.</i>	to Summon,	<i>sommer.</i>
to Finish,	<i>finir.</i>	to Suspect,	<i>soupçonner.</i>
to Flatter one's self,	<i>se flatter.</i>	to Swear,	<i>jurer.</i>
to Forbear,	<i>s'empêcher.</i>	to Take upon one's self,	<i>se charger.</i>
to Forbid, to defend,	<i>défendre.</i>		
to Fret, to vex one's self,	<i>se chagriner.</i>		

128

1. The first part of the document is a list of names and addresses. The names are written in a cursive hand, and the addresses are written in a more formal, printed hand. The list is organized into two columns, with names on the left and addresses on the right. The names are: John Smith, James Brown, William Jones, and Thomas White. The addresses are: 123 Main Street, New York, NY; 456 Elm Street, New York, NY; 789 Oak Street, New York, NY; and 1010 Pine Street, New York, NY.

The preposition à is used not il est
before croire, penser, presumer, sup-
poser, désirer, souhaiter, and others, used
instead of the passive voice employed
in Eng. The verb following must be in
the subj., except with the first form
which require the indic. When in the
affirmative

Sav. Dict 136

The impersonals, il conviend, il ap-
partient &c. il est, il était followed
by an adj: c'est, c'était followed by
a noun require de before as in the N. 126

to Tempt, to attempt,	<i>tenter.</i>	to Want,	<i>avoir besoin.</i>
to Thank,	<i>remercier.</i>	to Warn,	<i>avertir.</i>
to Think proper,	<i>juger à propos.</i>	to Wish,	<i>souhaiter, désirer.</i>
to Threaten,	<i>menacer.</i>	to Wonder,	<i>s'étonner.</i>
to Try,	<i>essayer, tâcher.</i>	to Write,	<i>écrire.</i>
to Undertake,	<i>entreprendre.</i>	to Write word,	<i>mander.</i>

Observe.—1. Whenever any of the above verbs is followed by a noun or a pronoun for its indirect object, instead of a verb, it likewise governs the preposition *de* before it in French, or, if the article should also be required, *du, de la, de l', or des*, whether any preposition be used in English or not: as,—are you in want of money? *avez-vous besoin d'argent?* I have pity on him, *j'ai pitié de lui.* She is afraid of thunder, *elle a peur du tonnerre.*

2. Any other reflective verb not mentioned in the preceding lists, and the greater part of verbs followed in English by the prepositions *of, from, by or with*, govern *de* in French, or, if the article should also be required, *du, de la, de l', or des*, before their object: as,—I am exhausted with fatigue, *je suis épuisé de fatigue.* She is despised by every body, *elle est méprisée de tout le monde.*

3. If any of the verbs—*avoir besoin*, to want; *avoir pitié*, to pity; *avoir peur*, to be afraid; *avoir honte*, to be ashamed; *jouir*, to enjoy; *rendre raison*, to give an account; *rougir*, to blush; *se mêler*, to meddle with; *se servir*, to use; *se plaindre*, to complain; or any other of those likewise quoted in the above list, which govern the preposition *de*, should be followed by the pronoun *it* or *them*, referring to some thing spoken of before, instead of being followed by a noun or a verb, the preposition *de* should then be left out in French, and the pronoun expressed by *en*, and placed before the verb in a simple tense, and before the auxiliary in a compound one: as,—he wants it, *il en a besoin.* They are afraid of it, *ils en ont peur.* He has meddled with it, *il s'en est mêlé.* I shall use it, *je m'en servirai.* We have complained of it, *nous nous en sommes plaints, &c.*

4. The preposition *for*, which is used in English after a substantive, before a verb in the present or past participle, is also usually expressed in French by *de*, with the verb in the present or preterit of the infinitive: as,—I am under great obligations to you *for having* spoken in my favour, *je vous ai de grandes obligations de vous être intéressé à moi.*

5. The preposition *de* is also used in French either after an adjective preceded by—*il est*, it is; *il semble*, it seems; *il paraît*, it appears; or after any unipersonal verb which can be changed into *il est* with an adjective, as—*il suffit*, it is sufficient; *il convient*, it becomes; *il importe*, it is of importance; which can be changed into—*il est suffisant, il est convenable, il est important*: as,—it is dangerous to trust every body, *il est dangereux de se fier à tout le monde.* It is enough to speak to him, *il suffit de lui parler, &c.*

6. *De* is likewise employed in French after *capable*, capable; *inca-*

pable, incapable; *digne*, worthy; *indigne*, unworthy; and after several other adjectives and substantives; but practice alone can teach in which cases: as,—she is capable of doing that, *elle est capable de faire cela*. He is incapable of going there, *il est incapable d'y aller*. They are unworthy of that reward, *ils sont indignes de cette récompense*. It is time to get up, *il est temps de se lever*.

7. When *appartenir* is employed impersonally, in the sense of *to become*, it requires *de* before the next infinitive in French; whereas it governs *à*, or, if the article should also be required, *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, or *aux*, before nouns referring to persons, whether it be used impersonally or not: as,—*il ne vous appartient pas de faire cela*, it does not belong to you to do that. *Il appartient aux parens de punir leurs enfans*, it is the duty of parents to punish their children. *Ce chapeau appartient à monsieur*, that hat belongs to the gentleman.

8. When *craindre*, to fear; *appréhender*, to apprehend; *désirer*, to desire; *disconvenir*, to disown; *éviter*, to avoid; *se flatter*, to flatter one's self; *nier*, to deny; *obtenir*, to obtain; *être ravi*, to be delighted; *regretter*, to regret; *souhaiter*, to wish for; are followed by another verb, they require it to be in the present of the infinitive in French, preceded by the preposition *de*, if it refers to their nominative, as in the following sentences:—he fears to do that, *il craint de faire cela*. I wish to go there, *je désire d'y aller*. He does not disown having said it, *il ne disconvient pas de l'avoir dit*. He avoids meeting me, *il évite de me rencontrer*. I flatter myself to be loved by you, *je me flatte d'être aimé de vous*. We are delighted to see you, *nous sommes ravis de vous voir*. He has got leave to go, *il a obtenu de partir*. I regret not to have been there, *je regrette de n'y avoir pas été*. He wishes to have an employment under you, *il souhaite d'avoir un emploi sous vous*, &c.; but if these verbs should be followed by a verb which would not refer to their nominative, they would then require it to be in the subjunctive mood, preceded by *que*, except *se flatter*, which, when used affirmatively, always governs the next verb in the indicative mood: as,—I fear his example will become contagious, *je crains que son exemple ne devienne contagieux*. I wish you to go, *je désire que vous partiez*. We do not deny that you have said it, *nous ne disconvions pas que vous ne l'ayez dit*. I am delighted that you have succeeded, *je suis ravi que vous ayez réussi*. I regret you have not been into the country, *je regrette que vous n'ayez pas été à la campagne*. I wish you may succeed in your undertaking, *je souhaite que vous réussissiez dans votre entreprise*. I flatter myself you will come, *je me flatte que vous viendrez*, &c.

9. When *défendre*, to forbid, to defend; *empêcher*, to hinder, to prevent; *ordonner*, to order; and *permettre*, to permit; have a noun or a pronoun for their direct or indirect object, they require the next verb to be put in the present of the infinitive in French, preceded by the preposition *de*: as,—*j'ai défendu à mon fils de lui parler*, I have for-

Il est bien, il est d'usage, il est
tous les jours. the prop. de before the
infin. as. il est temps de partir.
Tard requires the prop. pour, as
il est trop tard pour partir.
Sarr. Dict. 136.

bidden my son to speak to her. *Il me défendait de jouer*, he forbade me to play. *Je ne vous empêcherai pas d'y aller*, I shall not prevent you from going there. *Il me permit de la voir*, he allowed me to see her. *Ils vous ordonnèrent de le faire*, they ordered you to do it.

But if these verbs should have no noun or pronoun for their object, they would then require the next verb to be put in the subjunctive mood, with *que* before it: as,—*il a défendu qu'on jouât pendant l'office divin*, he has forbidden play during divine service. *Je n'empêcherai pas qu'ils viennent*, I shall not put any obstacle to their coming. *Votre père a ordonné que vous le fissiez*, your father has ordered that you should do it. *Il ne voulut pas permettre qu'on entrât*, he would not give leave to go in.

10. *Gager* and *parier*, to bet, to lay, are more elegantly used with the conjunction *que*, and the next verb in the indicative, than with *de* and the infinitive: as,—*je gage, je parie que je GAGNERAI cette partie*, I bet I shall get this game: which sentence is more elegant than—*je gage, je parie de gagner cette partie*.

11. *Prier*, to ask, to invite, to beg, requires *de* before the next infinitive, except before the four verbs—*déjeuner*, to breakfast; *dîner*, to dine; *manger*, to eat; and *souper*, to sup; when *de* is used to express a sudden and accidental invitation, and *à* to denote a formal one: as,—*je me suis trouvé chez lui, comme il allait se mettre à table, et il m'a prié de dîner*, I happened to be at his house, as he was going to sit down to dinner, and he asked me to dine with him. *Il m'a envoyé prier à dîner*, he sent to ask me to dinner.

12. *Protester*, to protest, is better used with *que* and the indicative, than with *de* and the infinitive: as,—*il lui protesta qu'il ne l'abandonnerait jamais*, he declared he would never abandon her; which is better than *il lui protesta de ne jamais l'abandonner*.

13. When *se rappeler*, to recollect, is followed by the verb *avoir* in the present of the infinitive, it requires the preposition *de* before it: as,—*je me rappelle de vous avoir vu*, I recollect having seen you. *Nous nous rappelons d'avoir trouvé une fois un nid de bouvreuil dans un rosier*, we recollect having once found a bullfinch's nest in a rose-bush; but when *se rappeler* is accompanied by a noun or a pronoun for its object, it does not require any preposition before it: as,—*je me rappelle cet événement*, I recollect that event, and not—*de cet événement*. *Je me le rappelle*, I recollect it, and not—*je m'en rappelle*.

ESSAY LVI. (No. 3.)

He does not disown having said it.—She has threatened me to tell my
disconvenir
 father (of it.)—I have the honour to drink your health.—She is ashamed of
le *à*
 having told a falsehood.—They charged me with having robbed them.—He
mensonge *accuser*

344 PREPOSITIONS WHICH THE VERBS GOVERN.

330

perceived the snare they laid for * him.—Since he has forbidden you to see
s'apercevoir du piège qu'on tendre *revoir*

her again *, you must forbear going (to her house.)—She asked me to accom-
cesser *chez elle* *prier*

pany her to the Opera.—Were you not very much surprised to hear a person so
well educated using such language?—Do not neglect writing to her.—You
tenir

(promised) to take me to Vauxhall; when will you fulfil your promise?
m'avez promis *conduire*

—Do you not blush at having so grossly insulted her?—I was summoned
grossièrement

to appear before the court, on the 10th of August.—Make haste to learn
comparaître devant *tribunal*

your lesson.—I am tired with repeating the same thing so often.—Who would
ennuyé *s* *4* *s* *1* *2*

not grow impatient with waiting so long?—She is always (meddling) with
long-temps *se mêle*

the concerns of (other people.)—Do you intend going to France this summer?
affaire *autrui*

—Are you afraid of thunder?—Do not delay any longer writing to them.—
différer davantage de

Tell him to come back in half an hour.—Endeavour to please every body.
dans *à*

—Never promise to do a thing when it is not in your power to do it.—We ad-
de

vised her to shelter herself from the rain, but she would not.—Her husband
se mettre à l'abri *le*

blamed her very much for having thus exposed herself to such an imminent
de

danger.—She did not cease representing to him that he was in the wrong.—I
did not hinder you from staying here.—We are exhausted with fatigue.—We

owe you many obligations for having interested yourself (in our favour.)—I am
avoir *bien* *s'intéresser* *à nous*

very much flattered by the honour you do me.—He is unworthy of that re-
de

ward.—It does not belong to you to dictate to me what I am to say.—Whose
ce que *devoir*

watch is this? My brother's.—You (don't know how afraid she is) of
ne sauriez croire combien elle craint

meeting him.—We shall always be delighted to serve you when an oppor-
rencontrer *l'occa-*

tunity offers.—I shall regret all my life not to have heard that celebrated
sion *se présentera*

preacher.—That young man wishes very much to get an employment under
prédicateur *obtenir*

you.—I wish you to* go now, for fear it should rain.—
que *sub. pr. partir* *sub. pr.*

She has desired me to tell you that she is very glad that you have suc-
charger *sub. pret.*
 ceeded.—I wish she may get well again* soon.—Your doctor has or-
sub. pr. *se rétablir*
 dered that you should not drink any wine.—I (will lay) (you any
sub. pr. *parie* *tout ce que*
 wager) that he (wins) the game.—He intended to invite me to din-
vous voudrez *gagnera* *partie* *avoir intention*
 ner, but, having seen me pass by*, as he was going to* (sit down) to break-
se mettre
 fast, he called me, and asked me to breakfast with him.—You ought not to
 have declared to her that you would never abandon her.—Do you not recollect
protester
 having once found with me a nest of (young bullfinches?) Yes, I recollect
bouvreuil
 that circumstance very well; and although we were very young then,
sub. imp.
 I remember I found you beautiful.
se souvenir *charmant f.*

4. A list of verbs which, according to the acceptation in which they are taken, require sometimes *de* and sometimes *à* before the next infinitive in French.

to Begin,	<i>commencer.</i>	to Fail, to omit, to want,	<i>manquer.</i>
to Be,	<i>être.</i>	to Forget,	<i>oublier.</i>
to Compel, to force, to	<i>forcer, con-</i>	to Oblige,	<i>obliger.</i>
constrain,	<i>traindre.</i>	to Occupy one's self,	<i>s'occuper.</i>
to Continue,	<i>continuer.</i>	to Resolve, to induce,	<i>résoudre.</i>
to Decide,	<i>décider, se</i>	to Suffice, to be sufficient,	<i>suffire.</i>
	<i>décider.</i>	to Try, to endeavour,	<i>tâcher.</i>
to Delay, to long,	<i>tarder.</i>	to Think, to think of,	<i>penser, songer.</i>

Observe.—1. *Commencer*, to begin, governs *à* before the next infinitive in French, to denote an action susceptible of improvement, and *de* to express a complete action which either had or will have some duration: thus, speaking of a child who begins to speak and walk, we say—*il commence à parler et à marcher*, he begins to speak and walk; because he will improve in both; but we say, when alluding to an orator—*il commença de parler à quatre heures, et ne finit qu'à six*, he began to speak at four o'clock, and only finished at six; because we merely intend to express a duration of time.

2. *Continuer*, to continue, requires *à* before the next infinitive, to denote a thing done with interruption, and *de*, to express a thing performed without interruption: as,—*M^{lle} O* * continue à me voir et à m'écrire*, Miss O* * continues to see me and write to me; in this sentence, *à* is used, because it is meant to express that Miss O* * does not continually see me and write to me, but she only does so by intervals; whereas in this—*la rivière continue de couler*, the river continues

flowing, *de* is employed, because it is implied that the river does not discontinue its course.

3. When *contraindre*, to constrain, to compel, is used actively, it requires indifferently *de* or *à* before the next infinitive: as,—*contraindez-le à ou de faire cela*, compel him to do that; but when it is employed in a passive sense, it only governs *de*: as,—*il fut contraint de se retirer*, he was compelled to retire.

4. When *décider* is taken in an active sense, it requires sometimes *de* and sometimes *à* before the next infinitive: as,—*il a décidé de refuser toute entrée dans ses ports aux Anglais*, he has resolved to refuse the English all entrance into his ports. *On l'a décidé à partir*, they have determined him to go. But when *décider* is used in a reflective or passive sense, it governs *à* before the next infinitive: as,—*il s'est décidé à se marier*, he has determined to marry. *Il est décidé à mourir*, he is resigned to die.

5. *Être*, to be, preceded by *ce* or *c'* in its different tenses, governs *à* before the next infinitive, to denote a thing or action which either is or was to be done by an agent represented by the pronoun or pronouns following *c'est*, *c'était*, *ce fut*, &c. and *de* when that agent is or was not to act, but to remain in a passive state: as,—*c'est à vous à parler*, it is for you to speak. *C'était à nous à décider*, it was for us to decide. *C'est à moi d'obéir, puisque vous commandez*, it is mine to obey, since you command.

6. *Manquer*, to fail, used in the sense of not doing or fulfilling what ought to be done, requires *à* before the next infinitive: as,—*il manque toujours à remplir ses devoirs*, he always fails to fulfil his duty; but when *manquer* is employed in the sense of omitting or forgetting to do any thing, or also when it is used to express want, it governs *de* before the next infinitive or noun: as,—*ne manquez pas de vous y trouver*, do not fail being there. *Les malheureux manquent de tout*, poor people stand in need of every thing.

Manquer, used in the sense of *être sur le point de*, to be very near, requires also *de* before the next infinitive: as,—*j'ai manqué de tomber*, I have been very near falling.

7. *Obliger*, to oblige, used actively in the sense of binding by an obligation to do or say any thing, usually requires *à* before the next infinitive: as,—*la loi naturelle et la loi divine nous obligent à honorer nos parents*, both the law of nature and the divine law oblige us to honour our parents; but when *obliger* is used in the sense of rendering a service or doing a pleasure, or also when it is employed in a passive sense, it governs *de*: as,—*vous m'obligerez infiniment de lui parler pour moi*, you will infinitely oblige me by speaking to him for me. *Je suis obligé de vous quitter*, I am obliged to leave you.

8. *Oublier*, to forget, requires the preposition *à* before the next infinitive, when we wish to express that for want of practice we have forgotten something which we knew, and *de* to denote that we have

omitted to say or do a thing which we intended : as,—*elle a oublié à lire et à danser*, she has forgotten reading and dancing ; in this sentence *à* is used before *lire* and *danser*, because it is for want of practice that she has forgotten ; but in the following—*j'ai oublié de vous dire que . . .*, I have forgotten to tell you that . . . ; *de* is employed before *dire*, because it is merely meant to express that something has escaped one's memory.

9. *Penser*, to think, to think of, requires *à* before its object, when that object is a noun or a personal pronoun, referring to persons, as in the next sentences : he thinks of that young lady, *il pense à cette demoiselle*. I always think of you, *je pense toujours à vous*.

If, on the contrary, the object of *to think* be the pronoun *it* or *them*, referring to things, *it* or *them* must be expressed in French by *y*, when, by *to think* it is implied that one is either considering, has considered, or will consider the thing mentioned. *Y* is placed before the verb, in a simple tense, and before the auxiliary in a compound one : as,—I will think of it, *j'y penserai*.

But should any tense of the verb *to think* (*penser*) be used to ask the opinion of some one about any thing, *it* or *them* must then be construed into French by *en*, and placed, as above, before the verb or its auxiliary : as,—what do you think of it? *qu'en pensez-vous?*

10. *Résoudre*, to resolve, used in an active or passive sense, requires the preposition *de* before the next infinitive : as,—*j'ai résolu de partir tout-à-l'heure*, I have resolved to set out immediately. *Êtes-vous résolu d'y aller?* are you resolved to go there? but when *résoudre* is used in a reflective way, it requires *à* before the next infinitive : as,—*je me suis résolu à demander une retraite*, I have resolved to ask for a retreat.

11. When *s'occuper*, to occupy one's self, and *occuper*, to occupy, imply an idea of labour, they require the preposition *à*, or, if the article should also be required, *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, or *aux*, before the next infinitive or noun : as,—*je m'occupe à lire*, I occupy myself with reading. *Elle s'occupe à ses études*, she occupies herself with her studies, &c.

But if *s'occuper* merely expresses that the attention either is or was taken up with some thing, it then governs *de*, or, if the article be also required, *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, or *des*, before the next word : as,—*le plaisir de l'ame consiste à agir et à s'occuper de quelque objet qui plaise*, the pleasure of the soul consists in action, and in occupying itself with some pleasing object. *Je m'occupais du plaisir que j'aurai tantôt*, I was taken up with the pleasure I shall have by and by.

12. *Suffire*, to suffice, governs *à*, or, if the article be also required, *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, or *aux*, before the next word, and sometimes also *pour* : as,—*cela suffira à monsieur*, that will be sufficient for the gentleman. *Peu de bien suffit au sage*, few things are sufficient for a wise man. *La vie suffit à peine pour aucun art*, life is hardly sufficient for any art.

348 PREPOSITIONS WHICH THE VERBS GOVERN.

Suffire, coming before a verb in the present of the infinitive, governs *pour* before it: as,—*les richesses ne suffisent pas pour être heureux*, riches are not sufficient for happiness. But *suffire*, being employed impersonally, requires *de* before the next infinitive: *il suffit de lui parler pour . . .*, it is enough to speak to him for. . . .

13. When *tâcher* signifies *to aim at*, it governs the preposition *à* before the next infinitive: as,—he aims at doing me a prejudice, *il tâche à me nuire*; but when *tâcher* means *to endeavour, to try*, it requires *de* before the next infinitive: as,—let us endeavour to overtake him, *tâchons de le rejoindre*.

14. *Tarder*, meaning *to delay*, generally requires *à* before the next infinitive in French: as,—*il tarde bien à venir*, he is very long coming; but *tarder*, used impersonally, in the sense of *to long*, governs *de* before the next infinitive: as,—*il me tarde de la voir*, I long to see her.

ESSAY LVI. (No. 4.)

My little boy begins to speak and walk.—If you continue to visit her, *faire visite*
you will soon please her.—She continues writing to me; and I continue loving
her.—I was compelled to withdraw.—Compel him to pay you.—It is for you to
se retirer
command, and for us to obey.—Is it not for you to protect us?—I do not think
that, on the whole, I *sub. pret.* have missed more than once coming, although I
d'
have often missed learning my lessons.—Do not fail being there.
sub. pret. *vous trouvez² l'y¹*
—She is in want of every thing.—I have been very near falling, on entering
en
(your house).—The friendship I* feel* for you obliges me to give you some
chez vous Mon amitié un
salutary advice.—The same as by the natural and divine laws* we
avis De même que loi la loi
are obliged to love our father and mother, so, by the civil law we are bound
ainsi obligé
to respect princes.—You will infinitely oblige us by taking those goods
se charger de marchandise
upon* yourself*, in case we are obliged to go (out of town.)—I had
en cas que sub. pr. à la campagne
forgotten to tell you that Miss A** is married.—That poor young man has been
ill so long, that he has not only forgotten dancing, but even reading and
malade² l'¹ s'
writing.—Is it not better to* occupy one's self with learning music than to do
apprendre de
nothing?—Whilst he was engaged in tormenting me, from morning to night, I
s'occuper

was occupying myself in the success of his undertaking.—Does not the pleasure of the soul consist in acting and occupying itself with some ^{pleasing} object?—I am or was wholly absorbed in the obstacles which they will have to ^{qui sub. pr.} surmount.—That will suffice for Mr. H* *.—That is not sufficient for me.—It is enough to converse with him a* few minutes, to be convinced that the longest life of man is hardly sufficient for any art.—Few things are sufficient to render you happy.—I have finally resolved to prosecute them.—Try to discover if he still aims at doing me a prejudice.—Let us try to overtake them.—I long to see your sister; she (is very long) coming. ^{rejoindre}
tarde bien

5. A list of active verbs which, being followed by a substantive instead of a verb for their direct object, require no preposition before it in French, whether any preposition be used in English or not: as,—I am looking for my stick, *je cherche mon bâton*, and not —pour mon bâton.

to Admire,	<i>admirer.</i>	to Hoot at,	<i>huer.</i>
to Applaud,	<i>applaudir.</i>	to Infringe,	<i>enfreindre.</i>
to Approve,	<i>approuver.</i>	to Judge,	<i>juger.</i>
to Believe,	<i>croire.</i>	to Know,	<i>connaître, savoir.</i>
to Brush,	<i>brosser.</i>	to Like, to love,	<i>aimer.</i>
to Call one names,	<i>injurier.</i>	to Like better,	<i>aimer mieux.</i>
to Choose,	<i>choisir.</i>	to Leer,	<i>lorgner.</i>
to Criticise,	<i>critiquer.</i>	to Look at,	<i>regarder.</i>
to Comment,	<i>paraphraser.</i>	to Look for,	<i>chercher.</i>
to Conclude,	<i>conclure.</i>	to Lose,	<i>perdre.</i>
to Deny,	<i>nier.</i>	to Perfect, to finish,	<i>achever.</i>
to Detest,	<i>détester.</i>	to Pull down,	<i>abattre.</i>
to Dust, to beat or	<i>époudrer, épous-</i>	to Root out,	<i>déraciner.</i>
wipe the dust off,	<i>seter.</i>	to See,	<i>voir.</i>
to Examine,	<i>examiner.</i>	to Soften, to move,	<i>fléchir.</i>
to Fear,	<i>craindre.</i>	to Tear,	<i>déchirer.</i>
to Hate,	<i>hair.</i>	to Will, to be willing,	<i>vouloir.</i>

Should the above verbs have a pronoun instead of a noun for their direct object, they would not require any preposition before it, and it should be placed before the verb or the auxiliary, as it is pointed out under the article of personal pronouns.

Any other active verb, not included in the above list, will likewise govern its direct object without any preposition before it.

Note.—When *applaudir*, to applaud, is used in a neuter sense, it governs *à* before its object: as,—he applauds every thing she says, *il applaudit à tout ce qu'elle dit.*

350 PREPOSITIONS WHICH THE VERBS GOVERN.

6. *A list of active verbs which, admitting of two objects, require no preposition before their direct one, whereas they govern de, or, if the article should also be required, du, de la, de l', or des, before their indirect one, whether it be a noun or a verb: as,—fill that decanter with wine, remplissez cette carafe de vin.*

to Absolve,	<i>absoudre.</i>	to Expel,	<i>chasser, expulser.</i>
to Accept,	<i>accepter.</i>	to Fill,	<i>emplir, remplir.</i>
to Accuse,	<i>accuser.</i>	to Free,	<i>délivrer.</i>
to Banish,	<i>bannir.</i>	to Implore,	<i>implorer.</i>
to Blame,	<i>blâmer.</i>	to Inform,	<i>informer.</i>
to Convince,	<i>convaincre.</i>	to Load,	<i>charger, combler.</i>
to Correct,	<i>corriger.</i>	to Obtain,	<i>obtenir.</i>
to Deprive,	<i>priver.</i>	to Overwhelm,	<i>accabler.</i>
to Deter, to divert,	<i>détourner.</i>	to Praise,	<i>louer.</i>
to Disgust,	<i>dégoûter.</i>	to Receive,	<i>recevoir.</i>
to Dissuade,	<i>dissuader.</i>	to Reprove,	<i>reprendre.</i>
to Drive away, to expel,	<i>chasser.</i>	to Suspect,	<i>soupçonner.</i>
to Drive out, to turn out,	<i>débusquer.</i>	to Thank,	<i>remercier.</i>
to Exclude,	<i>exclure.</i>	to Threaten,	<i>menacer.</i>
to Expect,	<i>attendre.</i>	to Warn, to inform,	<i>avertir, informer.</i>

356 If any of the above verbs should be used with a direct object only, *de* would not then be required: as,—I expect somebody this evening, *j'attends quelqu'un ce soir.*

7. *A list of active verbs which, when, like those in the preceding list, admitting of two objects, require no preposition before their direct one, whereas they govern à before their indirect one, whatever may be the preposition used in English: as,—present my compliments to your mamma, présentez mes complimens à votre maman.*

to Address, to direct,	<i>adresser.</i>	to Grant,	<i>accorder.</i>
to Announce,	<i>annoncer.</i>	to Inspire,	<i>inspirer.</i>
to Ask,	<i>demander.</i>	to Intrust,	<i>confier.</i>
to Answer,	<i>répondre.</i>	to Lend,	<i>prêter.</i>
to Attribute,	<i>attribuer.</i>	to Owe,	<i>devoir.</i>
to Bring,	<i>apporter.</i>	to Own,	<i>avouer.</i>
to Bring back,	<i>rapporter.</i>	to Order,	<i>ordonner.</i>
to Carry, to take,	<i>porter.</i>	to Permit, to allow,	<i>permettre.</i>
to Carry back,	<i>reporter.</i>	to Prefer,	<i>préférer.</i>
to Communicate,	<i>communiquer.</i>	to Prescribe,	<i>prescrire.</i>
to Condemn,	<i>condamner.</i>	to Present with,	<i>présenter.</i>
to Confess,	<i>confesser.</i>	to Procure,	<i>procurer.</i>
to Declare,	<i>déclarer.</i>	to Promise,	<i>promettre.</i>
to Dedicate,	<i>dédier.</i>	to Propose,	<i>proposer.</i>
to Denounce, to inform against,	<i>dénoncer.</i>	to Recommend,	<i>recommander.</i>
to Do, to make,	<i>faire.</i>	to Reduce,	<i>réduire.</i>
to Explain,	<i>expliquer.</i>	to Refuse,	<i>refuser.</i>
to Forbid, to defend,	<i>défendre.</i>	to Relate,	<i>raconter.</i>
to Foretell,	<i>prédire.</i>	to Repeat,	<i>répéter.</i>
to Forgive, to pardon,	<i>pardonner.</i>	to Reproach,	<i>reprocher.</i>
to Give,	<i>donner.</i>	to Return,	<i>rendre.</i>
		to Reveal,	<i>révéler.</i>

to Save,	<i>épargner.</i>	to Suggest,	<i>suggérer.</i>
to Say, to tell,	<i>dire.</i>	to Take,	<i>prendre.</i>
to Sell,	<i>vendre.</i>	to Take away,	<i>ôter.</i>
to Send,	<i>envoyer.</i>	to Teach,	<i>enseigner.</i>
to Send back,	<i>renvoyer.</i>	to Write,	<i>écrire.</i>
to Serve, to help,	<i>servir.</i>	to Write word,	<i>mander.</i>
to Show,	<i>montrer.</i>		

Whenever the above verbs are used with a direct object only, *à* is not then required: as,—she sells stockings, *elle vend des bas*.

Observe.—*Ôter*, used in the sense of taking any thing away from the place where it is, governs *de*, or, if the article should also be required, *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, or *des*, before its indirect object: as,—*ôtez la chaise du milieu de la chambre*, take the chair away from the middle of the room.

8. *A list of verbs which, only admitting of an indirect object, govern the preposition à, or, if the article should also be required, au, à la, à l', or aux, before it, when it is a noun; but when it is a personal pronoun, the preposition à is or is not expressed, according as the pronoun is to follow or precede the verb.*

to Aim at,	<i>viser.</i>	to Obviate,	<i>obvier.</i>
to Apply to,	<i>s'adresser.</i>	to Oppose,	<i>s'opposer.</i>
to Aspire,	<i>aspirer.</i>	to Play,	<i>jouer.</i>
to Condescend, to comply,	<i>condescendre.</i>	to Please,	<i>plaire.</i>
to Contravene, to act contrary,	<i>contrevenir.</i>	to Provide for,	<i>pourvoir.</i>
to Contribute,	<i>contribuer.</i>	to Relieve, to assist,	<i>subvenir.</i>
to Displease,	<i>déplaire.</i>	to Remedy,	<i>remédier.</i>
to Disobey,	<i>désobéir.</i>	to Resemble,	<i>ressembler.</i>
to End, to border upon,	<i>aboutir.</i>	to Resist,	<i>résister.</i>
to Give one's self up,	<i>se livrer.</i>	to Subject one's self,	<i>s'assujettir.</i>
to Hurt, to injure,	<i>nuire.</i>	to Succeed,	<i>succéder.</i>
to Insult,	<i>insulter.</i>	to Suit,	<i>convenir.</i>
to Interest one's self,	<i>s'intéresser.</i>	to Surrender, to repair to,	<i>se rendre.</i>
to Inure one's self,	<i>s'endurcir.</i>	to Survive,	<i>survivre.</i>
to Obey,	<i>obéir.</i>	to Trust,	<i>se fier.</i>

Observe.—When the verb *jouer*, to play, is used to express that some one plays on a musical instrument, it governs the preposition *de*, or, if the article should also be required, *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, or *des*, before the name of the instrument mentioned: as,—my sister plays on the piano and guitar, *ma sœur joue du piano et de la guitare*; but when *jouer* is employed in the sense of playing at a game, it then requires *à*, or, if the article should also be necessary, *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, or *aux*, before its object: as,—he likes to play at cards, *il aime à jouer aux cartes*.

When *plaire*, to please, is used impersonally, it requires *de* before the next infinitive: as,—*il me plaît d'aller à la campagne*, it pleases me to go into the country.

352 PREPOSITIONS WHICH THE VERBS GOVERN.

When *insulter*, to insult, and *survivre*, to outlive, are used actively, they require no preposition before their object: as,—*il insulte violement, dans ses lettres, l'académie*, he violently insults, in his letters, the academy. *Il a survécu ses enfans*, he has outlived his children.

9. A list of verbs which, like those in the preceding list, only admitting of an indirect object, govern the preposition *de*, or, if the article should also be required, *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, or *des*, before it, when it is a noun; but, when it is a personal pronoun, *de* is or is not expressed, according as the pronoun is to follow or precede the verb.

338 to Be edified,	<i>être édifié.</i>	to Inherit,	<i>hériter.</i>
to Be filled with indignation,	<i>s'indigner.</i>	to Inquire after or about,	<i>s'informer.</i>
to Be greedy of,	<i>être affamé.</i>	to Laugh at,	<i>se moquer, se rire.</i>
to Be satiated,	<i>être rassasié.</i>	to Mistrust,	<i>se méfier.</i>
to Be satisfied,	<i>être satisfait, être content.</i>	to Perceive,	<i>s'apercevoir.</i>
to Be scandalized,	<i>se scandaliser.</i>	to Pity,	<i>avoir pitié.</i>
to Be startled, to scare,	<i>s'effrayer.</i>	to Profit,	<i>profiter.</i>
to Be surprised,	<i>être surpris.</i>	to Put up with, to do with,	<i>s'accommoder.</i>
to Console one's self,	<i>se consoler.</i>	to Resign,	<i>se démettre.</i>
to Discharge,	<i>s'acquitter.</i>	to Retract, to recant,	<i>se rétracter, se dédire.</i>
to Distrust,	<i>se défier.</i>	to Seize, to invade,	<i>s'emparer.</i>
to Draw near,	<i>s'approcher.</i>	to Seize upon, to lay hold of,	<i>se saisir.</i>
to Enjoy,	<i>jouir.</i>	to Slander,	<i>médire.</i>
to Fall in love with,	<i>s'amouracher, devenir amoureux.</i>	to Thirst after,	<i>être altéré.</i>
to Feel uneasy,	<i>s'inquiéter.</i>	to Use,	<i>se servir.</i>
to Feel or grow proud,	<i>s'enorgueillir.</i>		
to Grieve one's self,	<i>s'attrister.</i>		

ESSAY LVI.—(No. 5.)

If you transgress the laws of your country, you will be brought before the
pays *citer*

tribunals.—Do you approve of his proceeding?—She criticises every body.—
procédé

(I am very fond of) music, in* the evening.—They have informed against* you.
J'aime beaucoup *On* *dénoncer*

—Do not look at those ladies so much.—Have they expelled him from their
regarder

house?—(I have been dissuaded) from going into partnership with him.—I im-
On m'a dissuadé *entrer en société*

plored her assistance, without being able to* obtain it. —They have declared
pouvoir

war against us, without any legitimate reason —You owe me some money.—

Mr. D** has dedicated to me a beautiful poem on the fatal effects of atheism.—
funeste

Allow me to* present you with this diamond, as a tribute of grati-
Agréer que je *sub. pr.* *recon-*

tude for your past kindness to me.—Did Mary take the chairs away
naissance bontés f. pl.
from the bed-room?—I hope you will not reveal this secret to any body.

—Bring me back the book which I have lent you.—He applauds (every thing)
à tout ce

she says, and complies with all her desires.—I do not know how to*
qu' condescendre
obviate that difficulty.—She has such a good constitution, that she will outlive

all her children.—Let us not insult the misery of others.—Obey your superiors.

—That street ends at St. Paul's.—He resembles a (blind man), who maintains
aveugle soutenir
that white is black.—Remedy these evils.—Was not Gustavus Vasa reduced to
réduit

the necessity of working in the copper-mines to live and hide himself?—
travailler cuivre pour pour se cacher

English Ladies are very fond of playing at cards.—He was playing on
aimer beaucoup à

the violin.—Nobody was much edified by his sermon.—They are at last
très de

satiated with blood and slaughter.—I am not at all surprised (at it).—Who
rassasié de carnage en

will inherit his immense property?—Thank God! she enjoys good health.
biens m. pl. Dieu merci une

—They profit by the misfortunes of others.—You will perceive your error,
autrui s'apercevoir

when (it is too late).—We must do with these two rooms for a
il n'en sera plus temps s'accommoder

little time.—Do not go so near the fire, for fear you should burn your-
s'approcher du se brû-

self.—They were soon consoled for the loss of their mother.—Foreign armies
ler se consoler

have invaded our territory.—We are very uneasy at not (hearing from her).—
territoire inquiet recevoir de ses nouvelles

She laid hold of my sword, and (would have run him through with it), had
se saisir épée la lui aurait passée au travers du corps si

I not kept her back*.
retenir

10. Cases in which the preposition pour or afin de is used before a verb in the present of the infinitive mood in French.

GENERAL RULE.—The preposition *pour* is used before a verb in the present of the infinitive mood in French, to denote the end, the design or the cause for which a thing is done, in the sense of—in order to, with a design to, for to, or to used in the same sense: as,—I shall do it in order not to displease you, *je le ferai pour ne pas vous déplaire*.

354 PREPOSITIONS WHICH THE VERBS GOVERN.

He did it to tease her, *il le fit pour la taquiner*, because we can say—he did it in order to tease her.

For, used in English before a verb in the present or past participle, is also construed into French by *pour*, with the verb in the present of the infinitive, when the thing mentioned has reference to a present or future time; but, when it refers to a past time, the verb must be put in the preterit of the infinitive: as,—how much do you ask for going there? *combien demandez-vous pour y aller?* in this example, *aller* is in the present of the infinitive, because the sentence implies futurity; but in the next—he was hanged for having robbed his master, *il fut pendu pour avoir volé son maître*; *avoir volé* is in the preterit of the infinitive, because a past thing is spoken of.

For, used before the word *fun*, and *in* before *jest*, are also expressed in French by *pour*, and *fun* and *jest* by *badiner*: as,—he did it for fun, *il le fit pour badiner*.

Observe.—The above expressions—in order to, with a design to, for to, and to used in the same sense, as, likewise, in order that, to the end that, or simply that, are also frequently expressed in French by *afin de*, with the next verb in the present of the infinitive, or *afin que*, with the verb in the subjunctive: as,—they have been to Paris, in order that they may be able to say that they have seen it, *ils ont été à Paris afin de pouvoir dire qu'ils l'ont vu*. I shall give him a good seat, that he may see the king well, *je lui donnerai une bonne place, afin qu'il puisse bien voir le roi*.

Afin de is generally to be preferred to *afin que*, when the verb following in order to, with a design to, or any other of the above expressions, has the same nominative as the verb preceding them. This is the case in the first of the two examples just quoted,—“they have been to Paris in order that they may be able to say that they have seen it;” the nominative of *may be able* is THEY, which is also that of *have been*; but, if the nominative of the second verb should not be the same person as that of the first, as in the second example likewise before quoted, viz. “I shall give him a good seat, that he may see the king well,” in which the nominative of *may see the king* is (HE,) and that of *shall give him a good seat*, (I,) *afin que* must be used.

ESSAY LVI.—(No. 6.)

We have not a heart to hate one another.——Palamedes invented the game
se haïr les uns les autres *jeu*
of chess to serve for diversion to his soldiers, and to teach them the strata-
des échecs *d'amusement* *apprendre leur*
gems of war.——Mr. S*** has played that trick to your sister to frighten her.——
tour *faire peur lui*
We are born to work and to glorify God.——How much do you ask for going
naître travailler
there?——He was hanged for having murdered his father.——I said so in fun.——We
y *assassiner*

Pour is used with the infinitive
(and never de or à) after trop
assez suffisant and suffire;—
and whenever we express the de-
sign, cause and reason of doing
something it is rendered *pour* to in
order to, with a design to. Id., 188.

The conjunction *que* governs the sub-
junction after verbs implying wish, de-
sire, will, command, permission, caution,
denial, prohibition, doubt, fear, sur-
prise, joy, sorrow, regret, despair, and
more generally speaking, after the
verbs which express some passion or
movement of the mind (the verb
to hope excepted) R. 304.

shall go to London, that we* (may be able) to* say that we have seen it.——If
afin de pouvoir
they will come, I shall give them a good seat, that they may hear
place afin qu' sub. pr. pouvoir
well.——You ought to* give prizes to your pupils to encourage them.——He
devriez
studies those sciences, more to discourse and (make a show) in the world, than
discourir briller
to enlighten and cultivate his mind.——There is a time to work and a time to
éclairer
rest.——He will do any thing to oblige you.——She is too weak to bear
se reposer tout son possible faible supporter
such a fatigue.——He has not influence enough to obtain that situation.——If
si grand crédit place
you come to-morrow, there will be nobody at home to receive you.——They had
chez nous
not troops enough to blockade the town by sea and land.——We find remedies
On des
to cure madness, but none to cure love.
la on n'en trouve point de

LESSON LVII.

Of the Subjunctive.

341

The indicative is the mood of affirmation, and the subjunctive the mood of indecision and doubt; the verb, therefore, of the second part of a sentence, when preceded by the conjunction *que*, is put in the indicative in French, when the verb of the first part expresses some thing positive and affirmative, and in the subjunctive (although it may be in the indicative in English), when the verb of the first part denotes uncertainty or doubt. From this general principle are derived the following rules on the use of the subjunctive, which must be particularly attended to, as they explain the different cases in which the subjunctive is used in French, although the indicative may be employed in English.

FIRST GENERAL RULE.—When a verb is preceded by the conjunction *que*, it is put in the subjunctive mood in French, although it may be in the indicative in English, after any verb expressing doubt, uncertainty, fear, ignorance, wish, command, order, desire, surprise, affection, passion, sentiment, and, in general, any emotion of the soul, such as—*appréhender, avoir peur, craindre, commander, désirer, défendre, douter, ignorer, nier, ordonner, se réjouir, souhaiter, vouloir*; and also after the words—*affligé, charmé, content, bien-aise, enchanté, digne, indigne, fâché, ravi, surpris*, when they are preceded by any tense of the verbs *être, sembler, paraître* and *avoir l'air*: as,—I am

afraid, I apprehend, I fear, I tremble lest he should come, *j'ai peur, j'apprends, je crains, je tremble qu'il ne vienne*. I wish you may succeed, *je désire que vous réussissiez*. I am very glad that they are well, *je suis charmé, ravi, enchanté, bien-aise qu'ils se portent bien*.

"Vous voulez que je fuie et que je vous évite."—RAC. act II. sc. 6.

"Obéis, si tu veux qu'on t'obéisse un jour."—VOLTAIRE, stance 28^e. t. 33.

A verb preceded by the conjunction *que* is also put in the subjunctive mood in French, after the following verbs—*assurer, avouer, croire, conclure, convenir, conjecturer, certifier, dire, déclarer, démontrer, (espérer, though denoting an affection of the soul,) entendre, être sûr, gager, juger, jurer, oublier, promettre, penser, parier, prouver, prédire, présager, présumer, savoir, soutenir, supposer, voir*, and, in general, after all those which express the faculties of the understanding (but not the affections of the soul), when they are used negatively or interrogatively, or when they are preceded by *si*, but not when they are employed affirmatively, as the indicative is then always required : as,—I do not think she is right, *je ne crois pas qu'elle ait raison*. Do you think he will come? *croyez-vous qu'il vienne*? If you think she will do it, you are very much mistaken, *si vous croyez qu'elle le fasse, vous vous trompez bien*. But in the following sentences—I think he is right, *je crois qu'il a raison*. I hope he will come, *j'espère qu'il viendra*. I say, I fancy, I presume, I think, I suspect, I maintain that you have learnt dancing, *je dis, je m'imagine, je présume, je pense, je soupçonne, je soutiens que vous avez appris à danser*; the verbs following *que* are put in the indicative mood, because those which precede it are affirmatively used.

Observe.—1. A verb preceded by the conjunction *que* is put in the subjunctive mood in French, after the verbs *entendre* and *prétendre*, used in the sense of *meaning, ordering, wishing* and *being willing*, whether they be employed affirmatively, negatively or interrogatively, or whether they be preceded by *si* : as,—I mean, I order you to do that, *j'entends, je prétends que vous fassiez cela*. I do not mean you to incur any expenses for me, *je n'entends pas que vous fassiez de dépenses pour moi*. But *entendre*, used in the sense of *to hear, to understand*; and *prétendre*, in that of *to maintain*, require the next verb to be in the indicative mood, when they are used affirmatively; and in the subjunctive, when they are employed either negatively or interrogatively, or when they are preceded by *si* : as,—by the sound of the voice, I hear that it is my brother, *au son de la voix, j'entends que c'est mon frère*. I maintain that it is not true, *je prétends que cela n'est pas vrai*.

2. When an interrogation is made merely to affirm or deny with more energy, as is done by orators, when desirous of producing a greater effect upon the minds of their hearers, the verb coming after *que* in the

second part of the sentence, is not put in the subjunctive mood, but in the indicative as in English, because then there is no doubt expressed, this being a mere form of expression : as,—

—————“*Madame, oubliez-vous*
Que Thésée *est* mon père, et qu’il *est* votre époux ?”—RAC. *act* II. *sc.* 5.

3. The verb coming after *que*, in the second part of a sentence, is also put in the indicative in French, although the verb used in the first part be in the interrogative form, when there is no doubt entertained about the thing mentioned, and we merely wish to communicate it to those with whom we converse : for instance, if knowing that the king is going to the opera, and wishing to impart it to the person or persons whom we address, we must say :—do you know that the king is going to the opera? *savez-vous que le roi va à l’opéra?* and not *aïlle*; because the sentence implies no doubt. For the same reason, we say :—have I told you that my brother is dead? *vous ai-je dit que mon frère EST mort?* and not *soit*; because there is no doubt entertained about my brother’s death. The same rule must be observed for any other sentence of the same kind.

4. When an interrogative sentence begins by one of the expressions —*pourquoi, comment*, or any similar one, the verb coming after *que* in the second part of the sentence is likewise sometimes put in the indicative mood in French, when there is no doubt entertained about the thing mentioned, and the verb used in the first part of the sentence is not one of those quoted in the first general rule, which always govern the subjunctive : as,—why do you think he will not come? *pourquoi croyez-vous qu’il ne viendra pas?* and not *qu’il ne vienne pas*, because the sentence implies no doubt. 348

The indicative mood is likewise always used in French, after these other interrogative expressions :—*est-ce que? n’est-ce pas que?* : as,—is he really arrived? *est-ce qu’il EST arrivé?* he has done that, has he not? *n’est-ce pas qu’il a fait cela?*

SECOND GENERAL RULE.—A verb preceded by the conjunction *que* is likewise put in the subjunctive mood in French, after the different tenses of unipersonal verbs, and of verbs used unipersonally, as—*il faut, il fallait, il faudra, il faudrait, il convient, il importe, il est important, il est à propos, il est avantageux, il est fâcheux, il est juste, il est injuste, il serait injuste, il est nécessaire, il vaut mieux, il vaudrait mieux*; and, in general, after all unipersonal verbs formed with an adjective and the third persons singular of the different tenses of *être* (except, however, after those mentioned in the following observations) : as,—I must go to town, *il faut que j’AÏLLE à la ville*. It is better for her not to come, *il vaut mieux qu’elle ne VIENNE point*.

“*Il est juste, grand roi, qu’un meurtrier périsse.*”

CORNEILLE, *le Cid*, *act.* II. *sc.* 7.

Observe.—1. *Il arrive, il paraît, il résulte, il s'ensuit*, and, in general, all unipersonal verbs denoting evidence, certitude or probability, as—*il y a apparence, il est clair, il est certain, il est évident, il est probable, il est vrai, il est vraisemblable, il est sûr*, &c. only govern the next verb in the subjunctive mood in French when they are used negatively or interrogatively, or when they are preceded by *si*; for, should they be employed affirmatively, they always require the indicative mood: as,—it is not certain, it is not true they will come, *il n'est pas certain, il n'est pas vrai, il n'est pas sûr qu'ils VIENNENT*. Is it likely they will make peace this year? *est-il probable qu'on FASSE la paix cette année?* If it be certain he will go there, *s'il est certain qu'il y AILLE*. It often happens that we are disappointed in our expectations, *il arrive souvent qu'on EST trompé dans son attente*.

2. When the verb *sembler*, to seem, is used affirmatively in an unipersonal manner, preceded by one of the personal pronouns *me, te, nous, vous, lui, leur*, and followed by *que*, as—*il me semble que; il vous semblait que*, &c. it requires the next verb to be put in the indicative mood because then it answers to the different persons of *croire*, and denotes affirmation without any doubt or uncertainty: as,—it seems to me that I see him, *il me semble que je le vois*.

344 But when *sembler* is used negatively or interrogatively, or when it is preceded by *si*, being still accompanied by one of the personal pronouns, it requires the next verb following *que* to be put in the subjunctive mood: as,—it does not seem to me that one can think differently, *il ne me semble pas qu'on PUISSE penser différemment*. Does it seem to you that it is so? *vous semble-t-il que cela soit ainsi?*

If, on the contrary, *sembler* should not be accompanied by any one of the personal pronouns, it would then always govern the subjunctive mood, whether it be used affirmatively, negatively or interrogatively, or whether it be preceded by *si*: as,—it seems that you have seen him, *il semble que vous l'AYEZ vu*. It does not seem that you have been there, *il ne semble pas que vous y AYEZ été*; &c.

“ Il semblait qu'un spectacle si doux

N'attendit, en ces lieux, qu'un témoin tel que vous.”

RAC. *Andr. act. II. sc. 4.*

THIRD GENERAL RULE.—A verb is always put in the subjunctive mood in French, after the following conjunctions: *afin que, à moins que, avant que, au cas que, en cas que, bien que, de crainte que, de peur que, encore que, jusqu'à ce que, loin que, non que, non pas que, nonobstant que, malgré que, posé que, pour que, pourvu que, quoique, sans que, soit que, supposé que, si peu que, si tant est que*, and *que*, used in the sense of *à moins que, avant que, afin que, de crainte que, de peur que, soit que* and *sans que*: as,—before I was come, *avant que je FUSSE venu*. In case that it is so, *en cas que cela soit*.

Although he is very young, he is notwithstanding discreet, *encore qu'il soit fort jeune, il ne laisse pas d'être sage.*

“ *Quoique le ciel soit juste, il permet bien souvent
Que l'iniquité règne, et marche en triomphant.*”

VOLTAIRE, *D. Père*, act. V. sc. 1.

Observe.—The following conjunctions, *sinon que*, *si ce n'est que*, *de sorte que*, *tellement que*, *de manière que*, and several others mentioned under the article of conjunctions, govern sometimes the subjunctive and sometimes the indicative, according to the idea which we wish to express. They generally govern the subjunctive, when the thing spoken of is not certain, but rather wished for; whereas they require the indicative when the sentence positively affirms that such or such a thing is or will be: as,—I ask nothing except that you should do your duty, *je ne demande rien, si non que vous FASSIEZ votre devoir*; in this sentence, the subjunctive is used, because the thing spoken of, namely—*que vous fassiez votre devoir*, is not certain, but wished for; but in this—I have nothing to tell you, except that I do and shall always do my duty, *je n'ai rien à vous dire, si non que je FAIS et que je FERAI toujours mon devoir*; the indicative is employed, because the thing spoken of, namely—*que je fais et que je ferai toujours mon devoir*, is positively affirmed as existing, there being no doubt remaining about it.

It must be noticed that *que*, used in the second part of a sentence, to avoid the repetition of a conjunction occurring in the first, governs the same mood as the conjunction for which it is employed: as,—as soon as my brother writes to me, and I find an opportunity, I will let you know it, *aussitôt que mon frère m'écrit, et que j'aurai une occasion, je vous le ferai savoir*. Unless you come or write to me, I shall not do it, *à moins que vous ne veniez ou que vous ne m'écriviez, je ne le ferai pas*.

FOURTH GENERAL RULE.—A verb preceded by *que* is likewise put in the subjunctive mood in French:—

1. After the conjunction *si*, used for *quelque*:

“ *Si mince qu'il puisse être, un cheveu fait de l'ombre.*”—VILLEFRÉ.

2. After *si* preceded and followed by a negative expression: as—she is not so foolish but that she is well aware of it, *elle n'est pas si sotte qu'elle ne s'en aperçoive bien*.

3. When *que*, used in the second part of a sentence, is employed to avoid the repetition of *si*, occurring in the first part: as,—if you consent to it, and you come with him, *si vous y consentez, et que vous veniez avec lui*; for—*si vous y consentez, et si vous venez avec lui*.

FIFTH GENERAL RULE.—A verb preceded by *que* or *qui* is likewise put in the subjunctive mood in French: 1. after a superlative; that is, after an adjective or a participle preceded by one of the words *le plus*, *le moins*, *le mieux*; *la plus*, *la moins*, *la mieux*; *les plus*, *les moins*,

les mieux ; or after a substantive qualified by one of the adjectives—*le meilleur, le pire, le moindre* ; *la meilleure, la pire, la moindre* ; *les meilleurs ou meilleures, les pires, les moindres* ; or, also, after any one of these words used by themselves, as, likewise, after *le pis*, the worst : as,—the movements of the planets are the most regular with which we are acquainted, *les mouvemens des planètes sont les plus réguliers que nous CONNAISSONS*. Religion is always the best voucher for the morals of men, *la religion est toujours le meilleur garant que l'on PUISSE avoir des mœurs des hommes*.

2. After the adjectives *seul, unique, dernier*, preceded by the definite article *le, la, or les* ; and frequently also after the ordinal numbers *le premier, le second, le troisième, le quatrième, le cinquième, &c.* when, above all, there is doubt or uncertainty implied in the sentence : as,—that is the only one I have, *voilà le seul ou l'unique que j'AIE*. It is the first or second time I have been mistaken, *c'est la première ou la seconde fois que je me sois trompé, &c.*

“ Ce n'est pas le seul bien que sa main me ravisse ! ”

CREB. *Rhad. et Zén. act. I. sc. 2.*

3. After all words which have a negative import, as—*personne, aucun, nul, rien, pas un, pas, point, pas de, point de, peu, guère, &c.* : as,—I know nobody so unhappy as he, *je ne connais personne qui soit aussi malheureux que lui*. There is nothing but what time at length alleviates, *il n'y a rien que le temps à la fin n'ADOUCCISSE*.

46 SIXTH GENERAL RULE.—The subjunctive is also required after the following words : *quelque, quelque que, qui que, qui que ce soit qui, quoi que, quoi que ce soit que* : as,—whoever told you so was wrong, *qui que ce soit qui vous l'AIT DIT avait tort*. Whatever you may say, *quoi que ou quoi que ce soit que vous disiez, &c.*

“ Quoi qu'on DISE, un ânon ne deviendra qu'un âne. ”—GROZELIER.

GENERAL OBSERVATIONS.—1. Besides the cases already mentioned, there are some others in which the subjunctive is also required, according to the idea which we wish to express ; for instance, a verb, coming in the second part of a sentence, and joined to the first part by one of the pronouns, *qui, que, dont*, (or *où*,) is put in the subjunctive mood in French, when it expresses something uncertain ; whereas it is used in the indicative, when it expresses something certain or positive : as,—

1. J'épouserai une demoiselle
qui me plaise.

3. Montrez-moi un chemin
qui conduise à Paris.

5. Je cherche quelqu'un
qui me rende service.

2. J'épouserai une demoiselle
qui me plaira.

4. Montrez-moi le chemin
qui conduit à Paris.

6. Je cherche quelqu'un
qui me rendra service.

Some grammarians are of opinion that
the indicative may be used with equal
propriety in the cases in No 2

R. 308

The subjunctive is used after *qui* in
relative sentences, when the an-
tecedent comes after the verb to be
preceded by *quel*.

*quel est le peuple, qui a'ait point
de culte religieux* - but according
to others the indic. is equally proper

R. 308

The perfect tense of the verbs *ordon-*
ner, *commander*, and a few others,
requires the subjunctive, if the ac-
tion must take place immediately,
but if it may be postponed or if
it depends on a condition as *supposed*
or understood the conditional is
used.

*Il ordonna que nous sortissions sur-
le-champ*

*Il ordonna que nous sortissions de
la ville de ces provisions nous aient
à y manger. R. 308.*

- | | |
|---|--|
| 7. J'aspire à une place
qui soit agréable. | 8. J'aspire à une place
qui est agréable. |
| 9. Je te donnerai des raisons
qui te convainquent. | 10. Je te donnerai des raisons
qui te convaincront. |
| 11. J'irai dans une retraite
où je sois tranquille. | 12. J'irai dans une retraite
où je serai tranquille. |
| 13. Préférez des livres où le
style soit sublime et pur. | 14. Préférez ces livres où le
style est sublime et pur. |

In the first of the above examples, namely—"j'épouserai une demoiselle qui me plaise," the subjunctive is used, because the idea is undetermined: I wish to take a lady for my wife; but, although certain of the qualities I require in her whom I shall choose, I do not know yet the young lady who possesses them; but, in the second example,—"j'épouserai une demoiselle qui me plaira," the indicative is employed, because the idea is positive; a young lady being spoken of whom I mean to marry, and who, I am sure, will please me. It is the same with the other sentences: the choice of the indicative or subjunctive is determined by the idea which we wish to express.

2. The subjunctive is also required after the conjunction *que* used in the beginning of a sentence to express imprecation, astonishment or reluctance. In this case, *let* is generally employed in English: as,—let me die if that is not true, *que je meure si cela n'est pas vrai*.

"Que la foudre à vos yeux m'écrase si je mens!"

TH. CORNEILLE, *le Ment.* act. III. sc. 5.

3. The subjunctive is likewise sometimes used without being preceded by any conjunction, in some sentences of desire or wish: these sentences are generally expressed in English by *may* or some other similar expression: as,—may you be happy with her! *PUISSIEZ-VOUS vivre heureux avec elle!* God grant that the thing may happen! *PASSE le ciel que cela arrive!* God forbid! *Dieu m'en PRÉSERVE!* Let him write to her who pleases, *lui ÉCRIVE qui voudra*. Let him escape who can! *SAUVE qui peut!*

"Périssent le Troyen auteur de nos alarmes!"—RAC. *Eph.* act. II. sc. 2.

"Puisse-je de mes yeux y voir tomber ce foudre!"—P. CORN. *Hor.* act. IV. sc. 5.

In any sentence of this kind, the nominative of the verb is generally placed after the verb.

4. In all the French language, there is only the verb *savoir* which, employed negatively, can be used in the subjunctive mood, instead of the indicative, without being dependent on any other word, expressed or understood, requiring it: for instance,—I know nothing more melancholy, *je ne sache rien de plus fâcheux*. Not that I know of, *pas que je sache*. This, however, must be confined to the first person singular only; because we cannot say in the other persons:—*vous ne sachez pas*, you do not know; *il ou elle ne sache pas*, he or she does not know; &c. but—*vous ne savez pas; il ou elle ne sait pas; &c.*

Tenses of the subjunctive which must be used.

GENERAL RULE.—Whenever a verb depending on *que*, or on any other word mentioned in the preceding rules, is required to be in the subjunctive mood, it is put in the present of the subjunctive, whatever may be the tense in which it is in English, when the thing or action expressed by it, is present or future with reference to the other verb, used either in the first or second part of the sentence; but it is put in the preterit or compound of the present of the subjunctive, when the thing or action expressed by it is past with reference to the other verb, and that verb is either in the present or future of the indicative, or if it be in the imperative: as,—I do not think he will come to-day, *je ne crois pas qu'il vienne aujourd'hui*. Do you think she will come to-morrow? *croyez-vous qu'elle vienne demain?* I shall always doubt they have mentioned it to him, *je douterai toujours qu'ils lui en aient parlé*. Whatever he says, I will not go, *quoi qu'il dise, je n'irai pas*. Is it the only one he has? *est-ce le seul qu'il ait?* She is the prettiest lady I ever saw, *c'est la plus jolie demoiselle que j'aie jamais vue*.

But a verb required to be in the subjunctive mood, must be put in the imperfect or pluperfect of the subjunctive, according as we wish to express by it a thing or action present, future, or past, with reference to the other verb used in the first or second part of the sentence, if that verb be in any other tense than either in the present or future of the indicative or in the imperative; that is, if it should be in the imperfect or pluperfect of the indicative, in one of the preterits or of the conditionals: as,—I did not think he would set out to-day, *je ne croyais pas qu'il partît aujourd'hui*. Should you have thought that he would have bought that house? *auriez-vous cru qu'il eût acheté cette maison?* Though his reasons were good, I would not listen to them, *quoique ses raisons fussent bonnes, je ne voulus point les entendre*. We were there before she was arrived, *nous y étions avant qu'elle fût arrivée*, &c.

EXCEPTIONS.—1. A verb required to be in the subjunctive mood must be put in the imperfect or pluperfect of the subjunctive, though the first verb governing it be in the present or future of the indicative, or in the imperative, if there should be a conditional expression expressed or understood in the first or second part of the sentence, and the verb used or implied in it, should be in any other tense than in the present of the indicative: as,—do you think he would come, if he were asked, *croyez-vous qu'il vînt, si on l'en priait?* I do not think she would play, if you were present, *je ne crois pas qu'elle voulût jouer, si vous étiez présent*. Do you think they would have come, if it had been fine weather? *croyez-vous qu'elles fussent venues, s'il avait fait beau temps?* I do not think this affair would have succeeded, without your interposition, *je ne crois pas que cette affaire eût réussi, sans votre intervention*. In these examples, the imperfect and plu-

I After the present and future of the indicative, we use the present of the subjunctive to express a thing present or future, but we use the preterite to express a thing past.

Je doute } que vous étudiez maintenant
Je douterais }

Je doute } que vous ayez étudié hier.
Je douterais }

After the pr. & fut. of the Indic. we use the Imperf. subj. instead of the present, and the pluperf. instead of the preterite, when some conditional expression is introduced in the sentence.

II After the imp. & pluperf. any of the preterites or conditionals, we use the imp. subj. if we mean to express a thing present or future, but to express a thing that is past, we use the pluperfect.

With a pret. indefinite the following verb is put in the pres. subjunctive, if we intend to express a thing which is or may be done at all times; and in the pret. subj. if we intend to express something past as if a fact.
ex. qu'il se soit donné bien de la peine. G. G. 280. 281.

perfect of the subjunctive are employed, because the verbs used in the conditional expressions—*si on l'en priait; si vous étiez présent; s'il avait fait beau temps*; and that implied in—*sans votre intervention*, are not in the present of the indicative. But we must say with the present of the subjunctive—*je ne doute pas qu'il ne vienne, si on l'en prie*, I do not doubt but he will come, if he be asked; because the conditional expression, *si on l'en prie*, is in the present of the indicative.

2. The imperfect of the subjunctive is usually employed to express a future thing or action, and the preterit or compound of the present of the same mood, to denote a past thing or action, after the indefinite preterit of the indicative: as,—I have ordered that my manuscript should be burnt, *j'ai ordonné qu'on BRULÂT mon manuscrit*. He must have taken a great deal of trouble, *il a fallu qu'il se SOIT DONNÉ bien de la peine*.

3. Should a verb, which is to be used in the subjunctive mood, be represented as continually acting or acted upon, it must be put in the present of the subjunctive, whatever may be the tense in which the other verb is in English: as,—God has surrounded the eyes with very thin coats, transparent on the outside, that we may see through them, *Dieu a entouré les yeux de tuniques fort minces, transparentes au devant, afin que l'on puisse voir à travers*. I have used no fiction but what is a sensible image of truth, *je n'ai employé aucune fiction qui ne SOIT une image sensible de la vérité*.

ESSAY LVII.

For the future the verbs which must be put in the subjunctive mood will not be found marked as before, as the pupil is now supposed to be sufficiently acquainted with the necessary rules on that subject.

I wonder you have written to her.—He is delighted that it is so.—We
s'étonner *cela ainsi*
 are very sorry that this misfortune has happened to you.—I did not know that
fâché être arrivé
 you were friends.—Are you not very sorry she is dead?—Why do you
sub. imp.
 think the ambassador will not come?—Do you think the French will
Monsieur
 storm the town, if it does not capitulate?—I tremble lest the go-
donner l'assaut à capituler
 vernor will see every thing destroyed* with fire and sword, before he surrenders.
à à sang se rendre
 —If you perceive that the children steal the fruit, (let me know it).—Do you
voler donner-m'en avis
 mean that she shall send back these ear-rings to him?—We will not
prétendre entendre
 have* you to be at* any expense (on our account,) for the same reason that
faire pour nous par

you do not suffer *vouloir que nous* us to be at* any for you.—By the sound of the voice *en*

and instrument, I conclude that it is my sister who is singing and playing.—
entendre c'

Do you know that Miss E*** is married? Yes, I do.—Have I told you that the

French funds are much higher to-day? Yes, you have.—She is not dead, is

she?—If your brother is desirous of being esteemed, he must be obliging,
être

polite and affable to every body.—It is just that the laws should be observed.

—It would be unjust that a vile murderer should not be punished.—It is evident
assassin

that she is in the wrong.—It is not likely that they will return before next

year.—It seems to me that there can be no greater enjoyment than that of
de jouissance

rendering others happy.—Did it seem to you that he was very attentive to
assidu auprès

her?—It seemed to me that she was walking.—It does not seem to me that one

can think differently.—It would seem that the French would wish to* make
vouloir

peace.—I will not pardon you, unless you promise me to behave better in
de se conduire à

future.—Do not leave that book here, for fear my sister should read it.
l'avenir de crainte que

SD —Does not lightning generally appear before the thunder is heard?—I require
éclair demander

nothing from* you, except that you should take care of your children and
sinon avoir

(impress upon their young minds) sentiments of honour and delicacy.—As
que vous leur inculquiez de bonne heure

soon as I am in the country and I have an opportunity, I will send you some
occasion

fruit.—Let a hair be ever so small, it produces some shadow.—She is not so

foolish but she sees well that you wish (to impose upon her).—If your sister
qu' vouloir lui en faire accroire

takes her lessons regularly, and studies besides two or three hours a day,

she will make great progress.—I think the most just comparison that can be
on

made of love is that of a fever.—Who are the two greatest men that England

has produced?—His cousin is the handsomest young lady that can be* seen.—
on voir

Is that the only one you have? Yes, it is.—It is the first time I have been mis-

taken.—However ingenious they might be, they could not discover the plan I had followed.—There is nobody but would be very sorry, if he knew all that is thought of him.—I want a decanter that contain three pints of wine.—If I marry again, I shall take a lady who has plenty of money.—Let me die on the spot, if I told you an untruth.—God grant that that may happen!—May you live happy together many years!—Let him write to her who likes.—May God preserve me (from it)!—I know nothing more advantageous for you and your brother.—Has the tailor sent me my coat? Not that I know of.—I do not think the French will succeed in Spain, if the Spaniards are faithful to their king and constitution.—We did not suspect they would have begun the fortifications so soon.—Talma is the best tragic actor that France has had for a long time.—I doubt whether any philosopher has ever satisfactorily explained the physical cause of the winds.—I was very much afraid he would tell her mother (of it).—Who could have thought that the emperor would have submitted to such dishonourable conditions?—Although she is very young and handsome, I do not like her at all.—The Bellerophon is the largest vessel that has ever been built in France.—Whatever riches we may have, we are never satisfied.—Unless a book be entertaining, I do not care to read it.—There is no grief but time at length alleviates.—Were you not there a long time before the coach arrived?—Do you think she would sing, if I (were to ask her)? No, I do not believe she would in your presence.—If you thought the Misses S** would come, in case (it were) fine weather, I should invite them.—He must have gained much, if he has laid by twenty thousand francs in two years.—She has particularly desired that all her letters and papers should be burnt, in case she should die of that illness.

*de**carafe**se remarier**beaucoup**lieu**fausseté**en**depuis**qu'**d'une manière satisfaisante**le**si**construire**content**amusant**se soucier de**chagrin**que**à la fin**n'adoucir**croire**l'en priais**le vouloir**vouloir**en**qu'il fit**mettre de côté**en**surtout**recommander*

LESSON LVIII.

Of Participles.

I. OF THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE AND VERBAL ADJECTIVE.

The *present participle* is always terminated in *ant*, in French, and is indeclinable; whereas *verbal adjectives*, (that is—adjectives derived from verbs,) although having the same termination, are declinable, and agree in gender and number with the substantives to which they refer.

As it is sometimes very difficult to know whether a word ending in *ing*, in English, is a *present participle* or a *verbal adjective* in French, the following rules will, it is hoped, assist in removing this difficulty.

FIRST GENERAL RULE.—Whenever a word ending in *ing*, in English, has not any object, but merely expresses the *state, manner of being*, or *quality* of the substantive which it modifies, as in the following sentence: *an obliging woman*; it is a *verbal adjective*, which agrees in French in gender and number with the substantive to which it refers: as,—an obliging woman, *une femme OBLIGEANTE*; but if, instead of expressing the *state or quality* of its respective substantive, it denotes an action done by it: as,—*a man walking, going, striking, thinking, wishing, &c.* it is then a *present participle*, which must never vary in French in its termination, whatever may be the gender and number of the substantive which it qualifies: as,—the plate struck the wall and then came rolling back, *l'assiette frappa le mur et revint en ROULANT*.

“Un moment elle est gaie, un moment sérieuse,
Riant, pleurant, jasant, se taisant tour-à-tour,
Enfin, changeant d'humeur, mille fois en un jour.”

DESTOUCHES, *le Philos. mar.* I. 2.

SECOND GENERAL RULE.—When a word ending in *ing*, in English, has a direct object, it is a *present participle* which is indeclinable in French: as,—this reflection perplexing him, *cette réflexion le TROUBLANT*. A dove holding a letter in its beak, *une colombe TENANT une lettre dans son bec*.

“Un peuple de beautés, un peuple de vainqueurs,
Foulant d'un pied léger les gazons et les fleurs.”—THOMAS.

But if a word ending in *ing* has an indirect object; that is, if it be accompanied by one or more words depending on it, with the help of a preposition, as in the next sentences: *a young lady shining with a thousand attractions; if you were to see that young person shining in a party by the graces of her mind*; in this case, you must consider whether the word ending in *ing* denotes the *state, manner of being*, or *quality* of the substantive to which it refers, or whether it represents it as performing the action which it expresses: in the first case, it is a *verbal adjective*, which must agree with its respective substantive in



French ; whereas, in the second, it is a *present participle* which never varies : as,—a young lady shining with a thousand attractions, *une demoiselle brillante de mille attraits*. If you were to see that young person shining in a party by the graces of her mind, *si vous voyiez cette jeune personne brillant dans une réunion par les grâces de son esprit, &c.*

It is after the same rule that we say :—*une jeune personne brillante de santé, brillante de fraîcheur*, a young person glowing with health and freshness ; *une femme éclatante d'attraits, éclatante de beauté*, a woman shining with attractions and beauty ;—to express a gift of nature belonging to a person ; whereas we say to denote an action,—*nous entendîmes les bombes éclatant avec un horrible fracas*, we heard the bombs bursting with a horrible noise.

Whenever a word ending in *ant*, in French, is immediately preceded by the pronoun *se*, for its direct object, it is the *present participle* of a reflexive verb, which is always indeclinable : as,—*les morts se ranimant à la voix d'Élisée*, the dead reviving at the voice of Elisha. *Des milliers d'ennemis, se pressant sous nos portes, fondent sur nos remparts*, thousands of foes, forcing themselves under our gates, pour upon our ramparts.

Observe.—1. The preposition *en* is frequently used in French before a *present participle*, to denote that such participle refers to the subject of the preceding verb ; whereas, without that preposition, it might relate to its subject or object indifferently : as,—*je l'ai rencontré allant à la campagne*, I met him going to the country ; *allant* may equally well refer to the subject or object of the preceding verb, and the sense may be : *je l'ai rencontré lorsque j'allais à la campagne, ou je l'ai rencontré qui allait à la campagne* ; but the equivocation will disappear by placing the preposition *en* before the participle, and saying : *je l'ai rencontré en allant à la campagne*, I met him in going to the country ; which is the same as—*je l'ai rencontré lorsque j'allais à la campagne* ; because the use of the preposition *en* is to make the present participle refer to the subject of the verb.

The preposition *en* is also used before a *present participle*, in several other cases, which can only be known by practice : as,—*en vous remerciant*, thanking you or thanks to you, &c.

2. The *present participle* can never be preceded in French by any other preposition than *en* ; whenever, therefore, an English *present participle* is preceded by a preposition which is not to be construed into French by *en*, as *of* or *from* which is expressed by *de* ; *without*, by *sans* ; *after*, by *après* ; *for*, by *pour* ; &c. the present of the infinitive must be used in French, instead of the *present participle* in English : as,—you cannot go there without disobeying your father, *vous ne pouvez y aller sans désobéir à votre père*. After having terminated my affairs, *J'ai... après avoir terminé mes affaires, je...*

3. The preposition *by*, which is frequently used before a *present*

restraining vice, only seek the welfare of their country?—Beauty may be
réprimer n'ont en vue que bonheur on

compared to a flower which, blowing in* the morning, looks fresh and
s'épanouir avoir l'air

lively all day, but which, fading towards the evening, loses its fine hues,
vermeil journée qui se faner perdre couleur

languishes, and droops its beautiful head.—Although this young lady is not
languir pencher beau

sparkling with beauty, if you (were to see) her shining in a party by the graces
éclatant voyiez

of her mind, you would find in her a thousand attractions.—That little girl is

really beaming with health and freshness.—Did we not hear afar off the
vraiment brillant

bombs bursting with a horrid noise?—Thousands of enemies, forcing them-
éclater se presser

selves* under our gates and pouring upon our ramparts, made us cry out for*
fondre

mercy.—It is not in giving ourselves up to our passions that we live happy,
miséricorde

it is in governing them.—We learn by teaching others.—She has lost every
On

thing, in losing her father.—You will succeed in bringing her back* to reason,
à ramener

by (imposing some restraint) upon yourself, and using her kindly.—The
prenant en traiter avec bonté

learning of languages is very difficult.—Clouds and fogs are formed from the
Nuage se former

vapours arising from the earth and waters.—I have seen a dove carrying a
qui s'élever

letter in its beak.—She was on the point of yielding, when, suddenly calling
céder se rappeler

her virtue to* her* mind*, she upbraided herself with* her weakness.—You
se reprocher

cannot go there without disobeying your father.—Were they not hanged for
désobéir

having fired at the king?—I have seen my sister playing at cards with him,
sur

which has made me conclude that we frequently act from motives arising
ce qui par des qui venir

from present circumstances.—Did I not see you running and playing all together?

—Finding myself much better now, and it being my intention to go and*
que d'

see you very soon, I advise you not to* cross the sea (in the) middle of
3 2 1 bientôt conseiller de traverser au

winter, to come into a town where misery and desolation reign.
pour 2 3 4 régner

LESSON LIX.

2. OF THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

Cases in which the past participle is declinable and indeclinable.

FIRST GENERAL RULE.—Whenever the past participle* of a verb is employed adjectively to modify a substantive in French, it agrees with it in gender and number like an adjective: as,—*un livre bien écrit*, a book well written. *Une lettre mal écrite*, a letter badly written. *Que de villes détruites!* how many towns destroyed! *Que de lauriers cueillis!* how many laurels gathered!

“*Que de remparts détruits! que de villes forcées!*

Que de moissons de gloire, en courant amassées!”—BOILEAU.

The participles *attendu*, *vu*, *supposé*, *excepté*, *y compris*, *ci-joint*, *ci-inclus*, must be excepted, as they are indeclinable when they precede the substantives to which they refer, being then considered as prepositions: as,—*ATTENDU les événemens*, considering the events. *Vu les faits*, seeing the facts. *SUPPOSÉ les circonstances*, the circumstances being supposed. *EXCEPTÉ elle et moi*, except her and me. *Il a quatre maisons*, *Y COMPRIS sa maison de campagne*, he has four houses, his country-seat included. *Vous trouverez CI-JOINT, CI-INCLUS, deux lettres*, you will find two letters here enclosed; but when they follow their respective substantives, they then agree with them in gender and number according to the general rule: as,—*des événemens ATTENDUS*, events expected. *Des faits VUS*, facts seen. *Telle circonstance SUPPOSÉE*, such a circumstance supposed. *Vous et moi EXCEPTÉS*, you and I excepted. *Sa maison de campagne Y COMPRISE*, his country-house included. *Vous trouverez mes deux lettres CI-JOINTES, CI-INCLUSES*, you will find my two letters here enclosed.

SECOND GENERAL RULE.—Whenever the past participle of a verb is preceded by any tense of the verbs—*être*, *sembler*, *paraître*, it agrees in French in gender and number with its nominative, although, when *sembler* and *paraître* are used in their own compound tenses, their past participles remain indeclinable, on account of being then preceded by the different tenses of *avoir*: as,—*elle est très-occupée*, she is very busy. *Elles n'ont pas été si occupées depuis long-temps*, they have not been so much engaged for a long time. *Nous voilà enfin ARRIVÉS*, we are at last arrived. *Elle semble ou elle paraît AFFLIGÉE*, she seems afflicted. *Elles m'ont paru bien CHANGÉES*, they appeared to me much altered. *Vous a-t-elle paru aussi GRANDIE qu'on le dit?* did she seem to you as much grown as they say?

“*O toi qui vois la honte où je suis descendue,*

Implacable Vénus, suis-je assez confondue?”—RAC. *act. III. sc. 2.*

* *Été* is the only past participle in the French language which never changes its termination.

Être and valoir employed to
point out the price of objects are
neuter and their participles do
not change. thus. Les trois mille
francs que cette maison m'a coûté.
Les prix que les grains ont valu;
not valus. H. G. 81.

We must observe however that some
grammarians decline the participle es-
pecially after *combien* & *que*. Speaking
of flowers, for instance they would write
combien j'en ai cueillies. Des fautes,
que j'en ai commises! R. 215.

But when the past participle of a verb is preceded by any tense of the verb *avoir*, it never agrees with its nominative: as,—*ils ont lu la gazette*, they have read the gazette. *Elle n'a pas écrit sa lettre*, she has not written her letter. *Avaient-elles fini leur ouvrage?* had they finished their work? &c.

It must be observed that, in the compound tenses of reflective verbs, *être* being used instead of *avoir*, the past participle does not agree with its subject or nominative, but with its object, as will be hereafter explained under the *Agreement of the past participle with its object in reflective verbs*.

THIRD GENERAL RULE.—Whenever the past participle of an active verb, or of a neuter verb used actively, is preceded by its direct object in French,* in a compound tense formed with a tense of *avoir*, it agrees with it in gender and number, whether the person of the verb *avoir* which is employed be preceded or followed by its subject or nominative: as,—the ladies whom I have seen, *les dames que j'ai vues*. The victories which he has gained, *les victoires qu'il a remportées*. The dangers which he has run, *les dangers qu'il a courus*. The troubles which that affair has cost me, *les peines que m'a coûtées cette affaire*. The English language which he has spoken so well, *la langue Anglaise qu'il a si bien parlée*. The pains which his education has cost me, *les soins que m'a coûtés son éducation*. They have not given it to me, *ils ne me l'ont pas donnée*; speaking of a watch.

“ O mon fils, que de pleurs ton destin m'a coûtés ! ”

* The direct object which precedes the past participle of a verb in a compound tense, in French, is either one of the personal pronouns—*me, te, se, nous, vous, le, la* or *les*, or *que* preceded by a substantive or a pronoun, or sometimes a substantive preceded by *quel, quelle, quels* or *quelles?* (which or what?) *combien de?* or *que de?* (how much? how many?): as,—*je les ai vus*, I have seen them. *La demoiselle que j'ai aimée*, the young lady whom I have loved. *Combien de services ne vous ai-je pas rendus?* how many services have I not rendered you? *Quelle réponse t'a-t-on faite?* what answer have they given thee?

Whenever the pronoun *le* or *l'* is used before the past participle of a verb in a compound tense, to represent, not the preceding substantive or pronoun, but an adjective or a verb understood, which modifies it, or even the whole or part of a sentence, the participle remains indeclinable, that is, is written in the singular masculine, whatever may be the gender and number of the substantive or pronoun going before: as,—*votre victoire est plus grande que vous ne l'avez cru*, and not *CRUE*,—your victory is greater than you imagined. *Elle n'est pas si belle que je l'avais imaginé*, and not *IMAGINÉE*, she is not so handsome as I had fancied; because the pronoun *l'*, employed in these sentences, does not represent the substantive *victoire*, or the pronoun *elle*, which precedes, but the expression *qu'elle l'était*, which is understood; and, indeed, the above sentences are equivalent to these: *votre victoire est plus grande que vous n'avez cru qu'elle l'était*; *elle n'est pas si belle que j'avais imaginé qu'elle l'était*.

When the pronoun *en* precedes also the past participle of a verb in a compound tense, either as its immediate or indirect object, it never has any influence on the participle: as,—*j'en ai cueilli*, I have gathered some (speaking of apples). *Les deux lettres que j'en ai reçues*, the two letters I have received thence, or from him or them.

But when the past participle of a verb, instead of being preceded by its direct object, is followed by it, or when it is preceded by its indirect object, in either case it remains indeclinable: as,—she has received your letters, *elle a reçu vos lettres*. We have cultivated our fields, *nous avons cultivé nos champs*. She has spoken the English language, *elle a parlé la langue Anglaise*. That affair has given me much trouble, *cette affaire m'a coûté bien des démarches*. The thing which you have mentioned to me this morning, *la chose dont vous m'avez parlé ce matin*, &c.

Observe.—1. When *que*, preceding the past participle of a verb, represents an indirect instead of a direct object, which is the case when it can be changed into *lequel*, *laquelle*, *lesquels* or *lesquelles*, preceded by a preposition, the participle remains indeclinable, that is, is written in the masculine singular, whatever may be the gender and number of the substantive preceding: as,—*les momens qu'il a souffert*, the moments during which he suffered. *Les jours qu'il a parlé*, the days when he spoke. *Les cinq heures qu'il a dormi*, the five hours he has slept, &c. In these examples, the participles *souffert*, *parlé*, and *dormi*, are invariable, because the *que* preceding them represents an indirect object, as it can be changed into *pendant lesquels* and *dans lesquelles*: thus—*les momens pendant lesquels il a souffert*; *les jours dans lesquels il a parlé*; *les cinq heures pendant lesquelles il a dormi*; for we can neither suffer moments, speak days, nor sleep hours; but we suffer during moments, we speak in days, and sleep for hours.

2. When the past participle of a verb is preceded by the third person singular of a tense of *avoir*, and this is employed impersonally: as,—*les chaleurs qu'il a fait cet été*, the heat there has been this summer. *Les grands vents qu'il a fait l'hiver dernier*, the high winds which blew last winter. *La belle journée qu'il a fait hier*! the fine day it was yesterday! *la grande inondation qu'il y a eu cet hiver*, the great inundation there has been this winter; the past participle never varies, being always written in the masculine singular, as above; because, in such a case, not being taken in an active sense, it has not any direct object. In the preceding examples, for instance,—*les chaleurs qu'il*, *la grande inondation qu'il*, &c. are by no means the direct objects of the participles *fait* and *eu*, as it is not spoken of any heat made nor of any inundation had by any body, which would be ridiculous; but these participles merely show the existence of the thing mentioned, and the *que* is not governed by any verb.

FOURTH GENERAL RULE.—Whenever the past participle of a reflexive verb is preceded by its direct object in a compound tense, and this object is either one of the personal pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, *vous*, which always accompany these verbs, or some other word, the past participle agrees with it in gender and number, and not with its subject: as,—*ils se sont repentis*, they have repented. *Elle s'est moquée de lui*, she has laughed at him. *Elles se sont enfuies*, they

If the antecedent case is a noun
and precede the verb (a construc-
tion common in French) the parti-
ciple is declined.

The death which Lucette gave herself
as a mark of her love with downie,

Verbs essentially pronominal, that
is verbs which cannot be conjuga-
ted without two pronouns of
the same person, as je me re-
pense require them participles
always to agree, because there only
have for their direct regimen their
second pronoun. G. G. 287

have fled. *Nous nous en étions bien doutés*, we had suspected it. *S'en sont-ils plaints*? have they complained of it? *LES DROITS qu'ils se sont arrogés*, the rights which they have arrogated to themselves. *LES INJURES qu'ils se sont dites*, the names which they have called each other; in which examples the participles *repentis, moquée, enfuies, doutés, plaints, arrogés, dites*, agree with their direct objects—*se, nous, droits que, injures que*, which precede, and not with their subjects—*ils, elle, elles, and nous*.

But when the past participle of a reflexive verb is followed by its direct object, the personal pronouns *me, te, se, nous, vous*, which precede, representing an indirect object, the participle remains indeclinable, that is, is written in the masculine singular, because it can never agree with its indirect object, neither can it accord with its subject in these verbs, since the different tenses of *être* are employed instead of those of *avoir*: as,—*ils se sont dit mille injures*, they have called each other a thousand names. *Elle s'est imaginé cela*, she has fancied that; which sentences are equivalent to these—*ils ont dit mille injures à soi; elle a imaginé cela en soi*.

The nine following reflexive verbs—*se plaire, se complaire, se déplaire, se rire, se sourire, se parler, se succéder, se nuire, s'entre-nuire*, though not followed by a direct object, have likewise their past participle indeclinable in their compound tenses, because, being formed from neuter verbs which cannot be used in an active sense, the personal pronouns *me, te, se, nous, vous*, which precede them, represent an indirect object, with which the participle can never agree: as,—*ils se sont nuï*, they have injured each other. *Elles se sont parlé*, they have spoken to one another. *Ils se seraient succédé*, they would have succeeded each other; which sentences are equivalent to these—*ils ont nuï à soi; elles ont parlé l'une à l'autre; ils auraient succédé l'un à l'autre*.

GENERAL OBSERVATIONS.—1. Whenever the past participle of a verb, being used with the different tenses of *avoir* in a compound tense, is preceded by its direct object, and followed by a verb in the present of the infinitive, which has no other direct object, particular attention must be paid to ascertain whether the object which precedes the participle is its own object or that of the following verb*; if the former, the participle

* An easy method to ascertain whether the direct object, by which the past participle of a verb is preceded in sentences like the above, is the object of the participle or that of the following verb, is to ask the questions—*qui?* (who?) *qui est-ce que?* (whom?) with reference to persons; and *qu'est-ce que? quoi?* (what?) with reference to things. When the answer brings the direct object immediately after the participle, it is a proof that such is its object, and consequently the participle agrees with it; but when the answer brings the direct object after the next verb, it is then the object of the verb, and the participle remains indeclinable: for instance, in the above examples,—“*je les ai laissés quereller*,” I left them quarrelling; if you ask, *qui est-ce que j'ai laissé quereller?* whom is it I left quarrelling? ANSWER—*j'ai laissé eux*, I left them; the direct object *eux*, coming immediately after the participle

agrees with it in gender and number, and if the latter, the participle remains indeclinable: as,—*je les ai à peine entendus parler*, I hardly heard them speak. *La demoiselle que j'ai vue danser*, the young lady whom I have seen dancing. *Nous l'avons laissée rire et pleurer toute seule*, we have left her laughing and crying by herself. *Je les ai laissés quereller*, I left them quarrelling. *L'imprudence que j'ai eue de parler*, my imprudence in speaking. *Elle s'est chargée de lui écrire*, she has taken upon herself to write to him. In these examples, the participles agree with the direct objects by which they are preceded, because such are their own objects; but in the next—*je lui ai offert ma maison qu'elle a refusé d'accepter*, I have offered her my house, which she has refused to accept. *Je vous remercie des démarches que vous avez eu la bonté de faire pour moi*, I thank you for the trouble which you have had the kindness to take for me. *Je vous envoie les livres que vous avez paru désirer*, I send you the books which you seemed to wish for. *Les airs que j'ai entendu chanter*, the songs which I heard sung; the participles remain indeclinable, because the direct objects by which they are preceded, are not their own objects, but those of the following verbs: the subjects spoken of in these sentences being the *accepting a house, taking steps, wishing for books, singing songs, and not refusing a house, having steps, seeming books, hearing songs*.

566 If the infinitive following the past participle should be accompanied by another direct object besides that which precedes the participle, in this case the participle would be preceded by its own object, and would necessarily agree with it: as,—*je les ai laissés manger mes fruits*, I let them eat my fruit.

2. When a past participle, used in a compound tense, is preceded by a direct object, and immediately followed by the conjunction *que* and a verb either in the indicative, conditional, or subjunctive mood: as,—*les succès que vous avez prétendu que j'obtiendrais*, the success which you pretended I should obtain. *La leçon que vous avez voulu que j'étudiasse*, the lesson which you wished me to study; the participle never varies, because the direct object by which it is preceded is not its own object, but that of the following verb. In the examples just quoted, for instance,—*les succès que, la leçon que*, are not the objects of the participles *prétendu, voulu*, but of the following verbs *obtiendrais, étudiasse*.

3. When the past participle *fait* is used in a compound tense, and is immediately followed by another verb in the present of the infinitive, with which it forms an indivisible sense, it never agrees with the direct

laissé, is its object, and the participle agrees with it; but in this,—“*les livres que vous avez paru désirer*,” the books which you seemed to wish for; *qu'est-ce que vous avez paru désirer*, what is it you seemed to wish for? ANSWER—*vous avez paru désirer LES LIVRES*, you seemed to wish for the books; the direct object *les livres*, coming immediately after the verb *désirer*, is its object, and, for this reason, the participle remains indeclinable.

3.

When the participle is part of an im-
personal verb it is never declined.
il est arrivé de grands malheurs,
Such misfortunes have happened.
la pluie qu'il a fait,
The rain which has fallen.

R. 210

In second example que is a Relativ-
e, as it is not the signification of any
verb. G. G. 288.

object preceding, as this is the object of the following verb ; but it is written in the masculine singular ; as,—*une effrayante voix s'est alors fait entendre*, a terrific voice was then heard. *Il les a fait fuir*, he made them fly. *J'ai pâli du dessein qui les a fait sortir*, I turned pale at the thought of the design for which they went out. *Lallu. (R. 213)*

4. When the past participles *dû*, *voulu*, and *pu*, are used in a compound tense, and are preceded by a direct object which is not their own object, but that of a following verb understood, they also never agree with it : as,—*je lui ai fait toutes les caresses que j'ai dû*, that is—*que j'ai dû lui faire*, I caressed her as I ought. *Il a obtenu toutes les grâces qu'il a voulu*, that is—*qu'il a voulu obtenir*, he has obtained all the favours he wished for. *Je lui ai rendu tous les services que j'ai pu*, that is—*que j'ai pu lui rendre*, I rendered him all the services I could, &c. In these examples, the direct objects—*toutes les caresses que*, *toutes les grâces que*, *tous les services que*, being evidently the objects of the verbs *faire*, *obtenir*, and *rendre*, which are understood, the participles *dû*, *voulu*, and *pu*, remain indeclinable.

But if the direct objects, by which the participles *dû* and *voulu* may be preceded, should be their own objects, there being no other verb understood, in this case *dû* and *voulu* should agree with them : as,—*elle m'a toujours payé les sommes qu'elle m'a dûes*, she always paid me the sums which she owed me. *Il veut fortement toutes les choses qu'il a une fois vouluës*, he ardently wishes for the things which he once desired.

361

ESSAY LIX.

How many towns destroyed would have been saved, had the conqueror been
vainqueur
 more humane !—Battles won, and laurels gathered, when so much blood is*
au prix de
 shed*, are never* remembered but with a feeling of horror, which makes
on ne se rappeler qu'
 one* shudder.—Considering the present circumstances, nothing more advan-
Pu on
 tageous could be expected.—Except you and her they were all sick.—We
malade
 have sold all our horses, my little pony excepted.—You will find here enclosed
bidet
 two letters, which (I shall be obliged to you) to give to Miss W**.—They
je vous prie de vouloir bien remettre
 all went to Italy, she and I excepted.—Are the three bills of exchange here en-
 closed to be paid at Mr. C.'s in the Strand ?—We have been so engaged lately,
payable chez occupé
 that it has been impossible for* me to study my French lessons.—The wicked
d'
 are always tormented by the remorse of their own conscience.—Is Miss P**
remords pl.

returned from the country? No, sir; she will return to-morrow.—The young ladies are gone to their dancing and riding lessons.—We have dined sooner to-day than usual.—We are at last arrived.—They have chosen a very unfavourable opportunity.—I have not seen the pictures which you have mentioned to me.—Miss A* * and Miss G* * are so much altered, that I did not know them again at first.—The dangers which he has run do him much honour.—I have spoken six languages to-day, namely—French, Italian, English, German, Spanish and Dutch.—Far from being thankful to his parents for the pains and troubles of all kind, which his education has cost them, he treats them with contempt and shuns them.—The five hours he has slept this morning are the only rest which he has had for a fortnight.—What a delightful day it was yesterday!—The abundant rains which have fallen this summer have entirely spoiled the harvest.—Do you recollect the high winds which blew, and the great overflow of water which there was in the beginning of the year?—The letters which we have received by the mail to-day confirm the capitulation of Moscow.—That unfortunate bankruptcy has reduced us a little.—I have attentively read the papers which you have sent me about the affair which I had proposed to you, and I have found that if I had undertaken it I should have met with obstacles which I had not foreseen.—His sister has laughed at me during the whole passage.—Why have the ladies fled as soon as they perceived me?—Have the accounts been found right?—Have your sisters been much amused in his company? No; not very.—After a long and obstinate combat, they have made themselves masters of the citadel.—Have the inhabitants surrendered?—She has turned nun.—Why have you deviated from the road which you had begun to follow?—The French have rendered themselves famous by their courage in war.—They have called each

other a thousand names.—She has made away with * herself*.—I did not
se donner la mort
 know they had given themselves the trouble of coming on purpose for me.
 —If she has fancied that, I cannot help it.—After they had spoken a long
qu'y faire *se parler*
 time, they separated without saying a single word.—They have smiled at each
se dire
 other.—They have injured themselves much.—It is not certain that they would
 have succeeded each other, if, &c.—I am delighted that she has taken upon*
se charger
 herself* to write to him.—We have left them quarrelling.—Where are the
de
 young ladies whom I have seen dancing?—Will you thank him for the (trouble)
démarches
 which he has had the kindness to take for me?—The songs which I have heard
faire
 your sister sing are very fine.—These are the presents which you have refused to
 accept.—The house which I have advised you to buy is large and well-situated.
 —It frequently happens that we commit the same faults which we had resolved
 to avoid.—Give me the letter which I have desired you to translate into French.
prier de
 —The ladies whom I had flattered myself you would see are unfortunately
 gone to America.—A terrific voice has been heard, which has thrown us
partir pour
 all into the greatest consternation.—He has shown so much boldness and intre-
 pidity, that he has made them all run away.—Has she not rendered you all the
s'enfuir
 services she could?—We have shown them all the attention we could.—Tell
 him he should have written to me as he had promised.—How many days and
 nights have I not passed by your side, when you were ill!—What answer have
à
 they made to you?—The loss is not so great as I should have thought.—She is
on
 not so handsome as I had fancied.
s'imaginer.

PART THE FOURTH.

OF PROSODY.

LESSON LX.

Prosody, being the art of giving to each syllable its proper pronunciation, consists of two parts: the first comprises *accent*, *quantity*, *emphasis*, *pause* and *tone*; and the second the laws of versification.

1. *Of Accent.*

Accent may be defined:—"the different inflections and modulations of the voice that are used to pronounce the words of a language with due propriety;" or, in other words, "*Accent is the raising or lowering of the voice on particular syllables.*" Every people, every nation, every province, and the inhabitants of almost every town differ from each other in their language; not only because they use different expressions to explain their ideas; but also because they have a different manner of articulating and pronouncing the words. These different modulations, peculiar to each people, are what the *Abbé d'Olivet* well terms the *national accent*.

To speak a living language with propriety and elegance, it is necessary to have the same accent or the same inflection of the voice as those persons of the *capital*, who move in the best society; and, when it is said that to speak French well one must not have any accent, it is to be understood that one must not have either the *Italian* or *Norman*, or any other foreign or peculiar accent, except the accent used in the first circles in the French metropolis.

2. *Of Quantity.*

Quantity signifies an emission of the voice of a long or short duration; or the time employed in the pronunciation of a syllable.

A syllable is long, when we dwell on the vowel in it and slowly join it in pronunciation with the following letters: as,—*arrêt*, *bârre*, *rôse*.

A syllable is short, when the vowel in it is quickly joined in pronunciation to the succeeding consonant: as,—*bârque*, *bërceau*.

A long syllable generally requires double the time of a short one in



1975-1976

1975-1976

avec lequel on a depuis
d'une proportion
L'if de l'ancien mot de
à en usage. depuis
qu'à Paris, et de Londres
R. 220

mais cho à l'antique
ancien, il marche devant moi
G. G. 296

heures : G. G. 27.

a
t
se
b
or
ju
re
F
as
M
de
hav
by
you
Mac
Ch
places
Somer
en rev
Somer
To
Franc
positi
le po
2.
parts
expre
the su
differen
before
le soir
he will
tenth, ve
une heur
About,
preceding a
or measure
or près de
about two
this tree is
pieds de ho
environ ou

as,—she is always going from shop to shop, *elle va toujours de boutique en boutique*.

When *from* and *to* are used to express a duration of time, as in this sentence—*from morning to night*, *from* is expressed by *depuis*, and *to* by *jusqu'*, with *à*, or *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, or *aux*, according as the preposition or article is required: as,—from morning to night, *depuis le matin jusqu'au soir*.

From, coming after a verb denoting that we either come, return, were turning, or will return, from the house of somebody, is construed into French by *de chez*, before the name of the person or persons mentioned: —I come or return from Mr. B.'s, *je viens ou reviens de chez M. B***; —we were returning from Messrs. L.'s house, *nous revenions chez MM. L***.

To or *at*, employed after a verb denoting equally that we either go, have been, or will go to the house of somebody, is expressed in French by *chez*, before the name of the person alluded to: as,—I am going to your house, *je vais chez vous*; he was going to Mrs. S.'s, *il allait chez dame S***.

chez can only be used before the names of persons and never before those of places. We cannot say,—*en revenant de chez Pall-Mall*, *j'ai été chez la maison de Somerset*, in returning from Pall-Mall, I have been to Somerset-House; but—*en venant de Pall-Mall*, *j'ai été à la maison de Somerset*; because *Pall-Mall* and *Somerset-House* are two places which require the prepositions *de* and *à*.

Until, employed in the sense of *so far as* or *to the*, is expressed in French by *jusqu'*, with *à*, or *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, or *aux*, according as the preposition or article is required: as,—I will prosecute him to the end, *je poursuivrai jusqu'au bout*.

About.—When this preposition is used to denote the different parts of a day or year, the date of a month, or any time in general, it is expressed in French by *vers*, with the definite article *le*, *la*, or *les*, before the succeeding word. It is also sometimes construed by *sur*, before the parts of hours of a day, and in this sense the definite article *les* is used before the hour mentioned: as,—it was about the evening, *c'était vers le soir*; it will be about six o'clock, *ce sera vers ou sur les six heures*; come about July, *il viendra vers le mois de Juillet*; about the tenth, *vers le dix*; I went there about one o'clock, *j'y allai sur les onze heures*, although *une* is singular.

Approximately, denoting an approximate number or quantity of a thing, or used after a noun which expresses the depth, height, dimension, weight, &c. of any thing, is expressed in French by *environ*, *à peu près*, or *environ*, according to the import of the sentence: as,—there were about a hundred people, *il y avait environ deux cents personnes*; the tree was about twenty-four feet high, *cet arbre a près de vingt-quatre pieds de hauteur*; there were about ten bushels of wheat, *il y avait à peu près dix boisseaux de froment*.